



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

A practical introduction to Latin prose composition. [With] Key

Thomas Kerchever
Arnold

ENGLISH SCHOOL-CLASSICS

EDITED BY FRANCIS STORR, M.A.,

CHIEF MASTER OF MODERN SUBJECTS IN MERCHANT TAYLORS' SCHOOL.

THOMSON'S SEASONS: Winter.

With an Introduction to the Series. By the Rev. J. F. BRIGHT. 1s.

COWPER'S TASK.

By FRANCIS STORR, M.A. 2s. Part I. (Book I.—The Sofa; Book II.—The Timepiece) 9d. Part II. (Book III.—The Garden; Book IV.—The Winter Evening) 9d. Part III. (Book V.—The Winter Morning Walk; Book VI.—The Winter Walk at Noon) 9d.

SCOTT'S LAY OF THE LAST MINSTREL.

By J. SURTEES PHILLPOTTS, M.A., Head-Master of Bedford Grammar School. 2s. 6d.; or in Four Parts, 9d. each.

SCOTT'S LADY OF THE LAKE.

By R. W. TAYLOR, M.A., Head-Master of Kelly College, Tavistock. 2s.; or in Three Parts, 9d. each.

NOTES TO SCOTT'S WAVERLEY.

By H. W. EVE, M.A., Head-Master of University College School, London. 1s.; WAVERLEY AND NOTES, 2s. 6d.

TWENTY OF BACON'S ESSAYS.

By FRANCIS STORR, M.A. 1s.

SIMPLE POEMS.

By W. E. MULLINS, M.A., Assistant-Master at Marlborough College. 8d.

SELECTIONS FROM WORDSWORTH'S POEMS.

By H. H. TURNER, B.A., late Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1s.

WORDSWORTH'S EXCURSION: The Wanderer.

By H. H. TURNER, B.A. 1s.

MILTON'S PARADISE LOST.

By FRANCIS STORR, M.A. Book I. 9d. Book II. 9d.

MILTON'S L'ALLEGRO, IL PENSEROSO, AND LYCIDAS.

By EDWARD STORR, M.A., late Scholar of New College, Oxford. 1s.

SELECTIONS FROM THE SPECTATOR.

By OSMUND AIRY, M.A., late Assistant-Master at Wellington College. 1s.

BROWNE'S RELIGIO MEDICI.

By W. P. SMITH, M.A., Assistant-Master at Winchester College. 1s.

GOLDSMITH'S TRAVELLER AND DESERTED VILLAGE.

By C. SANKEY, M.A., Assistant-Master at Marlborough College. 1s.

EXTRACTS from GOLDSMITH'S VICAR OF WAKEFIELD.

By C. SANKEY, M.A. 1s.

POEMS SELECTED from the WORKS OF ROBERT BURNS.

By A. M. BELL, M.A., Balliol College, Oxford. 2s.

MACAULAY'S ESSAYS:

MOORE'S LIFE OF BYRON. By FRANCIS STORR, M.A. 9d.

BOSWELL'S LIFE OF JOHNSON. By FRANCIS STORR, M.A. 9d.

HALLAM'S CONSTITUTIONAL HISTORY. By H. F. BOYD, late Scholar of Brasenose College, Oxford. 1s.

SOUTHEY'S LIFE OF NELSON.

By W. E. MULLINS, M.A. 2s. 6d.

GRAY'S POEMS with JOHNSON'S LIFE AND SELECTIONS

from GRAY'S LETTERS. By FRANCIS STORR, M.A. 1s.

Waterloo Place, Pall Mall, London.

RIVINGTONS' MATHEMATICAL SERIES

By J. HAMBLIN SMITH, M.A.,

OF GONVILLE AND CAIUS COLLEGE, AND LATE LECTURER AT ST. PETER'S COLLEGE,
CAMBRIDGE.

Arithmetic. 3s. 6d. A KEY, 9s.

Algebra. Part I. 3s. Without Answers, 2s. 6d. A KEY, 9s.

Exercises on Algebra. Part I. 2s. 6d.

[Copies may be had without the Answers.]

Elementary Trigonometry. 4s. 6d. A KEY, 7s. 6d.

Elements of Geometry.

Containing Books I to 6, and portions of Books II and 12 of
EUCLID, with Exercises and Notes. 3s. 6d. A KEY, 8s. 6d.

PART I., containing Books I and 2 of EUCLID, may be had
separately.

Elementary Hydrostatics. 3s. }
Elementary Statics. 3s. } A KEY, 6s.

Book of Enunciations

FOR HAMBLIN SMITH'S GEOMETRY, ALGEBRA, TRIGONO-
METRY, STATICS, AND HYDROSTATICS. 1s.

The Study of Heat. 3s.

By E. J. GROSS, M.A.,

FELLOW OF GONVILLE AND CAIUS COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, AND SECRETARY TO
THE OXFORD AND CAMBRIDGE SCHOOLS EXAMINATION BOARD.

Algebra. Part II. 8s. 6d.

Kinematics and Kinetics. 5s. 6d.

By G. RICHARDSON, M.A.,

ASSISTANT-MASTER AT WINCHESTER COLLEGE, AND LATE FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S
COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

Geometrical Conic Sections. 4s. 6d.

Waterloo Place, Pall Mall, London.



600090154P

ARNOLD'S
LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

REVISED BY G. G. BRADLEY.

A PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION
TO
LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

BY
THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

NEW EDITION, Edited and Revised

BY
GEORGE GRANVILLE BRADLEY, M.A.

MASTER OF UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, OXFORD,
AND FORMERLY MASTER OF MARLBOROUGH COLLEGE.

RIVINGTONS
WATERLOO PLACE, LONDON

MDCCCLXXXI

305 . 2 . 161 .

P R E F A C E

SOME years have passed since I was requested by the Publishers of the late Mr. T. Kerchever Arnold's educational works, to undertake the revision of his *Introduction to Latin Prose Composition*.

The wide and long sustained circulation of the book, both in England and America, was a proof that, whatever might be its defects, its author had provided something which commended itself as a practical aid to an exceedingly large class both of students and teachers of the Latin language.

The task, however, of so revising such a work as to place it on a level with the requirements of the present time I found far more serious than I had expected. The result of much labour, and of more than one unsuccessful attempt to satisfy myself may be stated broadly as follows:—

In the first place, an Introduction has been prefixed containing three parts, two of which are new, the other much modified.

1. The first of these is an explanation of the traditional terms by which we designate the different "parts of speech" in English or Latin. The exposition is confined to the most simple and elementary points; but it is scarcely necessary to remind any experienced teacher of the extreme vagueness with which the nature of such essential distinctions is often mastered, even by those whose mental training has for years been almost confined to the study of Language.

2. This is followed by a few pages on the Analysis of the Simple and Compound Sentence. Such logical analysis of language is by this time generally accepted as the only basis of intelligent grammatical teaching, whether of our own or of

any other language. At all events no teacher, who would care to make trial of the present work, will regret the insertion of a short explanation of the general principle on which all its exposition of syntactical questions is directly founded.

3. I have followed Mr. Arnold's example in prefixing some remarks, retaining so far as possible his own language, on the Order of Words; I have added some also on the Arrangement of Clauses in the Latin Sentence. It is desirable to point out, at the very earliest stage of the learner's progress, not only the great differences between the structure of the two languages in this respect, but also the grounds on which these differences rest, and to indicate the general laws which regulate what may appear to the uninstructed the loose and arbitrary texture of the Latin Sentence.

The matter for translation as comprised in the various Exercises has been almost entirely rewritten. I have not, after full consideration, taken what would have been the easier course, and substituted single continuous passages for a number of separate and unconnected sentences. I found that for the special purpose of the present work, dealing as it does with such manifold and various forms of expression, the employment of these latter was indispensable, and I have by long experience convinced myself of their value in teaching or studying the various turns and forms of a language which differs in such innumerable points from our own as classical Latin.

At the close of the Exercises, I have omitted Mr. Arnold's "List of Differences between English and Latin idioms." As these differences are, or should be, brought home to the reader in almost every line of the present revision of his work, such a list would either convey a false impression of general similarity with occasional disagreement, or would reach a length which would defeat its purpose. It is better that the pupil should learn from the very first, that as a general rule, Latin and English express the same or similar thoughts by a more or less different process, and that a

perfectly literal translation of every word in one language by a corresponding word in another will, whether he is translating English into Latin or Latin in English, almost certainly result in absurdity and solecism.

A few words may be added, on the order in which the various subjects treated in the different Exercises are arranged. Some surprise may be caused at its want of scientific method, and apparently of definite principle. It would have been quite possible to have started with exercises on the shortest and most elementary form of the simple sentence; then to have traced its various enlargements through all the manifold uses of the pronouns, oblique cases, uses of adjectives, adverbs, participles, gerunds, and prepositions, and thus to have deferred to the second or rather final portion of the work any notice of the various forms of the compound sentence, of many uses of the infinitive, of even the most ordinary uses of the relative, and of all subordinating conjunctions. I observe that in Seyffert and Busch's last edition of Ellendt's Latin Syntax, the construction of the accusative with the infinitive is not reached till two-thirds of the work have been read, that of the "indirect question" till considerably later. But had I followed this course, the pupil must have been conducted, by the aid of a long series of elaborately constructed specimens of the Simple Sentence, through all the range of usages that could possibly be comprised within their limits. Not till this was done could he have attempted to deal with the very commonest turns of language, such as meet him in every line of natural English, and form the texture of every sentence in Caesar or in Livy. He would have wasted his strength and patience in mounting and descending ladder after ladder of artificial language before he was invited to set foot on the free and natural paths of speech. It is difficult, no doubt, to decide which among the innumerable idioms of a language so unlike our own has the first claim on the attention of the teacher; and the precise order which should be adopted is a matter less of principle than one dictated by various and complex

considerations of practical utility. But I have not hesitated to invite the learner, who will follow the guidance of the present work, to leave at a very early period the artificially smoothed waters of such simple sentences as are carefully framed with a view to exclude the most ordinary forms of speech in both English and Latin, and to face as soon as possible the constructions of the Infinitive Mood, of the Relative and Interrogative Pronoun, of the Conjunctional Clause, and some of the main uses of the Subjunctive Mood, and of the Latin as compared with the English tenses. It appears to me that after thus obtaining some firm grasp of the great lines in which the Latin language is modelled under the influence of that great instrument of thought, the Verb, he will be far more likely to notice and retain a permanent impression of the usages and mutual relations of other parts of speech, than if he had followed step by step an opposite system under the guidance of a synthetically arranged Syntax. At the same time, as some amount of systematic arrangement is desirable even on practical grounds, the Exercises have been arranged, as a glance at the Table of Contents will show, in groups of closely related subjects. Such questions as the use of the Cases, and of the various Pronouns, presented considerable difficulty. Placed where they are, they somewhat interrupt the main current of the general teaching on the structure of the Latin sentence, yet I hesitated to relegate them to the end of the book. As it is, I have used them largely, and I hope successfully, not only to elucidate the subject of which they directly treat, but also to renew, impress, and enforce the principles and details laid down in the earlier sections. At the same time there is no reason why the teacher should not postpone their use for a time, and pass on to any of the groups of Exercises which follow.

It only remains that I should express my obligations, not only to the great German Grammarians, including the recently completed *Historische Syntax* of Dr. Draeger, to Schultz's *Synonymik* and Haacke's *Stilistik*, but also to two such English

writers on Latin Grammar as Professor Kennedy and Mr. Roby. To the former, eminent alike as a teacher and a writer, I owed, as a comparatively young teacher, my first full perception of the educational value of a systematic study of Latin Syntax as based on the Analysis of the Sentence; to the second volume of Mr. Roby's valuable work I am largely indebted. I may also mention the less obvious but not less real assistance which I have received from the published works and ever ready assistance and guidance of Professor Max Müller; also from Professor Earle's treatise on the Philology of the English tongue, and from some interesting Lectures of Professor Burggraff of Liège.

I must also express my obligations for much help received in an earlier stage of the work from Mr. A. M. Bell of Balliol College; more recently from Mr. F. Madan of Brasenose College, and for the great aid given me in shaping the Vocabulary and drawing up the Index, by Mr. T. W. Haddan, late Scholar of my own College.

G. G. BRADLEY.

UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, OXFORD,
August 1881.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION,	1
EXERCISE I. Elementary and General Rules,	31
II. III. Meaning of Words and Phrases,	38, 43
IV. Agreement of the Subject,	47
V. VI. Accusative with Infinitive,	50, 54
VII. Nominative with Infinitive,	57
VIII. IX. Adjectives,	61, 69
X.-XII. The Relative,	74, 79, 83
XIII. The Infinitive as Substantive,	88
XIV. Final Clauses— <i>Ut, Ne, Quo</i> ,	92
XV. <i>Ut, Ut non</i> , in Consecutive Clauses,	96
XVI. <i>Ut, Ne</i> , introducing a Substantival Clause,	102
XVII. <i>Quominus, Quin</i> —Verbs of Fearing with <i>Ut, Ne</i> ,	108
XVIII. Commands and Prohibitions,	113
XIX. Remarks on Moods,	116
XX. XXI. Interrogative Sentences,	121, 126
XXII. Dependent Interrogative,	130
XXIII. Remarks on Tenses,	133
XXIV. How to translate <i>Can, Could, May</i> , etc.,	142
XXV. Cases,	146
XXVI. Apposition,	152
XXVII. XXVIII. Accusative,	155, 159
XXIX.-XXXII. Dative,	162, 167, 170, 172
XXXIII.-XXXV. Ablative,	176, 181, 185
XXXVI.-XL. Genitive,	189, 193, 196, 199, 202

	PAGE
EXERCISE XLI. Place, Space,	206
XLII. Expressions of Time,	212
XLIII. Prepositions,	216
XLIV. Prepositions with the Ablative,	221
XLV.-XLVIII. Pronouns, 224, 230, 234, 239, 243	224, 230, 234, 239, 243
XLIX. L. Gerund and Gerundive,	247, 252
LI. The Supines,	256
LII. Participles,	258
LIII. The Ablative Absolute,	265
LIV. LV. Temporal Clauses,	268, 274
LVI. Subordinate Clauses in <i>Oratio Obliqua</i> ,	278
LVII.-LIX. Conditional Clauses, 282, 289, 294	282, 289, 294
LX. Concessive Clauses,	301
LXI. Causal and Explanatory Clauses,	305
LXII. Comparative Clauses,	309
LXIII. <i>Qui</i> with the Subjunctive,	316
LXIV. <i>Qui</i> Causal and Concessive,	321
LXV. Reported Speeches in <i>Oratio Obliqua</i> ,	324
LXVI. Numerals,	332
LXVII. The Roman Calendar,	338
SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES, 1-15,	341
VOCABULARY,	353
INDEX OF SUBJECTS,	396
LATIN INDEX,	402

INTRODUCTION.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

1. By Parts of Speech we mean the various classes, or headings, under which all words used in speaking or writing may be arranged.

2. In English Grammars eight are usually enumerated, viz. :—

Noun.	Pronoun.	Adverb.	Conjunction.
Adjective.	Verb.	Preposition.	Interjection.

3. Besides these there is a ninth, the Article, definite and indefinite, *the*; *an*, *a*. The former is merely a shortened form of the demonstrative pronoun *that*; the latter two of the numeral adjective *one*; and both may be classed under the adjective.

But in Latin Grammars the list is somewhat different, and it will be more convenient to follow the usual arrangement.

4. There is no Article in Latin, and the Adjective is included under the Noun.

i. Noun	{ Substantive.	iv. Adverb.
	{ Adjective.	v. Preposition.
ii. Pronoun.		vi. Conjunction.
iii. Verb.		vii. Interjection.

As all these names will be frequently used in the following pages, it is necessary that their meaning and nature should be understood.

The Noun.

5. (i.) The NOUN is the name (*nomen*) which we give to any person, thing, or conception of the mind; for even conceptions we may regard as *things*. We may name such

persons or things in two different ways; nouns therefore, or *names*, may be of two kinds.

6. The **Substantive** is a name which we give to a person or thing to distinguish it from other persons and things: Caesar, table, goodness; *Caesar, mensa, virtus*.

It denotes the assemblage, or *sum-total*, of all the qualities by which we recognise such person or thing.

Hence its name (*nomen substantivum*), as a name denoting what was once called the *substantia*, or essential nature of persons and things.

It denotes also something which is looked on as having an existence (*substantia*) by itself.

7. The **Adjective** is a name which we add or apply to a person or thing, to denote some *one quality* which we attribute to it: good, white, small; *bonus, candidus, parvus*.

8. As this one quality may be shared by many persons or things, the adjective is not well fitted to stand by itself as the name for persons or things; many different persons and things might be "good," "white," or "small."

Its proper use, therefore, is either to be attached to the *nomen substantivum*, or general name of an object, so as to define its meaning more closely, as *white* horses, *good* men; *equi albi, homines boni*; or to be *predicated*, that is asserted, of such substantive: the men are *good*; *homines sunt boni*; in the first case it is called an *attribute*, in the second a *predicate*. Hence its name, *nomen adjectivum*; a name, that is, fitted for adding, or attaching, to another name, from *adjicere*, "to add to."

9. In Latin this *fitness for attachment or addition* is even more marked than in English. Latin adjectives have, what the English have not, *inflexions*, *i.e.* variable terminations of gender, case, and number, which vary with those of the substantive to which they are attached, or of which they are predicated. Thus *mulier superba*; *vir est superbus*; *arbores vidi altas*. In English the adjective has no longer any inflexions: A *proud* lady, the man is *proud*, I saw *lofty* trees. We can attach the same word *proud* to *lady* and to *man*; the same word *lofty* to *tree* and *trees*.

Pronouns.

10. (ii.) PRONOUNS are words substituted for nouns (*pro nomine*) to *indicate* or *point* to a person, thing, or quality, without naming the thing, or its quality: *I, you, he, she, it; that, such, who*, and many others.

The noun then, and pronoun, *name* or *point* to persons, things, or the qualities of persons or things; but,

The Verb.

11. (iii.) The VERB *makes a statement* as to them, it joins together *two* such objects of our thought.

Vales, you are well; *curro*, I run; *vincuntur*, they are conquered.

In each of these Latin words not one but two separate conceptions are included; "you" and the "being well," "I" and "running," "they" and "being conquered;" of these, the first is called the *Subject*, the second the *Predicate*.

12. The Latin verb differs from the English in not requiring the aid of a separate pronoun (*ego, tu*, etc.) to make its statement. The pronoun is contained in, and expressed by, its final syllable.

Vivo, I live; *vixisti*, you have lived; *amat*, he loves.

13. The verb then is a *saying* about persons or things (*verbum* = *Gk.* *ῥῆμα*: a saying, or thing said).

It makes a statement, or, as it is called, a *predication*, as to the state of, or action done either by, or to, some person or thing.

Valeo, I am well; *vinco*, I conquer; *vincor*, I am conquered.

14. All these parts of speech have what are called *inflexions*, i.e. variable and movable terminations, answering to those in such English words as *dost*, *tables*, *comes*, and admit of other changes in form (cf. *I, me; come, came*), by the aid of which they express various relations, or notions, of *number, case, gender, degree of comparison, time, person, mood*.

In English, many, if not most, of these relations are expressed by separate words, as pronouns, prepositions, auxiliary verbs, or by the place of the word in the sentence; thus compare,

Pater filium videbit. The father *will* see his son.

Patrem filius vidērat. The son *had seen* his father.

Hunc librum tibi dederam. I *had given* this book to you.

15. But the other four parts of speech are not inflected, or *declined*; they are all called particles (*particula*), or less important *parts* of *speech*, because they are not so essential to the formation of a sentence as those already described. The first three can form a sentence by themselves, not so the last four.

The Adverb.

16. (iv.) The ADVERB (*adverbium*) is so called, because its main use is to attend upon the *verb*. All verbs make a statement; the adverb qualifies the statement which the verb makes, by adding some particular as to the *manner*, *amount*, *time*, or *place* of the state or action asserted.

Fortiter pugnavit.
He fought *bravely*.

tum excessit.
then, or at that time,
he went out.

ibi cecidit.
he fell *there, or*
in that place.

17. But adverbs, especially those of *amount* or *degree*, may also be joined with *adjectives*, and even with other *adverbs*.

Satis sapiens.
Sufficiently wise.

Admōdum negligenter.
Very carelessly.

18. Adverbs when derived from adjectives are capable of one kind of inflexion; that which expresses "more," "most," *sapienter*, *sapientius*, *sapientissime*.

19. Observe how often the adverb may be interchanged with an adverbial *phrase*; *i.e.* two or more words equivalent to an adverb: negligently, *with negligence*; hastily,

in haste. The same is the case in Latin: *Tunc = eo tempore.* Then = at that time, etc.

Prepositions.

20. (v.) PREPOSITIONS are words which are joined with, and almost invariably *placed before* (*praeposita*), nouns and pronouns, to define their relation to other words in the sentence.

<i>Ad me venit.</i>	<i>a Caesare victus est.</i>	<i>pro patriâ mori.</i>
He came to me.	he was conquered by Caesar.	to die for one's native land.

21. There are a great many prepositions in Latin, and the same preposition is used in various senses, *e.g.*, *a* (*ab*), "from" and "by." They are rarely used with any but the accusative and ablative cases.

22. But the case-ending alone will often express what in English must be expressed by a preposition.

<i>Ense me percussit.</i>	<i>Romam Narbone rediit.</i>
He struck me with a sword (instrument).	He returned to Rome from Narbonne (motion from and to a town).

23. Many words used as prepositions are also used as adverbs, *i.e.* are not joined with nouns but with verbs.

<i>Ante te natus sum.</i>	<i>Hoc nunquam ante videram.</i>
I was born before you (prep.).	I had never before seen this (adverb).

24. Many also are prefixed to and compounded with verbs, to modify their meaning. Very often they convert an intransitive into a transitive verb.

Pugno, I fight; *oppugno*, I assault (a place).

The same was the case in Old English; we still use *overcome*, *withstand*, *gainsay*. In later English the preposition is placed after the verb: "He is *sent for*," "I am *laughed at*."

A list of prepositions, with the cases which they govern, or are joined with, will be found further on. (See Ex. XLIII., XLIV.)

Conjunctions.

25. (vi.) CONJUNCTIONS are indeclinable words which join together (*conjungo*) sentences or clauses, and occasionally even words.

26. Their proper office is to unite two or more sentences or clauses, and to show the relation between the clauses which they unite. "You went, *but* I remained behind," the *but* expresses *opposition*; "you did this, *therefore* I will," *therefore* draws an *inference*.

27. *Obs.*—They often connect *words*, but generally the word connected represents a clause left out, *e.g.* You and I saw this = You saw this, *and* I saw this.

Sometimes however they really connect words, and words only: "This good *but* poor man would often say," or "two *and* two make four."

For the list of conjunctions and their classes see below.

Interjections.

28. (vii.) INTERJECTIONS are so called because they are words inserted (*interjecta*), or *thrown in among* the other words of a sentence to express some feeling or emotion. They are either mere exclamations, as *heu, vae, alas! woe!* or abbreviated sentences, such as *Me Dius fidius (juvet)*. Compare "good-bye" (God be with you). They do not enter into the construction of a sentence, and their *syntax* therefore presents no difficulty.

FURTHER REMARKS ON THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

29. THE NOUN.—(i.) SUBSTANTIVES are of more than one kind.

(a.) The **proper** name (*nomen proprium*), *i.e.* the special name appropriated to and the *property* of a single person or place: *Caius, Roma, Italia*.

(b.) The **common** noun or name (*nomen appellativum*), by which we can designate either a whole class, or an individual of the class: *arbor, flumen*; tree, river. Any tree or river may bear this name. Without the help of

these words we should require a separate name for every object that we speak of.

(c.) **Collective** nouns, or nouns of multitude (*nomina collectiva*) are such as, though singular, yet by their nature denote a number of individuals: *Exercitus*, *populus*, *senatus*; army, people, senate.

(d.) **Abstract** nouns (*nomina abstracta*) are words which denote some quality, or state, or action, as *withdrawn* from the person or thing *in which* we see it embodied (*concretum*), and looked on as existing *by itself*. Thus *servitium* is the state of "servitude" which we see existing in a number of *servi*; *candor*, "whiteness," the quality which is denoted by the adjective *candidus*, wherever that quality is found.

30. (ii.) **ADJECTIVES** may be divided into—

Adjectives of **quality**, as *bonus*, *malus*, *fortis*; good, bad, brave.

Adjectives of **quantity** and **number** (numeral): *multi*, *pauci*, *ducenti*; many, few, two hundred.

There is also a large number of *pronominal* adjectives formed from or closely connected with pronouns: *meus*, *tuus*, *ullus*, etc.; mine, thine, any, etc. These are more conveniently included under pronouns.

31. Though the adjective is especially fitted for *attaching to* or being *predicated of* substantives, yet where no ambiguity can arise it is capable of being used by itself as a substantive: *boni*, good (men); *bona*, good (things), the words *men* and *things* being represented by the masculine and neuter terminations of the Latin adjective; *-i* and *-a* representing the plural of "he," "it."

32. **PRONOUNS**.—The personal pronouns answering to the English *I*, *you*, as also to *he*, *she*, *it*, are essential parts of conversation in all languages to represent the person *speaking*, the person *spoken to*, and the person or thing *spoken of*.

We have already seen that they may be expressed in Latin by the termination of the verb. Rules for the insertion of *ego*, *tu*, *is*, *ille*, etc., will be given below.

33. Besides these *personal* pronouns, which indicate, without again naming, the two or three persons before named, there are a large number of words closely connected with them, which are also called pronouns (or in some cases *pronominals*, *i.e.* words resembling pronouns). Such are—

The Reflexive and

Emphatic Pronouns . . .	<i>sui, se ; ipse, egomet</i> , etc.,—himself, myself, etc.
The Demonstrative . . .	<i>hic ; iste, is, ille ; idem</i> ,—this; that; the same, etc.
The Interrogative . . .	<i>quis, qui</i> (adjectival), <i>ecquis ; quot ?</i> etc.,—who? what? how many?
The Relative . . .	<i>qui, quicunque</i> , etc.,—that, who, which, whoever.
The Indefinite . . .	<i>quidam ; quis ; aliquis</i> ,—a certain one; any; some, etc.
The Possessive . . .	<i>meus, tuus, suus, noster</i> , etc.,—mine, thine, his, ours, etc.
The Reciprocal . . .	(No single word in Latin); each other, etc.

The majority of these are used adjectivally; but the personal pronouns of the first and second person, the reflexive (*se*), *quis* as opposed to *qui*, *quid* to *quod*, are substantival.

34. There are also certain **correlative** pronouns or pronominals, which are used in corresponding pairs. Such are *is . . . qui ; tantus . . . quantus ; tot . . . quot*. Their use will be explained further on. (See Ex. XII.)

35. VERBS.—The distinction between the different kinds of verbs must be carefully attended to in composition. Verbs are thus classed:—

(i.) **Intransitive** Verbs are so called because any action which they denote does not extend or pass over (*transire*) to any other person or thing besides that which forms the subject or nominative of the verb.

Spiro, I breathe; *curro*, I run; *cado*, I fall; *sum*, I exist.

Any of these verbs can form a complete sentence in Latin, though not in English, in a single word.

36. Some of them, however, hardly give a *clear* sense without the aid of a noun or pronoun to complete the statement which they make; and this is one of the chief uses of the dative case. Thus *noceo*, I am hurtful; *pāreo*, I am obedient, give a vague sense, unless we know *to whom* "I am hurtful" or "obedient"; and these intransitive verbs (which obviously contain an idea resembling that of the adjective) are mostly joined with a *dative*, never with an *accusative*: *tibi noceo*; *mihi paret*. They are often represented in English by transitive verbs: "I hurt you," "he obeys me." There are many such apparently transitive, but really intransitive, verbs in Latin. (See Ex. I. 5.)

37. (ii.) **Transitive** Verbs are those which denote an action which necessarily affects, or *passes over to*, some person or thing other than the *subject* of the verb: *interficio*, I kill; *capio*, I take. Here *I* is the *subject* of the verb, but we ask at once *whom*, or *what*, do *I* kill, or take?

38. This other person or thing, without which the statement is incomplete, is called the *object* of the verb, and is always in the *accusative* case. In English the object follows the verb, in Latin it more often precedes it.

Fratrem tuum vidi. I saw your brother.

39. (iii.) Both transitive and intransitive verbs are called *Active*. Their inflexions are similar, and both denote *action* of some kind.

For English verbs used both transitively and intransitively, as "I move," etc., see 20, 21.

40. Many Latin transitive verbs may be used *absolutely* (*i.e.* without an expressed object).

Vinco, I conquer (my enemies), "I win the day"; *scribo*, I am writing (a letter or book).

41. (iv.) By **Passive** Verbs we mean a form or inflexion of the transitive verb which denotes that the action indicated by the verb takes effect, not on another person or thing, but on the *subject* of the verb.

Amor, I am loved; *interficitur*, he is killed.

I and *he* are no longer *agents* or *actors*, but *recipients* or *sufferers* (*patior*, *passivus*, adj.), and the *agent* is some one else represented in Latin by the ablative with the preposition *a*, *ab*.

Ab hoste interfectus est. He was slain by the enemy.

42. Remember that it is only transitive verbs, *i.e.* verbs which are joined with an accusative, that have a full passive voice. We cannot say *noceor*, or *curror*, or *vivor*.

But there is a very common use of the third person singular of a passive form of intransitive verbs, without any nominative expressed, to denote that the action described by the verb is produced or effected; *Hac itur*, there is a going, *i.e.* men go, in this direction; *tibi nocetur*, harm is done to you, *i.e.* you are injured. Owing to the large number of verbs which, like *noceo*, are intransitive in Latin, this construction is of great importance. (See 5.)

43. (v.) Besides these **active** and **passive** verbs, there is a large class of verbs called **Deponent**.

These are verbs which, though having passive *inflexions*, have laid aside (*deponere*) a passive, and assumed an active, *sense*. Of these, some are transitive, some intransitive.

Te sequor, I follow you; *tibi irascor*, I am angry with you.

44. Some are called **Semi-deponents**; they have an active form in the present, a passive in the past, with no change of meaning.

Gaudeo, I rejoice; *gavisus sum*. *ardeō*, I dare; *ausus sum*.

45. It is important to remember that deponent verbs differ from other Latin verbs in furnishing both a past and present participle with an active sense.

Proficiscor, I set out; *proficiens*, and *profectus*, "setting out," and "having set out."

(See 14.)

46. (vi.) **Impersonal Verbs** are those which are not used in the first or second persons, but only in the third.

Even with the third person of such verbs, the subject or

nominative case is never a person, or even a substantive ; but either (a) the vague *it* (or *he*) implied in the termination : or the verb is accompanied and explained by (b) an infinitive mood, or (c) a whole clause, or (d) a neuter pronoun.

Pudet. It shames me.

Haec fecisse piget. It is painful to have done this.

Accidit ut abessem. It happened that I was absent.

Hoc refert. This is of importance.

(See 123, and 202.)

Among these must be classed the very important construction mentioned above (42).

47. (vii.) By **Auxiliary Verbs** we mean verbs used as aids (*auxilia*) to enable other verbs to form moods and tenses which they cannot express within the compass of a single word. Compare "I fell" with "I *have* fallen," where "have" has lost the sense of possession, and only serves as an auxiliary verb to the verb *fall*. Such verbs abound in English, because the English verb often requires the aid of another word—*may, would, should, shall, will, let*, etc.—to express what can be expressed in Latin by a change in the verb itself. Compare "I *was* loving" with *amabam* ; "let him go" with *eat*.

In Latin, the only auxiliary verb is *esse*, "to be," assisted by the forms, *fore, forem*. This is used largely in the passive voice and future infinitive: *auditus sum, auditurum fore*.

48. But much resembling these auxiliary verbs are certain verbs which are closely united with the infinitive of another verb, and add to that verb various *modes* of expressing its meaning, almost as if they were additional *moods* ; hence they are called,

(viii.) **Modal Verbs**. Such are those of *being able, beginning, ceasing, wishing*, etc.

Possum, nequeo, desino, volo, haec dicere. I am able, unable, cease, wish, to say this.

(See 42.)

49. (ix.) **Copulative** or **Link** Verbs are those which unite together two nouns or pronouns, one of which, the predicate, is asserted or predicated of the other, the subject.

Caesar est Dictator. Caesar is Dictator.

Obs.—The principal of these is the verb *sum*, whose *original* meaning was “I breathe.”

When *sum* means “I am,” “I exist,” it is called a *substantive* verb, because it expresses the idea of existence, *substantia*. (See 6.)

When it merely joins together the subject and predicate of a sentence, as above, it is called a *copulative* verb.

When it supplies the passive voice or infinitive mood with aid to form tenses, it is called an *auxiliary* verb.

50. Besides *sum* there is a large class of other verbs which have in some cases laid aside their original meaning, and are used to connect nouns. Such are *fit* (used as the passive of *facio*), *evado*, *existo*, and also the passive of verbs of *thinking*, *naming*, etc. Of course, as link verbs they couple together words which correspond as closely as possible, and the two nouns which they unite will be in the same case.

Caesar fit Dictator. Caesar becomes Dictator.

For Verbs called **Factitive** Verbs, see 239.

51. The verb, when its meaning is defined or limited (*finis*) by a nominative case, *i.e.* when used as a true verb, as in the first, second, or third person, is called sometimes a *finite* verb.

But sometimes the verb, to a certain extent, lays aside its true nature as the *instrument of making an assertion by joining together two objects of our thoughts*, and takes that of another part of speech, the noun, both the *substantive* and the *adjective*. The verb is used as a substantive in the *infinitive* mood, in the *gerund*, and in the two *supines*. It is used as an adjective in the *participles*, and in the *gerundive*, or *participle* in *-dus*.

These will all form subjects of Exercises.

52. **Adverbs** have been already classified. The learner must be again reminded that just as in English we use very freely a great number of *adverbial phrases* in place of

adverbs, *e.g. in silence*, for “silently,” *to the benefit of*, instead of “beneficially” to, the state, so he must not think that every English adverb or adverbial phrase is to be rendered literally into Latin. Full guidance, however, will be given in the following Exercises. (See, for instance, 61, 63, 64.)

PREPOSITIONS will be classified further on. (See Exercises XLIII, XLIV.)

53. CONJUNCTIONS are divided, both in English and Latin, into two classes; *Co-ordinating* and *Subordinating* conjunctions.

54. **Co-ordinating** conjunctions join together sentences on equal terms; these sentences are of equal grammatical rank, or co-ordinate (*ordo*, rank), *i.e.* each is *grammatically* independent of the other.

You go, *and*, *but*, *therefore*, I shall follow.

55. **Subordinating** conjunctions attach to a sentence or clause another clause which holds (grammatically) a lower or subordinate position, qualifying the principal clause just as an adverb qualifies a verb. “I will do this, *if* you do;” the *if*-sentence (or clause) is equivalent to the adverb *conditionally*. (See Intr. 82.)

56. The Co-ordinating conjunctions in Latin and English are—

a. Copulative—

Et, -que, ac, atque; nec, neque (when used for “and not”);
etiam, praeterea, etc.

And, also; nor, and not; moreover, etc.

b. Disjunctive, *i.e.* they join together the sentences, but they *disjoin* or separate from each other the thoughts conveyed: “We must do this, *or* die.”

Aut, vel, -ve; nec, neque; sive, seu; (an, -ne).

Or, either; neither, nor; whether, or; (or).

c. Adversative. Two statements are opposed to each other—

Sed, autem, verum, vero, tamen.

But, nevertheless, notwithstanding, however, etc.

d. **Illative or Inferential.** The statement of one sentence “brings in” (*infert*) or proves the other;

Ergo, igitur, itaque. Therefore, accordingly, and so, etc.

e. Causal;

Nam, namque, enim, etenim. For.

57. Observe that Latin has a greater variety of conjunctions than English; for our “and” it has *et*, *-que*, *atque*, *ac*, for our “or” *aut*, *vel*, *-ve*, as well as *an*; and each of these words has a somewhat different meaning.¹

58. Very often also the relative pronoun *qui* may take the place of an English co-ordinating conjunction, and be placed at the head of a sentence or clause where we should use “and,” “but,” “so.”

Quae postquam audivit. And after he heard *this*.

59. The Subordinating conjunctions are—

a. Final—

LATIN.

ENGLISH.

<i>Ut, quo;</i> and negative <i>nē</i> , <i>quominus.</i>	That (<i>followed by</i> may or might), in order to, to <i>with</i> <i>the Infinitive</i> ; that not, lest, etc.
--	--

¹ Latin has three Copulative conjunctions to represent our “and,”—*et*; *atque*, *ac*; and *-que*. *Et* simply couples words and clauses; *-que* couples two words as forming one whole, *se suaque*, etc., or connects a closely related clause; *atque* connects with emphasis, “and also,” “and I may say.”

Ac, the shorter form of *atque*, must never be used before words that begin with a vowel.

Aut . . . aut, and *vel . . . vel*, both answer to the English *either . . . or*, but *aut* marks a sharp distinction: *Hoc aut verum est aut falsum*, This is either true or false, i.e. if it is true, it is not false. *Vel (ve)* is connected with *velle*; and treats the difference as unimportant: “whichever you like.”

Hoc velim vel vi vel clam facias.

I would have you do this either by force or secretly (as you prefer).

Hence *vel . . . vel* is often equivalent to *et . . . et*, and both = *alike . . . and*.

Vir vel (et) ingenio vel (et) virtute insignis.

A man remarkable *alike* for his ability *and* his goodness.

An is only used for “or” in questions. (See 159.)

b. Consecutive—

LATIN.

Ut ; ut non, quin.

ENGLISH.

So that, so as to ; so as not to, etc.

c. Temporal—

Quum, ubi, ut ; quamdiu, dum ; quoad, donec, priusquam, antequam ; postquam.

When, as soon as ; while, as long as ; until, before that ; after that, etc.

d. Causal—

Quod, quia, quoniam, quandoquidem, often quum ; non quo.

Because, since, inasmuch as, seeing that, whereas ; not that, not because, etc.

e. Conditional—

Si ; nisi, si non ; sive, seu ; also dum, modo ; dum ne, modo ne.

If ; unless, if not ; whether . . . or ; provided that, so long as, on the condition that, etc.

f. Comparative and Proportional—

*Quam ; quasi, tanquam, sicut, ut, quemadmodum, proinde ac ; quo . . . eo, with comparatives.*Than ; as, as if, as though, just as, in proportion as ; *the* (old abl.) more . . . *the* more, etc.

g. Concessive—

Etsi, tametsi, quamquam, quamvis, licet, ut.

Although, albeit, etc.

h. Defining or Explanatory—

Quod, ut : but their use is limited in Latin, their place being largely taken by the infinitive mood.That (He says, or knows, etc., *that* I did it. It is true *that* he did it, etc.) Used most widely in English and modern languages.

i. Interrogative (with dependent clauses)—

Cur, utrum, an, num ; quemadmodum, ut ; cur, quamobrem ; ubi, quando.

Whether . . . or, if ; how ; why, wherefore ; where, when.

Observe in how many different senses *ut* and *quum* are used.

60. The relative *qui* is used also very commonly in place of subordinating conjunctions : see Exercises LXIII, LXIV.

ANALYSIS OF THE LATIN SENTENCE.

61. By a **sentence**, whether in Latin or in English, we mean a grammatical combination of words, which either (1) makes a *statement*, or (2) asks a *question*, or (3) conveys a *command* or desire.

Every such sentence, however long or however short, consists of two parts:—

62. First, a **subject**—that of which something is stated, asked, or desired; secondly, a **predicate**—that which is stated, asked, or desired in reference to that subject.

He is well.	Is he well?	May he be well!
<i>Valeat.</i>	<i>Valeatne?</i>	<i>Valeat!</i>

In each of these sentences *he* (expressed in Latin by the termination, or personal inflexion of the verb: see 12) is the *subject*, the rest is the *predicate*. (See 11.)

63. But such short sentences are rare in all languages. They are shorter in Latin than in English for the reason given in 12.

The following more ordinary form of sentence is one that occurs in Bk. i. c. 1 of *Caesar de Bello Gallico*:—

Hi omnes lingua, institutis, moribus, inter se differunt.

These all (or all of these) differ from one another in language, institutions, and habits.

Here in both languages *Hi omnes* (these all) is the *subject*; all the rest is the *predicate*. The main part of the predicate is the verb *differunt*, the rest being *adjuncts* or additions to the verb, explaining and limiting it, telling us *from whom* all of these differ, and *in what points*.

64. A sentence of this kind, whether short (as the examples in 62) or longer (as that in 63), is called a *simple sentence*.

By a **simple sentence** we mean one which consists of a single subject and a single predicate.

65. *Obs.*—Sometimes there is a *single predicate* and *two or more subjects* united by conjunctions, as

You and I lifted up our hands.
You and I are old.

Sometimes a *single subject* with *two or three predicates*, as

The army *put to flight* and *killed* many of the enemy.

These are sometimes called *contracted sentences*, as they are a shortened form of such sentences as,

You lifted up your hands, *and* I lifted up my hands.

It may be better to look on them as simple sentences with a subject or predicate consisting of two or more words, united by the conjunction *and*. (See 27.)

66. In both languages the **subject** will always be a substantive of some kind, or its equivalent. The equivalent may be a substantival pronoun (33), or an adjective, participle, or adjectival pronoun used as a substantive (31), or an *infinitive mood* (51), or some combination of words, used as a substantive. (See Examples in 67.)

67. The **predicate** will always consist either of a verb, or else of some adjective,¹ substantive, or combination of words, connected with the subject by a verb expressed or understood (see 49), *e.g.* :—

Caesar vixit. Caesar *has lived*.

Sapientes sunt beatissimi. Wise men *are the happiest*.

Hic rex est. He (this man) *is king*.

Agrum colere mihi delectationi est. Cultivating the land
(or farming) *is a delight to me*.

Obs.—Where the link verb is omitted we supply it (at least in English and Latin) in thought.

Happy the good !

Quot homines tot sententiae.

(There are) as many views as there are men.

68. The subject may, even in a simple sentence, be greatly *enlarged* or prolonged by the addition of *adjectives, adjectival phrases*,² *pronouns*, words in *apposition*, etc.

Boni reges amantur. Good kings are loved.

Caius, vir optimus et magnae auctoritatis, interficitur.

Caius, *an excellent man and of great influence*, is slain.

¹ The adjective is specially adapted for a predicate ; it may be said that the substantive when used as a predicate is used adjectivally.

² By an adjectival phrase we mean some word or combination of words other than an adjective used in place of an adjective :—

vir summae fortitudinis = *vir fortissimus*.

haec res tibi magnae erit delectationi = *gratissima*.

69. So also the **predicate** may be enlarged and made more distinct and intelligible by the addition of oblique cases of substantives to the verb to express its nearer and remoter objects; and these substantives may have in their turn various adjuncts, such as adjectives or other substantives in apposition.

Pater filio, *puero aetatis tenerae carissimo*, librum *pretiosissimum Romae emptum*, dono dedit. *The father gave his much-loved son of tender years a present of a costly book bought at Rome.*

"The father" is the subject; all the rest is the predicate.

Obs.—The verb *dedit* says of the father that he *gave* something. The dative case *dono*, closely combined with the verb, explains (by a special use of that case) that what he gave he gave *as, or for, a present*. The dative case *filio* does the regular work of the dative, *i.e.* specifies the *remoter object* of that gift, the son who benefited by it; the substantive and adjective in apposition, together with the adjectival phrase *aetatis tenerae*, give some further particulars as to that remoter object.

The accusative case *librum* completes the idea vaguely expressed by *dono dedit*. It performs the proper function of the accusative case, as it completes the idea only half expressed by a transitive verb, by supplying the (nearer) object of the verb. (See 38.)

It is in turn made more distinct by its combination with an adjective, *pretiosissimum*, and a participle combined with the local case of a noun, *Romae emptum*. These tell us its value, and the place where it was purchased.

But the main and essential parts of the predicate are the verb *dedit* with its two accompanying cases *filio* and *librum*.

70. Again, the action described by the verb may be explained and made distinct by the addition of *adverbs*, or of substantives used **adverbially** (especially the ablative and locative cases), *adverbial phrases*, *participles*, *gerunds*, *gerundives*, or *adjectives* used adverbially; *e.g.*

Diu *vixit*. He lived *long*.

Vixit nonaginta annos. He lived *ninety years*.

Fāme *interiit*. He died *of famine*.

Summa cum celeritate *venit* (= *celerrime venit*). He came *with the utmost speed*.

Londini *vicit*. He lived *at London*.

Pugnans *interficiitur*. He is killed *while fighting*.

Sui liberandi causa *pugnavit*. He fought *to free himself*.

Invitus *hoc feci*. I did this *unwillingly*.

In each of these sentences we have adverbs, or their equivalents, fulfilling the proper function of adverbs, *i.e. qualifying and explaining the action described by the verb*.

71. The verb, instead of being, as in the example above, a very important part of the predicate, may serve as little more than a **link to connect together** the subject and predicate.

Ego consul ero. I *shall be* consul.

Here the verb *ero* is a mere link (adding however the idea of time) between the subject and predicate.

So other verbs in a less degree.

Rex Numa appellatur. The king *is named* Numa.

(See 50.)

In such cases the predicate and subject will, as already explained, be in the same case, as it is their agreement or identity that the verb asserts.

72. The use of the **adjective**, when it stands in such sentences as the **predicate**, must be distinguished from its use as an **attribute**. (See 8.)

Hic rex bonus (*predicate*) *est*. *Reges boni* (*attribute*) *amantur*.

THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

73. Simple sentences are in English and in Latin rather the exception than the rule.

In Latin, as in English, we can neither converse nor write without using sentences which are either combined with, or contain within themselves as part of their subject or predicate, other sentences or clauses.¹

I. CO-ORDINATION.

74. Sentences are combined together by **Co-ordination**. That is, two or more sentences are placed side by side in combination with each other; they stand to each other on equal terms; one is grammatically as important as the other. (See 54.)

75. Such sentences are connected in English and Latin by co-ordinating conjunctions, *and, but, for; et, aut, nam*, etc.

You do this, *but* I do that;
I shall go home, *for* I am tired;
Either you must go, *or* I shall (go).

For a list of English and Latin co-ordinating conjunctions, see 56.

76. It has been stated that even the relative *qui*, among its other uses, is frequently used to connect two co-ordinated sentences. (See 58.)

In English also this is the case, though more rarely;

I met your son, who told me that you were at home.
Here *who*=*and he*.

¹ The term *clause* is used for the various *sub-sentences* which make up the whole compound sentence.

Notice again how many sentences, and even chapters, in Caesar and other Latin authors begin with a relative.

Obs.—Sometimes co-ordinate sentences are placed side by side without any conjunction.

Veni, vidi, vici. I came, I saw, I conquered.
Contempsi Catalinae gladios, non pertimescam tuos.

77. The syntax of the co-ordinate sentence will cause no special difficulty. The characteristic of a co-ordinate sentence is, that it does not *grammatically depend on another*; it is a sentence combined with another, but on an *independent footing*. The mood and tense of its verb, the case of its noun or nouns, are in no way dependent upon any other sentence.

II. SUBORDINATION.

78. Sentences may be joined together by SUBORDINATION.

A **sentence** may consist of different **clauses**, each containing its own verb, so combined that we have one principal or main clause, containing the principal verb, to which other clauses stand, so far as grammar is concerned, in a *subordinate* or dependent position.

Hereupon the commodore, after he had cast anchor, sent some of his men to land, and ordered them to ask whether provisions and water could be procured, if the fleet that was yet to come should need them.

Here we have what we may call a *double compound sentence*; *i.e.* two co-ordinate main clauses (in italics) connected by *and*, each with one or more subordinate clauses dependent on it.

79. Such subordinate clauses will answer to the three different parts of speech—the substantive, the adjective, and the adverb,—which form with the verb the chief component parts of a sentence.

i. Substantival.

80. They may be **SUBSTANTIVAL**. That is, they may stand in the relation of **substantives** to the verb of the principal clause.

The following are three clearly marked instances of different kinds of substantival clauses—

- (a) *Se regem esse dixit.* He said *that he was a king.*
- (b) *Quid fieret quaesivit.* He asked *what was being done.*
- (c) *Ut sibi ignoscerem oravit.* He entreated me to *pardon him.*

In each of these Latin sentences the main clause consists of a single word, the verbs *dixit*, *quaesivit*, *oravit*; but each has appended to it a subordinate clause, answering to an accusative case, and containing (a) a statement, (b) a question, (c) an entreaty.

ii. Adjectival.

81. Subordinate clauses may also be **ADJECTIVAL**. By this we mean that they may stand in the same relation to the principal clause as an **attributive adjective**. (See 8.)

They include all such "clauses" as are introduced by *qui* in its simplest use as the relative; used, that is, to define or specify some previous substantive expressed or understood.

They are called **adjectival** because they define more closely such **antecedent** substantive or pronoun, precisely as an adjective or a substantive used as an adjective, *i.e.* in apposition, would do.

For "*Boni reges amantur*" we may say "*Reges, qui boni sunt, amantur.*"

For "*Servorum fidelissimum misi*" we may say "*Servum misi, quem fidelissimum habui.*"

For "*Cicero Consul*" we may say "*Cicero, qui Consul est,*" or "*fuit.*"

iii. Adverbial.

82. There also is a great variety of ADVERBIAL clauses.

By these we mean those which add to the principal clause, grammatically complete without them, some further clause expressing *end in view, result, time, cause, condition, contrast, likeness*.

These clauses play the part of **adverbs** or **adverbial phrases** to the main clause. Compare—

<i>Hoc consulto feci,</i>	with	<i>Hoc feci ut tibi placerem ;</i>
I did this <i>purposely,</i>	with	I did this <i>in order that I might</i> <i>please you ;</i>

where the adverbs *consulto* and *purposely* are replaced by *adverbial clauses*.

Or take an English sentence—

I will do this conditionally.

We have here a simple sentence, in which the predicate is qualified by the adverb *conditionally*. Substitute—

I will do this, *if* (or *on the condition that*) *you do that*.

Here we have no longer a simple but a compound sentence, the principal clause, *I will do this*, being qualified by a subordinate adverbial clause.

83. These **adverbial** clauses are divided into seven classes—

1. Final, those which denote a *purpose*.
2. Consecutive, „ *result*.
3. Temporal, „ *time*.
4. Causal, „ *reason or cause*.
5. Conditional, „ *supposition*.
6. Concessive or adversative, *contrast*.
7. Comparative, „ *comparison or proportion*.

84. They are connected with the main clause sometimes by subordinating conjunctions, a list of which has been given above (see 59), sometimes by the relative *qui*, the use of which is in Latin far wider and more varied than in English.

85. The following are instances :—

Final,	. .	Huc veni, <i>ut te viderem.</i> I came here <i>in order to see you.</i>
Consecutive,	. .	Humi cecidit <i>ut crus frangeret.</i> He fell on the ground <i>so as to break his leg.</i>
Temporal,	. .	<i>Quum haec dixisset</i> , abire voluit. <i>When he had spoken thus</i> , he wished to depart.
Causal,	. .	<i>Quod haec fecisti</i> , gratias tibi ago. I return thanks to you <i>for acting thus.</i>
Conditional,	. .	<i>Si hoc feceris</i> poenas dabis. <i>If you do this</i> you will be punished.
Concessive,	. .	<i>Ququam festino</i> , tamen hic morabor. <i>Though I am in haste</i> , yet I will delay here.
Comparative } or Modal, }		<i>Proinde ac meritis</i> es te utar. I will deal with you <i>as you have deserved.</i>

In each case the subordinate clause, or its substitute in English, is in italic letters, the main clause in Roman.

ORDER OF WORDS AND CLAUSES IN A LATIN SENTENCE.

86. The order of words in a Latin sentence differs, in many important respects, from the English order. There are very few sentences in which the natural order of one language corresponds to that of the other. There is much greater freedom and variety in Latin, especially as regards substantives, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs. For these parts of speech are each susceptible of a great variety of changes in their terminations, called *inflexions*. It is these inflexions, and not their place in the sentence, which mark the relations of words to other words. As we have far fewer of these inflexions in English, we are obliged to look for the precise meaning of a word, not to its *form* but to its *position*.

87. If we take the English sentence, "The soldier saw the enemy," we cannot invert the order of the two substantives, and write "The enemy saw the soldier," without entirely changing the meaning; but in Latin we may write *miles vidit hostem*, *hostem vidit miles*, or *miles hostem vidit*, without any further change than that of shifting the emphasis from one word to another.

But for all this the following rules should be carefully attended to in writing Latin, and variations from them noticed in reading Latin prose authors.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

88. The subject of the sentence, the **nominative** case, stands, as in English, at the beginning of or early in the sentence.

Caesar, or *Tum Caesar exercitum in Aeduorum fines ducit*.

Compare—Thereupon Caesar leads his army into the territory of the Aedui.

89. The *verb* (or if not the verb, some important part of the predicate) comes last of all, as *ducit* in the sentence above.

Ea res mihi fuit gratissima.

That circumstance was most welcome to me.

Obs.—*Sum*, when used as a link verb, rarely comes last.

90. But if great stress is laid on the verb it is placed at the beginning, and the subject removed to the last place.

Tulit hoc vulnus graviter Cicero. Cicero doubtless felt this wound deeply.

Est caeleste nūmen. There really is, or there exists, a heavenly power.

This position of *sum* often distinguishes its **substantive** from its **copulative** and **auxiliary** uses. (See 49, *Obs.*)

91. For it must always be remembered that

The degree of **prominence** and **emphasis** to be given to a word is that which mainly determines its position in the sentence. And,

The two emphatic positions in a Latin sentence are the *beginning* and the *end*. By the former our attention is raised and suspended, while the full meaning of the sentence is rarely completed till the last word is reached.

Hence, from the habit of placing the most important part of the predicate, which is generally the verb, last of all, we rarely see a Latin sentence from which the last word or words can be removed *without destroying the life*, so to speak, of the whole sentence.

This can easily be illustrated from any chapter of a Latin author.

92. The more **unusual** a position is for any word, the more emphatic it is *for that word*. Thus

Arbores seret diligens agricola, quarum adspiciet baccam ipse nunquam.—(Cic.)

Here the adverb is made emphatic by position; in English we must express the emphasis differently, as by "though the day will never come when he will see their fruit."

A word that generally stands close by another receives emphasis by *separation* from it; especially if it be thus brought near the beginning or end of a sentence.

Voluptatem percepi maximam. Propterea quod aliud iter haberent nullum. Aedui equites ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

93. As regards the interior arrangement of the sentence, **governed words**, such as (1) the accusative or dative, expressive of the nearer or remoter objects of verbs, or (2) genitive or other cases governed by a noun or adjective or participle, come usually *before*, not as in English *after*, the words which govern them.

Hunc librum filio dedi.

Compare—I gave this book to my son.

Frater tuus tui est simillimus.

Compare—Your brother is exceedingly like you.

94. Adjectives, when used as attributes, are oftener than not placed *after* the noun with which they agree; but the pronoun *hic*, and monosyllabic pronouns and adjectives of number or quantity, *before*, as in English.

Vir bonus; civitas opulentissima; haec opinio; permulti homines.

When a substantive is combined both with an adjective and a genitive, the usual order is this—

Vera animi magnitudo. True greatness of mind.

95. A word in apposition generally stands, as does the adjective, after the word to which it relates.

Q. Mucius augur; M. Tullius Cicero consul; Pythagoras philosophus.

Luxuria et ignavia, pessimae artes.

96. Adverbs and their equivalents, such as ablative and other cases, and adverbial phrases, come before the verbs which they qualify.

Hic rex diu vixit. This king lived long.

Agnum ferro et igni vastavit. He laid waste the land with fire and sword.

Libenter hoc feci. I did this cheerfully.

Triginta annos regnavit. He reigned thirty years.

97. But in all these cases the usual order may be reversed to a far greater extent than in English for the sake of emphasis.

98. *Enim, vero, autem, quoque, quidem* (with the enclitics,¹ *-que, -ve, -nē*), cannot be the first words of a clause; *quoque* and *quidem* follow the words to which they belong.

99. The negative adverbs *non, haud, neque*, are placed always before the words which they qualify; *ne quidem*, "not even," always enclose the word which they emphasise: as, *ne hic quidem*, "not even he."

¹ An enclitic is a word which does not stand by itself, but is written at the end of the word which it qualifies: *-nē* (interrogative), *-que* = and, *-ve* = or, are the commonest Latin enclitics.

ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

Substantival Clauses.

100. **Substantival Clauses**, whether statements, questions, or commands, usually come before the verb on which they depend. (See 80.)

Errare se ait. He says *that he is wrong*.

Quid fiat dicam. I will tell you *what is being done*.

(Ut) hoc facias oro. I beg you *to do this*.

English and Latin here differ exactly as they do in the position of the accusative case, which in English *follows*, and in Latin *precedes*, the verb.

101. But if the dependent clause is long and important, and the principal clause short and unemphatic, the order is generally reversed.

Respondet ille, si velit secum colloqui, etc. (introducing a long speech).

Quaeris cur hoc homine tanto opere delecter.

Oro ut me, sicut antea, attente audiat.

Adjectival Clauses.

102. The **relative clause** is placed often where it would stand in an English sentence.

But it may be placed earlier and more in the centre of the sentence than is possible in English.

In his, quae nunc instant, periculis.

In these dangers *which now threaten us*.

This is accounted for by the principle laid down in 91, and the relative clause often, for the same reason, precedes the main clause.

Quam quisque norit artem, in hac se exercent.

Let each practise the profession with which he is acquainted.

Adverbial Clauses.

103. These, like the adverbs in a simple sentence, usually, unless very emphatic, come *before* the main clause.

They are placed, in fact, much as they would be in an English sentence, but with a greater tendency to place the main and more emphatic clause last. (See 91.)

104. **Temporal clauses** such as, *haec ubi audivit*, etc., together with ablative absolutes (*hoc comperto*, etc.), and participial phrases, *id veritus*, etc., often, like adverbs of time and place, *tum*, *ibi*, *deinde*, etc., form the opening word of a sentence.

So also clauses introduced by *quum* (temporal), *quoniam* (causal), *quanquam* (concessive), *si* (conditional), *sicut* (comparative), usually come before the main clause; as do final clauses (*ut . . . ne . . .*), more frequently than in English.

But **consecutive clauses** (*ut*, so that) usually, as in English, follow the main clause.

105. The following are examples of the *usual* order:—

Quum haec dixisset, abiit (temporal).	Having said this, he departed.
Si futurum est, fiet (conditional).	If it is to be, it will come to pass.
Ut sementem feceris, ita metes (comparative).	You will reap as you have sown.
Quoniam vir es, congrediamur (causal).	Since you are a man, let us close in fight.
Romani, quanquam fessi erant, tamen obviam procedunt (concessive).	The Romans advanced to meet (them) in spite of their fatigue.
Esse oportet, ut vivas. } (final).	You should eat to live.
Haec ne facias, abi. }	To avoid doing this, begone.
Quis fuit tam ferreus, ut mei non misereretur (consecutive).	Who was so hard-hearted as not to pity me?

106. It may be well to add that a repeated word, or a word akin to another in the sentence (such as one pronoun to another), is generally placed as near to that word as possible.

Nulla virtus virtuti contraria est. No kind of *virtue* is opposed to *virtue*.

Te-nē ego aspicio? Is it *you* whom *I* see?

Aliis aliunde est periculum. Danger threatens *different* men from *different* quarters.

Timor timorem pellit. *Fear* banishes *fear*.

We see that Latin has a great advantage in this respect over English.

107. Of two corresponding *clauses* or *groups* of words of parallel construction, the order of the first is often reversed in the second: so that two of the *antithetical* words are as near as possible.

Fragile corpus animus sempiternus movet. *Ratio nostra* consentit; *pugnat oratio.* *Quae me moverunt, movissent eadem te profecto.*

To many of these rules exceptions may be found. For the order in Latin is determined, as has been already said, not by any strict rules, but by considerations of **emphasis, clearness, sound, rhythm, variety**, some of which sometimes defy explanation, but which may be easily noticed and understood by any one who reads Latin with observation and intelligence.

As a general rule, in any but the shortest clause the **English order** is sure to be ill adapted to a Latin sentence.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE I.

ELEMENTARY AND GENERAL RULES.

MOST of the following rules necessarily follow from what has been said in the Introduction. Two or three are added on constructions of exceedingly frequent occurrence.

1. A finite verb (see Intr. 51) agrees with its *subject* (or its nominative case) in *number* and *person*.

Avis canit. The bird sings.

Aves canunt. The birds sing.

2. An adjective, pronoun, or participle agrees with the substantive to which it is attached, or of which it is predicated, in *gender*, *number*, and *case*. (Intr. 8, 9.)

Rex ille, vir justissimus, plurima foedera pactus est. That just king contracted many treaties.

3. When to a substantive or personal pronoun there is added a substantive explaining or describing it, the latter is said to be placed in *apposition* to the former, and must agree in *case* with the substantive to which it is added.

Alexander, *tot regum atque populorum* victor. Alexander, the conqueror of so many kings and nations.

Obs.—The substantive when thus used resembles an adjective. Alexander is here described by one *special quality*. (Intr. 7.)

4. A **transitive** verb, whether active or deponent, is joined with an **accusative** of the *nearer object*; that is to say, of the *person* or *thing acted upon*.

Sacerdos hostiam cecidit. The priest struck down the victim.

Alius alium hortatur. One man exhorts another.

This rule is invariable; **every really transitive verb governs an accusative.** (See Intr. 38.)

5. But many verbs that are transitive in English must be translated into Latin by what are really intransitive verbs, and are therefore joined with a **dative** of the person (or thing) *interested in* the action of the verb, *i.e.* the *remoter object*. (Intr. 36.) Thus—

I favour you,	tibi <i>faveo</i> ,	(I am favourable <i>to</i> you.)
I obey you,	tibi <i>pareo</i> ,	(I am obedient <i>to</i> you.)
I persuade you,	tibi <i>suadeo</i> ,	(I am persuasive <i>to</i> you.)
I please you,	tibi <i>placeo</i> ,	(I am pleasing <i>to</i> you.)
I spare you,	tibi <i>parco</i> ,	(I am sparing (merciful) <i>to</i> you.)

These verbs, in the passive voice, cannot be used otherwise than impersonally.

You are favoured,	tibi <i>favetur</i> ,	(Favour is shown <i>to</i> you.)
You are spared,	tibi <i>parcitur</i> .	etc.
You are pardoned,	tibi <i>ignoscitur</i> .	
You are persuaded,	tibi <i>persuadetur</i> .	
You are obeyed,	tibi <i>paretur</i> .	

6. The dative of the *remoter object* is sometimes, but by no means always, marked in English by the preposition *to* or *for*.

But it does not express *to* in the sense of *motion to*.

I gave this *to* my father. *Hoc patri meo dedi.*
but

I came *to* my father. *Ad patrem veni.*

For *to* in the sense of *motion to* a town, see 9, b. *For*, when it means "in defence of," "in behalf of," is expressed by *pro*.

Pro patria mori. To die *for* one's country.

7. The verb *to be*, and such verbs as *to become*, *to turn out*, *to continue*, etc., passive verbs of *being named*, *considered*, *chosen*, *found*, and the like, do not govern any case, but act as links between the subject and predicate, and therefore have the same case after as before them. (See Intr. 49, 50.)

Caius est justus. Caius is a just man.

Scio Caium justum fieri. I know that Caius is becoming just.

Caius imperator salutatus est. Caius was saluted as Imperator.

8. (a.) With passive verbs and participles, "the thing *by which*," or "*with which*" (the instrument), stands in the **ablative**; "the person *by whom*" (the agent), in the ablative **with the preposition *a* or *ab***. (Intr. 41.)

Castra vallo fossaque a militibus munita sunt. The camp has been fortified *by the soldiers with a rampart and ditch*.

(b.) But when "with" means "together or in company with" the preposition *cum* must be used.

Cum telo venit. He came *with a weapon*.

Cum Caesare hoc feci. I did this *with Caesar*.

Obs.—*Cum* is written after, and as one word with, the ablatives of the personal and reflexive pronouns (*mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum*), and sometimes after the relative, as *quicum* (abl.), *quibuscum*.

9. (a.) The ablative also expresses the time *at* or *in* which a thing takes place, the accusative the time *during* which it lasts.

Hoc mense quindecim dies aegrotavi. I have been ill for fifteen days in this month.

Tres ibi dies commoratus sum, quarto die domum redii.
I stayed there three days, I returned home on the fourth day.

(b.) With the proper names of **towns** the ablative expresses motion *from*, without a preposition.

Romā venit, "he came from Rome," but *ex* or *ab* *Italiā,* "from Italy;" also *domo venit,* "he came from home."

Motion *to* a town is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.

Neapolin *rediit*, "he returned to Naples;" but *ad* or *in Italiam*, "to Italy."

The accusatives *domum*, (to) home, and *rus*, to the country, are used in the same way as towns, without a preposition.

10. One substantive in close connexion with another which it defines is put in the **genitive** case.

Horti patris. The gardens of my father = my father's gardens.

Laus ducis. The praise of the general.

Fortium virorum facta. The deeds of brave men.

This case corresponds often to the English possessive case, the only true *case* retained by English substantives.

11. (a.) PRONOUNS.—When a pronoun is the nominative case to a verb, it is not expressed in Latin, except for the sake of *emphasis* or particular *distinction*.

This is because the termination of the verb contains a pronominal element; therefore, to express the pronoun is really to have the person twice repeated. (See Intr. 12.)

Ama-t is a compound word = Love-he, *i.e.* he loves. *Ille amat* means, *As for that man*, he loves. There is a repetition of the pronoun to call special attention to the subject of the verb.

Ego hoc volo. *For myself* I wish this.

(b.) When there is a distinction or contrast between persons to be expressed, the personal pronouns must be used.

Tu Tarentum amisisti, ego recēpi. *You* lost Tarentum, *I* retook it.

(c.) Even the *possessive* pronoun is seldom expressed when there can be no doubt as to *whose* the thing is.

Tum ille dextram porrigit. Then he (the other) holds out his right hand.

But it must be used when emphatic, *i.e.* = *his own*,

or when its omission would cause a doubt as to the meaning.

Suo se gladio vulneravit. He wounded himself with his (own) sword.

Patrem meum vidi. I have seen my father.

(d.) *He, she, it, they*, and their oblique cases, when they carry no emphasis, but merely *refer* to some person or thing already named, should be translated by *is, ea, id*, not by *ille*. *Ille* is much more emphatic, and often means "the other" in a story where two persons are spoken of, and sometimes "that distinguished person." *Iste* is "that of yours."

(e.) But when *him, her, them* denote the same person as the subject of the verb, *se, sui, sibi* must be used.

He says he (himself) will do it. *Hoc se facturum esse ait.*

The same rule applies to the possessive pronoun *suus*.

12. The relative pronoun *qui* agrees in *gender* and *number* with a substantive or demonstrative pronoun, which is usually expressed in a preceding sentence. Its *case* depends on the construction of its own clause. The substantive to which it thus *refers* (*refero, relativum*) is called its **antecedent** (or *fore-going* substantive).

Ille est equus, quem ēmi. Yonder is the horse which I have bought.

Pontem video, qui flumen jungit. I see a bridge which spans the river.

13. The relative is often used in place of the English conjunctions *and, but, so, etc.*, combined with the pronoun, *he, she, it, etc.* (See Intr. 58.)

Divitias optat, quas adepturus est nunquam. He is praying for riches, *but* is never likely to obtain *them*.

14. PARTICIPLES.—(a.) There is no past participle active in Latin except with deponent verbs. (Intr. 45.)

We can say *secutus* for "having followed," from *sequor* (verb dep.) But for "having come," we must say either *quum vēnisset*, or *postquam (ubi) vēnit*.

(b.) With a transitive verb the **ablative absolute** of the passive participle may also be used.

Thus for "*having*," or "*after having*, heard this," we may say either *hoc audito*, or *hoc quum audivisset*, or *hoc postquam (ubi) audivit*.

(c.) The participle in *-rus* is always active, and has various meanings.

Hoc facturus est. He is *going to*, *likely to*, *intending to*, *ready to*, *destined to*, do this.

15. Where in English two finite verbs are coupled by *and* we may often substitute a Latin participle in the proper case for one, and omit the *and*.

They marvelled *and* went away. *Admirati abiere.*

They heard *and* wondered at him. *Auditum admirati sunt.*

Vocabulary 1.

<i>again</i> , rursus.	<i>fire and sword</i> , ferrum et ign-is
<i>always</i> , semper.	(abl. -i). ²
<i>and</i> , et, -que, atque, ac. (See Intr. 57, note.)	<i>fortunate</i> , fel-ix, -icis.
<i>arrive (at)</i> , I, per-vēnio, ire, -vēni, -ventum (ad with acc.).	<i>fourth</i> , quart-us, -a, -um.
<i>begin</i> , I, in-cīpio, ēre, -cēpi, -ceptum.	<i>friend</i> , amic-us, -i.
<i>blockade</i> , I, ob-sīdeo, ēre, -sēdi, -sessum.	<i>halt</i> , I, con-sisto, ēre, -stiti.
<i>brave</i> , fort-is, -e.	<i>hate</i> , I, od-i, isse, -eram. (Perf. with pres. meaning.)
<i>but</i> , sed, vero.	<i>hear</i> , I, aud-io, ire, -ivi, -itum.
<i>chief</i> , prin-ceps, -cipis.	<i>hour</i> , hor-a, -ae, f.
<i>city</i> , urbs, urbis, f.	<i>human</i> , hūmanus.
<i>consul</i> , cons-ul, -ūlis.	<i>I</i> , ego. (See 11.)
<i>day</i> , di-es, -ei, m. ¹	<i>if</i> , si.
<i>daybreak</i> , prima lux (lūcis).	<i>injure</i> , I, nōc-eo, ēre, -ui, -itum (dat.).
<i>despise</i> , I, contem-no, ēre, -psi, -ptum.	<i>January</i> , Januarius.
<i>district</i> , ag-er, -ri, m.	<i>lay waste</i> , I, vasto, are.
<i>elected</i> , I am, fi-o, ēri, factus.	<i>march (subst.)</i> , it-er, -inēris, n.
<i>enemy</i> , host-is, -is.	<i>messenger</i> , nunti-us, -i.
<i>envy</i> , I, in-vīdeo, ēre, -vīdi, -visum (dat.). (See 5.)	<i>mid-day</i> , meridi-es, -ei, m.
<i>favour</i> , I, fāveo, ēre, fāvi, fautum (dat.).	<i>month</i> , mens-is, -is, m.
	<i>my</i> , meus. (11, c.)
	<i>never</i> , nunquam.
	<i>now</i> , jam = <i>by this time</i> , can be used of the past; nunc, <i>at the present</i> , at the moment of speaking. (328.)

¹ Occasionally fem. in sing. only.

² Note order. *Ferrum*, "iron," used for "sword" in metaphorical sense. (See 17.)

obey, I, pār-eo, ēre, -ui (dat.). (See 5.)

people, pōpul-us, -i, m.

race, gēn-us, -ēris, n.

right hand, dextr-a, -ae, f.

Roman, Romānus.

send (to), I, mitto, ēre, misi, missum (ad). (6.)

send for, arcess-o, ēre, -ivi, -itum (acc.).

show, I, monstro, are.

sometimes, interdum.

spare, I, parco, ēre, peperci, (dat.). (See 5.)

speak, I, lō-quor, -qui, -cūtus.

stretch forth, I, por-rigo, ēre, -rexi, -rectum.

take by assault, I, expugno, are.

that (pron.), ill-e, -a, -ud.

three, tres, tria.

to (motion), ad (acc.). (See 6.)

town, oppid-um, -i, n.

you, tu, pl. vos. (11, b.)

vote, suffragi-um, -i, n.

waste. (See lay.)

way, vi-a, -ae, f.

Exercise 1.

1. I have been elected consul by the votes of the Roman people; you are favoured by the enemies of the human race. 2. The town had now been blockaded for three days; it was taken by assault on the fourth day. 3. I sent three messengers to you in the month (of) January.¹ 4. If you are (*fut.*) obeyed I shall be spared. 5. That district had been laid waste by the enemy² with fire and sword. 6. I am envied, but you are despised. 7. Fortune favours the brave (*pl.*), but sometimes envies the fortunate. 8. Having arrived at the city at daybreak he sent for the chiefs. 9. I never injured you, but you have always envied me, and you hate my friends. 10. Having heard this he halted for three hours, but at mid-day began his march again. 11. Having spoken thus,³ and having stretched⁴ forth his right hand he showed him the way.

¹ *Januarius* is properly an adjective.

² Plural; the singular *hostis* is used sometimes like our "enemy," as a collective noun. (Intr. 29, c.)

³ "These things," *haec*.

⁴ Abl. abs., *lit.* his right hand having been stretched out. (14, b.)

EXERCISE II.

MEANING OF WORDS AND PHRASES.

THOUGH Latin words answering to all the English words in the following Exercises will be found in the Vocabularies, yet some care and thought will be necessary, even with their aid.

16. The same English word is often used in very different senses, some **literal**, some **figurative**. It is most unlikely that a single word in Latin will answer to all the various meanings of a single English word.

(a.) Thus we use the word "country" (connected through the French with the Latin *contra*, "opposite to us") in a great variety of meanings: "rural districts" as opposed to "town;" "our native land," as opposed to a foreign country; "the territory," of any nation; "the state," as opposed to an individual; even "the inhabitants or citizens of a country." Each of these senses is represented by a different word in Latin. Thus:—

Rus abiit. He went into the *country*.

Pro patria mori. To die for one's (native) land or *country*.

In fines or in agros Helvetiorum exercitum duxit. He led his army into the *country* of the Helvetii.

Rei publicae (or civitati) non sibi consuluit. He consulted the interests of the *country*, not of himself.

Civibus omnibus carus fuit. He was dear to the whole *country* (or *nation*).

No Vocabulary or Dictionary therefore will be of any real use, unless we clearly understand the precise meaning of the English.

(b.) Again, we might meet with the word "world" in an English sentence; but we cannot translate it into Latin till we know whether it means "the whole universe," or

"this globe," or "the nations of the world," or "people generally," or "mankind," or "life on earth."

Num casu factus est mundus? Was the world (sun, moon, stars, and earth) made by chance?

Luna circum tellurem movetur. The moon moves round the world (this planet).

Orbi terrarum (or omnibus gentibus) imperabant Romani. The Romans were rulers of the world.

Omnes (homines) insanire eum credunt. The whole world thinks him out of his mind.

Nemo usquam. No one in the world.

Multum hominibus nocuit. He did the world much harm.

In hac vita nunquam eum sum visurus. I am never likely to see him in this world.

With words therefore used in such different senses we must ask ourselves their precise meaning. Great assistance will be given in the present book; but the learner cannot too soon learn to dispense with this kind of aid, and to think for himself.

17. There are a great number of **metaphorical expressions** in English which we cannot possibly render literally into Latin. We say, "His son ascended the throne," or "received the crown," or "lost his crown;" and we might be tempted to translate such phrases literally after finding out the words for "to ascend," for "a throne," for "to receive," for "a crown," and so on.

But the fact is that these words when so combined **mean** something quite different from what they **say**, and to translate the actual words literally would be to say in Latin something quite different from the idea which the English conveys.

Filius solium ascendit, or *conscendit*, would (except in a poem) merely mean that his son "went up," or "climbed up," a throne; *Filius coronam accepit* that he "received a (festal or other) garland." A Roman would certainly say *regnum excepit*, "received in turn (inherited) the sovereignty."

Obs.—This is only a specimen of the kind of mistakes which we may make by not asking ourselves what words *mean* as well as what they *say*.

Compare such common expressions as "he held his peace," "he took his departure," answering to *conticuit, abiit*. Mistakes in such phrases as these are more likely to occur in translating longer passages without the aid afforded in these Exercises; but the warning cannot be too early given.

18. There are many English words whose derivation from Latin words is obvious. We are apt to think that if we know the parent word in Latin we cannot do better than use it to represent the English descendant, which so much resembles it in sound and appearance; but we can hardly have a worse ground than that of the similarity of *sound* in Latin and English words on which to form our belief that their *meaning* is identical. Most of these words have come to us through the French, *i.e.* through a language spoken by Roman soldiers and settlers, and borrowed from them by the Gauls; the Gauls in turn communicated the dialect of Latin which they spoke to their German conquerors; from these the Normans, a Scandinavian people, learnt, and adopted, what was to them a foreign tongue, with words from which, after conquering England, they enriched the language spoken by our English or Saxon forefathers. It would be strange if the meaning of words had not altered greatly in such a process.

When, therefore, we meet such a word as "office" in an Exercise we must beware of turning it by *officium*, which means "a duty," or an "act of kindness." We shall learn in time, by careful observation, when the English and Latin kindred words correspond in meaning, and when they differ, but we cannot too early learn that they generally differ.

19. Thus—

"Acquire" is not *acquirere*, but *adipisci, consequi*.

A man's "acts" are not *acta*, but *facta*.

"Attain to" is not *attinere ad*, or *attingere ad*, but *pervenire ad*, or *consequi*.

"Famous" is not *famosus*, but *praeclarus*.

"Mortal" (wound) is not (*vulnus*) *mortale*, but *mortiferum*.

"Nation" is not *natio*, but *civitas, populus, res publica, cives*.

"Obtain" is not *obtinere*, but *consequi, adipisci, etc.*

- "Office" is not *officium*, but *magistratus*.
 "Oppress" is not *opprimere*, but *vexare*, etc.
 "Perceive" is not *percipere*, but *intelligere*.
 "Receive" is not *recipere*, but *accipere*.
 "Ruin" (as a metaphor) is not *ruina*, but *perniciēs*,
interitus, etc.
 "Secure" (safe) is not *securus*, but *tutus*.
 "Vile" is not *vilis*, but *turpis*.

These are only specimens. The Vocabularies will be a sufficient guide, but the learner cannot too early be on his guard against a fruitful source of blunders, or learn too soon to lay aside, as far as possible, the use of vocabularies and similar aids, and trust to his own knowledge as gained from reading Latin.

Vocabulary 2.

acquire, *I*, ad-ipiscor, i, -eptus.

(See 19.)

admire, *I*, admir-or, āri, -atus.

advantage, emolument-um, -i, n.

all (things), (n. pl.), omnia.

as regards = *from* (the side of), a,
 ab (abl.).

attain to = *arrive at*. Voc. 1. (19.)

both . . . and, et . . . et.

boy, pu-er, -eri.

care. (See *free*.)

country, rus, ruris, n. ; patri-a, -ae.

(See 16, a.)

crown, regn-um, -i, n. (See 17.)

din, strepit-us, -ūs, m.

do, *I*, fāc-io, ēre, fēci, factum.

empire, imperi-um, -i, n.

ever = *always*. Voc. 1.

famous, praeclarus.¹ (19.)

father, pat-er, -ris.

fight, *I*, pugno, āre.

for (conj.), nam, enim. (Intr.
 98.)

for (prep.), pro (abl.). (6, Obs.)

forefathers, major-es,² -um.

foretell, *I*, praedi-co, cēre, -xi.

free from care, securus. (19.)

from, a, ab (abl.).

glory, glori-a, -ae, f.

great, magnus.

greatly, maxime.

Hannibal, Hannib-al, -ālis.

highest, summ-us, -a, -um.

hold, *I*, obtin-eo, ēre, -ui. (19.)

hold my peace, *I*, contic-esco, ēre,
 -ui. (See 17, Obs.)

king, rex, rēgis.

last, at, tandem.

long (adv.), diu.

made, *I am being*, fio. (See *become*,
 Voc. 1.)

means, by no, haudquaquam.

mind, anim-us, -i, m.

mortal (wound), mortifer, -fera,
 -ferum. (19.)

much, multus.

native country. (See 16, a.)

nation, civi-tas,³ -tatis, f. (19.)

never, nunquam.

obedient to, *I am*, = obey. Voc. 1.

¹ *Famosus* means "notorious" in a bad sense, "infamous."

² *Patres* is never used in prose for "forefathers." Our use of "fathers" in this sense came into English from Hebrew through the Bible.

³ *Natio* is rarely used of a civilised and organised nation; it means a people, or tribe, sprung from one race, of the same blood (*nascor*).

office, magistrat-us, -ūs, m. (19.)

orator, orāt-or, -ōris.

pleasing to, gratus (dat.).

ready to, I am, vōlo, velle, vōlui.

receive, I, ac-cipio, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum. (19.)

reign, I, regno, āre.

Rome = nation of, populus Romān-us. (See 319.)

ruin, interīt-us, -ūs, m.; clad-es, -is, f. (19.)

say, I, di-co, ēre, -xi, -ctum.

secure = safe, tutus. (19.)

succeed to, I, (crown) = I inherit (see 37), ex-cipio, ēre, -cepi, -ceptum.

sword (metaph.), arm-a, -orum; ferr-um, -i, n. (17.)

this, hic, haec, hoc.

time, at that, tum. (61, Obs.)

vile, turp-is, -e. (19.)

violence, vis, abl. vi.

whole, totus.

world. (66, b.)

wound, vul-nus, -nēris, n.

yet, tāmen.

Exercise 2.

1. I was made king by the votes of the whole nation. 2. He attained to the highest offices in (his) native country. 3. I hate the din of cities; the country is always most pleasing to me. 4. Our forefathers acquired this district by the sword. 5. The whole world was at that time obedient to the empire of Rome. 6. He reigned long; the crown which he had acquired by violence he held to,¹ the great advantage of the nation. 7. He was a most famous orator, and all the world admired him greatly. 8. He was most dear to the whole nation, for he was ever ready to do all things for the country. 9. He received a mortal wound (while) fighting for his native land. 10. At last he held his peace; he had said much (neut. pl.), and (spoken) long. 11. He succeeded to the crown (while) a boy; (as) king he attained to the highest glory. 12. He was now secure from all violence, yet he was by no means free from care as regards Hannibal. 13. He never attained to his father's glory, but all things that were vile he always hated. 14. He foretold the ruin of his country.

¹ Use *cum* with abl.

EXERCISE III.

MEANING AND USE OF WORDS—*Continued.*

VERBS.

20. In translating a Verb into Latin, it is most important to be sure of the precise sense in which the verb is used.

We have in English a large number of verbs which are used in two senses, one **transitive**, the other **intransitive** or **reflexive**.

We say "he changed his seat," and "the weather is changing;" "he moved his arm," and "the stars move;" "we dispersed the mob," and "the fog dispersed;" "he turned his eyes," and "he turned to his brother;" "he collected books," and "a crowd collected;" "he joined this to that," "he joined his brother," "the two ends joined."

But in translating such verbs into Latin, we must carefully distinguish between these different senses of the same verb.

If the English transitive verb is used intransitively, or as we should say in Greek in the Middle Voice (as in "the crowd *dispersed*"), we must either (*a*) use the passive of the Latin verb, or (*b*) insert the reflexive pronoun *se*, or (*c*) use a different verb.

21. Thus—

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| (a.) He <i>changed</i> his seat. | <i>Sedem mutavit.</i> |
| The weather <i>is changing</i> ,
or <i>altering</i> . | <i>Mutatur tempestas.</i> |
| He <i>broke up</i> the crowd. | <i>Multitudinem dissipavit.</i> |
| The fog <i>broke up</i> . | <i>Dissipata est nebula.</i> |
| The moon <i>moves</i> round
the earth. | <i>Luna circa tellurem movetur.</i> |
| He <i>moved</i> his arm. | <i>Brachium movit.</i> |
| He <i>rolled down</i> stones. | <i>Lapides devolvit.</i> |
| The stones <i>roll down</i> . | <i>Devolvuntur lapides.</i> |
| (b.) He <i>will surrender</i> the city. | <i>Urbem dēdet.</i> |
| The enemy <i>will surrender</i> . | <i>Se dēdent hostes.</i> |
| (c.) Riches <i>increase</i> . | <i>Crescunt divitiæ.</i> |
| He <i>increased</i> his wealth. | <i>Opes suas auxit.</i> |
| He <i>collected</i> books. | <i>Libros collēgit.</i> |
| A crowd <i>was collecting</i> . | <i>Conveniebat multitudo.</i> |

22. Many English verbs, usually intransitive, become transitive by the addition of a preposition: to hope, to hope *for* (trans.); to wait, to wait *for* (trans.); to sigh (intrans.), to sigh *for* (trans.); similarly "to gaze *on*," "to look *at*," "to smile *at*," and many others.

To determine whether the preposition really belongs to the verb, the verb may be turned into the passive; if the preposition *remains attached to the verb*, we may be sure that the two words form one transitive verb.

He *waits for* his brother. His brother *is waited for*.

To "wait *for*," therefore, is a compound verb; "to wait" is converted by the addition of a preposition from an intransitive to a transitive verb.

Fratrem expectat.

Frater expectatur.

23. Some of the commonest of such words are—

- | | |
|---|--------------------------|
| I aim <i>at</i> distinctions (high office). | <i>Honores peto.</i> |
| I crave <i>for</i> leisure. | <i>Otium desidēro.</i> |
| I hope <i>for</i> peace. | <i>Pacem spero.</i> |
| I listen <i>to</i> you. | <i>Te audio.</i> |
| I look or wait <i>for</i> you. | <i>Te expecto.</i> |
| I look round <i>for</i> you. | <i>Te circumspectio.</i> |

I look up at the sky. *Caelum suspicio.*

I pray for (i.e. desire much) this. *Hoc opto.*

But the number of such English verbs is very large.

24. In Latin (as in older English I *forego*, I *bespeak*) an intransitive verb very often becomes transitive by composition with a preposition prefixed to the verb. (See Intr. 24.)

Sedeo, I sit, *obsideo*, I blockade (a town); *vehor*, I am carried, or I ride, *praetervehor*, I ride past; *venio*, I come, *convenio*, I have an interview with, as, *ad te veni*, *Caesarem convēni*.

25. A single Latin verb will often express an English verbal phrase, i.e. a combination of a verb with a substantive or other words. Thus—

Taceo, I keep silence; *abeo*, I take my departure; *navigo*, I take, or have, a voyage; *insanio*, I am out of my senses; *minor*, I utter threats; *colloquor*, I have a conversation; *te libero*, I give you your liberty; *adeo mortem pertimescit*, such is his terror of death.

Vocabulary 3.

absent, I am, *ab-sum*, *esse*, etc.

besiege, *obsideo*.¹ (See *blockade*, Voc. 1.)

bestow (these things on you), I (*haec tibi*) *larg-ior*, *iri*, *-itus*.

bloody, *cruentus*.

carry on, I = I wage, *gē-ro*, *ēre*, *-ssi*, *-stum*.

country, in the, *ruri*.

crave for, I, *desidero*, *āre*. (23.)

desert, I, *deser-o*, *ēre*, *-ui*, *-tum*.

disperse, to (*intrans.*), *di-labi*, *-lap-sus*. (20.)

down from, *de* (*abl.*).

eight, *octo* (*indec.*).

endeavour, I, *cōnor*, *ari*.

exile, an, *ex-ul*, *-ūlis*.

fatal,² *funestus*.

flock together, to, *congregari*.

friend. Voc. 1.

gate, *port-a*, *-ae*, *f*.

gather together, to, *con-vēnire*, *-vēni*, *-ventum*.

Heaven (*metaph.*), (17), *Di Immortales*. *Caelum* would mean "the sky."

leisure, *oti-um*, *-i*, *n*.

long (*adj. of time*), *diutīnus*.

look for, I, *expecto*, *are*. (23.)

look round for, I, *circum-spicio*, *-spexi*, *-spectum*. (22, 23.)

look up at, I, *suspicio*, *ēre*, etc.

many, *mult-i*, *-ae*, *-a*.

mingle with, I (*intrans.*), *im-misceor* (20), *ēri*, *-mixtus* (*dat.*).

morning, in the, *mānē* (*adv.*).

¹ *Obsideo* is "besiege" in the sense of blockading; *oppugno*, in that of assaulting.

² *Fatalis* is "destined," "fated," and may be used either in a good or bad sense. (See 18.)

mountain, mon-s, -tis, *m.*
multitude, multitud-o, -inis, *f.*
moon. See *mid-day*, Voc. 1.
obtain, *I*, ad-ipiscor, -ipisci, -eptus;
 conse-quer, qui, -cutus. (19.)
one (of), unus (e, *abl.*).
our, nos-ter, -tra, -trum.
peace, pax, pacis, *f.*
pray for, *I*, (desire much), opto,
 āre (*acc.*).
return (*subst.*), redit-us, -ūs, *m.*
rock, sax-um, -i, *n.*
roll, *I* (*intrans.*), vol-vor (21, b), vi,
 volutus.
soldier, mil-es, -itis.

struck (*participle*), ictus, (*fr.* ico,
 icēre.)
surrender, *I*, (*trans.*) de-do, ěre,
 -didi, -ditum; (*intrans.*) me dedo.
 (21, b.)
swarm out of, *I*, effundor, i, effus-
 us (*abl.*).
then, tum, tunc.
towards, ad (*acc.*).
turn, *I* (*intrans.*), con-vertor, i,
 -versus. (20.)
vain, in, frustrā.
vast,¹ maximus; inge-ns, -ntis.
wait for, *I*, expecto. (23.)
war, bell-um, -i, *n.*
world. (16, b.)

Exercise 3.

Verbs marked in *italics* are to be expressed by participles, the conjunction that follows to be omitted (15).

1. We all were craving for peace, for we had carried on a long and bloody war. 2. They at last surrendered the city, which-had-been-besieged (*part.*) for eight months (9, a). 3. He prays for peace and leisure, but² he is never likely³ to-obtain these things. 4. All the world is looking for war, but heaven will bestow upon us the peace for which we pray. 5. Then he *turned* (*part.*) towards his friends, and in vain endeavoured to look up at them. 6. He looked round for his friends, but all for whom he looked round (*imperf.*) had deserted him. 7. The enemy *had swarmed* out of the gates and were mingling with our soldiers. 8. The multitude which had gathered together in the morning dispersed before noon. 9. Many rocks were rolling down from the mountains, and one of our guides *was struck* by a vast mass, and received a mortal wound. 10. On that fatal day I craved for you, but you were absent in the country. 11. A vast multitude had flocked together, and was now waiting for the return of the exiles.

¹ *Vastus* does not mean "vast" in size, but either "shapeless," or "waste," "desolate," etc. (See 18.)

² Relative neut. pl. (13) = "which things."

³ "Likely-to," participle in -rus of "to obtain." (See 14, c.)

EXERCISE IV.

AGREEMENT OF THE SUBJECT, OR NOMINATIVE CASE AND VERB.

26. If one verb is predicated of two or more **subjects** of **different grammatical persons**, it will be in the plural number, and agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third.

Et ego¹ et tu manus sustulimus. Both you and I raised our hands.

Et tu et frater meus manus sustulistis. Both you and my brother lifted up your hands.

(For the analysis of these sentences see Intr. 65.)

27. But sometimes the verb will be in the **singular** and agree with the subject *nearest itself*.

Et tu ades, et frater tuus. Both you and your brother are here.

28. If a single verb is predicated of several subjects of the **third person**, it may either be in the plural number, or it may agree with the substantive nearest itself.

Appius et soror ejus et frater meus manus sustulerunt.
Appius and his sister and my brother lifted up their hands.

But "*Sustulit manus Appius et soror ejus et frater meus*," with the same meaning, would be good Latin.

¹ For "*Caius and I*," the Romans, putting "*I*" first, said "*Ego et Caius*." When therefore Cardinal Wolsey said "*Ego et Rex meus*," he was a good grammarian but a bad courtier. Similarly they placed the second person before the third; "*Your brother and you*" would be, *Et tu et frater tuus*.

29. After **disjunctive** conjunctions (Intr. 56, *b*), *neque* (*nec*) . . . *neque*; *aut* . . . *aut*, etc., either construction may be used.

Neque tu neque frater tuus adfuistis. Or,
Neque tu adfuisti, neque frater tuus. Neither you nor
your brother were present.

But the latter is more usual.

Obs.—There is therefore great freedom in all these constructions in Latin; greater than is usual in English.¹

30. A singular collective noun (see Intr. 29, *c*) is occasionally followed by a plural verb.

Magna pars . . . fūgēre. A large proportion fled.

But *much oftener*, and always if it denotes a united body which acts as one man, it is followed by a singular verb.

Vult populus Romanus. It is the wish of the Roman people, *or*, of the people of Rome.

Exercitus e castris profectus est. The army started from the camp.

Senatus decrevit. The senate decreed.

Obs.—The singular is always used with *Senatus populusque*; the two words are looked on as forming one idea.

In English there is greater freedom; we can use the plural if we think rather of the individuals than of the body as a whole.

The gentry *were* divided in opinion.

Vocabulary 4.

Alexander, Alexan-der, -dri.
army, exercit-us, -ūs, *m.*
before (*prep.*), ante (*acc.*).
brother, fra-ter, -tris.
Clitus, Clit-us, -i.
countryman, civ-is, -is.

decree, I, decerno, ěre, decrevi,
-cretum.
end, fin-is, -is, *m.* (properly, *limit*).
ever, unquam.
exile, I am in, exulo, āre.
flock, gre-x, -gis, *m.*

¹ But compare :—

“The thought that thou art safe, and he.”—COWPER.

“For thine is the kingdom, the power, and the glory.”

Gauls, the, Gall-i, -orum.

great. Voc. 2.

health, I am in good, val-eo, ēre, -ui.

home, domum (acc.). (See 9, b.)

honour (distinction), hon-os, -ōris, m.

kindness, benefici-um, -i, n.

kill, I, inter-ficio, ēre, -feci.

matter, a, res, rei, f.

next day, the, postridie.

number (proportion or part), par-s, -tis, f.

return, I, redeo, redire, redii.

reward, praemi-um, -i, n.

safe (unharmēd), incolum-is, -e.

senate, senat-us, -ūs, m.

settle, I, constit-uo, ēre, -ui (trans.).

spare, I. Voc. 1.

summer, aest-as, ātis, f.

sword, gladi-us, -i, m.

third, terti-us, -a, -um.

time, at that, either tum (Voc. 2),

or use subst. tempest-as, -ātis, f.,

with is, ea, id.

toil, lab-or, -ōris, m.

wage, I, gero, ēre, gessi, gestum.

war. Voc. 3.

well, bēne (adv.).

Exercise 4.

1. If the army and you are in good health, it is well.
2. Both you and I have waged many wars for our country.
3. The Gauls were conquered by Caesar before the end of the summer.
4. The flock returned home safe the next day.
5. Neither you nor your brother have ever done this.
6. A great number of my countrymen were at that time in exile.
7. Both you and I have been made consuls by the votes and by the kindness of the Roman people.
8. I have spared my countrymen, you the Gauls.
9. Having settled¹ these matters, he returned home on the third day.
10. Clitus was killed by Alexander with a sword.
11. The Roman people and senate decreed many honours to you and to your father.
12. Neither you nor I had looked for this reward of all our toil.

¹ Abl. abs. (See 14, b.)

EXERCISE V.

ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

31. The infinitive takes before it (as its *subject*) not the nominative but the *accusative*.

Frater cecidit. His brother fell; but—

Narrat fratrem cecidisse. He reports *that* his brother fell.

The accusative with the infinitive is especially used, where in English we use a clause beginning with “that,” after (a) verbs of *feeling, knowing, thinking, believing, saying* (**verba sentiendi et declarandi**); and (b) such expressions as *it is certain, manifest, true, etc.*

In turning such sentences into Latin, *that* must be omitted; the English *nominative* turned into the *accusative*; and the English verb into the *infinitive mood*.¹

(a.) *Sentimus calere ignem.* We perceive-by-our-senses *that* fire is hot.

Hostes adesse dixit. He said *that* the enemy was near.

Fratrem tuum fortem esse intellego. I perceive *that* your brother is a brave man.

Rem ita se habere video. I see *that* the fact is so.

Respondit se esse iturum. He answered *that* he would go.

¹ We are not quite without this idiom in English.

“I saw *him to be a knave*” (= “I saw *that* he was a knave”).

Such a sentence as “*narravit fratrem suum in praelio cecidisse,*” may be sometimes translated literally, “he declared (or reported) his brother *to have fallen* in the battle.” At the same time this constant employment of the infinitive, in place of such conjunctions as the English *that*, the French *que*, the German *dass*, and even the very common Greek *ὅς* or *ὅτι*, is one of the most characteristic idioms of the Latin language. (See Intr. 59, *h.*)

(b.) *Manifestum est nivem esse albam.* It is plain *that* snow is white.

Constat Romam non sine labore conditam fuisse. It is agreed *that* Rome was not built without toil.

The statement made by the verb in the infinitive mood is called *indirect* predication, or *oratio obliqua*; because the statement is not made directly (*oratio recta*), but indirectly, *i.e.* through a verb that is itself dependent on another verb or phrase.

32. Cautions.—(a.) Beware of ever using *quod* or *ut* to represent *that* after any verb or phrase *sentiendi vel declarandi*.

Never say "*Scio quod erras*," "I know that you are wrong;" but always, "*te errare scio*."

(b.) In English we often express a statement or an opinion as though it were a fact, but with such words as "*he said*," "*he thought*," etc., inserted in a parenthesis.

You were, *he said*, mistaken. You were absent, *he thought*, from Rome. He is, *it is plain*, quite mad.

In Latin this construction must not be used; such expressions as "*he said*," "*he thought*," "*it is plain*," must form the principal verb or clause with the infinitive dependent on it.

We must write—not "*tu, dixit, errasti*," but "*te errare dixit*;" not "*Roma, credidit, aberas*," but "*Roma te abesse credidit*."

For the use of *inquit* with *oratio recta* see 40.

33. The English verb *say* when joined to a negative is translated into Latin by the verb of denial, *nego*.

He *says* that he is *not* ready. *Se paratum esse negat.*

He *said* he would *never* do this. *Se hoc unquam esse facturum negavit.*

He *says* he has done *nothing*. *Negat se quidquam fecisse.*

34. The *pronoun*, so often omitted in *oratio recta* (*currit*, (*he*) runs), must always be inserted in *oratio obliqua*: *se currere ait*.

(b.) *Manifestum est nivem esse albam.* It is plain that snow is white.

Constat Romam non sine labore captam fuisse. It is agreed that Rome was not taken without toil.

The statement made by the verb in the infinitive mood is called *indirect predication*, or *oratio obliqua*; because the statement is not made directly (*oratio recta*), but indirectly, i.e. through a verb that is itself dependent on another verb or phrase.

32. Cautions.—(a.) Beware of ever using *quod* or *ut* to represent that after any verb or phrase *sententiæ vel declarandi*.

Never say "*Scio quod erras*," "I know that you are wrong;" but always, "*te errare scio*."

(b.) In English we often express a statement or an opinion as though it were a fact, but with such words as "*he said*," "*he thought*," etc., inserted in a parenthesis.

You were, *he said*, mistaken. You were absent, *he thought*, from Rome. He is, *it is plain*, quite mad.

In Latin this construction must not be used; such expressions as "*he said*," "*he thought*," "*it is plain*," must form the principal verb or clause with the infinitive dependent on it.

We must write—not "*tu, dixit, errasti*," but "*te errare dixit*;" not "*Roma, credidit, aberas*," but "*Roma te abesse credidit*."

For the use of *inquît* with *oratio recta* see 40.

33. The English verb *say* when joined to a negative is translated into Latin by the verb of denial, *nego*.

He says that he is
He ~~says~~ he would

Se paratum
is. *Se hoc* fac-

Negat *s* e.

mitted *s* *errit*,
serted *s* *ia: se*

He, she, they must be translated by the reflexive pronoun *se* (11, e), whenever one of these pronouns stands for the same person as the *subject* of the verb of saying or thinking.

Hoc se fecisse negat. He says that *he* (himself) did not do this.

Eum or *illum* would be used if the second *he* denoted a different person from the first *he*. Latin is therefore much less ambiguous than English, as it carefully distinguishes the different persons denoted by *he*, etc.

Tenses of the Infinitive.

35. In translating the verb in an English *that*-clause dependent on a past tense, we must attend carefully to the following rule:—

An English *past* tense in a *that*-clause will be translated by the *present* infinitive, if the time denoted by the two verbs is the same.

*Se in Asia esse*¹ *dixit.* He said that he *was* in Asia. (When?—at the time of his speaking.)

The perfect infinitive is only used if the verb in the *that*-clause denotes a time *prior* to that of the verb *sentienti vel declarandi*.

Se in Asia fuisse dixit. He said that he *had been*, or *was*, in Asia. (When?—at some time earlier than that at which he was speaking.)

36. The future infinitive is supplied by the participle in *-rus* with *esse, fore, fuisse*, and is used thus:—

Both, He says that he	} <i>Se iturum esse or fore</i> {	<i>dicit.</i> <i>dixit.</i>
<i>will go;</i>		
And also, He said that		
he <i>would go.</i>		
He says or said that he <i>would have gone.</i> <i>Se iturum fuisse</i> <i>dicit or dixit.</i>		

¹ Thus the present infinitive represents both the present and imperfect of the indicative,—the imperfect being the tense which denotes a past event, not merely as past, but as *contemporaneous with something else in the past.* (See below, 177, b.)

Vocabulary 5.

against, contra (acc.).
 answer, I, respon-deo, dēre, -di, -sum.
 attack, I, oppugno, āre. (24.)
 believe, I, cred-o, ēre, -idi, -itum.
 break, I (met.), violō, āre.
 camp, castr-a, -orum.
 follow, I, sequor, i, secutus sum.
 general, dux, dūcis.
 gladly, libenter.
 hope for, I, sper-o, āre.
 interview, I have an interview with, con-venio, ire, -vēni (trans.). (24.)
 law, lex, lēgis, f.
 line (of battle), aci-es, -ei, f.
 man, vir, viri.
 now. See Voc. 1.
 one and all, omnes (placed last). (Intr. 92, 97.)
 perceive, I, intel-lēgo, ēre, -lexi, -lectum. (19.)

place, loc-us, -i, m.
 plain (adj.), manifestus.
 please, I, plac-eo, ēre, -ui, -itum (dat.). (5.)
 Pompey, Pompe-ius, -i.
 preceding, proximus.
 remember, I, memin-i, isse, (imperat.) memento.
 reply, I. See answer.
 repose, oti-um, -i, n.
 ride past, I, praeter-vehor, i, -vectus (trans.). (24.)
 say, I. Voc. 2.
 sigh for (I crave for), desidero, āre (trans.). (See 22.)
 sin, I, pecco, āre.
 soon, mox, brēvi.
 take up, I, sūm-o, ere, -psi, -ptum.
 to, ad, in (acc.).
 train, I, exerc-eo, ēre, -ui, -itum.
 year, ann-us, -i, m.

Exercise 5.

1. He had waged, he answered, many wars, and was now sighing for peace and repose. 2. He says that he has not sinned. 3. Both you and your brother, he replied, were in good health. 4. He perceived that the enemy¹ would soon attack the city. 5. He says that Caesar will not break the laws. 6. It is plain that the place pleases you. 7. It was plain that the place pleased you. 8. It was plain that the place had pleased you. 9. Pompey believed that his countrymen would, one and all, follow him. 10. The soldiers said that they had not taken up arms against their country and the laws. 11. Brave men, remember, are trained by toils. 12. The soldiers answered that they would have gladly attacked the town in the preceding year, but that now they hoped for repose. 13. Having returned to the camp, he said that he had ridden past the enemies' line, and had an interview with their² general.

¹ Sing. (See p. 37, note ².)

² Gen. pl. of *is*: why would *suus* be wrong? (See 11, *d* and *e*.)

EXERCISE VI.

ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE—Continued.

SOME of the *verba sentiendi et declarandi* have **special constructions**.

37. Thus, after the verbs *sperare* (to hope), *promittere* or *pollicēri* (to promise), *recipere* (to engage or undertake), *minari* (to threaten), *jurare* (to swear), and similar verbs referring to the future, the future infinitive is used in Latin with the accusative of the pronoun.

Obs.—In English we generally treat these verbs as *modal* verbs (see Intr. 48) and join them with the *present* infinitive; in Latin, and sometimes in English, they are used as verbs of thinking or saying something future.

In English we say "he hopes *to* live," and also "he hopes *that* he *will* live;" in Latin the latter is the regular construction.

*Sperat plerumque adolescens diu se victurum (esse).*¹ A young man generally hopes *to live* a long time.

Hoc se facturum esse minatus est. He threatened *to do* this.

N.B.—The verb *posse* is often used in the present infinitive after *spero*.

Hoc se facere posse sperat. He hopes *to be able to do* this.

38. With active verbs that have no future in *-rus*, and generally with passive verbs, and even as a substitute for the ordinary construction, *fore ut* with a subjunctive is used.

Spero fore ut deleatur Carthago. I hope that Carthage will be annihilated.

Speravit fore ut id sibi contingeret. He hoped that this would fall to his lot.

¹ With these *compound* infinitives *esse* is often omitted.

Obs.—The *tense* of the verb after *fore ut* depends upon that of the verb of hoping, etc.; after the present, perfect with *have*, and future, the present subjunctive is used; after a past tense, the imperfect.

39. After *simulare*¹ (to pretend), the *accusative* of the pronoun must be expressed in Latin.

Se furere simulat. He pretends to be mad.

40. The great exception to the construction of *verba declarandi* is *inquam, inquit*,—"say I," "says he."

Inquit always quotes the *exact words used*, and never stands first.

Domum, inquit, redibo. "I will," says he, "return home."
Domum se rediturum esse dicit or ait. He will, he says, return home.

Inquit therefore is always used with *oratio recta*; all other words of *saying* with *oratio obliqua*.

41. The accusative with the infinitive is also used after—

(a.) Certain verbs of *commanding* and *wishing*, especially *jubeo, volo, cupio, prohibeo*.

(b.) Verbs expressing *joy, sorrow, indignation, wonder*, etc.

Milites abire jussit. He ordered the soldiers to go away.
Te incolumem rediisse gaudeo. I rejoice that you have returned in safety.

Vocabulary 6.

assert, I (maintain), vindico, are.
business, the, res, rei, f.
country (16), ager, agri, m.
crown. Voc. 2, and see 17.
cruel, crudel-is, -e.
earlier than (= before), ante (acc.).
fifth, quint-us, -a, -um.
find, I, in-venio, ire, -vëni, -ven-tum.

finish, I, con-ficio, ere, -feci, -fec-tum.
foe = enemy. Voc. 1.
force, vis, f. (abl. vi).
freedom, libert-as, -atis, f.
greatly, vehementer.
highest, summus.
home, at, domi.
husband, vir, viri.

¹ *Simulo* is used of a person who pretends that something exists which does not. *Dissimulo* of some one who tries to conceal something which does exist.

Quae non sunt simulo; quae sunt, ea dissimulantur.

land. (See *country*.)

last, at. Voc. 2.

London, Londin-um, -i. (9, b.)

long. (See *so*.)

mad, I am quite, fūro,¹ ēre.

mind, I am out of my, insan-io, ire,
-ivi, or -ii. (25.)

nation, popul-us, -i, m.; or civ-es,
-ium. (19, and p. 41, note².)

now. Voc. 1.

obtain. Voc. 3. (19.)

oppress, I, vexo, are. (19.)

presently = *soon*.

pretend, I, simulo, āre.

promise, I, polli-ceor,³ ēri, -citus;

pro-mitto, ēre, -misi, -misum.

rejoice, I, gaudeo, ēre, gavisus sum.

satisfactory, use adverbial phrase
ex sententia, "in accordance with
one's views."

see, I, video, ēre, vidi, visum.

shortly, brevi.

sister, sor-or, -oris.

so long, tamdiu.

Solon, Sol-on, -ōnis.

soon. Voc. 5.

swear, I, juro, āre.

sword, by the (met.). Voc. 2.

threaten, I, minor, ari.

voyage, I have a, navigo, āre. (25.)

win, I = I obtain. Voc. 3.

yet, not, nondum.

Exercise 6.

1. Solon pretended to be out of his mind. 2. I will pretend, says he, to be out of my mind. 3. He promised to come to London shortly. 4. I hope that you will have a satisfactory voyage. 5. He hopes to obtain the crown presently. 6. He was pretending to be quite mad. 7. Caesar threatened to lay waste our country with fire and sword. 8. He replied that he had had a satisfactory voyage. 9. He swore to finish the business by force. 10. He says that he will not return home earlier than the fifth day. 11. He replied that he had not yet seen his sister, but (that he) hoped to find both her and her husband at home. 12. The army hoped that the land of the enemy would now be laid waste with fire and sword. 13. He hopes soon to attain to the highest honours, but³ I believe that he will never win them. 14. I rejoice greatly that your nation, (which has been) so long oppressed by a cruel foe, has at last asserted its freedom by the sword. 15. I have not, says she, yet seen my sister, but I hope to find both her and her⁴ husband at home.

¹ *Furo* is a stronger term than *insanio*: *furor* often means "frenzy," but it never means "fury" in the sense of mere "anger."

² *Promitto*, "I give forth," general word for "I give assurance for the future;" *polliceor*, "I give something that lies in my own power."

³ See 13.

⁴ *Ejus*. Why not *suum*?

EXERCISE VII.

NOMINATIVE WITH INFINITIVE, MODAL VERBS, PASSIVE VERBS OF SAYING, Etc.

42. (i.) A large number of verbs are used in Latin in close combination with an infinitive mood without any intervening accusative. They are, in fact, a kind of *auxiliary* verb, as they cannot, as a rule, stand by themselves, or make full sense without the infinitive with which they are joined; they are called modal because they give, as it were, a fresh mood (*modus*) to the other verb. (See Intr. 48.)

Compare the English "I can *do*," "must *do*," "ought to *do*," "wish to *do*," etc., where *do* and *to do* are both in the infinitive mood.

Such are verbs of

- | | |
|---|--|
| (a.) Possibility or the reverse. | <i>Possum, nequeo, etc.</i> |
| (b.) Beginning ¹ or ceasing. | <i>Coepi, incipio, desino, desisto, etc.</i> |
| (c.) Habit, continuance, hastening. | <i>Soleo, assuesco, pergo, festino, etc.</i> |
| (d.) Many verbs of wish, ² purpose, aim, endeavour, etc. | <i>Volo, nolo, malo, cupio, ardeor, statuo, etc.</i> |
| (e.) Duty. | <i>Debeo.</i> |

(ii.) When a finite verb of this kind is combined with the infinitive, the *nominative*, not the accusative, is used in the predicate.

Civis Romanus fieri, vocari, cupio.

I am anxious to become, or to be called, a citizen of Rome.

Soleo, or incipio, or festino, otiosus esse.

I am accustomed, or I am beginning, or I am making haste, to be at leisure.

Mori malo quam servus esse.

I had rather die than be a slave.

¹ This is sometimes expressed by the termination *-sco* of the verb: *senesco*, I begin to grow old. Such verbs are called *inchoative*.

² Sometimes expressed by the termination *-urio*: *edo*, I eat; *esurio*, I am hungry.

43. With passive verbs *sentiendi et declarandi*, such as *videor*, "I seem," *dicor*, "I am said," and similar verbs, the impersonal construction, "it seems," "it is said," is not used in Latin.

We must not say for "*It is said, or it seems, that Cicero was consul that year,*" "*Videtur, dicitur, Ciceronem eo anno consulem fuisse,*" but "*Videtur, dicitur Cicero eo anno consul fuisse.*"

44. But a very common use is *ferunt, dicunt, tradunt*, they or men say, etc., followed by the accusative and infinitive. So that for "There is a tradition that Homer was blind," we may either say "*Traditur Homerus caecus fuisse,*" or "*Tradunt Homerum caecum fuisse,*" but not "*Traditur Homerum caecum fuisse.*"

45. Verbs of *purposing, resolving*, and many others, are used with the infinitive and the nominative case, only when *the subject of both verbs is the same.*

Constituit Caesar consul fieri.

Caesar determined to become consul.

But

Constituit Caesar ut Antonius consul fieret.

Caesar determined that Antony should be made consul.

(See 118.)

46.

EXCEPTIONS.

(a.) The past tense of such longer phrases as *mihi nuntiatum est, memoriae proditum est*, and others, is used impersonally, and is followed by the accusative and infinitive.

Caesari nuntiatum est adesse Gallos.

News was brought to Caesar that the Gauls were at hand.

(b.) *Videtur* can be used impersonally, but means, not "it seems," but "it seems good."

Hoc mihi facere visum est.

It seemed good to me (I resolved) to do this.

(c.) The impersonal verbs, *apparet* (not "it seems," but "it is clear") and *constat*, "it is agreed," are very common, and are followed by the accusative and infinitive.

(d.) The accusative is sometimes introduced after *volo*, even when the subject of both verbs is the same. We may say either *Consul esse vult*, "He wishes to be consul," or *Se consulem esse vult*, "It is his wish that he himself should be consul."

Vocabulary 7.

accept, *I*, ac-cipio, ěre, -cepi, -cep-tum.

ambassador, legat-us, -i.

ask for, *I*, posco, ěre, poposci.

become, *I*, fio, ěri, factus.

begin, *I*, Voc. 1.

blame, culpa, f.

break, *I*, (See word.)

candidate for, *I am a*, pet-o, ěre, -ivi, or -ii, -itum (*trans.*). (23.)

cease, *I*, de-sino, ěre, de-sivi, or -sii.

chief (man), Voc. 1.

clear, it is, appār-et, ěre, -uit. (46, c.)

coward, timidus; ignavus.

crown, Voc. 2.

deceive, *I*, de-cipio, ěre, -cepi, -cep-tum.

despair, *I*, despero, āre.

destined, fatāl-is, -e.

die, *I*, morior, i, mortuus¹ sum, moriturus.

either . . . or, vel . . . vel; aut . . . aut. (See Intr.)

free (adj.), lib-er, -era, -um.

free from, *I*, libero, āre.

hand, *I am at*, ad-sum, esse, -fui.

jury (judges), jud-ex, -icis (*in plur.*).

keep, *I (promises)*, sto, stare, steti, lit. "I stand, on my promises" (*abl.*).

live, *I*, vi-vo, ěre, -xi, -ctum.

member of the state, civis.

nation, Voc. 6.

offer, *I*, de-fero, ferre, -tuli, -latum; office. (See 18, and Voc. 2.)

once, at, statim.

patriot, true patriot, bonus civis; lit. "a good member of the state."

prefer, *I*, (See rather.)

private (person), privat-us, -i.

promise (thing promised), promis-sum (*neut. participle*), -si, n.

Pyrrhus, Pyrrh-us, -i.

rather, *I had*, or *would*, mālō, malle, malui.

refuse, *I*, (See unwilling.)

resolve, *I*, de-cerno, ěre, -crēvi, -cretum.

rich, div-es, -itis; *comp.* divitior (*ditior*), *superl.* divitissimus (*ditissimus*).

seem, *I*, videor, eri, visus.

slave, serv-us, -i.

surrender, *I*, (Voc. 3, and 21, b.) than, quam.

townsman, oppidan-us, -i.

tradition, there is a, tra-do, ěre, -didi, -ditum. (44.)

troublesome, molestus.

unwilling, *I am*, nōlo, nolle, nolui.

venture, *I*, audeo, ěre, ausus sum.

verdict, sententia, f. (*plur.*.)

word, *I break my*, fidem fallo, ěre, fefelli.

world, in the (=of all men), omnium hominum. (See 16, b.)

Why not in mundo?

your (plur.), ves-ter, -tra, -trum.

¹ Mortuus est is "he is dead;" "he died" is (e) vita excessit.

² Plur., because each judex gave his own sententia, "opinion" or "vote."

Exercise 7.

1. I had rather keep my promises than be the richest man in the world. 2. I begin to be troublesome to you. 3. Cease then to be cowards and begin to become patriots. 4. He resolved to return at once to Rome, and become a good member of the state. 5. It seems that he was unwilling to become king, and preferred to be a private person. 6. It is said that by the verdict of the jury you had been freed from all blame. 7. Having¹ resolved to be a candidate for office, I ventured to return home and ask for your votes. 8. We would rather die free than live (as) slaves. 9. There is a tradition that he refused to accept the crown (when) offered by the nation and (its) chief men. 10. It was clear² that the destined day was now at hand; but the townsmen were unwilling either to despair or to surrender. 11. He said that he had neither broken his word nor deceived the nation. 12. The senate³ and people resolved that ambassadors should be sent to Pyrrhus.

¹ See 14, *a*.

² Imperfect tense.

³ See 30, *Obs*.

EXERCISE VIII.

ADJECTIVES.

Agreement of Adjectives.

47. When a single adjective or participle is used as predicate of several singular substantives, much variety of construction is allowed.

(a.) If several *persons* are spoken of, the adjective is generally in the *plural*, and the masculine gender takes precedence over the feminine.

Et pater mihi et mater mortui sunt. Both my father and mother are dead.

(b.) But the predicate may also agree both in *gender* and *number* with the substantive nearest to itself. Thus a brother might say for "Both my sister and I had been summoned to the praetor," either "*Et ego et soror mea ad praetorem vocati eramus,*" or "*Vocatus eram ad praetorem ego et soror mea,*" or even "*Et ego et soror mea ad praetorem vocata erat.*"

The usage therefore greatly resembles that of verbs with more than one subject (26, 27).

48. (a.) If the substantives are not persons but *things*, the adjective or participle is usually in the plural, and agrees in gender with both substantives if they are of the same gender.

Fides tua et pietas laudandae sunt. Your good faith and dutifulness are to be praised.

But *laudanda est* would be also allowable. (See *e.*)

(b.) If they are of different genders the adjective is generally in the *neuter*.

Gloria, divitiae, honores incerta ac caduca sunt. Glory, riches, and distinctions are uncertain and perishable (things).

(c.) Where the substantives are **abstract nouns** (Intr. 29, *d*), the neuter is common in the predicate, even if they are of the same gender.

Fides et pietas laudanda sunt. Good faith and a sense of duty are to be praised.

For the neuter *laudanda* means *things* to be praised (as *incerta ac caduca* in *b*); the terminations of the Latin adjective, *us, a, um, i, ae, a*, etc., express the singular and plural of *man, woman, thing*, exactly as the personal terminations of the verb express the personal pronouns. (See Intr. 31.)

(d.) Hence *Mors est omnium extremum*, "Death is the last of all things," is as good Latin as *Mors . . . extrema*.

(e.) Sometimes, but more rarely, the predicate agrees in gender and number with the substantive nearest itself.

Spernendae igitur sunt divitiae et honores. Riches then, and distinctions, are to be despised.

Mihi principatus atque imperium delatum est. The sovereignty and chief power were offered to me.

49. Where a single adjective is used as the *attribute* of two or more substantives of different genders, it usually agrees with the one nearest itself. Either "*Terras omnes et maria perlustravit*," or "*Terras et maria omnia perlustravit*," He travelled over all lands and seas.

It is sometimes repeated with each: *terras omnes, maria omnia*, etc.

These rules will cause very little real difficulty, as the freedom which they allow is great. The Exercise will be mainly on what follows.

Adjectives used as Substantives.

50. When the substantive is "*man*," "*woman*," or "*thing*," it is often not expressed in Latin by a separate word, for the reason given above, 48, c.

*Boni*¹ *sapientesque* (ex)² *civitate pelluntur*. The good and wise are being banished (literally, driven from the state).

Jam nostri aderant. Our men, or soldiers, were now at hand.

Hae ita locutae sunt. These women spoke thus.

Omnia mea mecum porto. I am carrying all my property with me.

51. Hence many adjectives, pronominal adjectives, and participles, both singular and plural, masculine and neuter, are used precisely as substantives, and may even have other adjectives attached, or *attributed* to them.

(a.) Masculine—

(Singular) *adolescens*,³ *juvenis* (young man), *amicus*, *inimicus*; *aequalis* (a contemporary, one of the same age), *candidatus*, *socius*.

(Plural) *nobiles*,⁴ *optimates* (the aristocracy), *maiores*⁵ (ancestors), *posterī* (posterity), *divites* (the rich), and many others.

¹ *Boni* thus used means generally, "the well-affected," "the patriotic party;" opposed to *improbi*, "the disaffected."

² The ablative may be used here without the Preposition. See Voc. 8 (*banish*).

³ *Adolescens* denotes a younger age than *juvenis*—it embraces the period from boyhood to the prime of life; *juvenis* is used of all men fit to bear arms.

⁴ *Nobiles*, "nobles," i.e. men whose ancestors had borne a curule office; opposed to *novi homines*, "self-made men." *Nobilis* never means "noble" in a moral sense. *Optimates*, the aristocracy, as opposed to the popular party, or *populares*.

⁵ *Patres*, *avi*, are never used in prose for "forefathers," but denote "men of the last generation" and "of the last but one." (See p. 41, note ².) *Minores*, *nepotes*, etc., are used for "posterity" only in poetry.

(b.) Neuter—

factum, a deed; *dictum*, a saying; *bona*, property; *decretum*, a decree; *promissa*, promises; *edictum*, a proclamation; *senatus-consultum*, a vote or resolution of the senate, etc.

(c.) Also the neuter adjectives *honestum*, *utile*, *commodum*, *verum*, are used in the singular, and still more in the plural, for the English abstract words, "duty," "expediency," "advantage," "truth;" so also

Summum bonum, the highest good or happiness.

But the abstract nouns *honestas*, *utilitas*, are oftener used, and always in oblique cases, and with adjectives.

52. Ambiguous expressions are rarely used in Latin; hence "thing" is generally expressed by *res* (fem.), when the adjective alone would leave it doubtful whether men or things were meant.

Thus "of many things," *multarum rerum*; very seldom, and only when no mistake can occur, *multorum*, which might mean, "of many men;" so—

Futura, the future; but *rerum futurarum*, of the future: *boni*, the good, or well-affected; but *bonorum hominum*, of the well-affected.

53. The neuter plural of Latin adjectives is constantly used in the nominative and accusative cases where we use the singular of an adjective or substantive.

<i>Much</i> , multa.	<i>Very little</i> , perpauca.
<i>Very much</i> , permulta.	<i>Everything</i> , omnia.
<i>Little</i> (few things), pauca.	<i>All this</i> , haec omnia.

So *Vera et falsa*. Truth and falsehood.

Vera dicebat. He was speaking the truth.

54. The neuter adjective is used in Latin without a substantive, where we might substitute "things," but really use some more appropriate nouns, as property, objects, possessions, performances, thoughts, reflections, etc.

The learner must look to the *Latin Verb* to guide him to the proper English noun to insert in his translation or

to omit in his composition. The Latin adjective in the neuter plural will generally be translated by a substantive kindred in meaning to the verb.

<i>Magna sperabat.</i>	His <i>hopes</i> were high.
<i>Multa cogitabat.</i>	He was revolving many <i>thoughts</i> .
<i>Haec sequebatur.</i>	He was pursuing these <i>objects</i> .
<i>Illa ausus est.</i>	He ventured on those <i>enterprises</i> .
<i>Multa mentitus est.</i>	He told many <i>falsehoods</i> .

The singular neuter of the pronoun is used in the same way.

<i>Hoc secutus est.</i>	This was his <i>object</i> .
<i>Quid mentitus est?</i>	What <i>falsehood</i> has he told?

These are some of the many instances in which the English substantive cannot be translated literally into Latin.

55. It follows from 51 that we can say *adolescens optimus*, an excellent *young man*; *praeclara facta*, noble *deeds*; even *inimicissimi tui*, your deadliest enemies; the participle or adjective (even a superlative adjective) being treated as a real substantive.

But many of these words retain a double nature, and are treated sometimes as substantives, sometimes as adjectives or participles.

We can say either "*Ciceronis est amicus*," or "*Ciceroni est amicus*," either "*Multa fuere ejus et praeclara facta*," or "*Multa ab eo praeclare facta sunt*," for "there were many noble deeds of his;" *i.e.* we may treat *facta* as either a substantive or a participle, in which latter case it will be joined with an adverb.

This latter construction is the commoner with participles such as *facta*, *dicta*, *responsa*, etc.

Other uses of Adjectives.

56. In English we join the adjective *many* with another adjective, "many excellent men." In Latin we should insert a conjunction, "*homines multi optimique, multi atque optimi homines*," or ". . . *multi, iique optimi*."

Of course we can say "*adolescentes multi*," or "*amici multi*," because these words are used as substantives.

So, too, if the second adjective is so constantly united with its substantive as to form a single expression.

Multae naves longae. Many ships of war.

57. (a.) The superlative degree of adjectives and adverbs is often used in Latin to mark merely a high degree of a quality.

Optimus, excellent ; *praeclarissimus*, famous or noble.

Sometimes, not always, it should be translated by an English intensive adverb or phrase.

Hoc molestissimum est. This is exceedingly, or very, or most, troublesome.

Hoc saepissime dixi. I have said this repeatedly, or again and again.

(b.) So also the comparative degree is often used, without any direct idea of comparison, to express a *considerable*, *excessive*, or *too great* amount. It may then be translated by "rather," "somewhat," "too," etc., or by a simple adjective in the positive degree.

Saeptus, somewhat often ; *asperius*, with excessive harshness ; *morbus gravior*, a serious illness.

Vocabulary 8.

abandon, *I, fall off from*, *de-scisco*,
ēre, -scīvi (*abl.*).

accomplish, *I, ef-ficio*, ēre, -feci,
etc.

across, *trans* (*acc.*).

alike (*adv.*), *juxta*, *pariter*.

allowed, it is, or agreed on, *constat*
(*impers.*).

appear (seem), *I, videor*, ēri, *visus*.
(43.)

aristocratic party. (51, a, n.⁴)

attempt, *I, conor*, *ari*.

banish, *civitate pello*, *expello* ; *in*
exilium pello, ēre, *pepuli*, *pulsum*,
or *exigo*, ēre, *exegi*, *exactum*.

broad, *lāt-us*, -a, -um.

change of purpose, *inconstantia*, *f.*

contrary, *contrarius*.

conversation, *I have . . .*, *col-*
loquor, *i*, *-locutus*. (54.)

country, *fin-es*, -ium, *m.* (16, a.)

courage, *virt-ūs*, -ūtis, *f.*

cowardice, *ignavia*, *f.*

deadly. (55.)

decree, *a*, *decretum*. (51, b.)

defile, *a*, *salt-us*, -ūs, *m.*

deny, *I, nego*, *are*.

dictator, *dictat-or*, -oris.

drive on shore, *I, e-jicio*, ēre, -jeci,
-jectum.

drive from, *I, ex-igo*, ēre, -egi,
-actum.

duty, *honest-um*, -i. (51, c.)

each other, *to*, *inter se*.

enemy, *hostis*, *inimicus*.¹

enterprise. (54.)

¹ *Hostis*, an enemy in war, properly "a foreigner;" *inimicus*, a personal enemy.

everything. (53.)
 excellent, optimus. (57.)
 faithful, fidel-is, -e.
 forefathers = ancestors. (51 a, n.³)
 foretell, I, praedi-co, ěre, -xi, -ctum.
 future. (52.)
 glorious, praeclarus.
 grandfather, av-us, -i.
 himself, ipse, a, um.
 hopes, I form = I hope. (Voc. 5, and see 54.)
 ignorant of, I am, ignoro, ěre (acc.). (22.)
 interest (subst.), utilit-as, -atis, f. (51, c.)
 join you, I, me tibi, or ad te ad-ju-ngo, ěre, -nxi, -nctum.
 know, I, sc-io, scire, -ivi, -itum.
 last (of time), proximus.
 lead, I, transdu-co, ěre, -xi, -ctum.
 list of, I write a, perscri-bo, ěre, -psi (trans.).
 little. (53.)
 lofty, praealtus.
 marsh, pal-ūs, -ūdis, f.
 meditate on, I, cōgito, ěre, de (abl.).
 merchant vessel, navis oneraria.
 mistaken, I am, erro, ěre.
 much. (53.)
 name, good, fama, f.
 native land. (16, a.)
 noble, praeclarus. (51, n.⁴)
 no one, nemo, nullus.¹
 object. (54.)
 oppress, I. Voc. 6.
 past, the, praeterita, n., plur. (52.)
 pathless, invius.
 persecute, I, insector, ari (dep.).
 poor, paup-er, -ěris.

popular party, popular-es, -ium.
 posterity. (51, a.)
 praised, to be, laudand-us, -a, -um. (48, c.)
 praiseworthy, laudabil-is, -e.
 proclamation, edictum. (51, b.)
 promises, I make, polliceor, ěri. (54.)
 property. (51, b.)
 pursue, I, sequor, i, secutus (dep.).
 rashness, temerit-as, -atis, f.
 resolve, I, statu-o, ěre, -i.
 rich, the. (51, a, and Voc. 7.)
 river, flum-en, -inis, n.
 saying, a, dictum. (55.)
 scarcely, vix.
 shatter, I, quasso, ěre.
 sink, I (trans.), demer-go, ěre, -si, -sum.
 sometimes. Voc. 1.
 spare, I. Voc. 1.
 speak, I. Voc. 1.
 storm, tempest-as, -atis, f.
 strikingly, graviter. (55.)
 think, I (reflect), cogito, ěre.
 threats, I make = I threaten. Voc. 6.
 throne (metaph.). (17.)
 traditions, I hand down, trad-o, ěre, -idi, -itum.
 transact, ago, ěre, ěgi, actum.
 unhealthy, pestilen-s, -tia.
 unjust, iniquus.
 variance with, I am at, pugno, ěre, cum (abl.).
 venture on (enterprises), I, audeo. (54.)
 violent (storm), maximus.
 vote of the senate, senatus consul-tum. (51, b.)
 well-affected. (50, n.¹)
 winter, hi-ems, -ěmis, f.
 youth, a, adolescens. (51, a, n.²)

Exercise 8.

A.

1. He said that he would never² banish the good and wise. 2. We are all ignorant of much. 3. He said that courage and cowardice were contrary to each other. 4. It

¹ Nemo (subst. = ne homo) is used in the nom. and acc. (neminem). In other cases the adj. (nullius, nulli, nullo, -ā, -o) should be substituted.

² See 33.

appears that he was banished with you, not by the Dictator himself, but by a praiseworthy vote of the senate. 5. He resolved to abandon the aristocratic and to join the popular party. 6. He said that rashness and change of purpose were not to be praised. 7. He was an excellent youth, and a most faithful friend to me; he had much conversation with me that day about the future. 8. Having returned to Rome he promised to transact everything¹ for his father. 9. The army was led by Hannibal through many pathless defiles, and across many broad rivers, and many lofty mountains and unhealthy² marshes, into the country of the enemy. 10. You will scarcely venture to deny that duty was sometimes at variance with interest. 11. I know that your forefathers ventured on many glorious enterprises. 12. He makes many promises, many threats, but I believe that he will accomplish very little.

B.

13. You, said he, were meditating on the past; I was attempting to foretell the future; I now perceive that both you and I were mistaken. 14. He tells (us) that he has been driven by these brothers, his deadly enemies, from his throne and native land; that they are persecuting with unjust³ proclamations and decrees all the well-affected, all the wise; that no one's property or good name is⁴ spared; that rich and poor are alike oppressed. 15. I hope to write a list of the many striking sayings of your grandfather. 16. These objects, said he, did our forefathers pursue; these hopes did they form; these traditions have they handed down to posterity. 17. It is allowed that many noble deeds were done by him. 18. I rejoice that you spoke little and thought much. 19. It is said that many merchant vessels were shattered and sunk, or driven on shore, by many violent storms last winter.

¹ See 6.

² Superl. (See 57, a.)

³ Superl.

⁴ See 5.

EXERCISE IX.

ADJECTIVES—Continued.

Adverbs.

58. The adjective and the genitive case of substantives (see 214) are both used to **define the meaning of the substantive**. So in English, "the *king's* palace," "the *royal* army." Hence the Latin adjective is often used where in English we employ the preposition "of" with a noun. Thus—

Res alienae. The affairs of *others*.

Conditio servilis. The condition or state of *slavery*.

Vir fortis. A man of *courage*.

So often with proper names—

Pugna Cannensis (not *Cannarum*). The battle of *Cannae*.

Populus Romanus (never *Romae*). The people of *Rome*.

Obs. So "*vir fortissimus*," "a man of the greatest courage." In Latin this adjectival genitive of quality may be used only where an adjective is added to the substantive. We can say "*vir summae fortitudinis*," not "*vir fortitudinis*." (See 303.)

59. Sometimes we must use a Latin genitive where the adjective is wanting, or rarely used, in Latin.

Corporis, or animi, dolor. Bodily or mental *pain*.

Omnium iudicio or sententiis. By a *unanimous* verdict, or *unanimously*.

In hoc omnium luctu. In this *universal* mourning.

Mea unius sententiā. By my *single* vote.

Post hominum memoriam. Within *human* memory.

60. The Latin adjective is used in agreement with a substantive where we use a partitive substantive express-

ing *whole, end, middle, top*, etc., followed by the preposition "of." Thus—

Summus mons. The top of the mountain.

In mediam viam. Into the middle or centre of the road.

Reliquum opus. The rest of the work.

Ima vallis. The bottom of the valley.

Novissimum agmen. The rear of the line of march.

Tota Graecia. The whole of Greece.

Summa temeritas. The height of rashness.

Obs. These adjectives, especially where, as with *summus, medius*, etc., ambiguity might arise, generally stand before the substantive, not, as the attribute usually does, after it.

61. The adjective is often used in close connexion with a verb, where in English we should use either an *adverb* or an *adverbial phrase*, i.e. a preposition and noun.

Invitus haec dico. I say this *unwillingly*, or *with reluctance*, or *against my will*.

Tacitus haec cogitabam. I was meditating *silently*, or *in silence*, on these subjects.

Imprudens huc veni. I came here *unawares*.

Incolumis redii. I returned *safely*, or *in safety*.

Adversos, aversos, aggressus est. He attacked them *in front*, or *from behind*.

So—*Absens condemnatus est.* He was condemned *in his absence*.

Totus dissentio. I disagree *wholly*, or *entirely*.

Frequentes convenere. They came together *in crowds*.

Vivus. In his lifetime. *Mortuus.* After his death.

Diversi fugere. They fled *in opposite directions*.

62. So the adjectives *solus* (*unus*), *primus* (*prior* if of two), *ultimus*, are joined *adverbially* with the verb to express "only," "first," "last," where we should add a relative clause, or an infinitive mood, and make the adjective the main predicate.

Primus haec fecit. He was the *first* who did this, or to do this.

Solus mala nostra sensit. He was the *only* person who perceived our evils.

Ultimus venisse dicitur. It is said that he was the *last* to come.

63. Certain *substantives* also, especially those which relate to *time*, *age*, and *office*, are used with the verb, where in English we should use an adverbial phrase.

Hoc puer, or adolescens, or senex, didici. I learned this lesson (54) *in my boyhood, or youth, or old age.*

Hoc consul vovit. He made this vow *in his consulship, or as consul.*

So—*Victor.* When victorious; “in the hour of triumph.”

64. A single adverb in Latin will often represent a whole adverbial phrase in English; and on the other hand an English adverb will often require a Latin phrase, or whole clause, or combination of words. (Intr. 19 and 52.) Thus—

Pie. With a good conscience.

Divinitus. By a supernatural interposition.

Omnino. Speaking in general, as a general rule, etc.

So—*Easily. Nullo negotio.*

Indisputably. *Dubitari non potest quin . . .* (See 133.)

Fortunately. *Opportune accidit ut . . .* (See 123.)

Possibly. *Fieri potest ut . . .*

You are *obviously* mistaken. *Errare te manifestum est.*

You are *apparently* unwell. *Aegrotare vidēris.*

It must therefore never be taken for granted that an adverb in one language can be translated by the same part of speech in the other.

Vocabulary 9.

acquit, I, absol-vo, ěre, -vi, -utum.

attain to, I = I obtain (Voc. 3),

or = *arrive at* (Voc. 1).

*beautiful, pul-cher,¹ -chrior, -cher-
rimus.*

born (partic. of *I bear*), *natus*

(*nascor, I am born*).

boyhood, in his. (63.)

break (a law), I. Voc. 5.

brought up (partic. of *I bring up*),

educatus (*edūco*).

change, I, muto, ěre. (21.)

clothing, vestit-us, -ūs, m.

companions, his, sui, suos, etc.

conscience, with a good. (64.)

consent (subst.), consens-us, -ūs, m.

crowds, in. (61.)

death, after his. (61.)

¹ *Pulcher* is “beautiful” in a general sense; *amoenus*, “lovely to look on,” is applied to natural objects such as a landscape or scenery.

distinction, hon-or (-os), -ōris, *m.*
enterprise. (54.)
entrust, *I*, per-mitto, ēre, -misi, -missum,
eye, ocul-us, -i, *m.*
fair, amoenus. (See p. 71, n.¹)
faith, good, fid-es, -ei, *f.*
farmhouse, villa, *f.*
food, vict-us, -ūs, *m.*
fortune, fortuna, *f.*
funeral, fun-us, -ēris, *n.*
gather together, to (*intrans.*).
 Voc. 3.
highest. Voc. 6.
honour, *I* (of external marks of honour), orno, are.
kind of, every, omn-is, -e.
kindness, bonit-as, -atis, *f.*
last, the, ultimus.
late, too (*adv.*), sēro.
lifetime, in his. (61.)
listen to, *I*, aud-io, ire. (23.)
look down on, *I*, de-spicio (*trans.*), ēre, -spexi, -spectum. (23.)
management, procurati-o, -onis, *f.*
marble (*adj.*), marmoreus.
mind, *I am out of my*. Voc. 6.
miraculous interposition, by a. (64.)
monument, monumentum, *n.*
neglect, *I*, negle-go, ēre, -xi, -ctum.
next, the, proximus; insequen-s, -tis.
office. Voc. 2.

old age, in my. (63.)
other persons, of (*adj.*). (58.)
panic, pav-or, -oris, *m.*
plain, camp-us, -i, *m.*
poet, poet-a, -ae, *m.*
point out, *I*, monstro, ēre.
post up, *I*, fi-go, ēre, -xi, -xum.
reach, *I*, pervenio ad . . .
read through, *I*, per-lēgo, ēre, -lēgi, -lectum.
recover myself, *I*, me re-cipio, -cepi.
relinquish, *I*, o-mitto, ēre, -misi, -missum.
safety, in. (61.)
silence, in. (61.)
speech (to soldiers, or multitude), conti-o, -onis, *f.*
spread beneath, *I*, sub-jicio (*trans.*), ēre, -jeci, -jectum; subji-cior (*intrans.*). (20.)
state (*adj.*), publicus.
summit. (60.)
supply you with these things, *I*, haec tibi suppedito, ēre.
tomb, sepulcrum, *n.*
troublesome, molestus.
turn to, *I*. Voc. 3.
unanimously. (59.)
universal. (59.)
whole of. (60.)
wholly. (61.)
write, *I*, scri-bo, ēre, -psi, -ptum.
youth, in my. (63; also 51, n.¹)

Exercise 9.

1. He said that the management of other people's affairs was always exceedingly¹ troublesome. 2. In this universal panic your brother was the first to recover himself. 3. I obeyed, said he, the law² in my youth: I will not break it in my old age. 4. I was the first to venture on these enterprises; I will be the last to relinquish them. 5. In his lifetime we neglected this poet; after his death we honour him with a state funeral, a marble tomb with

¹ To be expressed by superlative adj. (See 57.)

² Plural. *Lex* (sing.) is seldom used in an abstract sense; it means a law.

many beautiful¹ monuments, and every kind of distinction. 6. The king having been (14, *a*) the first to reach the summit of the mountain, looked down in silence on the fair plains spread beneath his eye (*pl.*). 7. He turned² to his companions and pointed out the farmhouse in which he had been born and brought up in his boyhood; too late, said he, has fortune changed. 8. He promised to supply the army of Rome with food and clothing. 9. I read through the whole of this proclamation in silence; it seemed to me that he who wrote and posted *it up* (when) written was out of his mind. 10. He was unanimously acquitted, and returned home in safety; the next year he attained with universal consent to the highest office in the nation. 11. The soldiers, having gathered together in crowds, listened to his speech in silence. 12. I entrust myself wholly to your good faith and kindness. 13. No one can with a good conscience deny that your brother returned home in safety by a miraculous interposition.

¹ Superl. (57.)

² Participle. (See 15.)

EXERCISE X.

THE RELATIVE.

65. In a relative or adjectival *sentence*, each *clause*¹ has its own verb, and its own independent construction. The relative pronoun *qui* is of the same gender, number, and is joined with the same person of the verb, as its *antecedent* substantive, or pronoun, in the other clause. (See 12.)

*Arbōres seret diligens agricōla, quarum adspiciet baccam ipse nunquam.*² The careful husbandman will plant *trees*, any fruit *of which* he will himself never behold.

Mulierem aspicio quae pisces vendit. I see a *woman who* is selling fish.

Ubi est puer, cui librum dedisti? Where is the *boy to whom* you gave the book?

Adsum qui feci. *I, who* did the deed, am here.

For the meaning of the term *adjectival*, as applied to a clause, or to the sentence of which such a clause forms a part, see Intr. 81.

66. Where there is more than one antecedent, the rules for the number and gender of the relative are the same as those for the adjective.

Pater ejus et mater qui aderant. His father and mother *who* were present. (47, a.)

Divitiae et honores quae caduca sunt. Riches and distinctions, *which* are perishable (things). (48, b.)

67. Sometimes a *relative* refers not to a single word, but to the *whole statement* made by a clause. When this is the case, we often find *id quod*, for *quod* only. (Here *id* is in *apposition* to the former sentence.) Sometimes *quae res* is found : = "*a circumstance which.*"

Timoleon, id quod difficilior putatur, sapientius tulit secundam quam adversam fortunam. Timoleon, *though this* (lit. a thing

¹ For meaning of *clause*, see page 20, note.

² For place of *nunquam*, see Intr. 92.

which) is thought the more difficult (task), bore prosperity more wisely than adversity.

Multae civitates a Cyro defecerunt; quae res multorum bellorum causa fuit. Many states revolted from Cyrus; and *this* (see 13) (circumstance) was the cause of many wars.

Obs.—“*As*” is often used in English as equivalent to “*a thing which*,” or “*which*,” in reference to a whole clause.

“He, as you have heard, died at Rome.” *Ille, id quod audisti, Romae mortem obiit.*

68. A relative pronoun in the accusative case is frequently omitted in English, but never in Latin.

This is the man *I* saw. *Hic est quem vidi.*

He found the books *he* wanted. *Libros quos voluit reperit.*

69. When in English the antecedent is qualified by a superlative, the superlative is in Latin placed in the relative clause.

Volsi civitatem, quam habebant optimam, perdiderunt. The Volsci lost the *best* city they had.

The same place is given to any emphatic adjective, especially those of number or amount.

Equites, quos paucos secum habuit, dimisit. He sent away the *few* mounted men whom he had with him.

Use of *qui* with *is*.

70. The demonstrative pronoun which corresponds to *qui*, as *he* to *who*, is not *ille*, but *is*. *Ille* is only used when great emphasis is laid on the “*he*,” “*that well known*,” or that *other* person.” *Is* may be thus used of all three persons.

I am the man I always was. *Is sum qui semper fui.*

71. Where the antecedent and relative are in the same case, *qui* without *is* will express “*he who*,” where the cases are different, *is* is to be used.

Qui haec videbant flebant. Those who saw this (the spectators) wept.

Eis, qui adstant, irascebatur. He was angry with those who stood by (the bystanders).

72. *Is, ei (ii)*, etc., often answer to our "one," "men," "a man," when used to denote a class of persons.

Eum qui haec facit odi. I hate *one* who, or *a man* who, does this.

Eos qui haec faciunt odi. I hate *men* who do this.

Qui alone (71) will express the same phrases.

Qui haec faciunt, pejora facient. *Men* who are doing this will do worse.

73. The oblique cases, especially the genitive and dative, of the participle are often used to represent "him who," "those who."

Adstantium clamore perterritus. Alarmed by the shouts of the bystanders, or of those who stood by, or of those standing by.

Interrogantibus respondit. To those who questioned him, or to those questioning him, or to his interrogators.

74. But we must never combine *ei, eorum, eis*, etc., with the participle to denote a class. *Eorum adstantium, eos adstantes*, is very bad Latin for "those who stood by," or "those standing by."

75. Sometimes the force of the demonstrative in *is qui*, and similar combinations, *hic qui*, etc., is emphasised by placing the relative clause first, and the demonstrative pronoun, in the other or principal clause, afterwards.

Qui tum te defendit, is hodie accusat. He who (the very man who) then defended you is to-day accusing you. Your former advocate is your present accuser.

This construction is always to be used where a strong contrast is dwelt on.

76. Observe how often the substantive has to be expressed in Latin by a clause beginning with *qui, is qui, ea quae*, etc., i.e. by an *adjectival clause*. Thus—

Qui me ceperunt, my captors; qui me vicit, my conqueror; (ea) quae vera sunt, the truth.

(See 175.)

Is qui, with the subjunctive, will be treated further on.

Vocabulary 10.

<i>again and again, saepe (saepissime).</i> (57.)	<i>meet, I come to, obviam vënio, vëni</i> (dat.).
<i>agreement (with), I am in, consen-</i> <i>tio, ire, -si, -sum (cum, abl.).</i>	<i>occasion, on that, tum. (Intr. 19.)</i> <i>one. (72.)</i>
<i>assistance, I come to his, sub-vënio,</i> <i>-vëni (dat.).</i>	<i>oppose, I, adversor, âri (dat.).</i>
<i>concerning (prep.), de (abl.).</i>	<i>order, I, jubeo, êre, jussi, jussum.</i>
<i>despise, I, de-spicio,¹ êre, -spexi,</i> <i>-spectrum.</i>	<i>poverty, paupert-as, -âtis, f.</i>
<i>directions, in different. (61.)</i>	<i>present, I am, ad-sum, -esse, -fui.</i>
<i>disagree with, I, dis-sentio. (See</i> <i>agreement.)</i>	<i>rather, I would. Voc. 7.</i>
<i>dismayed, I am, perterr-eor, êri,</i> <i>-itus.</i>	<i>reluctantly. (61.)</i>
<i>dismiss, I, di-mitto, êre, -misi,</i> <i>-missum.</i>	<i>repeatedly = again and again.</i>
<i>entirely. (61.)</i>	<i>riches, diviti-ae, -arum.</i>
<i>first . . . then, primum . . . deinde.</i>	<i>ruin, exitium, n. (18, 19.)</i>
<i>foot-soldier, ped-ês, -itis.</i>	<i>scatter, I (intrans.), dissipor, âri.</i> (20.)
<i>gladly, libens (adj.) (61), or liben-</i> <i>ter (adv.).</i>	<i>seek for, I, pet-o, êre, -ii, or -ivi,</i> <i>-itum.</i>
<i>halt, I. Voc. 1.</i>	<i>send back, I, re-mitto, êre, -misi,</i> <i>-missum.</i>
<i>helplessness, in, in-ops, -ôpis (adj.).</i> (61.)	<i>set at naught, I, con-temno,¹ êre,</i> <i>-tempsi, -temptum.</i>
<i>institution, an, institutum. (51, b.)</i>	<i>shout, clam-or, -oris, m.</i>
<i>join him, I. (20, and Voc. 8.)</i>	<i>slave, I am a, servio, ire, -ii, -itum.</i>
<i>keep my word, I, fidem prae-sto,</i> <i>âre, -stiti.</i>	<i>stand by, I, ad-sto, -stare, -stiti.</i>
<i>know, I (a fact), scio (Voc. 8); (a</i> <i>person) nôvi, nôsse, nôveram</i> <i>(nôram).</i>	<i>story. (Often omit the word, see 54.)</i>
<i>man, the, (contemptuous), hom-o,</i> <i>-inis.</i>	<i>suddenly, subito.</i>
	<i>to-day, hodie.</i>
	<i>to-morrow, cras.</i>
	<i>treat lightly, I, parvi² facio, êre,</i> <i>feci, factum.</i>
	<i>value highly, I, magni² aestimo, âre.</i>
	<i>woman, muli-er, -êris.</i>
	<i>yesterday, heri.</i>

Exercise 10.

1. Those³ who were in agreement with you yesterday, to-day entirely disagree (with you). 2. Both you and I despise one who³ would rather be a slave with⁴ riches than free with poverty. 3. We know that he, concerning

¹ *Despicio*, I look down on as beneath myself; *contemno*, I think lightly of in itself = *parvi facio*; *sperno*, I put from me; *aspernor*, the same, with idea of strong dislike; *repudio*, I put from me with contempt; *neglego*, I am indifferent to.

² For this genitive see 305.

³ The relative clause to come first, is to be used in the other clause. (See 75.)

⁴ See 8, b.

whom you have told us all this story, expects to attain to the highest offices, the greatest distinctions; but¹ I hope that he will never obtain them, for I know the man. 4. I who² repeatedly opposed you in your youth, will gladly come to your assistance in your old age and helplessness. 5. I sent you the best and bravest foot-soldiers that I had with me; and having promised³ to send them back, you reluctantly kept your word. 6. He ordered those standing by (him) to follow him; but they were dismayed by the shouts of those who were coming to meet (him); first halted, and then suddenly scattered and fled in different directions. 7. The woman for whom you were seeking is present; I will therefore¹ hear and dismiss her. 8. The best institutions and laws you have set at naught, and this⁴ will be your ruin to-day. 9. The things² which I treated lightly in my boyhood, I value highly in my old age. 10. I who² was the last to come to your assistance on that occasion, will be the first to join you to-morrow.

¹ The demonstrative and conjunction, *but, therefore, etc.*, to be expressed by the relative.

² The relative clause to come first, *is* to be used in the other clause. (See 75.)

³ See 14.

⁴ See 67.

For all succeeding Exercises the Student is referred to the General Vocabulary at the end of the Book.

EXERCISE XI.

THE RELATIVE—Continued.

Qui in Oratio Obliqua.—Co-ordinate and other uses.

77. The verb in an **adjectival clause** is in the *indicative* mood, unless there is some special reason for the *subjunctive*.

For instance, if the verb in the principal clause is in *oratio obliqua*, i.e. is in the infinitive after a verb of *saying* or *thinking*, the verb in the *qui*-clause will be in the *subjunctive*.

Thus—*Mulierem aspicio, quae pisces vendit.* (Oratio recta.)
I see a woman who is selling fish.

But—*Ait se mulierem aspicere, quae pisces vendat.* (Oratio obliqua.) He *says* that he sees a woman who is selling fish.

Exceptions to this rule will be explained further on.

Obs.—This idiom extends very widely in Latin. It holds good not only with relatives, but with all subordinating conjunctions, and applies not only to indirect statements, but also to indirect commands and questions. (See Exercise LVI.)

78. Besides its use in adjectival clauses, *qui* is also used very largely as a substitute for both kinds of *conjunctions*. (Intr. 53, 54, 55.)

(i.) It is often used as equivalent to the co-ordinating conjunctions *and*, *but*, *so*, *therefore*, etc., and a demonstrative, to connect together co-ordinate sentences and clauses. (See 13.)

Ad regem veni, quem cum vidissem. . . . I came to the king, and when I had seen him. . . .

Indeed the Latin *relative* is often used where we should use the *demonstrative* only. Thus nothing is commoner than for Latin

sentences to begin with—*Quibus auditis*, having heard *this*; *Quod ubi vidit*, when he saw *this*; *quam ob rem*, quocirca, and therefore, or, therefore.

This is called the *co-ordinating* use of the relative, because it links co-ordinate sentences. (Intr. 74.) The relative so used does not affect the mood of the verb any more than a demonstrative pronoun, or the conjunction *et*.

Thus, if *qui* used for “and” connects (or co-ordinates) a principal verb in *oratio obliqua* with another, it will introduce an infinitive mood.

Dixit proditorem esse eum . . . quem brevi periturum esse. He said that he was a traitor . . . and that he would soon perish.

79. (ii.) The Latin relative is also largely used in place of many kinds of *subordinating* conjunctions; *ut*, in order that, or, so that; *quamvis*, although; *quod*, because.

The verb which follows *qui*, when so used, is in the subjunctive.

[The following Exercise will include only its adjectival use as subordinate to *oratio obliqua*, and its *co-ordinating* use as a substitute for a conjunction. Its use in the sense of “in order to,” “so that,” etc., will be treated further on.]

Other Uses of the Relative.

80. “*But*” after universal negatives, as *nemo*, *nullus*, *nihil*, is equivalent to “who not,” and should be translated by *qui non*, or by *quin* if the relative is in the *nominative* (or occasionally the *accusative*) case. *Qui non* or *quin* will always be followed by a *subjunctive*.¹

Nemo est quin te dementem putet. There is no one but thinks you mad; or the whole world thinks, etc.

Nemo fuit quin viderim. There was no one whom I did not see (but *quem non* is more usual).

¹ The explanation of the subjunctive will be given in its proper place. (See *Qui* with the Subjunctive, Exercise LXIII.)

81. It has been already said that the English relative with words such as *only, first, last*, as its antecedent, is not usually expressed in Latin by a relative clause, but by an adverbial use of the adjective.

He was the first *who*, or *that* did this. *Primus haec fecit.*
(See 62.)

82. Relative clauses in English, especially such as correspond to a clause beginning with *it*, are often expressed in Latin merely by the emphatic order of the words.

Ab hoc homine *interfectum esse fratrem tuum negat.* He says that *it was not* by this man *that* your brother was killed.

83. When the predicate of a relative clause is a substantive, the relative is often attracted into the gender of the predicate instead of agreeing with its antecedent.

Thebae, quod Boeotiae caput est. Thebes which is the capital of Boeotia.

Obs.—The same attraction takes place with demonstrative pronouns.
Ea (not id) vera est pietas. *That* is true piety.

Exercise 11.

In the following Exercise the italics indicate the use of the co-ordinating relative, 78 (i.).

1. He pretended that he had met the man¹ who had killed the king by poison. 2. There is no one but knows that one who does not till his land will look in vain for a harvest. 3. The exiles believed that they had reached the locality from which (whence) their forefathers were sprung. 4. I hope to avert this ruin from my country *and therefore* I am willing to venture on or endure anything. 5. He promised to lead his troops into the country of the Remi, *and* (said) that he hoped he should² soon recall *them* to their allegiance. 6. Having heard *this* he perceived that the ambassadors spoke the truth,³ and that

¹ *Is.* (71.) ² *Fore ut.* (38.) ³ That which (pl.) was true

the danger was increasing. 7. He said that he had never preferred expediency to duty, *and* (that) *therefore* he would not abandon allies whom he had promised to succour. 8. Having ascertained *this* fact, he promised to break up the crowd which had gathered around the king's¹ palace. 9. He pretended that it was not for the sake of gain but of friendship that he had given me all the books which his brother had left. 10. He said that the friends for whom you were looking round were all safe, *and therefore* that he for his part was free from anxiety. 11. He pretends to reject glory, which is the most honourable reward of true virtue. 12. All the world² knows that the moon moves round the earth.

¹ Adjective. (58.)

² See 80.

EXERCISE XII.

THE RELATIVE—Continued.

Correlatives.

84. The relative pronouns and pronominal words, *qui* (who), *qualis* (of what *kind*), *quantus* (of what *size*), *quot* (how many), answer respectively to the demonstratives *is* (he), *talis* (of such a *kind*), *tantus* (of such a *size*), *tot* (so many).

When they answer to these demonstratives, all **relatives** except *qui*, and even *qui* with *idem*, **are to be translated by the English "as."**

Talis est, qualis semper fuit. He is such *as* (of the same character *as*) he has ever been.

Tantum¹ habeo voluptatem, quantum tu. I have as much pleasure *as* you.

Tot erant milites, quot maris fluctus. The soldiers were as many *as* the waves of the sea.

Idem est qui semper fuit. He is the same *as* (or *that*) he has always been.

Res peracta est eodem modo quo antea. The thing has been done in the same manner *as* before.

85. When thus used, the two pronouns which correspond with each other are called **correlative**, or corresponding, words.

As with *is* and *qui*, so with the others, the relative or adjectival clause is often placed first, and the other or principal clause last.

¹ *Tantus* is sometimes used in a limiting sense, "just as (*only* as) much as;" *tantum faciet quantum coactus erit*, he will do no more than he is compelled (to do).

This is in accordance with the general tendency of Latin to place the most emphatic part of a sentence at or near the end. (Intr. 91.)

Quot *adstant homines*, tot *erant sententiae*. There were as many opinions as there were men standing by.

Qualis *fuit domina*, talem *ancillam invenies*. You will find the maid of the same character as her mistress was.

86. "*Such*" in English is often used where *size* or *amount* is meant rather than *kind* or *quality*. *Such*—as should then be translated into Latin by *tantus*—*quantus*; not by *talis*—*qualis*.

We must therefore always ask ourselves whether "*such*" means "of such a kind" or "so great." Thus, in "the storm was *such* as I had never seen before," "*such*" evidently means "so violent" or "so great;" in "his manners were *such* as I had never seen," "*such*" evidently means "of such a kind." In the former case we must use *tantus*, in the latter *talis*.

87. When "*such*" means "of such a kind," the place of the pronominal adjective *talis* is often taken by the genitive of quality. (See 58.)

Ejusmodi, hujusmodi, istius modi. Of such a kind, of such a kind as *this*, of such a kind as *you speak of*.

Hujusmodi homines odi. I hate such men (as these).

88. "*Such*" in English is often combined as an adverb with an adjective,—"*such* good men," "*such* a broad river." *Talis* and *tantus* cannot of course be used as adverbs. We must say—*tam bonus vir*, or *talis tamque bonus vir*; *tam latum flumen*, or *tantum tamque latum flumen*,—not, *talis bonus vir*, *tale latum flumen*.

Obs.—But *tantus* and *talis* are often combined with *hic*, sometimes with *ille*; *haec tanta multitudo*, *this great number of men*, or *so great*, or *such a*, *multitude as this*. So the adverb *tam*.

Hic tam bonus vir. So good a man as *this*, or, *this good man*.

89. The same *correlative* construction is used with *relational* or *pronominal adverbs*, as, *e.g.* those of place.

Ubi (where) corresponds to *ibi*, *illic* (there), *hic* (here).

Unde (whence) „ *inde* (thence), *hinc* (hence).

Quo (whither) corresponds to *eo*, *illuc* (thither), *huc* (hither).
Qua (in the direction in which) „ *eā*, *hāc* (in that or this direction).

Inde venisti, unde *ego*. You have come from the same place as I.
Eo rediit, unde *profectus est*. He returned to the place from which he had set out.

90. Observe also that with *idem*, *ac*¹ (*atque*) frequently takes the place of *qui*.

Eadem ac (= *quae*) *tu sentio*, my views (54) are the same as yours.

91. With *alius*, *contra*, *aliter*, and words signifying contrast, *ac* (*atque*) is the rule.

Aliter ac tu sentio. My views are different from yours.

Sometimes *quam* is used.

Res contra quam (or *atque*) *expectavi evenit*. The matter turned out contrary to my expectation.

See Comparative Clauses, Ex. LXII.

92. Where a strong difference is pointed out, a repeated *alius* is often used; *aliud est dicere*, *aliud facere*, "there is all the difference between speaking and acting;" "speaking is one thing, acting another."

93. All that has been said (77) as to the mood of the verb in *qui*-clauses applies equally to every kind of relative clause, whether introduced by a relational or pronominal adjective, such as *qualis*, etc., or by a relational adverb, such as *ubi*, *unde*. Thus—

Ubi tu es, ibi est frater tuus. Your brother is in the same place as you. (*Dicit ubi tu sis, ibi esse fratrem tuum*.)

So—

Qualis fuerit frater tuus, talem te esse dicunt. They say that you are of the same character as your brother was.

¹ *Ac* is never used before a vowel: see Intr. p. 14, note.

Exercise 12.

A.

This Exercise (A) contains examples of various *relative* constructions; instances of relative clauses in *Oratio Obliqua* will be found in B.

1. This is the same as that. 2. You are of the same character as I have always believed you to be. 3. All the world knows that the past cannot be changed. 4. The waves were such as I had never seen before. 5. He died in the place where he had lived in boyhood. 6. He was the first who promised to help me. 7. I will send the most faithful slave I have with me.¹ 8. There is no one but knows that the Gauls were conquered by Caesar. 9. The island is surrounded by the sea which you (*pl.*) call ocean. 10. The Gauls are the same to-day as they have ever been. 11. He was the first to deny the existence of gods. 12. I was the last to reach Italy. 13. That expediency and honour are sometimes contrary to each other (is a fact² that) all the world knows. 14. I believe him to have been the first within human memory³ to perpetrate such a monstrous crime, and I hope he will be the last to venture on anything of the kind.

This Exercise may be also varied by placing "he said" before 2, 4, 7, 10, and altering the sentence accordingly; thus:—"he said that you *were* of the same character, as he *had* always believed you to be."

B.

1. All the world allows that you are of the same character as your father and grandfather. 2. The scouts having returned to the camp brought back word that the enemy, who had flocked together in crowds the-day-before, were now breaking up and stealing away in different directions. 3. He said that he would never abandon such good and kindly men, who had so often come to his aid in adversity. 4. My objects⁴ are different from yours, nor are

¹ 8, *Obs.*² Omit in Latin and compare 82.³ See 59.⁴ Express by neut. pl. of adj. (see 54); so with "hopes."

my hopes the same as yours. 5. He said that he himself¹ was the same as he had ever² been, but that both the state of the nation and the views of his countrymen had gradually changed, and that the king, the nobles, and the whole people were now exposed to dangers such as they had never before experienced. 6. Many ships of war were shattered and sunk by the violence of the storm ; a single merchantman returned in safety to the point from³ which it had set out.

¹ Himself,—*quidem* after "he" (he at least, he on the one hand).

² Ever=always, as in the preceding Exercise, A. 10.

³ = Whence. (89.)

EXERCISE XIII.

THE INFINITIVE AS SUBSTANTIVE.

94. The infinitive¹ mood (see Intr. 51), as doing little more than name the general action or state denoted by the verb, is used as a **verbal substantive of the neuter gender**. Thus—

Sedere me delectat. “*To sit*,” or “*sitting*,” delights me.

The English word “sitting” is here a verbal noun,² and must be carefully distinguished from the participle, which resembles it in form only. Compare “*sitting* rests me” with “he rested *sitting* on a bank.”

95. This infinitive may be thus used as a substantive in two cases only—(1) in the *nominative*, either as subject

¹ The infinitive mood is so called because the verb in this form is *not defined* or restricted by inflexions denoting person or number. Were it not for its special use in Latin, already noticed, as marking statements which are made in *oratio obliqua*, it could hardly be called a *mood* at all; for it is only when so used, as answering to what in most languages is represented by a conjunction (*that*, etc.) and a finite verb, that it in any sense acts as a true verb by joining together two conceptions of the mind (see Intr. 11). By a “mood” we mean a special mode (*modus*) or manner in which a verb does this (see 147). In its other uses, as in that mentioned in the present exercise, the infinitive can hardly be called a mood, but, as explained in 94, a verbal noun; for it makes no statement, but merely *names* a single idea, that *state* or *action* which the verb not only names, but predicates of its subject. Compare *sedere* with *sedeo*.

² The origin of this English verbal noun in *-ing* does not come within the scope of this work. From its similarity in form to the participle, it has acquired a participial construction, and we no longer say “the seeing of you,” but “the seeing *you*,” etc. As such, it is synonymous with the ordinary, or prepositional, form of the English infinitive “to see;” but its use is much wider than that of the Latin infinitive, and even than that of the gerund. We can say “he went away without *speaking*,” “instead of *answering*,” where the Latin gerund is inadmissible (see Gerunds); and it also answers to the supine in *-um*: “he sent us out foraging,” properly *a* (i.e. *an* or *on*) foraging,—*nos pabulatum emisit*.

to *est*, *fuit*, etc., followed by a neuter adjective, or with an impersonal verb, or verb used impersonally; (2) in the *accusative*, as subject to another infinitive, after a verb *sentiendi* vel *declarandi*.

Nihil agere me delectat. Doing nothing is a pleasure to me.
Turpe est mentiri. It is disgraceful to lie, or, lying is disgraceful.

Dixit turpe esse mentiri. He said that lying was disgraceful.

For other cases see 99.

Obs.—The infinitive thus used may be the *antecedent* to a *relative*, which will be in the *neuter gender*.

Laudari, quod, or id quod, plerisque gratissimum est, mihi molestissimum est. To be praised, which is very pleasant to most men, is to me most disagreeable.

96. But though the infinitive is thus used as a substantive, it retains some part of its true nature as a verb.
 For—

(a.) It is qualified, not by an adjective, but by an adverb.

“Good writing” is bene *scribere*, not bonum *scribere*.

Bene *arare est bene colere.* Good ploughing is good farming.

(b.) It is joined with or governs an accusative, or other case as its object.

Haec perpēti, et patriā carere, miserrimum est. To endure these things, and to be deprived of one’s country, is most wretched.

(c.) It retains the tenses of a verb.

Haec facere, fecisse, facturum esse. The doing, the having done, the being about to do, this.

97. This infinitive is also joined with a subject, which is always in the *accusative case*.

Te hoc dicere mihi est gratissimum. Your saying this is most welcome to me.

Obs.—In English, when an infinitive (or a sentence introduced by “that”) is the nominative to a verb, it generally follows the verb, the

pronoun "it" being used as its representative before the verb. "It is pleasant to be praised." "It is strange that you should say so." This "it" is not to be translated into Latin. We must write simply, *Laudari jucundum est. Te hoc dicere mirum est.*

98. This substantival infinitive, with or without other words, will often express the nominative and accusative cases of English *abstract* nouns for which Latin either has no exact equivalent, or for which the infinitive is (often) preferred. Thus—

(a.) *Sibi placere*, "self-satisfaction;" *suis rebus contentum esse*, "contentment;" *mentiri*, "falsehood;" *cunctari*, "procrastination" (=cunctatio); *improbos laudare*, "praise of the bad;" *felicem esse*, "success;" *prosperis rebus uti*, "prosperity."

(b.) So, too, as Latin has no single word to express "happiness" or "gratitude," the infinitive is mostly used for both. Thus—

Beate vivere, or *beatum esse* = *vita beata*, or happiness.

Gratiam habere = *gratus animus*, or the feeling of gratitude.

Gratias agere, the returning thanks, or expression of gratitude.

Gratiam debere, the being under an obligation.

Gratiam referre, the returning a favour, or the showing gratitude.

These are instances of the general tendency of Latin to prefer direct and simple to more general and abstract modes of expression.

99. But in all such phrases the infinitive is only used in the *nominative* or in the accusative of *oratio obliqua*. In other cases, and with the accusative after a preposition, the *gerund* (or *gerundive*) takes its place.¹ Thus—

Pugnare, to fight, or fighting; but, *pugnandi cupidus*, desirous of fighting; *ad pugnandum paratus*, prepared for fighting; *pugnando vincemus*, we shall win the day by fighting.

Obs.—The *gerund* governs the substantive with which it is combined, the *gerundive* agrees with it. See Gerund and Gerundive, XLIX.

Gratias agendo (Gerund).

Ad agendas gratias (Gerundive).

¹ In Greek the infinitive with the article can be used in all cases,—*τὸ, τοῦ, τῷ βασιλεύειν* = *regnare, regnandi, regnando*.

Exercise 13.

1. It is always delightful¹ to parents that their children should be praised. 2. He said that it was disgraceful to break one's word, but keeping one's promises was always honourable. 3. Both your brother and you² have told many falsehoods;³ falsehood is always vile. 4. It is one thing to be praised, another to have deserved praise. 5. To be praised by the unpatriotic is to me almost the same thing as to be blamed by patriots. 6. Feeling gratitude, says⁴ he, is one thing, returning thanks another. 7. Procrastination, which in all things was dangerous, was, he⁵ said, fatal in war. 8. Pardoning the wicked is almost the same thing as condemning the innocent. 9. Procrastination in showing gratitude is never praiseworthy; for myself⁶ I prefer the returning kindness to being under an obligation. 10. Happiness is one thing; success and prosperity another. 11. Brave fighting, says⁴ he, will to-day be the same thing as victory; by victory we shall give freedom to our country.

¹ The intensive superlative may be used here and with many of the other adjectives in this exercise. (See 57, *a*.)

² See 26 and *note*.

³ See 54.

⁴ See 40.

⁵ See 32, *b*.

⁶ See 11, *a*.

EXERCISE XIV.

FINAL CLAUSES. *Ut, Ne, Quo.*

100. The English infinitive mood ("to do, to go,"—properly a gerundial use of the infinitive with the preposition *to*) is constantly used **to denote a purpose, or end in view** (*finis*).

But in Latin prose the infinitive mood is **never used** in this *final* sense.¹

The English final infinitive is expressed in Latin in many ways.

"He sent ambassadors *to sue* for peace" is never expressed in Latin by "*legatos misit pacem petere*," but in various other ways, either by

- a. *legatos misit ad pacem petendam* (Gerundive),
- b. ,, *pacis petendae causā* (Gerundive),
- c. ,, *pacem petitum* (Supine),
- d. ,, *qui pacem peterent* (Relative Clause),

or, especially if the purpose or end in view is strongly dwelt on,

- e. *legatos misit, ut pacem peterent.*

The following rules, therefore, must be carefully attended to.

101. (i.) "That," when equivalent to *in order that*, and followed by *may* or *might*; also "in order to" and "to" in the same sense, followed by an English infinitive, must often be translated in Latin by *ut* with the subjunctive.

Multi alios laudant, ut ab illis² laudentur. Many men praise others, *that they may be praised* by them, *or, to be praised* by them, *or, in order to be praised* by them.

Multi alios laudabant, ut ab illis laudarentur. Many men were praising others, *in order to be praised* by them.

¹ Hence such parenthetic clauses as "not to mention," "so to say," "not to be tedious," must never be translated by the Latin infinitive, but by *ne dicam, ut dicam, ne longus sim*.

² *Illis* is here used in place of the less emphatic *iis*, as a marked distinction between *themselves* and *others* is intended. (11, d.)

(ii.) "That" = *in order that*, followed by *not*, or any negative word (the verb having *may* or *might* for its auxiliary), must be translated by *nē* (= *lest*) with the subjunctive. *Nē* expresses a *negative purpose*; a *purpose of preventing*, and often answers to the English phrase "to prevent," or "avoid."

Gallinae avesque reliquae pennis fovēt pullos, nē frigōre laedantur. Hens and other birds cherish their young with their feathers, *that they may not be hurt* by the cold, or, *to prevent that they be hurt*, etc.

Gallinae avesque reliquae pennis fovebāt pullos, nē frigore laederentur. Hens and other birds were cherishing their young with their feathers, *that they might not be hurt* by the cold.

Notice the correspondence of tenses *laudant . . . laudentur*; *laudabant . . . laedarentur*; *fovent . . . laedantur*; *fovebant . . . laederentur*. (See 104.)

102. When the dependent clause expressing purpose, *i.e.* the *final* clause, contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, "that" is translated by *quo* = *by which*; this is equivalent to *ut eo* = *that by this (means)*, but *quo* must never be used in this sense without a comparative.

Medico puto aliquid dandum esse, quo sit studiosior. I think that something should be given to the physician, *that he may be the more attentive*, or *to make him more attentive*.

103. *Ut* is never used with a negative in *final* clauses; "that no one," when a purpose is expressed, is never *ut nemo*, but *ne quis*. (See 109.) When a second or third negative final clause is added, *neve* or *neu* is used instead of *neque*.

Hoc feci, ne tibi displicerem neve amicis tuis nocerem. I did this to avoid displeasing you, or injuring your friends.

Sequence of Tenses.

The tense of the verb in a final clause will cause no difficulty. The rule is very simple. (Read the Classification of Tenses, given at 177.)

104. If the verb in the principal clause is in a *primary* tense, *i.e.* present, true perfect, or future, the verb in the *ut*-, *quo*-, or *ne*- clause will be in the present subjunctive.

Haec scribo, scripsi, scribam, scripsero, ut bono sis animo.
I write, have written, shall write, shall have written, this,
in order that you may be in good spirits.

If the principal verb is in a *historic* tense, *i.e.* imperfect, aorist perfect, or pluperfect, the subordinate verb will be in the imperfect subjunctive.

Haec scribebam, scripsi, scripseram, ut bono esses animo.
I was writing, wrote, had written, this, in order that
you might be in good spirits.

105. The Latin Perfect discharges the part of two English tenses, and has therefore a double construction. (See 187.)

Laudavi te, ut bonus haberere. I *praised* you that you *might be* accounted good. (*Laudavi* is *historical*, an *aorist tense*.)

*Laudavi te, ut bonus habere.*¹ I *have praised* you that you *may* be accounted good. (*Laudavi* is *primary*, a *perfect tense*.)

Exercise 14.

1. In order not to be driven into exile, I shall pretend to be mad. 2. That you might not be punished for this crime both your brother and you told many falsehoods. 3. He pardoned, it is said,² the wicked, in order to obtain a reputation for clemency. 4. He spared the best patriots when he was³ victorious, in order that his own crimes might be forgiven. 5. He praised your countrymen again and again in their presence, in order to be praised by them in his absence. 6. The enemy will, they say,² be here to-morrow with⁴ a vast army in order to⁵ besiege

¹ But even in the latter case the Romans often wrote *haberere*, looking rather to the past time when the *intention* was formed.

² See 32, b. ³ See 63. ⁴ 8, b. ⁵ Gerundive with *ad*. 100, a.

our city. 7. That he might not be condemned in his absence he hastened to go to Rome. 8. It is said that he told many falsehoods to make¹ himself seem younger than he really was. 9. It seems that he wishes to return home in order to² stand for the consulship. 10. There is a tradition that he refused to accept the crown to avoid displeasing his brother, or injuring the lawful heir. 11. In order to testify his zeal and loyalty he hastened in his³ old age to Rome, and was the very first⁴ to pay his respects to the new king.

¹ See 102.² 100, b.³ See 63.⁴ Lit., first of all. See 62.

EXERCISE XV.

Ut, Ut non, IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

106. *Ut* with the subjunctive is also used in Latin to denote, not a *purpose*, but a *consequence* or *result*.

We see the difference at once in English.

(a.) I ran against him *in order to* throw him down (Final);

(b.) I ran against him with *such* force *that I threw* him down (Consecutive).

In the former sentence, (a), nothing is said of the *result*, only the end in view, or *motive*, is mentioned. In the latter, (b), nothing is said of the *motive*, only the *result* is named.

It is the peculiarity of Latin that this result, even when stated as an actual fact, is described by *ut* with a verb in the *subjunctive* mood.

Tanta vis probitatis est, ut eam vel in hoste diligamus. Such is the force of honesty, that *we love* it even in an enemy.

"That we love it" is stated as a *fact*, and would be indicative in other languages, but in Latin *diligimus* would never be used after a consecutive *ut*.

107. The Latin *ut*, therefore, is used with the same construction in two different senses, but the context will almost always prevent ambiguity. In such a sentence as *puer humi prolapsus est, ut crus frangeret*, the boy fell down *so that he* broke (or so as to break) his leg, *intention* would be absurd. Very often *ut final* will correspond to some such word or phrase as *idcirco, eo consilio, ob eam causam*, etc., in the principal clause; *ut consecutive* to *adeo, or tam, or ita, or tantus*: and thus the meaning of *ut* is made clear at once.

Hoc eo consilio dixi ut tibi prodessem. I said this *to be* of use to you, or *with the intention of being* of use.

Hoc ita dixi, ut tibi prodessem. I said this *so as to be* of use to you, or *in such a manner that I was* of use to you.

108. The English "*as*" before the *infinitive*, and after *so, such* (in Latin *tantus, talis, tam, adeo*, etc.), **must** always be translated by *ut* with the subjunctive.

Nemo tam potens est, ut omnia efficere possit. Nobody is so powerful *as to be* able to perform everything.

But *ut*="as," in comparisons, is followed in Latin, as in English, by an indicative.

Ut multitudo solet, concurrunt. They are running together, as a multitude is wont to do.

Here *ut* introduces, not a *consecutive*, but a *comparative* clause (Intr. 85), and the construction may be compared to that of *tantus* followed by *quantus*, as opposed to *tantus* followed by *ut*.

Compare

Talis fuit ut nemo ei crederet. He was of such a character that no one believed him,
with

Talis fuit qualem nemo antea viderat. He was of such a character as no one had seen before,

and note the difference of the moods in Latin.

109. A negative *consequence* is not expressed by *ne*, but by *ut non*.

Tanta fuit viri moderatio, ut repugnanti mihi non irascetur. The self-control of the man was so great, that he was not angry with me when I opposed him.

The following rule is therefore most important :—

That nobody	{	if expressing purpose	{	<i>ne quis</i>
That nothing		and followed by <i>may</i> or		<i>ne quid</i>
That no		<i>might</i> must be translated		<i>ne ullus</i>
That never		by		<i>ne unquam.</i>

But if they express <i>consequence</i> , and are followed by a simple English indicative, must be translated in Latin by	{	<i>ut nemo</i>
		<i>ut nihil</i>
		<i>ut nullus</i>
		<i>ut nunquam.</i>

In both cases alike the verb will be in the subjunctive mood. Thus—

The gates were shut *that no one might* leave the city (or to prevent any one from leaving, or in order to prevent any one, etc.). *Portae clausae sunt, ne quis urbem relinqueret.*

The fear of all men was so great, *that no one left* the city. *Tantus fuit omnium metus, ut nemo urbem reliquerit.*

110. As *ne quis*="that no one" in final clauses, and *neve*, or *neu quis*="or, and, that no one," so also in indicative clauses,

"and no one" is always *nec quisquam*,

"and nothing" " *nec quidquam*,

"and never" " *nec unquam*.

Similarly *nec ullus* (adj.), *nec usquam*, "and no where," etc.

111. Closely allied to the *consecutive* is a *limiting* force of *ut*, the negative of which is frequently translated by the English "without."

Ita bonus est, ut interdum peccet. He is good to this extent (or he is only so far good), that he makes mistakes sometimes.

Nec perdi potes, ut non alios perdas. Nor can you be ruined without ruining others.

Compare with the first example the limiting use of *tantus*. 84, note.

Sequence of Tenses. Tenses of the Subjunctive.

112. There is no such simple rule for the tense of the verb in the consecutive clause as that given for the final clause, and there is greater variety in the tenses; but in practice there will be little difficulty.

Use the tense of the subjunctive mood which you would use if the verb were, as it would be in English, in the indicative.

Thus—

"He is so wicked that nothing has ever called him away from crime;"

"has ever called" is the "true perfect;" write therefore,

Tam improbus est ut nihil eum unquam a scelere revocaverit.

We have here a *present* tense in the principal, a true *perfect* in the consecutive clause; both are primary tenses. (See 177.)

Hoc eum adeo terruit ut vix hodie prodire audeat. This so terrified him that he scarcely ventures to come forward to-day.

Here one tense is historic, the other primary, but the English is a sufficient guide.

113. The only difficulty is the choice between the perfect and the imperfect subjunctive in the consecutive clause after an historic or *aorist* perfect in the principal clause.

The imperfect subjunctive denotes a *continuous* state, or action ; or one described as *commencing* ; or as strictly *contemporaneous* with some point in past time.

The perfect subjunctive represents (a) a state or action as simply a fact in the past (aorist); or (b) a fact still producing a result in the mind of the speaker (perfect).

That the army *was flying*, or *began to fly* (imperfect); that the army *fled* (aorist); that the army *has fled* (perfect)—will represent the three tenses in English: the two latter would both be expressed in Latin by the words “*ut fugerit*,” as opposed to “*ut fugeret exercitus*.” (See 184, 185, 186.)

If the verb in the consecutive clause implies continuance, or contemporaneous time in the past, use the **imperfect subjunctive**. If it denotes a **single fact**, or one looked on as **now completed**, use the perfect subjunctive. Thus—

Tanta fuit pestis ut permulti quotidie perirent, rex ipse morbo assumptus sit. The pestilence was so great that many died daily, and the king himself was cut off by the disease.

*Ducis adventus adeo militum redintegravit animos ut impetum
exemplo { facerent. }
 { fecerint. }* The general's arrival so restored the
soldiers' spirits that they charged at once.

Facerent implies "at once began to;" *fecerint* may either mean "charged" as a simple fact (aorist), or in vivid language "they have charged" (perfect), as though we saw the fact.

With the perfect (aorist), the consequence is looked upon as a single result, at once achieved, and not as spread over a space of time for which idea the imperfect would be appropriate.

Future Subjunctive.

114. The only future subjunctive is the participle in *-rus* combined with the right tense of the verb *sum*. This must therefore be used where the *result* denoted by the consecutive clause is a future one. Thus—

Nunquam posthac pugnabimus. We shall never fight again
(after this).

But—

Adeo territi sumus ut nunquam posthac pugnaturi simus. We have been (or were) so frightened that we shall never fight again.

So—

Dixit *se adeo* territos fuisse *ut nunquam postea* pugnaturi essent.
He said that they (himself and his companions) *had been* so frightened that they *would* never fight again.

115. The pluperfect subjunctive, our “*would have*,” is represented in a consecutive clause by the participle in *-rus* with the *perfect subjunctive* of *sum*. Thus—

Nemo superfuisset. No one would have survived.

But—

Tanta fuit caedes ut . . . *nemo superfuturus* fuerit. The slaughter was such that no one *would have* survived.

Instances of Sequence of Tenses.

116.

Hoc ita facio, feci, faciam, *ut tibi* displiceam. *I do (am doing), have done, will do*, this so as to displease you.

Hoc ita feci, faciebam, feceram *ut tibi* displicerem. *I did, was doing, had done*, this so as (*then*) to displease you.

Hoc ita feci *ut tibi* displiceam (rare). *I did* this so as *now* to displease you.

Hoc ita feci *ut tibi* displicuerim. *I did* this so as to *have now* displease you, or *I did* this so that (as a matter of fact) *I displease* you.

Dixit *se hoc ita* fecisse *ut tibi* displiceret. He said that he did this so as to displease you.

Hoc ita feci *ut tibi* displiciturus sim. *I have* done this so that *I shall* displease you (or so as to *be likely to*, etc.).

Exercise 15.

1. I have lived, said¹ he, so virtuously, that I quit life with resignation. 2. He had lived, he said,¹ so virtuously, as to quit life with resignation. 3. I will endeavour, said he, to live so as to be able to quit life with resignation. 4. He said that he had lived so as to be able to quit life with resignation. 5. The charge of the enemy was so sudden that no one could find his arms or proper rank. 6. Thereupon the enemy made a sudden² charge in order to prevent any of our men from finding either his arms or proper rank. 7. Thereupon he³ began to tell many⁴ false-

¹ See 40.

² Ille (*the other*), 11, d.

³ Use adverb, *made suddenly a charge*.

⁴ See 54.

hoods with the intention of preserving his life. 8. He told so many falsehoods that no one believed him then, and that no one has ever put faith in him since. 9. He was so good a king that his subjects loved him in his life-time, sighed for him after his death, honour his name and memory to-day with grateful¹ hearts, and will never forget his virtues. 10. The waves were such as to dash over the whole of² the ship, and the storm was of such a kind as I had never seen before. 11. The cavalry charged so fiercely that had³ not night interfered with the contest, the enemy would have⁴ turned their backs. 12. You cannot, said he, injure your country without⁵ bringing loss and ruin upon yourself and your own affairs. 13. I said this with the intention of benefiting you and yours, but the matter has so turned out that I shall injure you whom I wished to benefit, and benefit those whom I wished to injure. 14. So little did he indulge even a just resentment, that he pardoned even those who had slain his father.

¹ Superlative. See 57.

³ *Nisi* with pluperf. subj.

² See 60.

⁴ 115.

⁵ See 111.

EXERCISE XVI.

Ut, Ne, INTRODUCING A SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSE.¹

117. One of the main difficulties in translating English into Latin is to know when to represent the English infinitive by the same mood in Latin, when to use a conjunction, such as *ut* or *ne* followed by the subjunctive.

We have already seen that the Latin infinitive takes the place of an English conjunctival or *that*-clause after verbs of *saying, thinking, etc.* (31-32).

On the other hand we have seen that the Latin infinitive must never be used to express either a *purpose* or a *result* (100, 106).

But besides these clear cases, which need cause no difficulty, many verbs which in English are followed by the infinitive require in Latin an *ut*- or *ne*- clause. These clauses, though originally *adverbial*, are virtually *substantival*.

Thus in *oro te ut hoc facias*, "I entreat you to do this," *ut hoc facias* is in the strictest sense an *adverbial* or *final* clause, "I entreat you, *with a view to your doing this*;" but it may also be regarded as equivalent to an accusative case after *oro*; compare, *pacem oro*; and it is usual to consider those clauses whose final nature is not obvious at first sight as *substantival* clauses, and to class them as such, under the name of indirect *commands* or *entreaties*, with the indirect *statement* and indirect *question*. (See Intr. 80.)

118. The English infinitive after verbs and phrases of **entreating, commanding, decreeing, advising, striving, effecting**, must be translated into Latin by *ut*, or, if a negative is required, by *ne*, followed by the subjunctive mood.

Such verbs are nearly all the *verba imperandi vel efficiendi*, such as *oro, peto, precor, opto* (not *volo*), *edico, impero* (not *jubeo*), *hortor, moneo, suadeo, video* (I take care), *permitto*

¹ For the meaning of the term *substantival clause* see Intr. 80.
102

(not *sino* or *pator*), *facio*, *efficio*, *impetro* (I obtain by asking), and such phrases as *id ago*, "I make it my aim;" "*operam do*," "I take pains."

The Sequence of Tenses, as well as the use of *ne* in negative clauses, will be that of the *final* clause (104). Thus—

Ut hostem terreret, militibus imperavit, ut clipeos hastis percuterent. In order to terrify the enemy he commanded the soldiers *to strike* their shields with their spears.

Here the first *ut* introduces an *adverbial* (final), the second a (virtually) *substantival* clause.

Magno opere te hortor, ut hos libros studiose legas. I earnestly advise you *to read* these books attentively.

Capram monet, ut in pratum descendat. He advises the she-goat *to come down* into the meadow.

Hoc te rogo, ne demittas animum. I beg of you *not to be disheartened* (literally, not to let your mind sink).

Efecit ne ex urbe exirent. He prevented *their leaving* the city.

Mihi ne quid facerem imperavit. He ordered me *to do* nothing.

119. We must therefore never say *hoc te facere, or non facere oro, suadeo, hortor*, for—"I entreat, persuade, exhort you *to do, or not to do* this," but always *hoc ut, or hoc ne facias*, etc. The *ut* is sometimes omitted, especially with the 2nd pers. sing. (See 126.)

120. But there are exceptions to the rule which must be carefully noticed. The commonest of all is *jubeo* (I bid), which takes an infinitive with the accusative.

Compare

Consul militibus ut (or ne) pedem referrent imperavit with

Consul milites pedem referre jussit (or vetuit).

And the infinitive construction is usual with *volo*, and *cupio* (I wish, desire), also with *veto*, I forbid, *prohibeo*, I prevent, *conor*, I endeavour, *sino*, *pator*, I allow.

121. It has already been said (48) that some verbs of *purposing*, *resolving*, etc., take the infinitive when the subject of both verbs is the same, but an *ut*- or *ne*- clause when the subject of the second verb is different: *ego ne redirem, curavi*, he took care that *I* should not return; *nec redire curat*, and he does not care to return. In the second example *curat* is a modal verb (42).

122. It is important to observe that the same verb may be used in two senses, and therefore with two constructions.

It may be used as a verb *sentienti vel declarandi*, in which case it will take the accusative and infinitive (31); or it may be used as a verb *imperandi vel efficiendi* (118), in which case it will be followed by an *ut*- or *ne*- clause; thus—

(a.) *Moneo adesce hostem.* I warn you *that* the enemy is at hand.

Ne hoc facias moneo. I warn you not *to do* this.

(b.) *Mihi persuasum est* (5) *finem adesce.* I was persuaded *that* the end *was* near.

Mihi persuasum est ne hoc facerem. I was persuaded *not to do* this.

(c.) *Mihi scripsit se venturum esse.* He wrote me word *that* he *would* come.

Mihi scripsit ne ad se venirem. He wrote to me (to order or beg me) *not to come* to him.

(d.) *Fac venias.* Be sure *to come*.

Fac te venisse. Suppose yourself *to have come*.

The same verbs are used in English with a double construction; but where we use the conjunction "*that*" Latin uses the infinitive, and Latin uses a conjunction where we use the infinitive.

123. Many **impersonal** verbs and phrases are followed by an *ut*-clause containing a verb in the subjunctive. This clause acts in place of a subject to the impersonal verb.

Accidit ut nemo senator adesset. It happened that no senator was present, *or*, no senator happened to be present.

Ex quo factum est ut bellum indiceretur. The consequence of *this* (78) was that war was declared, *or*, the result was a declaration of war.

These *ut*-clauses are properly speaking *consecutive*, as those in 117, 118, are properly *final*; hence *ut nemo*, not *ne quis* in the first example. (See 109.)

The sequence of Tenses will be that of the consecutive clause.

Obs.—Never translate “it happened to him to be absent” by *accidit ei abesse*, always by *ei accidit ut abesset*, or else by *is forte abfuit*.

124. *Tantum abest*, “so far from,” is always used impersonally, and is followed by two *ut*-clauses, of which one is *substantival* and subject to *abest*, the other is *adverbial*, being a consecutive clause explaining *tantum*.

Tantum abest ut nostra miremur ut nobis non satisfaciat ipse Demosthenes. So far are we from admiring our own works, that Demosthenes himself does not satisfy us.

Ut nostra miremur; a *substantival* clause, standing in place of a subject to *abest*.

Ut nobis non satisfaciat ipse Demosthenes; an *adverbial* clause which, joined with *tantum*, qualifies *abest* like an adverb of degree or quantity.

The same idea might also be expressed by *adeo non . . . ut*, or by *non modo non . . . sed*, as,

Adeo non nostra miramur ut nobis non satisfaciat, etc.; or,
Non modo non nostra miramur, sed nobis non satisfacit.

125. The following verbs and phrases are followed by *ut*, introducing a *substantival* clause.

- (a.) It follows; the next thing is, *sequitur*: or *proximum est*.
- (b.) It happens by chance, *casu accidit*.
- (c.) Hence it happens, *ita fit*, lit. thus it happens.
- (d.) How happens it? *quid fit?*
- (e.) It is possible, *fieri potest ut*, lit. it can happen that.
- (f.) It is (quite) impossible, *nullo modo fieri potest ut*, lit. it cannot happen that.
- (g.) It remains, *reliquum est, restat*.
- (h.) So far from, *tantum abest ut—ut*.
- (i.) I will not allow myself to, *non committam ut*.
- (j.) He succeeded (in becoming consul), *effecit (ut consul fieret)*.
- (k.) He contrived (not to be punished), *effecit (ne poenas daret)*.

126. *Ut* is generally omitted (especially before the 2nd person singular) when the subjunctive is combined with *oportet*, *necesse est*, *velim*, *nolim*, *licet*.

Hoc facias velim. I would have you do this.

Oulpam fateare necesse est. You must needs avow your fault.

127. The ordinary construction of the case of the person after words of entreating and commanding, etc., is—

- (a.) *Te oro, obsecro, rogo, moneo, admoneo, hortor, adhortor, jubeo, veto, prohibeo, sino.*
- (b.) *Tibi impero, praecipio, edico, mando, permitto.*
- (c.) *A, ab (abs) te peto, postulo, impetro.*
- (d.) *Posco, flagito, precor,* both with acc. as (a), and *a* or *ab* with abl. as (c).

128. *Jubeo* expresses our "bid," and may be used in a wide sense, and wherever in *oratio recta* we should use the imperative. *Salvere te jubeo* = *salve*. It may express the wish of equals, superiors, or inferiors.

Impero implies an order from a higher authority, as from a commanding officer.

Edico, a formal order from some one in office, as a Praetor, etc.

Praecipio, a direction or instruction from one of superior knowledge.

Mando, a charge or commission intrusted by any one.

Permitto differs from *sino*, as meaning rather to give leave *actively*; *sino*, not to prevent. *Permitto* sometimes means "to intrust wholly to," "hand over to."

Exercise 16.

A.

1. I entreated him not to do this,¹ but suggested to him to trust his father. 2. He exhorted the soldiers not to be disheartened on account of the late disaster. 3. He made it his aim to avoid injuring any one of his subjects, but to consult the good of the whole nation. 4. He gave orders to the soldiers to get ready for fighting, and exhorted them to fight bravely. 5. The senate passed a resolution that the consuls should hold a levy. 6. I resolved to warn your brother not to return to Rome before night. 7. And, to prevent him from telling any more falsehoods, I bade him hold his peace. 8. It happened (on) that day² that the consuls were about to hold a levy. 9. I prevailed on him to spare the vanquished (*pl.*), and not³ to allow

¹ Co-ordinate relative. (See 78.)

² *Neve* or *neu*. (See 103.)

³ See 9, (a).

his (soldiers) to massacre women and children. 10. I was the first to warn him not to put faith in the falsest and most cruel of mankind. 11. You¹ and I happened that day to be in the country; the consequence² of this was that we have been the last³ to hear of this disaster. 12. He said that he would never allow himself to promise to betray his allies.

B.

1. Thereupon he earnestly implored the bystanders not to obey men⁴ who were ready (subj., 77) to betray both their allies and themselves in order to avoid incurring a trifling loss. 2. He succeeded at last in persuading the Spaniards that it was quite impossible to leave the city, (which was⁵) blockaded on all sides by the enemy, unharmed. 3. He says⁶ that he never asked you to pardon the guilty or condemn the innocent. 4. I will not, said he, allow myself to be the last to greet my king after so heavy a disaster. 5. The jury were at last persuaded that my brother was innocent; they could not be persuaded to acquit him by their verdict, such was their terror⁷ of the mob. 6. News has been brought to me in my absence that the city has been taken: it remains (for me) to retake it by the same arts as⁸ those by which I have lost it. 7. So far am I from praising and admiring that king, that it seems⁹ to me that he has greatly injured not only his own subjects, but the whole human race. 8. So far am I from having said everything, that I could take up the whole of the day in speaking; but I do not wish to be tedious.¹⁰ 9. It never before happened to me to forget a friend in his absence, and this¹¹ circumstance is a great consolation to me to-day.

¹ See 26, note.⁴ See 72.⁶ See 33.⁹ See 43.² See 123, example 2.⁵ Omit relative and use participle.⁷ See 25, last example.¹⁰ See 42, ii.³ See 62.⁸ See 84.¹¹ See 67.

EXERCISE XVII.

Quominus, Quin. VERBS OF Fearing WITH *Ut, Ne*.

129. These two compound words are used as conjunctions after verbs and phrases which denote *prevention, hindrance, opposition*, etc.

Quo minus=*ut eo (hoc) minus*, "that by it the less," or "that by this means the less." *Quin*=*quī* (old abl.=*quo*), and *ne*, the old form of the negative, "that by it not."

130. *Quo minus* is generally, *quin* only, used when the verb of *preventing*, etc., is joined with a negative or virtual negative.

By a *virtual negative* we mean *vix, aegre*, "scarcely," "with difficulty," or questions expecting the answer "no," "none," "nothing."

131. *Quo minus* often answers to the English verbal noun in *-ing* combined with a preposition.

Naves vento tenebantur quominus in portum redirent. The ships were prevented by the wind *from returning* into harbour.

Per te stetit quominus vinceremus. You were the cause of our *not winning* the day.

Non recusabo quominus te in vincula ducam. I will not object to *taking* you to prison.

In all these instances a negative *result* or *aim* (two notions so often identified in Latin) is expressed by *quominus*.

132. *Quin* is still more common than *quominus*, but is only used after negative words and phrases.

- (a.) *Nec multum afuit quin interficeremur.* And we were not far from losing our lives.
- (b.) *Nec eum unquam adspexit, quin fratricidam compellaret.* And she never beheld him without calling him a fratricide.
- (c.) *Vix inhiberi potuit, quin saxa jaceret.* He could scarcely be prevented from throwing stones.
- (d.) *Nullo modo fieri potest quin errem.* It is quite impossible that I am not mistaken, or but that I am, etc.
- (e.) *Fieri vix potuit quin te accusarem.* It was scarcely possible for me not to accuse you.

133. *Quin* is also used as equivalent to “*but that*” or “*that*” after verbs or phrases of doubting, combined with a negative, or virtual negative.

Quis dubitat quin hoc feceris? Who doubts (=no one doubts) *but that* (or *that*) you did this?

134. *Quin* is also used (see 80) as containing not a conjunction but a relative pronoun (*qui, quae, quod*, and *ne*).

Nemo est quin [=qui non] intelligat. There is no one but (who does not) perceives, or all the world perceives.

In all these uses *quin* is joined with the subjunctive.

135. But it is also used sometimes as a direct interrogative = *qui non?*

Quin hoc mihi das? ‘How (or, why) do you not give me this?
i.e. give it me;

and sometimes as a mere emphatic particle = “*nay*,” *quinetiam* = “*moreover*.”

In these senses it can be joined with *any mood*.

136. (a.) *Recuso (quominus)* means properly “I protest against,” “give reasons against,” (*re* and *causa*); hence it is equivalent to our “object.” It is sometimes used less emphatically as a modal verb with the infinitive (42); but the English “I refuse” in the sense “I am reluctant” is generally to be turned by *nolo*, or, if a refusal expressed in words is meant, by *nego* with future in *-rus*.

(b.) *Dubito* when negated (see 130) is followed by *quin*, but it is also used as a modal verb in the sense of "hesitate," "scruple."

Thus we sometimes find not only

Nec recuso quominus hoc patiar. And I do not protest against suffering this.

Nec dubitat quin hoc facere audeat. And he does not hesitate to venture on doing this.

but—

Neque hoc pati recuso, nec hoc audere dubitat.

137. (I.) Words and phrases followed by *quin* with the subjunctive are:—

(a.) All the world (believes), *nemo est quin (credat).*

(b.) Not to doubt, *non dubitare (quin).*

(c.) There is no doubt, *non est dubium* or *dubitandum (quin)*, "it is not doubtful."

(d.) Who doubts? *quis dubitat (quin)?*

(e.) It cannot be (it is impossible) but that, *fieri non potest (quin).*

(f.) I cannot refrain from, *temperare mihi non possum (quin).* See (j.).

(g.) It cannot be denied, *negari non potest (quin).* (Rare: the infinitive is to be preferred.)

(h.) To be very near; to be within a very little, *minimum abesse; haud multum abesse (quin)*; always used impersonally.

(i.) To leave nothing undone to, *nihil praetermittere (quin).*

(j.) I cannot but, I cannot help, *facere non possum (quin).*

(k.) To restrain, to keep back from, *retinere, tenere* (after negative words, and *aegre*, "with difficulty," *vix*, "scarcely," etc.).

(l.) What reason is there against? *quid causae est (quin)?*

(II.) Verbs that may be followed by *quominus*.

To frighten from, to deter, *deterreere.*

To hinder, prevent, *obstare* (dat.), *impedire* (acc.). (So *officere, obistere, repugnare, intercedere*, etc.)

Prohibeo and *veto* mostly take the infinitive. (See 130.)

Verbs of Fearing.

138. The construction used in Latin after verbs of *fearing* is quite different from that which follows verbs of *hoping*. (See 37.)

With verbs of **fearing**, *that* as well as *lest* must be translated by *nē*, *that not* by *ut*.¹

Such verbs are *timeo*, *metuo*, *vereor*, etc., and the same construction is used with such phrases as *periculum est* (*fruit*), *metus est*, etc.

After such verbs and phrases the English *future* and the *verbal substantive* are translated by the *present* or *imperfect subjunctive*, with *ut* or *nē*.

Vereor ne veniat. I fear that he will come, or, I fear or am afraid of his coming.

Vereor ut veniat. I fear that he will not come, or, I am afraid of his not coming.

Veritus sum ne or ut veniret. I feared that he would, or would not come.

Periculum erat ne hostes urbem expugnarent. There was a danger of the enemy's taking the city.

139. But where stress is laid on the idea of futurity, or the sense of *likelihood* is introduced, the subjunctive future, *i.e.* the future in *-rus* with *sum* (114), is used.

Vereor ut hoc tibi profuturum sit. I am afraid that this is not likely to do you good.

Obs.—Verbs of fearing are sometimes used like *recuso* and *dubito* as modal verbs in close combination with the infinitive.

Nec mori timet. And he is not afraid of dying.

¹ The origin of this use of *ne* and *ut* after verbs of fearing is not quite clear. The *ne* is easily explained. "I fear, with a wish or aim that he may not come" = "I fear lest he come or be coming" (English subjunctive), compare the French *je crains qu'il ne vienne*; and thus the *ne* introduces a final clause.

On the same principle the *ut* may mean "I am in fear, with the desire or aim that he may come" = "I am afraid of his not coming," in French—*je crains qu'il ne vienne pas*.

The *ut* may also be explained as used in its interrogative sense of "how," "as to how," and thus the *ut veniat* would be a dependent interrogative clause; "I have fears as to how he is coming" = "that he is not coming."

This explanation is simple, but involves a totally different origin and construction from that of the *ne*-clause.

Exercise 17.

1. I never beheld him without imploring him to come to the aid of his oppressed and suffering country; but I fear that he will never listen to my prayers. 2. I cannot refrain from blaming those who were ready to hand over our lives, liberties, rights, and fortunes to our deadliest enemies. 3. All the world believes that you did wrong, and I am afraid that it is quite impossible that all mankind have been of one mind with me in a blunder. 4. He pretends that I was the cause of my countrymen not joining the cause of every patriot. 5. The soldiers could not be restrained from hurling their darts into the midst of the mob. 6. He promises to leave nothing undone to persuade your son not to hurry away from the city to the country.¹ 7. We were within a very little of being all killed, some of us pierced by the enemy's darts, others cut off either by famine or disease. 8. Nothing,² he said, had ever prevented him³ from defending the freedom and privileges of his countrymen. 9. What circumstance prevented you from keeping your word, and coming to my aid with your army, as you⁴ had promised to do? 10. I will no longer then protest against your desiring to become a king, but I am afraid you will not be able to obtain your desire. 11. What reason is there why he should not be ready to return in his old⁵ age to the scenes which he left unwillingly in his boyhood?⁶ 12. Such was his terror⁶ of Caesar's victory, that he could scarcely be restrained from committing suicide. 13. He could not, he replied,⁷ help waging war by land and sea. 14. News has been brought me, said he, that the general has been struck by a dart, and I fear that he has received a mortal wound. 15. Nor was he afraid, he replied, of our being able to reach Italy in⁸ safety; the⁹ danger was¹⁰ of our being likely never to return.

¹ See 9, *b*.² See 33.³ *i.e.* himself, 11, *e*.⁴ See 67, *Obs*.⁵ 63.⁶ See 25.⁷ 32, *b*.⁸ See 61.⁹ *Lit.*, that (*ille*) was the danger, etc.¹⁰ *Inf. mood*, dependent on "he replied."

EXERCISE XVIII.

COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS.

Imperative Mood.

140. The **imperative mood** is used freely in Latin, as in English, in both commands and entreaties, in the second person singular and plural.

Ad me veni. Come to me. Audite¹ hoc. Hear this.

141. But, especially in the singular, where one person, an equal, is addressed, there are many substitutes for so peremptory a mode of speaking. A short compound sentence containing either a subordinate or a co-ordinate clause is substituted for the simple command.

Thus: for *scribe*, *scribas velim*, "I would have you write" (126), is often used; or *tu, quaeso, ad me scribe*, or *scribe sis* (for *si vis*): or again, for *ad me veni*, *fac*, or *cura ut, ad me venias*, "be sure to come:" so with the plural, *vos, oro et obsecro, attendite*.

Obs.—The subjunctive is used for the imperative in the second person singular; but only where no definite person is addressed, but a general maxim given.

Postremus loquaris: primus taceas. Be (*you*, or *a man* should be) the last to speak, the first to be silent.

¹ There is also a more emphatic form, *venito, venitote*, which is called the *future imperative*; it is used in both the second and third persons, and is called future from its very common use in *laws* and *wills* which concern the future, and from its often forming the *apodosis* to a future perfect clause; *cum ego dixero, tum vos respondetote*, when I have spoken, then, and not before, do you reply. But it is used also for mere emphasis: *nolitote, scitote*, are often met with.

142. In **negative commands**, or **prohibitions**, the simple imperative is little used. Such phrases as *ne sævi, magna sacerdos* (AEN. vi.) ("be not wroth, mighty priestess"), are almost entirely confined to poetry.

In English also, though in older English, and in poetry, we find constantly "go not," "fear not," etc., yet we generally substitute the infinitive with an auxiliary verb in the imperative: *do not go, do not fear*.

In Latin, in addressing a single person familiarly, *ne* is often used with the *perfect* subjunctive.

Ne dubitaveris, do not hesitate; *lit.* do not (allow yourself to) have hesitated, or beware against having hesitated.
So—*Nihil dederis*, give nothing.

The *present* subjunctive is not used in speaking to a person; *ne multa discas, sed multum* is a general maxim. (See 141, *Obs.*)

143. But by far the more common mode of forbidding or deprecating is by a periphrasis; using, as we do in 'do not do this,' two verbs.

Noli, nolite, nolitote, hoc facere, or cave, cavete (ne) illud facias, faciat.

The *ne* is often omitted with the second person. (See 126.)

144. For the *first* and *third* persons (except in formal documents, see 140, note) Latin employs the subjunctive mood in a *jussive* sense to express *exhortation, wish, or command*, and uses *ne* to prohibit or deprecate.

Moriamur, let us die; pereat, may he perish; abeat, let him go; ne sim salvus, may no good befall me; ne exeat urbe, let him not go out of the city. In older English and in poetry we have "turn we to survey," "hallowed be thy name."

145. "Nor," "or," "and not," with prohibitions is generally *neve* or *neu*, but *neque* is also used.

Hoc facito; illud ne feceris, neve dixeris. Do this; do not do or say that.

Sequere, neque retrospezeris. Follow and do not look behind.

146. There is also a common use of such phrases as *vidēris*, *viderint*, in the sense of "you, they, must look to it," when the responsibility of giving an opinion is declined or postponed.

De hac re tu videris, or viderint sapientiores. I leave this to you, or to wiser men; do you, or let wiser men, decide.

This is a future perfect indicative, as in the first person *videro* is used.

Exercise 18.

1. Do not then lose (*sing.*) such an opportunity as¹ this, but rather let us, under your leadership, crush the eternal enemies of our country. 2. Do not, my countrymen, count the foes who are threatening you with massacre and slavery; let them rather meet the same lot which they are preparing for us. 3. Pardon (*sing.*) this fault of mine; and be sure you remember that I, who have done wrong to-day, have repeatedly brought you help before. 4. Let us then refuse to be slaves, and have the courage not only to become free ourselves, but to assert our country's freedom also. 5. And therefore² do not object to³ endure everything in behalf of your suffering country and your exiled friends. 6. And therefore,² my countrymen, do not believe that I, who have so often led you to the field of battle, am afraid to-day of fortune abandoning me. 7. Let us be the same in the field (of battle) as⁴ we have ever been; as⁵ to the issue of the battle let the gods decide.

¹ See 88, *Obs.*

⁴ See 84.

² See 78.

⁵ Prep. *de* with *abl.*

³ See 136.

EXERCISE XIX.

REMARKS ON MOODS.

The Subjunctive used independently.

147. By a *Mood*¹ we mean a special form assumed by the Verb in order to mark some special manner (*modus*) in which that connexion between a subject and predicate which every verb implies is viewed by the speaker. (Intr. 11, and see note.)

¹ In the words of an old grammarian (Priscian) *modi sunt diversae inclinationes animi* (movements, variations, swayings, of the human mind) *quas varia consequitur declinatio* (inflexion, or form). In some languages, especially those which have no written literature, the number of moods is exceedingly large, different modifications of the form of the verb being used to represent many different *moods*, or frames, or attitudes, of the mind of the speaker. Thus, in addition to those forms which denote *time* (tenses), we find separate forms or moods to express *certainty, doubt, inquiry, contingency, negation, command, desire*, etc. But in the languages of highly civilised nations economy is practised in the use of such varied forms; the intelligence of the hearer or reader is relied on, and a single form (as with the case-inflexions of nouns) is used to represent various ideas more or less related to each other. In Greek the two ideas of a command and a wish as applied to a third person are expressed by two moods, ἀπολέσθω, ἀπόλοιτο; Latin is content with one—*pereat*. Both agree with English in having no mood to distinguish a simple question from a simple statement. In modern English prose the subjunctive mood, so exceedingly common in Latin, hardly exists as a true mood, i.e. a separate and distinct form of the verb. We retain its use occasionally as a contingent mood after *though* and *if*, “though he *fail*,” “if it *be* so;” but as a rule we either disregard those slighter, though real, shades of meaning which call for the subjunctive in Latin (as often in German and French), and are content with the indicative, or, if the difference is too great to be disregarded, we substitute for a true mood a combination of an auxiliary or modal verb with the infinitive mood—“let him go,” “if he *were* to come,” “I *would* not do this,”—exactly as we substitute a preposition with a noun for the case-inflexions of nouns.

As regards therefore the use of the Latin subjunctive, the usage of English will be a most inadequate guide. It would, for instance, never lead us to suspect the necessity of such a mood in such sentences as “he was so injured that he *died*,” “it happened that he *was* absent,” “I fear that you *are* deceiving me,” “tell me why you *did* this,” “he said that the man who *did* this should die,” “he is one who *will* never fail to do his duty;” yet these are among the most obvious constructions in which the use of the subjunctive is required in Latin.

i. Thus the **Indicative** mood is so called because it simply points out (*indicat*) a connexion or agreement between a subject and predicate. In itself it does nothing more than this, and is quite neutral and colourless, so to speak ; but it is capable of being joined with other words which may greatly qualify the meaning which the verb itself conveys. Thus *valet*, "he is well ;" fortasse *valet*, "perhaps he is well" (uncertainty) ; si *valet*, "if he is well" (contingency) ; non *valet*, "he is not well" (denial) ; and the addition of a particle in Latin, or an inversion of the order in English, or even the mere tone in which the verb is pronounced, may without any alteration of its form (for there is no interrogative mood in either Latin or English) enable it to ask a question, that is, to suggest instead of stating the agreement between the two essential elements of every sentence, the subject and the predicate. (Intr. 61, 62.) *Valet ? valetne ?* "he is well ?" "is he well ?"

ii. The **Imperative** mood is a form assumed by the verb to mark that the agreement between the subject and predicate is not *stated* or *suggested* but *commanded* or *willed* : *aude, audete*, "dare thou," "dare ye."

iii. The difference between these two moods is clear ; and it has already (94, note 1) been explained that the **Infinitive** mood is hardly in the strict sense a mood at all, being properly the verb used as a substantive, as, *sedere*, "the act of sitting ;" it is however very widely used in Latin as the mood of indirect assertion. (See 31.)

iv. The **Subjunctive** is the mood which gives rise to the greatest difficulty in the study of Latin. Its use in that language is constant and manifold, while it hardly exists in modern English (see note, p. 116). Nor will its name (*modus subjunctivus* or *conjunctivus*) be a sufficient guide, for though so called on account of its being found principally in subordinate clauses, yet such clauses often require the use of the indicative, and the use of the subjunctive, as will be shown shortly, is by no means confined to them.

It perhaps was originally used as a separate form in order to add, to the simple statement made by the indicative, some further idea of *uncertainty* or *contingency*. Hence its use in Latin to express, not a fact which we *indicate*, but something which we regard rather as a mere conception of the mind, as that which we purpose or wish to be a fact, or which we refer to as the result of another fact, or as stated on other authority than our own ; and in this way it is used in Latin in a large number of sentences in which the use of any special mood would never occur to any one who was acquainted only with English.

. These remarks will illustrate the term "modal verb" used above (42), and will be of use to those who wish to understand the meaning of the term Mood ; but the following Exercise will be confined to the points stated in 148-153.

148. The Latin subjunctive is mainly used in certain classes of subordinate or *subjoined* clauses : hence its name

(*subjunctivus*). But it is also used both in simple sentences, and in the main clause of a compound sentence, either to make a *statement* (a.), or to ask a *question* (b.), or to express a *command* or *desire* (c.).

149. (a.) **The subjunctive makes a statement:** but it does this in a hesitating and uncertain manner; in what is sometimes called the "potential" mood, or *modus dubitativus*, formed in English by the auxiliaries "may," "might," "would," "could," "should."

It is thus used in the present, perfect, and imperfect tenses:

i. In the first person:—

Hoc dicere ausim. This I *would* venture to say.

Vix crediderim. I *can* scarce believe.

Hoc affirmaverim. This I *would* or *may* assert.

It appears as a polite form (Gk. θέλωμ' ἄν), in *velim*, *nolim*, joined, when the wish applies to another person, not with the infinitive, but with another subjunctive without *ut*.

Velim adsis. I wish, or could wish, you *were* here (pres.).

Vellem adesses. I could have wished you *had been* here (used of *continuous* time in the past, or a *vain* wish in the present).

Hoc facias velim. { I wish you would } do this, or please do
{ I would have you } this. (See 141.)

Vellem adfuisses. I could have wished you had been there (once for all).

ii. In the second person:—

Credas, crederes. You (that is *any one*, no definite person) would believe, would have believed. (This is a common way of expressing "it seems, seemed as though".)

iii. In the third person:—

Dicat (or dixerit) aliquis or quispiam. Some one *may* say, *i.e.* "may perhaps say."

In all these cases we may supply a suppressed condition,—“if I were allowed,” “if you should ask me,” and the like.

150. (b.) The subjunctive also asks a question.

Quis credat? Who would believe? (a virtual negative.)
Hoc tu dicere audeas? Would you dare to say this?
 (astonishment.)

So when perplexity or hesitation is implied (*modus deliberativus*, probably an interrogative form of the jussive use, 151).

Quid faciam? What am I to do?

Quid faceret? What was he to do?

Note that these are "rhetorical questions," i.e. they are not asked for information; but either imply a negative answer, "no one will believe," and are virtual negatives (see 130), or are asked in mere doubt or perplexity, implying often, "I have," or "he had, no resource."

If the question were asked for information, the Latin would be *quid mihi faciendum est?* *quid ei faciendum fuit?*

151. (c.) The subjunctive also is largely used in a jussive sense, to express a wish or desire. It is thus used with or without *utinam*; the negative wish is expressed by *ne*.

Quod Di bene vertant! And may the Gods bring this to a good issue!

Quod utinam ne faciatis! And may you never do this!

Ne hic diutius cunctemur. Let us not linger any longer here.

(See 144.) (For *ne credideris*, "do not believe;" *abeat*, "let him go," see 142 and 144.)

152. *Utinam* can be also used, like *vellem*, with the past: *Utinam hoc fecerit!* "May he have done this!" But it generally, as is natural with wishes about the past, expresses a vain wish, and is so used with the imperf. and pluperf. subjunctive.

Utinam adesset, "would he *had been* present," contemporaneously with some event in past time; or, continuously and extending (often) up to the present moment, "would he *were* present."

Utinam adfuisset, "would he *had been* present" (once for all).

153. It is important to remember that Latin often uses the indicative where in English we use the compound potential or subjunctive mood.

Longum est. It would be tedious.

Satius, or, *melius est, fuit.* It would be, would have been, better.

Quisquis, quicumque es. Whoever thou be (subj.).

So also, the indicative is used with modal verbs, *possum, debeo*, etc.

Possum hoc facere. I might do this.

Potui hoc facere. I might have done this.

Hoc debuisti facere. You should (or ought to) have done this.

The possibility or duty is *asserted* by the indicative; though it is implied at the same time that the action expressed by the verb in the infinitive did not take place.

Obs.—In English, in speaking of past time we constantly say, "It would have been better to have done this," where we should more correctly say, "to do this." The present infinitive is used in Latin: *melius fuit hoc facere*.

Exercise 19.

1. This at least I would venture to say, that as¹ I was the first to urge you to undertake this work, so¹ I promise to be the last to advise you to abandon the undertaking. 2. What was I to do? said he, what to say? who would care to blame me because I refused to listen to such² abandoned men? 3. I would neither deny nor assert that he had looked forward to all this (*pl.*), but he should have provided against the country being overwhelmed by such disasters. 4. On that day my brother was reluctantly absent from the battle at your suggestion; would that he had been³ there! For it would have been better to have fallen on the field than to have submitted to such dishonour. 5. In return⁴ then for such acts of kindness I would have you not only feel but also show your gratitude. 6. I could have wished that you had sent me the best⁵ soldiers that you had with you. 7. The soldiers stood (*imperf.*) drawn up in line, eager for the fight,⁶ with⁷ eyes fixed on the foe, clamouring for the signal; it seemed as though they were waiting for a banquet. 8. I have consulted, as⁸ I ought to have done, your (*pl.*) interests rather than my own; may you not ever impute this to me as a fault!

¹ as . . . so, *et* . . . *et*.

² See 88.

³ Use *adsum*, 149, i.

⁴ *pro*, *abl.*

⁵ See 69.

⁶ Gerund, 99.

⁷ *Abl. abs.*, "their eyes being fixed."

⁸ See 67, *Obs.*

EXERCISE XX.

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

I. Direct (Single and Disjunctive).

154. Interrogative sentences may be divided into two classes, Direct and Indirect.

By the **direct question** we mean a question properly so called, such as is marked by the interrogative sign in English: "Is he gone?" "Are you well?"

These sentences differ from *statements* and *commands*, inasmuch as the connexion between the subject and the predicate is not *stated*, or *desired*, but only *suggested*.

Obs.—As there is no interrogative mood in either Latin or English, in direct questions (other than those *rhetorical* questions already (150) mentioned) the **indicative** mood is used, unless for some special reason.

155. In English we mark a question by the order of the words, and sometimes by the insertion of an auxiliary verb. Compare "*Saw ye?*" "*Is he well?*" "*Did you see?*" "*Will he come?*" with "*Ye saw;*" "*He is well;*" "*You saw;*" "*He will come;*" and in French "*Va-t-il?*" with "*Il va.*"

But in Latin, where the order of the words would have no such effect (Intr. 87), questions are usually asked by the interrogative particles *-nē* (enclitic, Intr. 98, *note*), *num*, *utrum*, *an*, or by interrogative *pronouns* or pronominal *adverbs*.

There is sometimes no definite word which marks that the speaker is putting a question. The tone, manner, and gesture of the speaker supply what in ordinary language is expressed by certain words.

(a.) *-nē* is used in questions that ask simply for information, and to which the answer may be either "yes" or "no."

Scribitne Caius? Is Caius writing? (The person who asks the question does not expect one answer more than another.)

(b.) *Num*¹ expects the answer "no."

Num putas? Do you fancy? = Surely you don't fancy?
(expected answer "no".)

(c.) *Nonne* expects the answer "yes."

Nonne putas? Don't you fancy? = Surely you do fancy?
(expected answer "yes".)

156. *Nē* is always attached to the emphatic word.

Praetoremne accusas? Is it a Praetor whom you are accusing?

Mene fugis? Is it from me that you are flying?

Here, as often, the English expresses emphasis by a separate clause, of which the emphatic word is the predicate, and "it" the subject; the rest of the sentence being thrown into an adjectival clause explanatory of "it."

157. Other interrogative words are either (i.) Pronouns, or (ii.) Interrogative Particles.

Notice that pronouns are used either as substantives or as adjectives, i.e. as attached to substantives.

Quid fecit? What has he done?

Quod facinus admisit? What crime has he committed?

Also that for interrogative particles² a phrase or combination of words is often substituted: thus *quemadmodum?* "in what manner?" = *quid?* "how?"

The following is a list of Interrogative Pronouns and Particles:—

(i.) PRONOUNS—

Quis? *quisnam?* *quid?* *quidnam?* who? what?

Quantum? how much? (followed by *genitive*,
quantum temporis? how much time?)

Qui? what? *Quot?* how many? *Uter?* which of the two?

Qualis? of what kind?

Quantus? how great?

Quot? how many?

¹ *Num* is properly "now" (*nunc*): compare *tum* and *tunc*.

² These particles are in fact *adverbs*, inasmuch as they qualify the sense in which the verb is used, forming a substitute for an interrogative mood (see 147, note i.); when used to connect a dependent with a principal clause they assume the nature of *conjunctions*. (See Intr. 25, 26.)

PRONOUNS—continued.

Quotus? one of how many? (answer "third," "fourth," etc.)

Num quis, qua, quid (subst.)? *num qui, quae, quod* (adj.)? *ecquis?* any?

(ii.) PARTICLES—

Ubi? where? *Unde?* whence? *Quo?* whither?

Cur? *quare?** *quamobrem?** why? wherefore?

Quâ? how? (often in the phrase *quâ fit ut?*)

Quam? how? (with adj. and adv.)

Quomodo? *quemadmodum?** how? in what manner?

Quantum? *quantopere?* how much?

Quando? when? (never *quum*.) *Quoties?* how often?

Quamdiu? *quousque?* how long? how far?

Cur non? *quin?* why not? how not?

Obs.—The adverb *tandem* (lit. "at last") is often joined with interrogatives in the sense of "tell me," "(who) in the world," "I ask," etc.

Quousque tandem. To what point, I ask?

Quae tandem causa. What possible cause?

Disjunctive Questions.

158. A direct question may be put in another form. In English two or more **alternative** questions may be combined by the disjunctive conjunction *or* (see Intr. 56) so that an affirmative answer to the one negatives the other or others.

"Are you going to Germany, *or* (are you going) to Italy, *or* to France?"

These are called *alternative*, or *disjunctive*, or *double* questions.

We have here two or more simple sentences joined together by *co-ordination*. (See Intr. 74, 75.)

In English the first question has no interrogative particle (*whether* being obsolete in *direct* questions), the second and any further are introduced by "*or*," which however is sometimes, where the verb is suppressed, confined to the last.

"Did you mean me, *or* think of yourself, *or* refer to some one else?"

"Did you mean me, him, *or* yourself?"

* Words with an asterisk are mostly confined to *indirect* questions.

159. In Latin the **interrogative nature** of the first question will be indicated by *utrum*, or the appended “-ne;” in the second, or any further question, the “or” will be translated by *an*; never by *aut* or *vel*.

Utrum hostem, an ducem, an vosmet ipsos culpatis? Is it the enemy, or your general, or yourselves that you blame?

Servine estis, an liberi? Are you slaves or freemen?

But in such questions there is frequently, as in English, no interrogative particle in the first question, and *or* is translated by *an*, or (more rarely by) the enclitic -*nē*.

Herum vidisti, an ancillam? Did you see the master or the maid?

Hoc, illudne fecisti? Did you do this or that?

“Or not?” in a direct question should be translated by *an non*?

Ivitne, an non? Did he go, or not?

160. The forms for these double questions are:—

1. *utrum*, *an, an non?*
2. *-ne*, *an?*
3. ——— *anne?*

(The *line* means that the first particle is omitted.)

Num is occasionally used for *utrum* where a negative answer is expected.

161. *An* is sometimes found before a single question. But there is always an *ellipsis*, or suppression of a previous question, so that *an* means “or is it that?” “can it be that?” and hence generally expects the answer “no.”

An servi esse vultis? Or is it that you wish to be slaves?

Answers to Questions.

162. The affirmative and negative answer is rarely given in Latin so simply as by the English “yes” and “no.”

Sometimes “yes” may be turned by *etiam, ita vero*; and “no” by *minime, nequaquam, non*.

But more often some emphatic word is repeated from the interrogative sentence; such a question as *dasne hoc mihi?* would be answered by *do; do vero, ac libenter quidem*

(= "yes"): or by *minime ego quidem* (= "no"), much more often than by *etiam*, or *minime* simply.

Visne hoc facere? velle se, nolle se, *respondit*. Are you ready to do this? he answered "yes," "no."

Num hoc fecisti? Have you then done this? *Negat*.

He answers "no." *Feci, inquit*. He answers "yes."

Sometimes *ait* is used as opposed to *negat*.

Exercise 20.

1. Is it possible for a true patriot to refuse to obey the law¹? 2. Where, said he, did you come from, and whither and when do you intend² to start hence? 3. Can we help fearing that your brother will go away into exile with reluctance? 4. What crime, what enormity, has my client³ committed, what falsehood has he told, what, in short, has he either said or done that you, gentlemen of the jury, should be ready to inflict on him either death or exile by your verdict? 5. Will any one venture to assert that he was condemned in his absence in order to prevent his pleading his cause at home, or impressing the jury by his eloquence? 6. Was it by force of arms, or by judgment, courage, and good sense, that Rome was able to dictate terms to the rest of the world? 7. Does it seem⁴ to you that death is an eternal sleep, or the beginning of another life? 8. Are you ready to show yourselves men of courage, such as the country looks for in such a crisis as this? you answer "yes"; or are you ceasing to wish to be called Roman soldiers? "no," you all reply. 9. Do you believe that the character of your countrymen is altering for the better, or for the worse? 10. Whom am I to defend? whom am I to accuse? how much longer shall I pretend to be in doubt? was it (156) by accident or design that this murder was committed? 11. What am I to believe? that the enemy or that our men won the day yesterday? Do not tell more falsehoods on such⁵ an important question. 12. Was he not a prophet of such a kind that no one ever believed⁶ him?

¹ Ex. ix. p. 72, note 2.

³ Simply *hic*, this man by me: never *clients*.

⁶ Use perf., not imperf.: the fact is summed up. (See 116.)

² Fut. in -*re*.

⁴ See 43. *no*.

EXERCISE XXI.

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES—Continued.

II. Dependent or Indirect.

163. The **dependent question** is a *subordinate clause* introduced by an interrogative word (either a pronoun or conjunction), and connected by that interrogative word with the main clause.

Quis es? who are you? *cur hoc fecisti?* why have you done this? are direct questions, and each is a simple sentence.

But *rogo quis sit*, I ask who he is; *dic mihi cur hoc feceris*, tell me why you did this, are two compound sentences. Neither taken as a whole is a question: the first is a *statement*, the second a *command*; but each contains an indirect question, *i.e.* a subordinate substantival clause, answering to an accusative case after *rogo* and *dic*, introduced in the one case by the interrogative pronoun *quis*, in the other by the interrogative conjunction *cur*.

164. The Latin verb in such subordinate clauses is **invariably in the subjunctive**. It is of the utmost importance to remember this, as the subjunctive mood is no longer used in such clauses in English.

Compare the English and Latin moods in—

Quis eum occidit? Who killed him?

Quis eum occiderit, *quaero*. I ask who killed him.

165. The dependent interrogative clause is recognised by an interrogative word introducing it (see list in 157); but the **principal verb** or clause on which it depends need not be at all of an interrogative character.

Quid faciendum sit moneo moneboque. I warn and will warn you what you ought to do.

Quando esset rediturus metui. I had fears as to when he would return.

Cur haec fecerit miror. I wonder why he did this.

The words in the Latin marked in italics are *interrogative* clauses; for they are connected with the main clause by the interrogative pronoun *quid* and by the interrogative adverbs, used here as conjunctions, *quando* and *cur*; but neither *moneo*, *metuo*, nor *miror* are verbs of asking.

166. Thus the dependent question may follow not only a wide range of verbs but also many phrases, such as *incertum est*; *incredibile est*; *difficile dictu est* (it is hard to say); *magni refert* (it is of great consequence), and many others.

167. A dependent question in English is constantly introduced by the conjunctions "if" and "whether;" but *si* and *sive* are never used in Latin to introduce an interrogative clause.

"If" and "whether" are represented in a single indirect question by *-ne* and *num*, occasionally by *nonne*.

Num in the *indirect* question does not, as in the *direct*, imply the answer "no" (but *nonne* still suggests an affirmative answer).

Epaminondas quaesivit salvusne esset clipeus. Epaminondas asked *whether* his shield was safe.

Dic mihi num eadem quae ego sentias. Tell me *if* you have the same opinion as I.

Quaesieras ex me, nonne putarem, etc. You had inquired of me *whether* I did not suppose, etc.

Disjunctive Interrogatives.

168. The form of the *disjunctive* question is very much the same in dependent as in independent questions. The important difference is the substitution of the *subjunctive* for the *indicative mood*.

Thus, *utrum servi estis an liberi?* are you slaves or free men? will be altered into, *utrum servi sitis an liberi, nihil refert*; it matters not *whether* you are slaves or free; and in the dependent clause we may substitute for *utrum* . . . *an* such forms as

Servinē sitis, an liberi,

Servi sitis, an liberi,

Servi sitis, liberinē,

without any difference of meaning.

Obs.—"Or not," "or no" (*annon* in *direct*), should be turned by *necne* in *indirect* questions.

Iturus sit, necne, rogabimus. We will ask *whether or not* he means to go.

169. Notice that *an* is in indirect, as in direct, questions confined to the second place, and answers to "or," which is never to be translated, when used interrogatively, by *aut*, *vel*, or *seu*.

In the phrases *haud scio an*, *forsitan* (*fors sit an*), there is a suppression of a first clause: "I know not," "it is a chance" (*whether something else is the case*), or *whether* (*rather*) . . . Both are equivalent to "perhaps," and both are followed by the *subjunctive*.

Difficile hoc est, tamen haud¹ scio an fieri possit. This is difficult, yet *perhaps* (*I incline to think that*) it is possible.

But *nescio quis* (subs.), *nescio qui* (adj.), "Some one (or other);" *nescio quo modo*, or *quo pacto* (adv.), "Somehow," are taken as single words, and do not affect the mood of the verb; *accurrit nescio quis*, *some one* runs up. (See Pronouns, 362.)

170. *Forte* is not "perhaps" but "by accident," and is only used for "perchance" after *si*, *nisi*, *ne*.

Forte cecidit is "he fell by chance," not "*perhaps* he fell."

Forte abest, "he is accidentally absent" (*indicative*).

Forsitan absit, "*perhaps, it may be that, he is absent*" (*subjunctive*).

Nescio, or *haud scio an*, *absit*, "*perhaps* (*I incline to think that*) he is absent" (*subjunctive*).

Fortasse abest, "*perhaps* (*it is likely that*) he is absent" (*indicative*).

171. The double use in English of "if," "whether," and "or," must be carefully borne in mind.

Si,² *sive*, *seu*, *aut*,³ *vel*, must never be used as *interrogatives* in Latin.

(a.) You shall die *if* (conditional) you do this. *Moriere si haec feceris* (fut. perf. ind.).

(b.) I ask *if* (interrogative) you did this. *Num haec feceris* (subj.) *rogo*.

(c.) He shall go, *whether* he likes it *or* no (alternative condition). *Seu vult seu nonvult, ibit*.

(d.) I ask *whether* he likes it *or* no (alternative question). *Utrum velit an nolit rogo*.

(e.) He is *either* a wise man *or* a fool (disjunctive sentence). *Aut sapiens est aut stultus*.

¹ *Haud* is mostly used with *scio* and with adjectives and adverbs in the sense of "far from," when a negative idea is substituted for a positive, as *haud difficilis* for *facilis*, etc.

² For the special use of *si*, "in hopes that," after *expecto*, *conor*, and similar verbs, see Conditional Clauses, 474.

³ For the difference between *aut* and *vel*, see Intr. 57, note.

(f.) I don't know *whether* he is a wise man or a fool.
Utrum sapiens sit an stultus nescio.

Obs.—In (a.) and (c.) “if,” “whether,” introduce *adverbial* clauses merely qualifying the main clause by adding a condition (Intr. 82). In (e.) “either,” “or,” introduce two *co-ordinate* sentences. In (b.), (d.), (f.), “whether,” “or,” introduce *substantival* clauses, equivalent in Latin to accusative cases after *rogo* and *nescio*.

Exercise 21.

1. Whether Caesar was rightfully put to death, or foully murdered, is open to question; it¹ is allowed by all that he was killed on the 15th² of March by Brutus and Cassius and the rest of the conspirators. 2. It is still uncertain whether our men have won the day or no; but whether they have won or lost it, I am certain that they have neither been false to their allies nor to their country. 3. It is hard to say whether he injured the world³ or benefited it most; it is unquestionable that he was a man, alike in his ability (*abl.*) as in his achievements, such as we are never (Intr. 92) likely to see in this world. 4. It is scarcely credible how often you and I have advised that (friend) of yours⁴ not⁵ to break his word; but it⁶ seems likely that we shall lose our labour to-morrow, as yesterday and the day before. 5. Be sure you write me word when the king intends⁷ to start for⁸ the army; he is perhaps lingering purposely in order to raise an army and increase his resources; I am afraid he will not⁹ effect this,¹⁰ for people are either alarmed or disaffected. 6. Some one has warned me not to forget how much you once injured me in my boyhood: whether you did so (this) or no matters little; what¹¹ is of importance to me is whether you are ready to be my friend now. 7. As¹² he felt himself sinking (*inf.*) under a severe wound, he asked first if his shield was safe; they answered yes; secondly, if the enemy had been routed; they replied in the affirmative. 8. They asked if it was not better to die than to live dishonourably. 9. He was the dearest to me of my soldiers, and perhaps the bravest of (them) all.

¹ *Illud*, i.e. “the following.”

⁴ See 11, *d.*

⁵ See 118.

⁹ See 138.

¹⁰ Relative.

² *Idibus Martiis.*

⁶ See 43.

⁷ 14, *c.*

³ 16, *b.*

⁸ *Ad.*

¹¹ Lit., the following (*illud*)

¹² *Quum* with imperf. subj.

is of importance.

EXERCISE XXII.

DEPENDENT INTERROGATIVE—Continued.

Mood and Tense.—Interrogative Clauses for English Nouns.

172. Sometimes the Latin verb in the interrogative clause is already in the subjunctive; in this case no change will take place in the mood, even if we convert the *direct* into the *indirect* question.

Quid facerem? What was I to do? (See 150.)

*Quid facerem dubitari.*¹ I was at a loss what to do.

In such cases the *subjunctive* answers to the English *infinitive* after an interrogative word.

Quid faciam, quando redeam, dubito. I am at a loss what to do, when to return.

173. The use of the *tenses* in (dependent) interrogative clauses will cause little difficulty.

(i.) The *perfect subjunctive* is exceedingly common to express simple past time in such clauses.

Quid causae fuerit postridie intellexi. I perceived the day after what *was* the cause (lit. "for a cause").

(ii.) But the *imperfect* must be used if the time denoted by the dependent verb is strictly contemporaneous with that of the principal verb.

Quid facerent intellexi. I perceived what they *were* doing. (See 185.)

(iii.) As the only *future subjunctive* in Latin is that formed by the future in *-rus*, "I ask when he *will* return" is, *quando sit rediturus rogo*; "I asked when he would return" is, *quando esset rediturus rogavi*.

The future in *-rus* expresses also the ideas of *likelihood*, *intention*, etc. (See 14, c.)

The following remarks require careful attention both in writing Latin and in translating from Latin.

¹ *Quid faciendum esset* would differ slightly as expressing less perplexity, and somewhat more of deliberation.

174. Dependent interrogative clauses introduced by *quis* (*qui*), *qualis*, *quantus*, *quot*, *quando*, *cur*, etc., are very often used in Latin where in English we use a single word, such as *nature*, *character*, *amount*, *size*, *number*, *date*, *object*, *origin*, *motive*, etc.

Latin does not use nearly so many abstract terms as English. Thus—

- (a.) *Quot essent hostes, cur¹ advenerint, quantas haberent opes, quando domo profecti essent, rogavit* (note carefully the *tenses*). He asked the *number* of the enemy, the *reason* of their having come, the *magnitude* of their resources, the *date* of their departure from home.
- (b.) *Quale ac quantum sit periculum demonstrat.* He explains the *nature* and *extent* of the danger.
- (c.) *Qualis sit, quemadmodum senex vivat, videtis.* You see the *kind* of man he is, his *manner* of life in his old age. (63.)
- (d.) *Haec res quo evasura sit, expecto.* I am waiting to see the *issue* of this matter.
- (e.) *Quam repentinum sit hoc malum intellego, unde ortum sit nescio.* I perceive the *suddenness* of this danger, its *source* I know not.

This is only one of the many instances where Latin prefers simple and direct modes of expression to the more abstract and general forms of noun with which we are familiar in English. (See 54.)

175. For the same reason, as well as from a lack of substantives in Latin to express *classes* of persons, and also of verbal substantives denoting *agents*, such English substantives must often be translated into Latin by a relative or adjectival clause. Thus:—

“Politicians,” *qui in republica versantur*; “students,” *qui literis dant operam*; “my father’s murderers,” *qui patrem meum occiderunt*; “my well-wishers,” *qui me salvum volunt*; “the government,” *qui reipublicae praesunt*; “his predecessors on the throne,” *qui ante eum regnaverant*.

For the use or omission of *ei* with this use of *qui* see 71.

176. The difference between these two kinds of dependent clause, the *relative* (or adjectival) and the *interrogative*, will be marked by

¹ In indirect clauses *cur* may be used; but *quare*, *quamobrem*, *quod ob causam*, are more common; and *quemadmodum* almost always takes the place of *quomodo*.

the use of the *indicative* in the one, the *subjunctive* in the other. Thus—

- (a.) *Hi sunt qui patrem tuum occiderunt.* These are your father's murderers.

Here the relative *qui* introduces an *adjectival* clause, used, as adjectives sometimes are, as a substitute for a substantive. (See 51.)

- (b.) *Qui patrem suum occiderint, nescit.* He knows not who were his father's murderers.

Here the interrogative *qui* (pl. of *quis*) introduces one of the three kinds of substantival clause (Intr. 80), viz., the dependent question; the mood therefore is the subjunctive. (See 164.) So—

- (a.) *Quae vere sentio dicam,* I will utter my real sentiments; here *quae* is a relative:

- (b.) *Quae vere sentiam dicam,* I will tell you what are my real sentiments;

here *quae* is interrogative.

The substantival nature of the dependent interrogative will explain why it generally comes before the main clause. (See Intr. 100.)

Exercise 22.

1. I am waiting to see what is the meaning of this crowd, what will be the issue of the uproar. 2. I wish¹ you would explain to me his manner of life in boyhood; I know pretty well the kind of man that he is now. 3. We perceived well enough that danger was at hand; of its source, nature, character, and extent, we were ignorant. 4. Do but reflect on the greatness of your debt to your country and your forefathers; remember who you are and the position that you occupy. 5. I knew not (*imperf.*) whither to turn, what to do, how to inflict punishment on my brother's murderers. 6. The doer of the deed I know not, but whoever he was,² he shall be punished. 7. The reason of politicians not agreeing with the commanders of armies is pretty clear. 8. I wonder who were the bringers of this message, whether (they were) the same as the perpetrators of the crime or no. 9. He was superior to all his predecessors on the throne in ability; but he did not perceive the character of the man who was destined to be his successor. 10. The government was aware of the suddenness of the danger, but they did not suspect its magnitude and probable³ duration.

¹ 149, i.

² Mood? (See 153.)

³ 173, iii.

EXERCISE XXIII.

REMARKS ON TENSES.

177. The Latin tenses are generally divided into **Primary** and **Secondary**.

(a.) **Primary** tenses are those in which the point of time taken as the standard by which we reckon is the *present*, the moment at which we are speaking :

(Simultaneous) *scribo*, "I write," "am writing," *at* the present moment.

(Past) *scripsi*, "I have written," *before* the present moment (true perfect).

(Future) *scribam*, "I shall write," *after* the present moment.

(b.) In **Secondary** tenses (called also **Historic**, from their constant use in history or narrative) the standard of comparison is some point in *past* time :

(Simultaneous) *scribebam*, "I was writing *contemporaneously* with some time in the past.

(Past) *scripseram*, "I had written," *before* some point in the past.

(Indefinite, or aorist) *scripsi*, "I wrote," at some time or other in the past.

Obs.—It will be seen that the Latin *scripsi* belongs to both divisions ; also that it is not easy to fix its place under (b.). It is sometimes explained as denoting an event that *follows something else* that happened in the past.

A third division might be introduced by taking as the standard of comparison a point in *future* time :—

(Simultaneous) *scribam*, "I shall *be* writing."

(Past) *scripsero*, "I shall *have* written."

(Future) *scripturus ero*, "I shall *be going* to write."

The Present.

178. The Latin present tense corresponds to two forms of the English present ; *scribo*—"I write," and also "I am writing."

179. As in English, but far more commonly in Latin, the *present* tense is often in an animated narrative substituted for the *past*.

This *Historical present* is often in the best Latin writers intermingled with past (aorist) tenses ; and is even followed as a historic tense by the imperfect subjunctive.

Subito edicunt Consules ut ad suum vestitum Senatores redirent.

The Consuls suddenly *publish* (=published) an edict, that the Senators *were to* return to their usual dress.

The present, when thus used, may be followed either by the *present subjunctive* (according to the general rule for the sequence of tenses) or by the *imperfect subjunctive* (as being itself *virtually* a past tense). (See 104.) The latter is quite as common as the former. In English we should either say "published," or alter "were to" into "are to."

180. In describing the past, the conjunction *dum*, "while," is constantly used with a *historical present* even when all the surrounding tenses are in past time.

Dum Romani tempus terunt, Saguntum obsidebatur.

While the Romans *were* wasting time, Saguntum was being besieged.

This idiom is almost invariable where the *dum*-clause represents, as here, a *longer period within which* the other event is comprised.

181. To express "*I have been doing a thing for a long time*," the Romans said, "*I am doing it for a long time already*." The Greeks and French have the same idiom.¹

Jam pridem (or *jampridem*) cupio. *I have long desired.*

Vocat me alio jam dudum (or *jamdudum*) *tacita vestra expectatio.* Your silent expectation *has* for some time *been calling* me to another point.

So also they used the Imperfect for our "had (long) been."

Copiae quas diu comparabant. Forces which they *had long been collecting.*

182. The present is used sometimes, but far less widely than in English, in an *anticipative* sense for the future.

Hoc nū propere fit. Unless this *is* done at once.

Antequam dicere incipio. Before I *begin* to speak.

But see below (190).

The Imperfect.

183. This tense is used far more widely in Latin than the English compound tense "I was doing," etc.

It denotes a time contemporaneous with some period, or surrounding, as it were, some point, in past time, and hence it has various meanings.

It is the tense of *continuous* or *incomplete*, as opposed to *momentary*, or *completed* action.

¹ πάλαι λέγω ; Depuis longtemps je parle.

It is the tense of *description* as opposed to mere *narrative* or *statement*.

Thus it is often used to describe the circumstances, or feelings, which accompany the main fact as stated by the verb in the (aorist) perfect :—

Caesar armis rem gerere constituit, videbat enim inimicorum in dies majorem fieri exercitum, reputabatque, etc.

We should use the same tense in all three verbs ; *resolved, saw, reflected* ; but the two last explain the *continued* feeling which accounted for the *single fact* of his decision.

184. For the same reason, the imperfect often expresses ideas equivalent to "*began to*," "*proceeded to*," "*continued to*," "*tried to*," "*were in the habit of*," "*used to*," "*were wont to*," sometimes even to the English "*would*." It must therefore often be used where we loosely use *the* (aorist) *past tense*, and we must always ask ourselves the precise meaning of the English past tense before we translate it.

Barbari saxa ingentia devolvebant. The barbarians *began to* (or *proceeded to*) roll down huge stones.

Stabat imperator immotus. The general *continued to* stand motionless (or *was seen to stand*, as if in a picture).

Haec fere pueri discebamus. When we were boys we *used to* learn (or *we learned*) something of this kind.

Hujusmodi homines adolescens admirabar. These were the men whom I *admired* (or *would admire*) in my youth.

185. This meaning of the imperfect extends to the subjunctive mood, and must be kept in mind in translating subordinate clauses.

"I asked why he did it" is generally *cur id fecerit quaesivi*. (See 173.) But if we mean "*why he was doing it then*" we must say *cur id faceret quaesivi*.

It will also explain the difference between the imperfect and perfect subjunctive after *ut* consecutive. (See 113.)

These different shades of meaning as regards past time are rarely distinguished in English.

186. What is called the *Historic Infinitive* is often used as a substitute for the imperfect, especially when a *series of actions* is described, and is always joined with the nominative.

Interim quotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum, . . . flagitare ; . . . diem ex die ducere Aedui . . . dicere, etc. (Caesar, *de B. G.* i. 16.) Meanwhile Caesar *was* daily *importuning* the Aedui for provisions ; they *kept putting off* day after day, asserting, etc.

The Perfect.

187. The **Latin perfect** represents two English tenses. (See 105, 177.) *Feci* is both "I did," and "I have done."

"I did" is the *preterite* or *aorist*. It is the ordinary tense used in simply narrating or mentioning a past event.

"I have done" is the true *perfect*, or tense of *completed action*. It represents an act as past in itself; but in its *result* as coming down to the present. "I *have been* young, and now am old." We should say of a recent event, with the result still fresh on the mind, "My friend has been killed;" we should not say, "Cain has killed Abel."

In Latin the same word *dixi* may mean "I have spoken," i.e. "I have finished my speech," or "I spoke." *Vixerunt*, "they lived," or "they have lived," i.e. "are now dead."

The context will generally make it quite clear in which sense the Latin tense is used.

Obs.—The English auxiliary *am, are, etc.*, with a passive verb, may mislead. "All *are* slain" may be either *occisi sunt*, or *occiduntur*, according to the context.

188. Sometimes the verb *habeo*, "I have," or "possess," is used, especially with verbs of knowledge, etc., in combination with a participle in a use approaching that of the English auxiliary "have."

Hoc compertum, cognitum, exploratum habeo. I have found out, ascertained, made sure of this.

Hunc hominem jamdiu notum habeo. I have known this man long.

Future.

189. Latin differs exceedingly from English in the use of the future. It has **three future tenses**:—*scribam, scripsero, scripturus sum*.

Fut. i. *Scribam* is properly, I shall *be writing* (at some time in the future).

Fut. ii. *Scripsero*, I shall *have written* (before some time in the future).

Fut. iii. *Scripturus sum*, I am *about to, or likely to, write; intending to, etc.* (See 14, c.)

Obs.—Fut. i. and iii. are both represented in the subjunctive mood by the future in *-rus*, Fut. ii. by the perfect subjunctive *scripserim*.

We must carefully distinguish between Fut. i. and ii. in all subordinate clauses where the principal verb is in the future.

190. A **Latin future** is constantly to be substituted for the English loosely-used present.

There was no true future in Old English, and we are obliged to use the auxiliaries *shall* and *will*. We still say, "I *return* home to-morrow," for "*cras domum redibo*," or "*rediturus sum*."

(i.) An English *present* tense after *relatives*, or "*when*," "*if*," "*as long as*," "*before*," etc., is to be translated by a *future perfect*, when the action expressed by it is still *future*, but *prior* to something still more future.

Si te rogavero aliquid, nonne respondebis? If I *put* any question to you, will you not answer?

Quum Tullius rure redierit, mittam eum ad te. When Tullius *returns* from the country, I will send him to you.

Quodcunque imperatum erit, fiet. Whatever is ordered shall be done.

The Latin idiom is correct, as the one action must, though now future, be completed (*future perfect*) before the other begins.

(ii.) When the two actions or states are *simultaneous*, but still future, the Latin Future i. is used for an English present.

Dum hic ero te amabo. As long as I *am* here I shall love you.

Facito hoc, ubi voles. Do this when you *please*.

Tum, qui poterunt, veniant. Then let those come who *have* the power.

Obs.—Sometimes the English perfect is used for the Latin future perfect.

Quae quum fecero, Romam ibo. When I *have* done this, I shall go to Rome.

191. This **future perfect**, though rarely met with in the form "shall have" in ordinary English, is exceedingly common in Latin. It is sometimes found even in the principal clause as a substitute for the first future.

Respiravero, si te videro. If once I have seen (*or* see) you, I shall breathe freely: lit. *shall have* breathed; implying that the relief will be instantaneous.

For *videro, viderint*, see 146.

Pluperfect.

192. The pluperfect does not differ materially from the corresponding English tense, "I *had* done, or seen," etc.

But it is used in Latin after relatives and conjunctions to denote *frequency* or *repetition* in past tense.

Quum eo venerat, loco delectabatur. As often as he came there, he was charmed with the situation.

Quos viderat ad se vocabat. Whomever he saw he summoned to him.

For the use of these *imperfects* see 184.

Tenses of the Infinitive.

193. (i.) In the infinitive mood the *present* (*laudare*, etc.) answers to both the *present* and *imperfect* of the indicative.

It expresses time *contemporaneous* with that of the verb on which it depends.

Dico, or dixi, me otiosum esse. I say, or said, that I *am*, or *was*, at leisure. (See 35.)

(ii.) The *perfect* infinitive (*scripsisse*) answers to the *aorist perfect*, *true perfect*, and *pluperfect*, of the indicative.

It denotes time *prior* to that of the verb on which it depends.

Dico me otiosum fuisse. I say that I *was*, *have been*, *had been* at leisure.

The context must decide between the three meanings.

(iii.) The *future* infinitive is formed by the participle in *-rus*.

Dicit, dixit se venturum esse. He says, said, that he *will* or *would* come.

Where there is no participle in *-rus*, and in the passive voice, the periphrasis of *fore ut* must be used.

Spero fore ut convalescat, fore ut urbs capiatur. I hope that he *will* get well, that the city *will* be taken.

Speravi fore ut convalesceret, fore ut urbs caperetur. I hoped that he *would* get well, that the city *would* be taken.

(iv.) With *passive* verbs the place of the missing *future infinitive* is often supplied by the supine in *-um*, with the impersonal infinitive *iri*.

Credidit urbem expugnatum iri. He believed (lit. that *there was a going* (Intr. 42) to take the city) that the city *would be taken*.

Urbem is governed by the supine which has an active force, and is itself the accusative of *motion to*, after *iri*.

(v.) A *potential* future infinitive is formed for past time, thus:—

Credo hoc te facturum fuisse. I believe you *would have done this*.

Credo futurum fuisse ut urbs expugnaretur. I believe the city *would have been taken*.

194. As these remarks are somewhat long, it will be well before doing the exercise to study very carefully the use of the tenses in the following examples on the most important constructions.

1. *Dum haec inter se loquuntur, advesperascebat.*
2. *Jamdiu te expecto . . . expectabam.*
3. *Dixi, judices; vos, cum consedero, judicate.*
4. *Signum pugnandi datum est; stabant immoti milites, respicere, circumspicere; hostes quoque parumper cunctati sunt; mox signa inferre; et jam prope intra teli jactum aderant, cum subito in conspectum veniunt socii.*
5. *Si mihi pares, salvus eris.*
6. *Si mihi parebis, salvus eris.*
7. *Si mihi parueris, salvus eris.*
8. *Si hoc feceris, moriere.*
9. *Veniam, si potero.*
10. *Si hostem videro, vicero.*
11. *Tui, dum vivam, nunquam obliviscar.*
12. *Quemcunque ceperat trucidari jubebat.*
13. *Polliceor me, quum haec scripserim, redituum esse.*
14. *Pollicitus est se, quum haec scripsisset, redituum esse.*

Obs.—In the two last examples the 2d future indicative is represented by the *perfect* and *pluperfect* subjunctive; these two tenses represent its force in the subjunctive mood after present and past time respectively.

Exercise 23.

A.

1. I have long been anxious to know the reason of your being so afraid of the nation forgetting¹ you. 2. Both my father and I had for some time been anxious to ascertain your opinion on this question. 3. When you come to Marseilles, I wish² you would ask your brother the reason of my having received no letter from him. 4. My speech is over, gentlemen, and I have sat down, as³ you see of yourselves; do you decide on this question. For myself, I hope, and have long been hoping, that my client will be acquitted by your unanimous⁴ verdict. 5. While the Medes were making these preparations, the Greeks had already met at the Isthmus. 6. Up to extreme old age your father would learn something fresh daily. 7. As often as the enemy stormed a town belonging⁵ to this ill-starred race, they would spare none; women, children, old men, infants, were butchered, without⁶ any distinction being made either of age or sex.

B.

1. He promises to present the man⁷ who shall be the first to scale the wall, with a crown of gold.⁸ 2. When I have returned from Rome, I will tell you⁹ why I sent for you. 3. The Gauls had long been refusing¹⁰ either to go to meet our ambassadors, or to accept the terms which Caesar was offering. 4. Suddenly the enemy came to a halt, but while they¹¹ were losing time, our men raised¹² a cheer, and charged into the centre of the line of their

¹ 138.² See 149, i.³ See 67, *Obs.*⁴ See 59. The "your" may either agree with "verdict" or with "all."⁵ Genitive, = "of."⁶ Abl. abs., "no distinction made."⁷ See 72.⁸ See 58. In English we may use either the genitive, or "golden," or turn "gold" into an adjective, by placing it before "crown."⁹ Of course dative: "you" is the remoter object of "tell."¹⁰ See 136, *a*. *Nego* here, because their refusal was expressed in words.¹¹ Use *illi*, to distinguish the enemy from our men. (See 70.)¹² See 186.

infantry. 6. The general had for some time seen that his men were hard pressed by the superior numbers of the enemy, who hurled darts, slingstones, and arrows, and strove to force our men from the hill. 7. I have done my speech, judges: when you¹ have given your verdict it will be clear whether the defendant is going to return home with impunity, or to be punished for his many crimes.

¹ *Vos*, to be placed first. (See 11, *a*, *b*.)

EXERCISE XXIV.

HOW TO TRANSLATE *Can, Could, May, Might, Shall, Must, etc.*

195. The ideas of **possibility, permission, duty, necessity**, are expressed in English by auxiliary verbs, "can," "may," "ought," "should," "must," etc. (Intr. 47.)

Obs.—These words have, in modern English, owing to their constant use as mere auxiliaries, ceased to be used as independent verbs. In Latin no verb has been reduced to this merely auxiliary state, though the verb *sum* is largely used as an auxiliary. (Intr. 49, *Obs.*)

The same ideas are expressed in Latin, partly (1) by the modal verbs (see 42) *possum* and *debeo*; partly (2) by the impersonal verbs *licet*, *oportet*, *decet*, and the impersonal phrase *necesse est*, *fuit*, etc.; and largely (3) by the so-called participle in *-dus*.

N.B.—In all these cases the difference between the use of the tenses in Latin and English will require great care.

196. **Possibility** is expressed by the modal verb *possum*.

(a.) *Hoc facere possum, potero.* I *can* do this (*now, or in the future*).

(b.) *Hoc facere poteram, potui,* I *might have done* this (*past*).

Obs.—*Fecisse*, the literal translation of our "have done," would be quite wrong, for it would mean "have finished doing."

197. **Permission** is expressed by the impersonal verb *licet* with the *dative* and *infinitive*.

(a.) *Hoc mihi facere licet, or licebit.* I *may* do this (*now or hereafter*).

(b.) *Hoc mihi facere licebat, licuit.* I *might have done* this (*past*).

Here again notice *facere* in (b.).

Licet is also used occasionally with the subjunctive.

Hoc facias licet. You *may* do this. (See 126.)

Obs. 1.—“*May*,” “*might*,” must be translated by *possum* or *licet*, according as they mean “I have the *power*,” or “have *permission*.”

Obs. 2.—A very common construction is :

Hoc tibi per me facere licuit. You might have done this, so far as I was concerned, or, I should have allowed you to do this.

Hoc per me facias licebit. I shall leave you free to do this.

198. To express **duty, obligation**, “ought,” “should,” etc., three constructions may be used :—

(i.) The personal verb *debeo*.

(a.) *Hoc facere debes, debebis.* You ought to do this, you should do this (*present and future*).

(b.) *Hoc facere debuisti, debebas.* You ought to, or should, have done, this (*past*).

(ii.) The impersonal verb *oportet*¹ with the accusative and infinitive.

(a.) *Hoc te facere oportet, -ebit.*

(b.) *Hoc te facere oportet, -uit.*

Obs.—*Oportet* is also used with the subjunctive.

Hoc faceres oportuit. You should have done this.

(iii.) (Commonest of all.) The *participle in -dus* ; used either impersonally (*gerund*) with intransitive, or as an adjective (*gerundive*) with transitive verbs. (See Exercises XLIX. and L. on Gerund and Gerundive.)

The person on whom the duty lies is in the dative.

Gerundive—

(a.) *Haec tibi facienda sunt, erunt.* You ought to do this, (*present and future*).

(b.) *Haec tibi facienda erant, fuerunt.* You ought to have done this (*past*).

Gerund—

(a.) *Tibi currendum est.* You must run.

(b.) *Tibi currendum fuit.* You ought to have run.

¹ *Oportet* expresses a duty as binding on oneself; *debeo* the same duty, but rather as owed to others, “I am bound to,” “under an obligation to.” The participle in *-dus* includes both *duty* and *necessity*, and is far commoner than either *oportet* or *necesse est*.

199. To express **necessity**, use either, as above, the participle in *-dus*, which implies both *duty* and *necessity*—

(a.) *Tibi moriendum est, erit*, You *must* die, you will *have* to die;

(b.) *Tibi moriendum fuit, erat*, You *had* to die;

Or, more rarely and to imply *absolute* (properly *logical*) necessity.

(a.) *Tibi mori* (sometimes *moriare*) *necesse¹ est, erit*.

(b.) *Tibi mori* (sometimes *morerere*) *necesse erat, fuit*.

200. There are no words in Latin answering to the words "possible," "impossible," "possibility," "impossibility." They must be translated by substantial *clauses* subordinate to the impersonal phrase *feri potest* with *ut* or *quin*. (See 125, e; 132, d.)

There was *no possibility* of our escaping. *Non fieri potuit ut effugeremus.*

It is *impossible* for us not to believe this. *Non fieri potest quin hoc credamus.*

Or by a personal use of *possum*,

Non effugere poteramus. Non possumus hoc non credere.

Obs.—*Potest* can be only used impersonally with passive and impersonal verbs. "It is possible to perceive this" is not "*hoc intellegere potest*," but "*hoc intellegi potest*."

201. The case of the predicate after *licet* and *necesse est* should be carefully noticed.

Aliis licet ignavis esse, vobis necesse est viris fortibus esse.

Others may be cowards, you must needs (or perforce) be brave men.

This is in accordance with the natural construction of link verbs. (See Intr. 71.)

202. The use of the infinitive mood with such impersonal verbs as *constat*, *apparet*, "it is evident" (not "it seems"), etc., has been pointed out (§6, c).

It is also used with impersonals, denoting a *feeling* or *emotion*. *Me piget, pudet, taedet, delectat, poenitet, mihi libet.* Thus, *haec me fecisse pudet, poenitet, taedet*, I am ashamed, I repent, am weary, of *having* done this.

¹ *Necesse est* expresses either a purely logical necessity concerning things or ideas, in which case it takes the *accusative* and infinitive, *his bina quatuor esse necesse est*, "twice two *must* needs be four;" or the same idea of the inevitable as applied to a person, when it takes *dative* and infinitive, or subjunctive, *haec tibi pati*, (or *haec patiari*) *necesse est*.

Also with *pertinet ad*, *interest* and *refert*, "it is of importance," and with (*mihi*) *placet*, *videtur*, "it seems good that," (not *it seems that*). With the last two the *ut*-clause is also used.

Mitti legatos,	{	<i>senatui placuit, visum est.</i> It was
Ut mitterentur legati,		resolved by, or it seemed good to, the
		Senate that ambassadors should be sent.
		(See 46, b.)

Exercise 24.

1. We ought long ago to have listened to the teaching of so great a philosopher¹ as this. 2. Was it not your duty to sacrifice your own life and your own interests to the welfare of the nation? 3. The conquered and the coward (*pl.*) may be slaves, the asserters of their country's freedom must needs be free. 4. I blush at having persuaded you to abandon this noble undertaking. 5. You had my leave to warn your friends and relations not to run headlong into such danger and ruin. It was impossible for a citizen of Rome² to consent to obey a despot of this kind. 7. You might have seen what the enemy was doing, but perhaps you preferred to be improvident and blind. 8. This (is what) you ought to have done; you might have fallen fighting in battle; and you were bound to die a thousand deaths rather than sacrifice the nation to your own interests. 9. Are you not ashamed of having in your old age, in order to please your worst enemies, been false to your friends, and betrayed your country? 10. Do³ not be afraid; I shall leave you to come to Rome as often as you please; and when you come⁴ there⁵ be sure you stay in my house if you can. 11. Twice two must needs be four; it does not follow⁶ that we must all consult always our own interest.

¹ 88, *Obs.*

² 58.

³ 143.

⁴ Tense? (See 190, i.)

⁵ For "and there" use "whither," *quo*. (See 78.)

⁶ *Non idcirco*, lit. "we must not for that reason."

EXERCISE XXV.

CASES.

General Remarks.

203. There is nothing in which Latin differs more from English than in what are called its *cases*.

By **Case** we mean such a change in the form of a noun (substantive, adjective, pronoun, or participle) as marks its relation to other words in a sentence.

204. These changes consist in the substitution of one *movable* and *variable termination* for another. Thus *Petrus Petro carus est*, Peter is dear to Peter; *Petrus dominum secutus est*, Peter followed his master. We have here three different cases, *Petrus*, *Petro*, *dominum*, but the same change of meaning, which Latin represents by different terminations, *Petro*, *dominum*, we express in English,¹ not by a change in the termination of the word, but by introducing the preposition *to* in the one case, and by the order of the words in the other; instead of saying *Petrus dominum secutus est*, we place Peter before, master after, the verb. (See Intr. 14.)

205. In Latin the order of the words will tell us little or nothing of the relation of a noun to the rest of the sentence; the exact relation of the noun is marked by its case; but as there are only six or at most seven cases, and the number of relations which language has to express is far greater than six or seven, the case-system is largely assisted by a great number of *prepositions*, which help to give precision and clearness to the meaning of the case.

206. The word "case" is an English form of a Latin word, *casus* (Gk. πῶσις), used by grammarians to denote a *falling*, or deviation, from what they held to be the true or proper form of the word. The nominative was called, fancifully enough, the *casus rectus*, as that form of the word which stood *upright*, or in its natural position. The other cases were called *casus obliqui*, as *slanting* or falling over from this position; and by *declinatio*, or "declension," was meant the whole system of these deviations, or, as we call them, *inflections*.

¹ The English language once possessed, as German does still, a case-system; but this only survives in the strictly *possessive* case, "Queen's speech," etc., and in certain pronouns *he*, *him*; *who*, *whose*, *whom*, etc.

207. The Latin cases are six in number ; the **Nominative**, **Accusative**, **Dative**, **Ablative**, **Genitive**, **Vocative**. Besides these there is a case, nearly obsolete in the classical period of Latin, the **Locative**.

208. (i.) The **Nominative** indicates the subject of the verb.

Without such subject, expressed or understood, a verb is meaningless. The nearest approach to the absence of a nominative is in such impersonal forms of intransitive verbs as *curritur*, "there is a running," *pugnatum est*, "there was fighting." (See Intr. 42.)

It was called the *casus nominativus*, as denoting the *name* of a person or thing—*Caesar, Roma, domus*.

209. (ii.) The **Accusative** completes the meaning of a transitive verb by denoting the immediate object of its action. *Te video*, I see *you*. (Intr. 37, 38.)

It was called the *casus accusativus*, interpreted as being that which we use to name a person whom we blame. But the original name (*αἰτιατική*) was probably given to it as denoting the *αἰτία*, or cause of the action of the transitive verb.

In English it is usually marked by following the verb, as the nominative by preceding it. "The sun illuminates the world ;" "the world feels the sunlight."

In Latin it more often precedes the verb.

Its sense, possibly its earliest, of *motion towards* is still marked by its use after prepositions, implying this idea, *ad, in, sub*, and by its use with the names of towns to denote the same idea without a preposition : *Romam ibo*, I shall go to Rome.

It is used also as the subject of verbs in the infinitive mood, *te hoc dicere*, "that you should say this."

210. (iii.) The **Dative** is mainly used to represent the remoter object, or the person or thing *interested in* the action of the verb.

It was called the *casus dativus* (*πρῶσις δοτική*) as that used when we name a person *to whom* anything is given.

For the great importance and wide use of the Dative with intransitive verbs which are represented in English by verbs really or apparently transitive, see Intr. 36.

These three cases then, the *nominative*, *accusative*, and *dative*, are most intimately connected with the *verb*, as

representing the one its *subject*, the other two the *objects* to which its action is *primarily* and *secondarily* directed.

211. (iv.) The **Ablative** is also closely connected with the verb, but in a different manner; it is an *adverbial* case, i.e. it is, like the adverb, an attendant on, or *satellite* of, the verb. It gives further particulars as to the mode of action of the verb in addition to those supplied by its nearer and remoter object. (See Intr. 16.) Its functions are very wide, for it can express the *source, cause, instrument, time, place, manner, circumstances*, of the action of the verb, as well as the point *from* which *motion* takes place.

Horā eum septimā vidi. I saw him *at* the seventh hour.

Ense eum interfeci. I slew him *with* a sword.

Romā profectus est. He set out *from* Rome.

These are only three examples of the many and various senses in which this case is used.

It was called the *casus ablativus* (πῶσις ἀφαιρετική) as indicating, among its other meanings, the person *from* whom anything is *taken*; or the place *from* which it is removed.

212. (v.) The **Locative** case (*locus*), answering to the question, *where? at what place?* remains, as distinct from the ablative, only in certain words.

Romae (-ai), *at* Rome; Londini, *at* London.

(Compare *ibi, ubi*, there, where?) It also is therefore an *adverbial* case.

213. All these cases then are closely connected with the verb. The nominative sets, so to speak, the verb in motion; its movement is completed and directed by the other cases.

214. (vi.) The **Genitive**, on the other hand, is an attendant on *nouns* rather than on *verbs*. The main use of a noun in the genitive is to define or qualify another noun (substantive, pronoun, adjective, or participle), to which it is closely attached, or of which it is predicated.

Compare "Gallos vicit" with "Gallorum victor," "te amat" with "tui est amantissimus."

Hence its extremely common use as a substitute for the adjective.

Vir summae virtutis = *vir optimus*.

Its use in combination with verbs (*memini*, *obliscor*, *indigeo*) is quite exceptional. (See 228, *Obs.*)

It was called the *casus genitivus* as representing descent or race, *regis filius*; but the Greek *πτῶσις γενική* probably meant the *defining* case, that which added the *γένος* or class to which a word belonged. It was also sometimes called *possessivus*, sometimes *patricius*: *Philippi filius*.

215. (vii.) The **Vocative** case, *vocativus* (*κλητική*), is the form used in addressing a person: *fili*, *my son*. As a mere *interjection* (Intr. 28) it does not affect the syntax of the sentence.

The Nominative.

216. There is no special difficulty in the syntax of the nominative.

The accusative after the active verb (the *object*) becomes the nominative (the *subject*) to the passive verb.

Brutus Caesarem interfecit. Brutus killed Caesar. But, Caesar *a Bruto interfectus est*. Caesar was killed by Brutus. *Urbem obsidere coeperunt*; *urbs obsideri coepta est*.

(With passive verbs the passive of the verb *coepi* is used.)

Obs.—It is often advisable in translating from Latin into English, and *vice versa*, to substitute one voice for the other. Thus, to prevent ambiguity, "I know that Brutus killed Caesar" should be translated by *scio Caesarem a Bruto interfectum esse*, not by *Caesarem Brutum interfecisse*. *Aio te, Aeacida, Romanos vincere posse* is an instance of oracular ambiguity, which should be carefully avoided in writing Latin.

217. It has been already explained that many English *transitive* verbs are represented in Latin by *intransitive* verbs, *i.e.* verbs which complete their sense, not by the aid of the *accusative*, but by that of the *dative*. (See Intr. 36.)

The passive voice of such verbs can only be used *impersonally* (see 5); hence the *nominative* of an English

sentence is often represented in Latin by the *dative*, combined with a passive verb used impersonally.

Nemini a nobis nocetur. No one is hurt by us.

Puero imperatum est ut regem excitaret. The servant was ordered to wake the king.

Tibi a nullo creditur.¹ You are believed by no one.

Gloriae tuae invidetur. Your glory is envied.

Obs.—The same impersonal construction is used in the passive with those intransitive verbs which complete their sense by a preposition and substantive.

Ad urbem pervenimus. We reached the city.

Jam ad urbem perventum est. The city was now reached.

218. This impersonal construction constantly represents the nominative of an English abstract or verbal noun.²

In urbe maxime trepidatum est. The greatest confusion reigned in the city.

Ad arma subito concursus est. There was a sudden rush to arms.

Acrius pugnatum est. The fighting was fierce.

Satis ambulatum est. We have had enough of walking.

Obs.—In such phrases the English adjective will be represented by a Latin adverb.

219. With this impersonal construction of the passive when used in the infinitive, *potest*, *potuit*, etc., are used impersonally (never otherwise, see 200, Obs.); as also an impersonal passive form of some modal verbs, as *coeptum est*, *desitum est*.

Huic culpa ignosci potest. It is possible to pardon this fault.

Resisti non potuit. Resistance was impossible.

Jam pugnari coeptum (desitum) est. The fighting has now begun (ceased).

220. The use of the nominative with the infinitive when combined with a modal verb has been pointed out: *otiosus esse cupio, debeo, incipio*, etc. (see 42), I desire, am bound, begin, etc., to be at leisure. So also its use with *videor, credor, narrant*, etc.: *videor, credor, dicor servus fuisse*, it seems, is believed, said, etc., that I was a slave. (See 43.)

These points, as well as the indefinite and unexpressed nominative with impersonal verbs and such phrases as *credunt, dicunt*, etc. (44) have been already mentioned; so that the following exercises will be mainly recapitulatory.

¹ i.e. "You are believed in, or trusted, by no one." *Credo* in this sense is intransitive and governs a dative; in the sense of "I believe" or "think," it follows the usual construction of *verba sentiendi*. "You are believed by no one to have done this" would be *a nullo hoc fecisse crederis*. (See 43.)

² See Intr. 42.

Exercise 25.

A.

1. Your goodness will be envied. 2. Liars are never believed. 3. But for you¹ (*pl.*), do you not want to be free? 4. Do not become slaves; slaves will be no more pardoned than freemen. 5. It seemed that you made no answer to his² question. 6. So far from being hated by us, you are even favoured. 7. For myself,³ it seems to me that I have acted rightly; but you possibly take a different view. 8. I will ask which of the two is favoured by the king. 9. The fighting has been fierce to-day; the contest will be longer and more desperate to-morrow.

B.

1. Thereupon a sudden⁴ cry arose in the rear, and a strange⁴ confusion reigned along⁵ the whole line of march. 2. When I said "yes" you believed me; I cannot understand why you refuse to trust my word when I say "no." 3. When⁶ a boy I was with difficulty persuaded not to become a sailor, and face the violence of the sea, the winds, and storms: as an old man I prefer sitting at leisure at home to either sailing or travelling: you perhaps have the same views.⁷ 4. You ought to have been content with such good fortune as this, and never (110) to have made it your aim to endanger everything by making excessive demands.⁷ 5. So far from cruelty having been shown in our case, a revolt and rebellion on the part of our forefathers has been twice over pardoned by England. 6. It seems that your brother was a brave man, but it is pretty well allowed⁸ that he showed himself rash and improvident in this matter. 7. It seems that he was the first of⁹ that nation to wish to become our fellow-subject, and it is said that he was the last who preserved in old age the memory of (their) ancient liberties.

¹ "But for you," *Vos vero*; "for" = "as for," and is simply emphatic. The emphasis is given in Latin by the use and place of *vos*. (11, a.)

² To him questioning.

³ *Equidem*.

⁴ Adjectives will become adverbs. (See 218, *Obs.*)

⁵ "Along" may be expressed by the ablative of place.

⁶ See 63.

⁸ = agreed on.

⁷ "Views," etc., not to be expressed, see 54.

⁹ *ex.*

EXERCISE XXVI.

APPOSITION.

Apposition is not confined to the nominative; but it is more often used with the nominative and accusative than with other cases.

The general rule was given in 3; see also 227.

221. The substantive in apposition stands in the relation of an adjective to the substantive with which it is combined; in *Thebae*, Boeotiae caput, the words in apposition define *Thebes* by adding the special quality of its being *the capital of Boeotia*.

Te ducem sequimur. We follow you *as*,¹ or *in the capacity of*, our leader.

Hence if the substantive be *feminine*, use the *feminine form*, whenever it exists, of the substantive *in apposition*.

Usus, magister *egregius*. Experience, an admirable teacher.

But—*Philosophia*, magistra *morum*. Philosophy, the teacher of morals.

222. Where a geographical expression, such as "city," "island," "promontory," is defined in English by *of*, with a proper name, apposition is used in Latin. Thus—

Urbs Veii, the city *of Veii*; *insula Cyprus*, the island *of Cyprus*; *Athenas*, urbem *inclytam*, the renowned city *of Athens*.

So also—*Mensis Maius*, the month *of May*.

Obs.—A similar explanatory "of" may be represented in Latin by the word *res* in apposition to another substantive.

Libertas, *res pretiosissima*. The precious possession *of freedom*.

¹ We must always ask what *as* means. "We follow you *as* (= *as though*) a God" is, *te quasi Deum sequimur*.

223. Certain substantives are regularly used in apposition as adjectives.

Cum filio adolescentulo. With a son in early youth.

Cum exercitu tirone. With a newly levied army.

*Nemo*¹ *pictor*, no painter; always *nemo* (never *nullus*) *Romanus*, no Roman.

224. The Romans did not combine, as we do, an adjective of praise or blame with a proper name (rarely with a word denoting a person) unless by way of *cognomen* or *title*, as *C. Laelius Sapiens*.

They substituted *vir* (or *homo*) with an adjective, in apposition.

"The learned Cato" is "*Cato, vir doctissimus*."

"Your gallant or excellent brother" is "*Frater tuus, vir fortissimus, optimus*."

"The abandoned Cataline" is "*Catalina, homo perditissimus*." (See 57, a.)

Obs. 1.—This appositional use of *vir* or *homo* with an adjective often supplies the place of the absent participle of *esse*.

*Haec ille, homo*² *innocentissimus, perpeccus est*. This is what he, being (i.e. in spite of being) a perfectly innocent man, endured.

Obs. 2.—Sometimes it represents our "so good, bad, etc., as."

*Te hominem*³ *levissimum, or, te, virum optimum odit*. He hates so trifling a person, so good a man, as you; or one so good, etc., as you.

225. The substantive or adjective is often used in apposition with an unexpressed personal pronoun.

Mater te appello. I your mother call you; or it is your mother who calls you.

Omnes adsumus. All of us are here.

Quot estis? How many of you are there? *Trecenti adsumus*.

"There are three hundred of us here." (See 297.)

Hoc facitis Romani. This is what you Romans do.

¹ *Nemo* is a substantive: *nullus*, which supplies *nemo* with genitive, ablative, and often dative, an adjective.

² The word in apposition generally follows, unless unusual emphasis is to be conveyed. *Rex* comes before the proper name as applied to hereditary kings, *pro rege Deiotaro*.

³ *Homo* is "a human being" as opposed to an animal or a God: *vir*, "a man" as opposed to a woman or child. Hence *homo* is joined with adjectives of either praise or blame; *vir* with adjectives of strong praise, *fortissimus, optimus*, etc.

226. The predicate agrees with the principal substantive unless that be the name of a town in the plural, when it naturally agrees with the singular word *urbs* or *oppidum*, etc., in apposition. Thus—

Brutus et Cassius, *spes nostra*, occiderunt. Brutus and Cassius, our (only) hope, have fallen.

But—Thebae, *Boeotiae caput*, *paene deletum est*. Thebes, the capital of Boeotia, was nearly annihilated.

227. Single words are used appositionally in all cases; phrases, i.e. combinations of words, only in the nominative and accusative; in other cases, and with prepositions, a *qui*-clause is substituted.

Extincto Pompeio, quod *hujus reipublicae lumen fuit*.

Ad Leucopetram, quod *agri Rhagini promontorium est*.

Notice in each case the attraction of the relative to the gender of the predicate. (See 83.)

Exercise 26.

1. Philosophy, he says, was (32) the inventor of law,¹ the teacher of morals and discipline. 2. There is a tradition that Apiolae, a city of extreme² antiquity, was taken in this campaign. 3. It is said that your gallant father Flaminius founded in his consulship the flourishing colony of Placentia. 4. Do not, says he, I earnestly implore you, my countrymen, throw away the precious jewels of freedom and honour, to humour a tyrant's caprice. 5. The soldier, in spite of his entire innocence, was thrown into prison; the gallant centurion was butchered then and there. 6. There is a story that this ill-starred king was the first of his race to visit the island of Sicily, and the first to have beheld from a distance the beautiful city of Syracuse. 7. I should scarcely believe that so shrewd a man as your father would have put confidence in these³ promises of his.

¹ See p. 72, n. 2.

² Use adjective "most ancient" for adjectival phrase (p. 17, n. 2, and see 214).

³ "In him making (*participle*) these promises." (54.)

EXERCISE XXVII.

ACCUSATIVE.

228. The **accusative** has been already defined as the **case of the direct or nearer object of the transitive verb**.

It may be said that the direct object of every such verb, including deponents and impersonals, is a word in this case, and in this only.

Te video, te sequimur, te piget, or poenitet.

Obs.—The apparent exceptions are not really exceptions. When we say that in Latin the words *pareo*, I obey, *utor*, I use, *memini*, I remember, govern a *dative*, *ablative*, and *genitive* respectively, we really mean that the Romans put the ideas which we express by these three verbs into a different shape to that which we employ; and that in neither of the three they made use of a transitive verb, combined with its nearer object. In the first case we say, "I obey *you*;" they said, *tibi pareo*, "I am obedient *to you*." In the second we say, "I use *you*;" they said, *utor vobis*, "I serve *myself with you*." In the third we say, "I remember *you*;" they said, *tui memini*, "I am mindful *of you*." In a precisely similar way, where the Romans said *te sequimur*, the Greeks said *σοὶ ἐπόμεθα*, "we are followers *to you*." They looked, that is, on the person followed as *nearly interested in*, but not, as the Romans did, as the *direct object of*, the action described by the verb (*ἐπόμεθα*).

229. Many intransitive verbs in Latin, as in English, become transitive, when compounded with a preposition. (See Intr. 24, and also 24.)

This is especially the case with verbs that express some bodily movement or action; often the compound verb has a special meaning.¹

Urbeni oppugno, expugno, obsideo, circumsedeo. I assault, storm, blockade, invest, a city.

Caesarem convenio, circumvenio. I have an interview with, overreach or defraud, Caesar.

¹ *Praestare*, when it means "to excel," is generally used with *utrumque*, though sometimes with an acc.; but with *se*, *praestare* is common factitive verb. (See 239.) *Invictum se a laboribus praestitit*, he himself invincible by (or on the side of) toils.

Compare "I outran him," "I overcame him," etc.

Most of these verbs are used freely in the passive. *A te circumventus sum.* I was defrauded by you.

Obs.—*Transducere, transjicere (trajicere)* are used with a double accusative.

Copias Hellespontum transduxit.

Copiae Rhenum trajectae sunt.

So also—*Transjacto Rheno*, abl. abs.

230. Certain verbs of **teaching** (*doceo*), **concealing** (*celo*), **demanding** (*posco, flagito*), **asking questions** (*rogo, interrogo*), may be joined with two accusatives, one of the *person*, another of the *thing*.

Quis mūsicam docuit Epaminondam? Who taught Epaminondas music?

Nihil nos cēlat. He conceals nothing from us.

Verres pārentes pretium pro sepulturā liberūm poscebat.

Verres used to demand of parents a payment for the burial of their children.

Meliora deos flagito. I implore better things of the gods (127).

*Racilius me primum rogavit sententiam.*¹ I was the first whom Racilius asked for his opinion.

231. But this construction is commonest with the neuter pronouns *hoc, illud, nihil*; otherwise *very frequently* (and with some verbs *always*) either the *person* or the *thing* is governed by a *preposition*.

Thus, though *doceo* always takes the accusative of the *person*, unlike *dico, narro*, etc. (*tibi hoc dico, te hoc doceo*), yet *doceo*, to give information, prefers the ablative with *de* for the *thing* told. After *peto* and *postulo*, sometimes after the other verbs of *begging*, the *person* is put in the *abl.* with *a*: and after *rogo, interrōgo*, etc., the *thing* often stands in the *abl.* with *de*.

Haec abs te poposci. I have made this request of you.

De his rebus Caesarem docet. He informs Caesar of these facts.

De hac re te celatum volo. I wish you kept in the dark about this.

¹ *Sententiam rogare* is a technical expression "to ask a senator for his opinion and vote," and the acc. is preserved in the passive: *primus sententiam rogatus sum*, "I was asked my opinion first."

But—*Hoc te celatum nolim.* I should be sorry for you to be kept, etc.

Aliud te precamur. We pray you for something else.

But—*Haec omnia a te precamur.* We pray for all these things from you.

*Hoc te rogo.*¹ I ask you this question.

But—*De hac re te rogo.* I ask you about this. (See 127.)

Haec a vobis postulamus atque petimus. We demand and claim this of you.

232. Some verbs really intransitive are used occasionally in a transitive sense; such are *horreo* (oftener *perhorresco*), "I shudder," used for "I fear," and such figurative expressions as *sitio*, "I am thirsty," used as "I thirst for," with accusative. But these constructions are far commoner in poetry than in prose. Compare—

Pars stupet innuptae donum exitiale Minervae.—VIRG.

233. The accusative after passive verbs of *the thing put on*, or of *the part affected*, is originally an accusative of the object combined with what is called in Greek a *middle* verb.

Longam indutus vestem. Having put on himself a long garment.

Trajectus femur tragula. Having his thigh pierced with a dart.

It is exceedingly common in poetry, both with participles and even with adjectives:—

Os impressa toro, with her face pressed upon the couch;

Os humerosque Deo similis, like a God in face and shoulders;

and is extended, with the aid of the *cognate accusative* (see 236), into a general accusative of reference: as *caetera fulvus*, tawny elsewhere. But it is a rare construction in classical prose.

234. The accusative of the person is used after the impersonal verbs

Decet atque dedecet,
piget, pudet, poenitet,
taedet atque miseret.

The last five are joined with a genitive of the cause or object of the feeling denoted.

Eum facti sui neque pudet neque poenitet. He feels neither shame nor remorse for his deed.

¹ The verb "I ask" (a question), may be turned either by *rogo*, *interrogo*, with the accusative of the person, or by *quaero* with prep. *ab*, *a*: *ex*, *e*. "I asked him why," etc., may be turned either *tum eum interrogavi cur* . . . , or by *tum ab*, or *ex*, *quaerenti*.

235. The accusative of *motion towards* is found mostly with prepositions, *ad, in, sub*, etc. ; it is also found as expressing the purpose of motion with the supine in *-um*, a verbal noun preserving its active force (see 402) :—

Me has injurias questum mittunt, they send me to complain of these wrongs ;

Sperat rem confectum iri (see 193, iv.), he hopes that the affair will be finished ;

also with certain phrases, as *Venum dare*, to sell ; *infittias eo*, I deny ; and with the accusative of motion to a *town, small island*, and the words *domum* (home), *rus, foras* (out of doors), etc. (See below, 312.)

Exercise 27.

1. As the army mounted up the highest part of the ridge, the barbarians attacked its flanks with undiminished vigour. 2. I have repeatedly warned your brother not to conceal anything from your excellent father. 3. You ought to have been the first to have encountered death, and to have shown yourself the brave son of a gallant father, not to have been the first to have been horrified at a trifling danger. 4. If Caesar leads (190, i.) his troops across the Rhine there will be the greatest agitation throughout the whole of Germany. 5. Our spies have given us much information as to the situation and size of the citadel ; it seems that they wish to keep us in the dark as to¹ the amount and character of the garrison. 6. Having² perceived that all was lost, the general rode in headlong flight past the fatal marsh (*pl.*), and reached the citadel in safety. 7. In order to avoid the heavy burden of administering the government he pleaded his age and bodily³ weakness. 8. Many have coasted along distant lands ; it is believed that he⁴ was the first to sail round the globe. 9. I should be sorry for you to be kept in the dark about my journey, but this request I make of you, not to forget me in my absence. 10. About part of his project he told me everything ; the rest he kept secret even from his brother.

¹ "What is the amount," etc. (See 174.)

² See 14, a.

³ See 59.

⁴ "He" is emphatic = "this man" (*hic*).

EXERCISE XXVIII.

ACCUSATIVE II.

Cognate and Predicative.

236. Another use of the accusative is called the **Cognate accusative**.

Even intransitive verbs such as "I run," "I live," denote some *action*. The result, or range, of this action, added to define the meaning more clearly, is sometimes treated as a *direct object* to the verb, and placed in the accusative case.

Hunc cursum cucurri. I ran this race.

Multa proelia pugnavi. I have fought many battles.

Thus we say in English, "I struck him a blow."

It is called the cognate accusative because the substantive is either in form or meaning kindred (*cognatus*) to the verb.

237. The substantive when so used has generally, not always, an adjective or its equivalent attached to it.

Longam vitam vixi. Long is the life I have led.

Has notavi notas. I set down these marks.

But its commonest use in prose is with neuter pronouns, *hoc, illud, idem*, and with neuter plural adjectives, as *pauca, multa*, etc., and the word *nihil*. *Hoc laetor, illud glorior* (instead of, *hac re laetor, de illa re glorior*), "this is the meaning of my joy;" "this is my boast." So—

Illud tibi assentior, in this I agree with you. *Nihil mihi succenset*, he is in no way angry with me. *Idem gloriatur*, he makes the same boast. *Multa peccat*, he commits many sins. (See 54.)

With these verbs the accusative of a substantive could not be used.

238. This accusative is the origin of many constructions :—

- (i.) The adverbial use of *multum*, *minimum*, *nescio quid*, *quantum*.
- (ii.) The poetical use of the neuter singular and plural of many adjectives : *dulce ridentem*, sweetly smiling ; and even in prose : *majus exclamat*, he raises a louder cry.
- (iii.) Such adverbial expressions as *id temporis*, at that time ; *cum id aetatis puero*, with a boy of that age ; *tuam vicem doleo*, I grieve for your sake.
- (iv.) It is no doubt the origin of the accusative of *space*, of *time*, and of *distance*. *Tres annos absum*, I have been away for three years ; *tria millia (passuum) processi*, I advanced three miles.

239. The **Predicative**¹ accusative is quite different from the cognate. It is an additional accusative necessary to complete the meaning of a large class of transitive verbs, which in the passive are little more than link verbs, and have therefore the same case before and after them. (See Intr. 49.)

Ego mater tua appellor. I am called your mother.

Me matrem tuam appellant. They call me your mother.

These verbs, as “containing the idea of *making* by deed, word, or thought,”² are called *factitive* verbs.

Me consulem creant. They make me consul.

Se virum bonum praestitit. He proved himself a good man.

240. To this belong such phrases as

Haec res me sollicitum habuit. This made me anxious.

Mare infestum habuit. He infested, or beset, the sea.

Haec missa facio. I dismiss these matters.

And even such uses as—

Hoc cognitum, compertum, mihi persuasum, habeo. I am certain, assured, convinced of this. (See 188.)

Obs. 1. We may compare the accusative after *volo* in such phrases as *te saluum volo*, I wish for your safety ; *tibi consultum volo*, I wish your good consulted, where the link verb *esse* is rarely found.

¹ The exclamatory use of the accusative may be classed under the head of the predicative,—*miserum hominem!* *O spem vanissimam!* “wretched that he is!” “how vain the hope!” It may be compared with a similar use of the infinitive,—*te*, sometimes *te-ne*, *hoc dicere!*

² Dr. Kennedy's Latin Grammar.

Obs. 2.—In place of this accusative other phrases are common. [Verbs of *thinking*, etc., are rarely treated as factitive verbs.]

I consider you *as my friend*. *Te amicorum in numero habeo.*

I look on this *as certain*. *Hoc pro certo habeo.*

I behaved *as a citizen*. *Me pro cive gessi.* (See 221 and note.)

241. The English verb "I show" is used in a sense which cannot be expressed in Latin by *monstro* or *ostendo*.

"He *showed* himself a man of courage," or "he *showed* courage" is *virum fortem se praestitit*, or *praebuit*; or *fortissime se gessit*; or *fortissimus exstitit*.

Exercise 28.

Before doing this Exercise read carefully 54; also, for the different senses of "such," 86.

1. And perhaps he is himself going to commit the same fault as his ancestors have repeatedly committed. 2. He makes many complaints, many lamentations; at this one thing he rejoices, that¹ you are ready to make him your friend. 3. For myself, I fear he will keep the whole army anxious for his² safety, such is his want of caution and prudence. 4. England had long covered the sea with her fleets; she now ventured at last to carry her soldiers across the Channel and land them on the continent. 5. The rest of her allies Rome left alone; the interests of Hiero, the most loyal of them all, she steadily consulted. 6. Whether he showed himself wise or foolish I know not, but a boy of that age will not be allowed to become a soldier; this at least I hold as certain. 7. This is the life that I have led, judges; you possibly feel pity for such a life; for myself I would³ venture to make this boast, that I feel neither shame, nor weariness, nor remorse for it. 8. He behaved so well at this trying crisis that I hardly know whether to admire his courage most or his prudence.

¹ See 41, b.

² 11, e.

³ See 149, i.

EXERCISE XXIX.

DATIVE.

I. Dative with Verbs.

242. The general meaning of the **Dative** has been explained above (210). It expresses the person or thing *interested in*, or *affected by*, the state or action described by the verb, otherwise than as the direct object.

As the accusative answers the question, *whom? what?* so the dative answers the question, *to or for whom or what?*

243. In English the difference is often obliterated. "He built *me* a house;" "he saddled *him* the horse;" "I paid *them* their debt;" "I told *him* my story"—are equally correct sentences with "He built a house *for me*;" "I told my story *to Caesar*," etc. In translating therefore into Latin we must look to the meaning rather than to the form of the word, and use the dative of the *recipient*, or *person affected*, with verbs of *giving*, *telling* (except *doceo*), and even with those of *taking away*.

Multa ei pollicitus sum. I have made *him* many promises.

Poenas mihi persolvēt. He shall pay *me* the penalty.

*Omnia nobis ademisti.*¹ You have taken *from us* everything.

244. A very large number of verbs which in English are, or appear to be, transitive, are in Latin intransitive, and complete their meaning not by an accusative but by a dative. (See 228, *Obs.*) Such are—

(a.) Verbs of **aiding**, **favouring**, **obeying**, **pleasing**, **profiting**, etc.

Opitulator, subvenio, faveo, studeo, pareo, obedio, placeo, prosum.

¹ Compare the French *arracher à*, "to tear from."

(b.) Verbs of **injuring, opposing, displeasing.**

Noceo, adversor, obsto, repugno, displiceo, etc.

(c.) Verbs of **commanding, persuading, trusting, distrusting, sparing, envying, being angry.**

Impero, praecipio, suadeo, fido, diffido, parco, ignosco, invideo, irascor, succenseo, etc.

(*Confido* takes dative of *person*, ablative of *thing* relied on.)

Fortibus favet fortuna. It is the brave whom¹ fortune favours.

Haec res omnibus hominibus nocet. This fact injures the whole world.

Legibus paruit consul. He obeyed the law in his consulship.

Victis victor pepercit. He spared the vanquished in the hour of victory.

Non tibi sed exercitu meo confisus sum. It was not on you but on my army that I relied.

Obs.—It has already been said that these verbs must be used impersonally in the passive.

Mihi repugnatur. I am resisted.

Tibi diffiditur. You are distrusted. (See 217.)

245. But certain verbs of this class are transitive in Latin also.

Juvo, adjuvo; delecto; laedo, offendo:

Jubeo, hortor; veto, prohibeo; rego, guberno.

Libris me delecto. I amuse myself with books.

Offendit neminem. He offends nobody.

Haec laedunt oculum. These things hurt the eye.

Fortuna fortes adjuvat. Fortune helps the bold.

246. The impersonal verbs *accidit, contingit, expedit, libet, licet, placet*, are joined with a dative, not, as *oportet*, and those enumerated in 234, with an accusative.

Hoc tibi dicere libet. It is your pleasure, suits your fancy, to say this.

¹ See 156, *Obs.*

247. Many Latin verbs require, to complete their sense, both an accusative and a dative, arranged however in a way quite different to that of nouns joined with the corresponding verb in English.

Mortem mihi *minatus est*. He threatened me *with* death.
 Pecuniam nobis *imperavit*. He ordered us *to supply*,
 or exacted from us, money.
 Frumentum iis *suppeditavit*. He supplied them *with* corn.
 Vitam vobis *adimunt*. They are robbing you *of* life.
 Facta sua nulli *probat*. He won no one's approval *for*
 his acts.
 Hanc rem tibi *permisi* or *mandavi*. I intrusted you *with*
 this.
 Haec peccata mihi *condonavit*. He pardoned me *for* these
 offences.

248. Many transitive Latin verbs, as *metuo*, *consulo*, *caveo*, *prospicio*, *credo*, etc., are also used intransitively with a dative in a different sense to that which they bear with the accusative.

Compare, *te metuo*, *timeo*, with *nihil tibi metuo*, etc., I have no fears for you. *Te consulo*, I ask *your opinion*; *tibi consulo*,¹ I attend to, consult, *your interests*. *Te* (or *a te*) *caveo*, I am on my guard *against* you; *tibi caveo*, I am taking care *for your interests*. *Tempestatem prospicio*, I *foresee* a storm; *saluti tuae provideo*, I provide *for your safety*. *Te credo hoc fecisse*, I believe you *to have* done this; *tibi hoc facienti credo*, I believe you (trust you) *while* you do this. *Culpā vācat*, he is *free from* crime; *philosophiae vācat*, he *has time for* (he studies) philosophy.

249. *Tempero* and *moderor* in the sense of "to govern" or "direct" have the *accusative*; when they mean "to set limits to" they have the *dative*. *Temperare ab aliquā re* is "to abstain from," and hence (also with the dative), "to spare."

Hanc civitatem leges moderantur. This state is *governed by* law. (218, Obs.)

Fac animo modereris. Be sure you *restrain* your feelings, or temper.

Ab inermibus or *inermibus* (dative) *temperatum est*. The unarmed were spared. (The past participle of *parco* is rare.)

¹ A very common phrase is *tibi consultum* or *cautum volo*. (See 240, Obs. 1.)

250. *Dono, circumdo*, and some other verbs, take either a *dative* of the person and an *accusative* of the thing, or an *accusative* of the person and an *ablative* of the thing.

Circumdat urbem muro ; or, *circumdat murum urbi*. He surrounds the city with a wall.

Ciceroni immortalitatem donavit ; or, *Ciceronem immortalitate donavit*. (The Roman people) conferred immortality on Cicero.

So *induit se veste*, or *vestem sibi induit (exuit)*, he puts on (or off) his dress.

Exercise 29.

A.

1. I have long been warning you whom it is your duty to guard against, whom to fear. 2. I know that one so good as¹ your father will always provide for his children's safety. 3. It is impossible² to get any one's approval for such³ a crime as this. 4. On my asking⁴ what I was to do, whether and how and when⁵ I had offended him, he made no reply (25). 5. Is it⁶ your country's interest, or your own that you (*pl.*) wish consulted? 6. I pardoned him for many offences; he ought not to have shown such cruelty toward you. 7. In his⁷ youth I was his opponent; in his age and weakness I am ready to assist him. 8. I foresee many political storms, but I fear neither for the nation's safety nor for my own.

B.

1. It is said that he wrenched the bloody dagger from the assassin, raised⁸ it aloft, and flung it away on the ground. 2. Do not (*pl.*) taunt with his lowly birth one who has done such good service to his country. 3. It matters not whether⁹ you cherish anger against me or not; I have no fears for my own safety; you may¹⁰ henceforth threaten me with death daily, if you please.¹¹ 4. You

¹ See 224, Obs. 2.

² See 125, e, f.

³ 88, Obs.

⁴ "To me asking," participle.

⁵ Why not *quum*? (See 157, ii.)

⁶ See 158.

⁷ 63.

⁸ Participle passive. (15.)

⁹ See 168.

¹⁰ Future of *licet*. (See 197.)

¹¹ See 190, ii.

were believed, and must have¹ been believed, for all were agreed (*imperf.*) that you had never broken your word. 5. He complained that the office with which the nation had just intrusted² him had not only been shared with others, but would be entirely taken away from him, by this law. 6. You have deprived us of our liberties and rights in our absence (61), and perhaps to-morrow you intend³ to wrench from us our lives and fortunes. 7. The soldiers were all slain to a man, but the unarmed were spared.⁴ 8. We are all of us⁵ ignorant of the reason⁶ for so gentle a prince as ours exacting from his subjects such enormous quantities of corn and money. 9. He never spared any one⁷ who had withstood him, or pardoned any who had injured him. 10. I have always wished your interests protected; but I did not wish one so incautious and rash as you consulted on (*de*) this matter.

¹ Use participle in *-dus*. (199.)

³ Mood? (See 77.)

² 14, c.

⁴ See 249.

⁵ See 225.

⁶ See 174, a.

⁷ Use *nemo unquam*. (See 110.)

EXERCISE XXX.

DATIVE—Continued.

II. Dative with Verbs.

251. The verb *sum* can of course never be transitive, and therefore its sense is naturally completed by the dative; we can say,

Erat ei domi filia, he had a daughter at home;

and most of its compounds, *adsum*, *desum*, *intersum*, *obsum*, *praesum*, *prosum*, *supersum*, are joined with a dative.

Mihi adfuit, his rebus non interfuit. He gave me the benefit¹ of his presence, he took no part in these matters.

Obs.—*Insum* is oftener than not followed by the preposition *in*, *absum* by *a*, *ab*.

252. The dative is used with a very large number of verbs compounded with prepositions, such as—

ad, ante, cum (con-),
in, inter, ob,
post, sub, and prae.

Also with the adverbs *bene, satis, male*. They may be divided into four classes.

253. (i.) Many are intransitive and take the dative alone.

As, among many others—

Assentari, to flatter; *imminere*, to hang over, threaten (*intrans.*); *confidere*, to trust in; *instare, insistere* (sometimes with *acc.*), to press on, urge; *intercedere*, to put a veto on; *obstare, repugnare*, to resist; *occurrere, obviam ire*, to meet; *obsequi*, to comply with; *satisfacere*, to satisfy; *maledicere*, to abuse. (See 244.)

¹ A very common meaning of *adsum* with dative, "I am at hand to aid."

(ii.) Others are transitive, and complete their meaning with both the accusative and the dative.

Te illi posthabeo. I place you behind him (=illum tibi *antepono*), I prefer him to you.

Se periculis objecit. He exposed himself to dangers.

Mortem sibi conscivit. } He committed suicide, "laid violent
Vim sibi intulit. } hands on himself."

Te exercitui praefererunt. They have placed you at the head of the army.

Bellum nobis indixit, intulit. He declared, he made, war against us.

(iii.) Some are simply transitive verbs and take the accusative. (See 229.)

Adulari, to fawn upon; *aversari*, to loathe; *attingere*, to touch lightly; *alloqui*, to speak kindly to; *irridere*, to deride.

(iv.) Others require a preposition, in place of the dative.

Haec res ad me (never mihi) pertinet, or attinet. This concerns me.

Hoc mecum communicavit. He imparted this to me.

Ad scelus nos impellit. He is urging us to crime.

Ad urbem pervenit. He reached the city.

In rempublicam incumbere. To devote one's-self to the nation, or the national cause.

No universal rule can be given, and the usage of Latin authors must be carefully watched.

Exercise 30.

1. Possibly one so base as you¹ will not hesitate to prefer slavery to honour. 2. He says² that as a young man he took no part in that contest. 3. He promises never to fail his friends. 4. To my question who was at the head of the army he made no reply. 5. All of us know well the baseness of failing³ our friends in a trying crisis. 6. I pledge myself not to be wanting either⁴ to the time, or to the general, or to the opportunity; but possibly fortune is opposing our designs. 7. It is said that Marcellus wept over the fair city of Syracuse.⁵

¹ 224, *Obs.* 2; *tu* should be expressed. (See 334, ii.)

² See 33.

⁴ "Either," "or," after *not* will be *neque*.

³ See 94, 95.

⁵ See 222.

8. For myself, I can scarcely believe¹ that so gentle a prince as ours could have acted so sternly. 9. In the face of these dangers which are threatening the country, let all of us devote ourselves to the national cause. 10. It concerns his reputation immensely for us to be assured whether he fell in battle or laid violent hands on himself. 11. You ought to have gone out to meet your gallant brother; you preferred to sit safely at home. 12. I would fain know whether he is going to declare and make war on his country, or to sacrifice his own interests to the nation. 13. To prevent his urging others to a like crime I reluctantly laid the matter before the magistrates. 14. He never consented either to fawn upon the powerful, or to flatter the mob; he always relied on himself, and would² expose himself to any danger. 15. Famine is threatening us daily; the townsmen are urging the governor to surrender the city to the enemy; he refuses³ to impart his resolution to me, and I am at a loss what to do.

¹ 149, i.² Imperfect. (See 184.)³ See 136, a

EXERCISE XXXI.

DATIVE—Continued.

III. The Dative with Adjectives and Adverbs.

254. The dative is used not only with *verbs*, but also with *adjectives* (and even *adverbs*), to mark the person or thing *affected by the quality* which the adjective denotes.

Such are adjectives which signify *advantage, likeness, agreeableness, usefulness, fitness, facility*, etc. (with their *opposites*). So—

*Res populo*¹ *grata*. A circumstance pleasing to the people.

Puer patri similis. A child like his father.

Consilium omnibus utile. A policy useful to all.

Tempora virtutibus infesta. A time fatal to virtues.

Convenienter naturae vivendum est. We should live agreeably to nature.

In all these cases the dative answers the question, *to* or *for* whom, or what? and the English will be a sufficient guide.

255. But the construction is not invariable.

Thus, *similis* takes the genitive of a *pronoun*, and usually of a *person* ("the counterpart," or "in the likeness," of). So—

Pompeii, tui, similis. Resembling Pompey, or you.

Veri simile. Probable.

Nulla res similis sui manet. Nothing remains like itself.

So also—*Hoc quidem vitium non proprium senectutis est*. This vice is not the special property of old age.

Obs.—Many of these take different constructions: *utilis, aptus, idoneus*, ad rem; *benevölus* erga, or in, *aliquem*; *alienus* ab *aliquâ re*: *assuetus, assuefactus*, "accustomed to," are joined with the ablative, *insuetus* with the genitive.

256. *Aequalis, affinis, vicinus, finitimus, propinquus, amicus, inimicus*, when used as *substantives*, are joined with the genitive, or a possessive pronoun (*meus, tuus*, etc.).

¹ Or in *vulgo*; the form *vulgo* is only used as an adverb.

Propior, nearer, *proximus*, nearest, take the *dative*, but sometimes the *accusative*, especially in their literal sense. Their adverbs *prope*, *propius*, *proxime*, take the *accusative*.

Hi homines prope te sedebant. These men were sitting near you.

Thus, nobis *vicini*, "near us," but, *vicini nostri*, "our neighbours;" *Cicero-is* or *-i inimicissimi*, Cicero's worst foes.

The construction therefore varies according as they are regarded as adjectives or substantives. (See 55.)

Exercise 31.

1. I could not doubt that falsehood was most inconsistent with your brother's character. 2. All of us are apt to love those¹ like ourselves. 3. I fear that in so trying a time as² this, so trifling a person³ as your friend will not be likely to⁴ turn out like his illustrious father. 4. This⁵ circumstance was most acceptable to the mass of the people, but at the same time⁶ most distasteful to the king. 5. He had long been an opponent of his father's policy, whom in (*abl.*) almost every point he himself most closely resembled. 6. He was both a relation of my father and his close friend from boyhood; he was also⁶ extremely well disposed to myself. 7. For happiness, said he, which⁷ all of us value above every blessing, is common to kings and herdsmen, rich and poor. 8. To others he was, it seemed,⁸ most kindly disposed, but he was, I suspect,⁸ his own worst enemy. 9. He is a man far removed from all suspicion of bribery, but I fear that he will not be acquitted by such an unprincipled judge as this. 10. It was, he used to say,⁹ the special peculiarity of kings to envy men¹⁰ who had done¹¹ them¹² the best service.

¹ See 346.

² 88, *Obs.*

³ 224, *Obs.* 2.

⁴ 139.

⁵ Relative. (See 78.)

⁶ *Idem.*

⁷ 95, *Obs.*

⁸ 32, *b*, and 43.

⁹ Tense? (184.)

¹⁰ 72.

¹¹ Mood? (See 77.)

¹² *sc.* (See 349.)

EXERCISE XXXII.

DATIVE—Continued.

IV. Special Uses of the Dative.

257. The following idiomatic uses of the dative should be carefully noticed.

The dative is used where we should use a *possessive pronoun* or the *genitive*.

It thus gives *greater prominence* to the person mentioned.

Tum Pompeio ad pedes se projecere. Then they threw themselves at Pompey's feet.

Hoc mihi spem minuit. This lowered *my* hopes.

Gladium ei e manibus extorsit. He forced the sword out of *his* hands.

Hoc omnibus est in ore. This is on *every one's* lips.

258. The dative of the person interested is sometimes used where we should use the preposition "by," answering to the ablative of the agent.

(i.) It is joined with the participle in *-dus*, when used to imply duty or necessity. The person on whom the duty lies is in the dative. (See 198, iii.)

Hoc tibi faciendum fuit. "This ought to have been done *by you*."

(ii.) The dative is used with other passive participles where the agent is looked on rather as the *person interested* than as the actual agent; especially with verbs of *seeing, thinking, hearing, planning*, etc.

Haec omnia mihi perspecta et considerata sunt. All these points have been studied and weighed *by me*, lit. *for me, in my eyes*.

Hoc mihi probatum ac laudatum est. This has won *my* approval and praise = been approved of and praised *by me*.

259. The last idiomatic use of the dative is that in which it is used to express a *result* or *aim*; two ideas often blended in Latin. (See 106.)

Receptui canere. To sound the trumpet for retreat.

Hunc locum domicilio eligo. I choose this place for my habitation.¹

It is much used with *sum, do, duco, verito, eligo*; and (especially with military terms, as *auxilio, subsidio*) with verbs of motion; and is generally combined with the ordinary dative. Thus—

Haec res ei magno fuit dedecori. This was (or proved) a great disgrace to him.

Ipsē sibi odio erit. He will be odious (or, an object of dislike) to himself = be hated by himself.

Noli hanc rem mihi vitio vertere. Do not impute this to me as a fault.

Quae res saluti nobis fuit. And this fact saved us, proved our safety.

Caesarem oravit, ut sibi auxilio copias adduceret. He begged Caesar to bring up troops to his aid.

Obs. Hence such verbs as “*proves*,” “*serves*,” etc., may often be translated by *sum* with the *dative*; and an adjective after “*to be*” may often be translated into Latin by the *dative* of a substantive.

260. The following phrases are very commonly used with an additional dative of the *person interested*.

- (1.) With *auxilio* (to the assistance);

Come, venire, vēni, ventum.

Send, mittere, mīsi, missum.

Set out, proficisci, profectus.

- (2.) With *culpaē, vitio, crimini*;

To impute as a fault, culpaē dāre: with acc. of thing; or vitio vertere, with acc. of thing.

- (3.) *To give as a present, dono, or muneri, dare, with acc. of thing. To consider a source of gain, habere quaestui.*

To be very dishonourable or discreditable to, magno esse dedecori. (Obs. 1.)

To be hated by; to be hateful, odio esse. (Obs. 2.)

To be a hindrance, impedimento esse.

To be creditable, or honourable, honori esse.

¹ *Te ducem eligamus*, apposition with a *person*, “*as or for our leader*,” see §39: *hunc locum domicilio eligo*, dative with a *thing*, “*as or for our habitation*.”

To be hurtful; to be detrimental, detrimento, or damno esse.

To be painful to, dolori esse.

To be a proof, argumento, documento esse.

To profit, to be profitable to, bono esse.

To bring punishment, fraudi esse.

To be a reproach; to be disgraceful, opprobrio esse.

Obs. 1.—The English adverb *very* will be represented in Latin by the adjective *magno* or *summo*; “how” by *quanto*.

Quanto hoc tibi sit dedecori vides. You see *how* disgraceful this is to you.

Obs. 2.—The phrase “*odio esse*” forms a passive voice to *odi*. Thus Hannibal, when at the close of his life he expresses to Antiochus his hatred to the Romans, says (Livy xxxv. 19):—

Odi odioque sum Romanis. I hate the Romans and am *hated* by them.

261. The dative in the predicative with *licet*, etc., has been noticed (201).

Liceat nobis quietis esse. Let us be allowed to be at rest.

So sometimes after *nomen est*, etc.

Puero cognomen Iulo additur. The surname of Iulus is added to the boy.

But *Iulus* would be equally good Latin.

Exercise 32.

In these Exercises words and phrases marked * will be found in 260.

A.

1. He promises to come shortly to the assistance * of your countrymen. 2. Thereupon he forced the bloody dagger out of the assassin's¹ hand. 3. I fear that these things will not prove very creditable * to you. 4. I don't quite understand what your friends² mean (by it). 5. It is very honourable * to you to have been engaged in such (86) a battle. 6. Such (87) superstition is undoubtedly a reproach * to a man. 7. I fear that this will prove both detrimental * and dishonourable * to the government. 8. Cassius was wont to ask³ who had gained by the result.

¹ Genitive not to be used. (See 257.)

² 338, *Obs. 2.*

³ Frequentative form, *rogito*. Tense? (See 184.)

9. It is vile to consider politics a source * of gain. 10. I would fain inquire what place you have chosen for your dwelling. 11. I am afraid that this will be very painful * and disgraceful * to you. 12. I will warn the boy what (*quantus*) a reproach * it is to break one's word. 13. He promised to give them the island of Cyprus as a present. 14. I hope that he will perceive how odious * cruelty is to all men. 15. Then the ambassadors of the Gauls threw themselves at Caesar's feet. 16. It seems that he hates * our nation and is hated * by us. 17. I hope soon to come to your aid with three legions.

B.

1. He gives his word to take care that the ambassadors shall be allowed to depart home in safety. 2. To this prince, owing to a temperament (which was) almost-intolerable to the rest of the world, (men) had given the name of the Proud. 3. And this circumstance is a proof * that no¹ Roman took part in that contest. 4. So many and so great are your illustrious brother's (224) achievements that they have by this time been heard of, praised and read of by the whole world. 5. We know that the name of deserters is hated * and considered execrable by all the world; but we earnestly implore that this our change of sides may bring us neither punishment * nor credit.* 6. Not even (Intr. 99) in a time of universal² repose were we allowed to enjoy repose. 7. I can scarcely believe that so monstrous a design as this has been heard of and approved by you. 8. This circumstance, which is now in every one's mouth, he communicated to me yesterday; I suspect it concerns you more than me. 9. When my colleague comes³ to my assistance * I can⁴ supply you with provisions and arms.

¹ See 223.² See 59.³ See 190.⁴ Tense ? (190, ii.)

EXERCISE XXXIII.

THE ABLATIVE.

262. The **Ablative** is more than any other an **adverbial** case; (read carefully 211). It answers the questions *whence? by what means? how? from what cause? in what manner? when? and where?*

Its various meanings may be thus classified:—

- (i.) Removal, or departure; *from* (*casus ablativus*).
(Answers the question *whence*.)
- (ii.) Instrumentality; *by, with*.
- (iii.) Accompaniment; *with, etc*.
- (iv.) Locality; *at or in a place or time*. (Answers the question *where or when*.)

Obs.—It therefore represents four distinct cases, the last of which certainly, others in all probability, once existed as separate forms.

263. (i.) Ablative of **removal** or **departure** from.

In most instances, either by itself, or with the prepositions *a, ab; ex, e; de*, it corresponds to the English *from*.

It is so used with verbs expressing literal motion.

Troja profecti sunt. They set out *from* Troy. (Name of town, see 9.)

A Pyrrho, ex Africa, legati veniunt. Ambassadors come *from* Pyrrhus, *or from* Italy.

264. It is thus used also with many other verbs without, as well as with, a preposition. The preposition is mostly omitted where no merely bodily motion is implied.

Abstinere injuria, to abstain *from* wrong; *abire magistratu*, to go out of office; *desistere conatu*, to abandon or cease *from* an attempt; *cedere patria*, to leave his native land; *pellere civitate*, to banish.

So also with verbs implying “freeing from,” and “depriving.”

Solvit te his legibus Senatus. The Senate exempts you *from* those laws.

Liberat te aere alieno. He sets you free *from* debt.

But very often the preposition is used.

Discedant ab armis. Let them depart *from* arms.

Abhorret ab ejusmodi culpā. He is far removed *from* such blame.

265. Not only verbs but **adjectives**¹ signifying *want* or *freedom from* are joined with the *ablative*, or sometimes the *ablative* with *a* or *ab*.

Metu vacuus. Free from fear. (Compare *culpā vacat*, he is free from fault.)

Loca sunt ab arbitris libera. The locality is free from witnesses.

Ab ejusmodi scelere alienissimus. Quite incapable of (removed from) such a crime.

266. (ii.) The ablative of **source** or **origin**, a very similar sense to that of *departure* from, is used mostly, though not always, without the preposition.

Consulari familiā ortus. Sprung from a consular family.

Homo optimis parentibus natus. A man of excellent parentage.

Obs.—*Ortus, oriundus*, when used of *remote* ancestors, are joined with the preposition *ab*.

267. (iii.) The ablative of **instrument**, and also that of (iv.) **cause**, may be considered as nearly related to that of *origin*.

Cornibus tauri se tutantur. Bulls protect themselves with their horns.

Jam vires lassitudine deficiebant. Their strength was now beginning to fail through (or from) weariness.

(v.) With the **agent**, *i.e.* a *person* as opposed to a *thing*, the preposition is necessary.

Clitus ab Alexandro gladio interfectus est. (See 8, a.)

Obs.—A secondary agent, *i.e.* a *person* used as an instrument, is expressed by *per* (or *operā* with the genitive or the possessive pronoun).

Haec per exploratores cognita sunt. These facts were ascertained by means of reconnoiterers.

Tuā operā. By your instrumentality.

So *propter* and *ob* are still more often used than the ablative to express the *cause*. The ablative is mostly confined to a bodily, or mental, or other property of the *subject of the verb*. *Tua fortitudine hoc meruisti*; but, *propter tuam fortitudinem hoc decrevit senatus*.

¹ In the same way *adverbs* are constantly joined with *adjectives*. *Intr.* 17.) Compare also the use of the dative, 254.

268. (vi.) The ablative of **manner** is nearly related to that of *instrument* and *cause*, and is very widely used.

Hac ratione, hoc modo, by this means, in this manner ;
summo opere, earnestly ; *casu*, by chance ; *nullo modo*,
 by no means ; *consilio*, by design ; *jure*, rightly ; *injuria*,
 unjustly ; *nescio quo pacto*, in some way or other ; and
 many others.

Obs.—Many of these are used exactly as adverbs ; they only differ from adverbs as being more obviously, what other adverbs were originally, *oblique cases* of substantives.

The preposition *in* is never used in Latin before words signifying *manner* : thus, never “in *hoc modo*.”

269. (vii.) The ablative of **accompaniment**¹ when applied to *things* can hardly be distinguished from that of *manner*. The rule is to use the preposition *cum* unless an emphatic adjective is added.

We can say, *Summā haec diligentia feci*, “I have done this with the *greatest* care,” and we *may*, but need not, insert *cum*. But we cannot say, *Haec diligentia feci*, “I have done this with care ;” nor *lacrimis*, for “with tears.”

Cum dignitate mori satius est quam cum ignominia vivere. It is better to die *with* honour than to live *under* disgrace.

Obs.—With the following phrases *cum* is never used.

Hoc consilio, with this intention ; *aequo animo*, with calmness, or resignation ; *jussu tuo*, by your command ; *injussu Caesaris*, without Caesar's permission ; *bonā tuā veniā*, with your kind permission ; *nullo negotio*, without trouble. But *cum emolumento*, or *cum damno, meo*, to my advantage, or loss.

270. Where however the English *with* is used in the literal sense of (viii.) “**in company with**,” the preposition is required² both with persons and things.

Cum fratre meo veni. I came *with* my brother.

Cum telo venit. He came *with* a weapon.

Tecum, mecum, nobiscum, vobiscum, ibit. He will go *with* you, me, us, you. (8, *Obs.*)

¹ The English preposition *with* marks the connexion between the different senses of *instrument*, *manner*, and *accompaniment*. “I killed him *with* a sword,” “I did it *with* ease,” “I spoke *with* sorrow,” “I came *with* you.”

² In military language, an army is sometimes looked on as standing in an *instrumental* relation to its general : *Dux reliquo exercitu contra hostem profisciscitur* ; but even here the *cum* is mostly inserted.

271. Under this head of *accompaniment* is to be classed (ix.) the *ablative of quality*.

Eximīa fuit corporis pulchritudine. He was a man of great personal beauty.

Obs.—Here again the adjective is necessary. See below, Gen. of Quality, 303.

We have thus far had instances of the ablative used to denote *removal from, origin, instrument, cause, agent, manner, and accompaniment* of circumstances, things, persons, and qualities.

Exercise 33.

A.

1. He replied that nearly the whole of the army was annihilated, and¹ that it made no difference whether it had been overwhelmed by famine, or by pestilence, or by the enemy. 2. Having been chosen king not only by his own soldiers, but also by the popular² vote,³ he aimed at establishing and securing by the arts of peace a throne gained by the sword⁴ and violence. 3. Sprung as he was from an illustrious family, he entered public life as⁵ a young man, and retired at last from office as an old one. 4. Freed from the fear of foreign war, the nation was now⁶ able to drive traitors from its territory, and show its gratitude to patriots. 5. Whether⁷ your unprincipled relation has abandoned this attempt, or intends (14, c) to persevere in it, I know not; but whether⁷ he means to take one course⁸ or the other, it seems to me that he is not yet willing to abstain from wrong. 6. So far is my unfortunate brother from having been freed from debt, that he is even now leaving his country for⁹ no other cause.

¹ Why not *et nihil*? (See 110.)

² "Of the people." (See 59.)

³ Plural. Compare p. 72, n. 2.

⁴ Why not *gladio*? (See 17.)

⁵ "As" not to be expressed; why would *velut, quasi*, be wrong?

⁶ *Jam; nunc* is "at this present moment."

⁷ "Whether." (See 171.)

⁸ = to do this, or that.

⁹ *Propter* (acc.).

B.

1. I would fain ask, with your kind permission, whether it¹ was by accident, or by design that you acted² thus. 2. We set forth from home with tears, with wailing, and with the deepest anxiety; we reached the end of our journey relieved of a load of cares, free from fear, and amidst great and universal rejoicing. 3. He is a man of the most spotless character, and so far removed from such a crime that for my part, I wonder³ how he can have been suspected of such monstrous impiety. 4. We had rather die with honour than live as slaves (42, ii.); but we refuse to perish in this manner for the sake of such⁴ a person as this. 5. I might have⁵ faced death itself without trouble, but I cannot endure such a heavy disaster as this⁶ with resignation. 6. He was so transported with passion that he threatened not only his brother, but all the bystanders, with death.

¹ See 156.

² =did this; avoid using *agere* for "to act," and notice the real meanings of *agere*.

³ Mood? (See 106.)

⁴ See 87. *Talis* is rarely used contemptuously.

⁵ See 196.

⁶ 88, *Obs.*

EXERCISE XXXIV.

ABLATIVE—Continued.

272. Other senses of the ablative belong to it as having taken the place in a great degree of the nearly obsolete **locative** case, answering, not the question *whence?*, but *where?*

Obs.—This case, which ended in *i*, so often resembled *in form* the ablative after the latter had lost its final letter *d*, that at last the ablative added to its many other meanings those which properly belonged to the locative, and the same case came to represent *whence* and *where*.

Local uses of the ablative may include those which denote *at a place*, and *at a time*. (See 9, *a*, and below, 311 and 320.)

Pericles Athenis vixit. Die septimo venit.

273. Such too are the phrases, *terrā marique*, by sea and land; *dextrā*, (or *a dextrā*), *sinistrā*, on the right, left, hand; *bello et pace*, in war and peace; *nocte, hieme, primā luce*, etc.; so also *aeger pedibus*, suffering in the feet; *altero saucius brachio*, wounded in one arm.

Obs.—The preposition *in* sometimes makes a slight difference in the meaning; *tali tempore*, simply, at such a time, or moment; *in tali tempore*, considering the circumstances of such a time, or emergency, *in spite of*, or *in the face of*, such a crisis.

For the Ablative Absolute, which includes the ideas both of *time* and *accompanying circumstances*, see Exercise LIII.

274. With the *local* ablative may be compared the ablative of **respect** or **limitation**; the English *in*, in the sense of “in so far as concerns,” etc.

Specie, in appearance; *re, re ipsā*, in reality; *nomine*, in name. *Lingua, moribus, armorum genere inter se discrepabant.* They differed from one another *in* language, habits, and *in* the nature of their arms.

Obs.—To this use of the ablative belongs the supine in *-u*.

Horrendum dictu. Dreadful *in the telling*. (See 404.)

275. The ablative of **comparison** (or *difference from*) belongs (probably) to the ablative of *departure from*.

In English, a comparative adjective or adverb is connected by the conjunction *than* (originally *then*) with the clause or word with which the comparison is made: He is older *than* he was; He is more *than* twenty years old.

In Latin also, *quam* is the regular particle of comparison. As it is a *conjunction*, and not a *preposition*, things compared by *quam* will be in the same case.

Europa minor est, quam Asia. Europe is smaller than Asia.

Dixit Europam minorem esse quam Asiam. He said that Europe was smaller than Asia.

A nullo libentius quam a te literas accipio. I receive a letter from no one with more pleasure than from you.

276. But in Latin, where two nouns are closely compared with one another, the ablative of comparison, or thing *differed from*, is widely used; an idiom quite unlike English.

Hoc homine nihil contemptius esse potest. Nothing can be more despicable *than* this man.

Haec nonne luce clariora sunt? Are not these things clearer *than* the daylight?

We should probably say "so despicable *as*," "*as* clear *as*."

Obs.—This construction however is only used when the comparative adjective is in the nominative, or the accusative after a verb *sentienti* or *declarandi*. It is exceedingly common in *negative* and *interrogative* sentences, as above.

277. The ablative of comparison is largely used after comparative adjectives and adverbs, with such words as *spes*, *opinio*, *fama*, *expectatio*, even *justum* and *aequum*.

Spe omnium celerius venit. He came sooner than any one had hoped.

Ne plus justo dolueris. Do not feel *undue* pain.

278. "Superior to," "inferior to," may be expressed in Latin by this ablative.

Omnia virtute inferiora ducit. He counts everything *inferior to* (of lower rank than) goodness.

Negant quenquam te fortiozem esse. They say that no one is *your superior* in courage.

Nemo tibi virtute praestat would be also good Latin for "no one is, *etc.*"

279. Another ablative often joined with comparatives is that of the **measure of difference**, and is clearly *instrumental*.

Multo me doctior. Greatly my superior in learning.

Homo paulo sapientior. A man of somewhat more wisdom than is common; "of fair, or average, wisdom."

Senatus paulo frequentior. A somewhat crowded senate.

Caution.—These ablative forms, *paulo*, *multo*, *eo*, *tanto*, etc., must never be used with adjectives or adverbs in the positive degree. Compare the use of *quo* (102).

But they may be used with words which, though not comparative in form, imply comparison.

Paulo ante. A little before, or earlier.

Multo tibi praestat. He is much superior to you.

280. The ablative of **price**, "for," "at such a rate," may be either local (*at*), or instrumental (*by means of*).

It is used with verbs of **buying** and **selling**, etc., *emere*, *vendere*, etc.

Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocrates vendidit. Isocrates sold one oration for twenty talents.

So with verbs of exchanging.

Pacem bello mutavit. He exchanged peace for war.

Obs.—The adjectives *magno*, *parvo*, *nimio*, *quanto*, etc., are generally used by themselves, the substantive *pretio* being understood.

Venditori expedit rem vendere quam plurimo. It is for the interest of the seller that the thing should be sold for, or at, as high a price as possible.

Multo sanguine victoria nobis stetit, or, *constitit.* The victory cost us much blood.

Verbs of *valuing*, *esteeming*, etc., as distinct from actual *buying*, take the genitive. (See 305.)

Exercise 34.

1. It is pretty well agreed on by all of you that the sun is many times¹ larger than the moon. 2. I have known this man from boyhood; I believe him to be greatly your superior both in courage and learning. 3. The king himself, while he was² fighting in front of the foremost line of battle, was wounded in the head. In spite of this³ great confusion and universal panic, he refused to withdraw from the contest. 4. By this means he became rightly dear to the nation,⁴ and reached the extremity of old age in name a private citizen, in reality almost the parent of his country. 5. And⁵ this crime must be at once atoned for by your blood, for your⁶ guilty deeds are clear and plain as⁷ this sun-light, and⁸ it is quite impossible that any member of the nation can wish you pardoned. 6. It seems⁹ to me, said he, that all of you are soldiers in name, deserters and brigands in reality. 7. The battle¹⁰ was now much more desperate; on the left our men were beginning to fail through weariness; the general, himself wounded in one arm, was the first to become aware of this. 8. You might¹¹ but lately have exchanged war for peace; too late (*adv.*) to-day are you repenting of your blunder. 9. I was anxious yesterday for your safety; but the matter has turned out much better than I had looked for. 10. How much better would¹² it have been in the presence of such a crisis to have held all considerations inferior to the national safety.

¹ "*Parts.*" For case, see 279.² See 180.³ 88, *Obs.*⁴ Or country. (See 16, *a.*)⁵ Intr. 58.⁶ Iste. (See 338.)⁷ See 276.⁸ = nor is it possible. (See 110, and 125, *f.*)⁹ 43.¹⁰ 218.¹¹ 196, 197.¹² 153.

EXERCISE XXXV.

ABLATIVE—Continued.

281. The ablative is also used to complete the sense of certain **deponent** verbs.

Fungor, fruor, ūtor (with their compounds), *pōtior, vescor, dignor, glorior*, take the *ablative*.

Hannibal, cum victoriā posset uti, frui maluit. Hannibal at a time when¹ (although) he might have used his victory preferred enjoying it.

Mortis periculo defuncti sumus. We have got over the danger of death.

Nostri victoriā potiti sunt. Our soldiers gained the victory.

Obs.—This ablative is of course not that of the *nearer object*; but these deponent verbs resemble in their use Greek verbs of the *middle voice*. *Ūtor*, I serve myself *with*; *fruor*, I enjoy myself *with*; *vescor*, I feed myself *on*; *potior*, I make myself powerful *with*; *fungor*, I discharge myself *from*; *dignor*, I hold myself worthy *at such a price*; *glorior*, I glorify myself *with*: so that the ablative is in each case used in one or other of its regular *adverbial* uses. (See 228, *Obs.*)

282. Of these verbs, *potior* sometimes takes the genitive, "I am master of." *Ūtor* is freely used with adverbs; *male, perverse, immoderate, ūtor*, "I make a bad, or immoderate use of," = "I abuse." The Latin adverb must be substituted for the English adjective.

Te familiariter, te amico usus sum. I was on intimate terms with you, I found a friend in you.

Obs.—*Gloriari* is used also with *in* and *de*; *niti*, "to lean, or rely on," with and without *in*. *Confido* with dat. of person, ablative of thing. *Tibi confisus sum; exercitiis virtute confido.* (244, c.)

¹ Or, "instead of using his victory preferred to enjoy it."

283. Compare also with the English idiom the use of the ablative to complete the sense of certain transitive verbs.

Honore, praemio, *te affeci*. I conferred on you a distinction, a reward.

Poenā, supplicio, *eum afficiam*. I will inflict punishment on him (= *poenas de eo sumam*).

Honoribus *te cumulavimus*. We have heaped or showered honours on you.

Omni observantia *eum prosecutus sum*. I have paid him every kind of respect. (Cf. 247.)

284. Verbs of *abounding, filling, loading*, etc., and their opposites, such as verbs of *being without, depriving of, emptying of*, are joined with the ablative.

Such verbs are *circumfluere* (divitiis), *complere*, *onerare*, *refercire*, *cumulare* (honoribus), *carere*, *egere*, *vacare* (culpā) *orbare*, *privare*, *fraudare*.

Flumen piscibus abundat. The river is full of fish.

Mortui cura et dolore carent. The dead are free from anxiety and pain.

But of these *egere* and *indigeo* (especially the latter) govern the genitive also; as also *complere*, *replere*.

Res maxime necessariae non tam artis indigent quam labōris.

The most necessary things do not require skill so much as labour.

Obs.—In verbs of *abounding*, etc., the ablative is no doubt *instrumental*. Its original sense with verbs of *want* is more doubtful; probably that of *separation*, freedom from.

285. The ablative is joined also with adjectives, in many of its various senses. (See 265.)

Dignus, indignus, contentus, praeditus, fretus are followed by an ablative without a preposition.

Vir omni honore dignus. A man worthy of every distinction.

Divitiis opibusque fretus. Relying on his wealth and resources.

Be careful not to use a genitive after *dignus*.

286. The ablative of the noun, and occasionally of the participle, is also used with *opus* (and *usus*) when they bear the sense of *need of*.

Ubi res adsunt, quid mihi verbis opus est? When facts are here, what need have I of words?

At sibi consulto opus esse. He says he has need of deliberation.

Sometimes the thing needed is the subject to *opus est*.

Dux nobis et auctor opus est. We need a leader and adviser.

This indeed is the rule with neuter pronouns and adjectives:—*Quae nobis opus sunt; pauca tibi opus sunt; omnia, quae ad vitam opus sunt*, “all the necessaries of life.” The infinitive is also used:—

Quid haec scribere opus est? What need is there to write this?

Obs.—*Opus* properly means “work (to be done),” and the ablative is the ablative of respect,—“there is work to be done for me *in consultation*.”

Exercise 35.

A.

1. I have now lived long on most intimate terms with your son; it seems to me that he resembles his father in ability and character, rather than in either features or personal appearance. 2. Do¹ not deprive (*pl.*) of well-earned distinction and praise one who has made so good,² so sensible, a use of the favours of heaven. 3. I cannot³ but believe that it is⁴ by your instrumentality that I have got over this great danger. 4. All of us, your well-wishers, make this one prayer, that you may be permitted to discharge the duties of your office with⁵ honour and advantage to yourself; we all rely on your honesty and self-control, and are all proud of your friendship. 5. Relying on your support, I have ventured to inflict severe punishment on the rebels. 6. He always put confidence in himself, and in⁶ spite of humble means and scanty fare preferred contentment to resting⁷ on other men's resources. 7. He preferred dispensing with all the necessaries of life (as) a free man, to abounding in riches in the condition of a slave.

¹ 143.

² 282.

³ 137, *j.*

⁴ See 82. The periphrasis *factum esse ut* may be used for emphasis.

⁵ 269.

⁶ 273, *Obs.*

⁷ See 94.

B.

1. He promises to supply us with everything that is¹ necessary. 2. We have need of deliberation rather than haste, for I fear that this victory has already cost us too much. 3. In my youth I enjoyed the friendship of your illustrious father; he was a man of remarkable abilities, and of the highest character. 4. He hopes to visit with condign punishment the murderers of his father and the conspirators against their sovereign. 5. I fear that he seems far from worthy of all² the compassion and indulgence of which he stands in need to-day. 6. Nothing can ever be imagined more happy than my father's lot in life; he discharged the duties of the highest office without³ failing to enjoy the charms of family life. 7. Relying on your good-will, I have not hesitated⁴ to avail myself of the letter which you sent me by⁵ my son. 8. Can any one be more worthy of honour, more unworthy of punishment, than this man?

¹ Mood, see 77.

² Tantus . . . quantus.

³ See 111, "so discharged as to enjoy."

⁴ See 136, *b*. ⁵ 267, *Obs*.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

GENITIVE.

Two of the main uses of the Genitive, or *defining* case, are—

The **Possessive** ; where the genitive denotes the person or thing to which some other person or thing belongs.

The **Partitive** ; where the genitive denotes the relation of a whole to a part.

I. Possessive Genitive.

287. The **Genitive** differs from all other cases (including the obsolete **Locative**) in being **rarely used with verbs**. The proper office of a noun in the genitive is to define, or give the *genus* of, another noun. (See 214.)

288. It does this in various ways ; and the relation between one noun and another, as denoted in the Latin genitive, may be very variously expressed in English : by the *possessive case*, by various *prepositions*, and by the *adjective*. Thus—

Libri Ciceronis, Cicero's books ; *hominum optimus*, the best of men ; *mortis fuga*, flight from death ; *Helvetiorum injurias populi Romani*, the wrongs done by the Helvetii to the people of Rome ; *mortis remedium*, a remedy against death ; *fossa quindecim pedum*, a bridge fifteen feet wide ; *legum obedientia*, obedience to law ; *corporis robur*, bodily strength ; *amissi filii dolor*, pain for the loss of his son.

In these instances the genitives express a close connexion between two substantives ; but a connexion of very different kinds ; in all the word in the genitive **explains and defines** the other word.

289. As being most properly that case in which one noun is attached, or annexed, to another, which it explains, it may be called the **adjectival case**, and in fact often corresponds exactly to the adjective. (See 58.)

Caesaris *causā*, *meā causā*, on behalf of Caesar, on my behalf ;
tuā operā, *illius operā*, with your, or his, aid ; so *Sullani milites* = *Sullae milites*.

290. Of these, the strictly **possessive** use will cause no difficulty ; it answers to the English possessive case in *s* (the only real *case* remaining in the English substantive), to the preposition *of*, to the *possessive pronoun*, and to the *adjective*.

Pompeii aequalis ac meus. Pompey's contemporary and my own.

Noster atque omnium parens. Our own, and the universal parent.

Sceptrum regis (or regium). The king's sceptre.

Illud Platonis. That saying of Plato.

Obs.—Under this may be classed such expressions as *tui similis*, *Ciceronis inimicissimi* (see 256) ; also *Pompeii causā*, *gratiā*, in the interest of, for the sake of, Pompey (*meā*, *tua*, not *mei*, *tui*) ; and even *sui juris*, *suae ditionis facere*, to bring under his own jurisdiction, or power.

291. To this possessive and adjectival genitive belongs also the following construction :—

The **genitive singular** of a *substantive*, especially when it can denote a class (as *puer*, *rex*) or of an *adjective* used as a substantive (*stultus*, *sapiens*), or of an *abstract noun* (*levitas*, *stultitia*) or of a *pronoun*, is often used as a predicate with a copulative verb to denote such English ideas as "property," "duty," "part," "mark," etc.

Obs. 1.—This construction takes the place of the neuter adjective, especially in adjectives of one termination.

"It is foolish" may be translated *stultum est* ; but *stulti* is much more usual ; "it is wise" is always *sapientis*, or *sapientiae*, *est*, never *sapiens*, which might mean "a wise man." Latin is rarely ambiguous.

Obs. 2.—In the place of the personal pronouns the neuter of the possessive is used.

Meum (not mei) est, it is my part, or duty, or it is for me to, etc.

Obs. 3.—The same construction is used after verbs *sentienti* et *declarandi*.

Hoc sapientis esse dixit. This, he said, was the wise course, (lit. *the part of a wise man*).

Obs. 4.—This genitive may be translated into English in various ways: and therefore there are various English phrases that may be reduced to this construction.

Such phrases are: *it is characteristic of*; *it is incumbent on*; *it is for* (the rich, etc.); *it is not every one who*; *any man may*; *it demands or requires*; *it betrays, shows, etc.*; *it belongs to*; *it depends upon*; *it tends to, etc.*

292. Examples—

1. *Imbecilli animi est superstitio.* Superstition is a *mark of* (or *betrays*) a weak mind.
2. *Judicis est legibus parere.* It is the *part* (or *duty*) of a judge to obey the law.
3. *Ingenii hoc magni est.* This *requires* great abilities.
4. *Cujusvis hominis est errare.* Any man *may err*.
5. *Meum est.* It is my *business, or duty*.
6. *Summae est dementiae.* It is the height of madness.
7. *Tempori cedere semper sapientis est habitum.* It has always been held a *wise thing* to yield to circumstances, or to temporise.
8. *Hoc dementiae esse summae dixit.* He said that this *showed* the height of madness.
9. *Hoc sui esse arbitrii negavit.* He said that this did not *depend upon* his own decision.

Obs.—To this belongs a phrase common in Livy—

Hoc evertendae esse reipublicae,¹ dixit. He said that this *tended to* the destruction of the constitution.

Exercise 36.

1. Whether you (*pl.*) will be² slaves or free, depends upon your own decision. 2. We know that any man may err, but it is foolish to forget that error is one thing, persistency in error another. 3. He brought under his own jurisdiction, sooner than he had hoped, the privileges and liberty of all his countrymen. 4. Living³ for the day only,

¹ The various meanings of this phrase *res publica* (often written as one word) should be carefully noticed. It should never be translated by "republic," but by "the constitution," "the nation," "politics," "public life," etc., according to the context, and should never be used in the plural unless when it means more than one "state" or "nation."

² 173, iii.

³ See 94.

(and) making no provision for the future was, he said,¹ rather the characteristic of barbarians than of a free nation. 5. Your father's contemporaries were,² he said, his own, and none (110) of them had² been dearer to him than your uncle. 6. In my absence I did not cease to do everything in your interest and (that) of your excellent brother. 7. A sensible man will³ yield, says he, to circumstances, but it is the height of folly to pay attention to threats of this kind. 8. Whether we have won the day or no (168, *Obs.*) I hardly dare⁴ say; it is, I know,⁵ a soldier's duty to wait for his general's orders. 9. It will be⁶ for others to draw up and bring forward laws, it is our part to obey the law. 10. You were, he said, evading the law which you had⁷ yourself got enacted; a course which, he believed, tended to the overthrow of the constitution.

¹ 32, *b.*² "Were." For tenses, see 193, i., ii.³ =it is the part of *a*, etc.⁴ Subjunctive. (149, i.)⁵ See 32, *b.*⁶ 291, *Obs.* 4.⁷ Mood? (See 77.)

EXERCISE XXXVII.

GENITIVE—Continued.

The Partitive Genitive.

293. A word in the genitive often stands to another word in the relation, not of a possessor, but of a **whole** to a **part**. This is called the **partitive genitive**, and is very widely used.

This genitive answers to the English “*of*,” after substantives denoting a part, in such phrases as *magna pars exercitūs*, and is used, like that preposition, with *superlative adjectives* and *adverbs*, with *interrogative* and other *pronouns*, with *numerals*, and with any word which can denote in any way a *part of a larger whole*, such as *nemo*, *quisquam*, *multi*, *pauci*, *uterque*, *quisque*, etc. Thus—

*Unus*¹ *omnium* infelicissimus, the most unfortunate *of* all mankind; *tu maxime omnium*, you most *of* all; *uter vestrum*, which *of* you two; *multi horum*, many *of* these; *duo horum*, two *of* these; *quotusquisque philosophorum*, how few (*of*) philosophers.

294. A more idiomatic use of this genitive is with the **neuter singular** of adjectives and pronouns expressing *quantity* or *degree*, and with *nihil*, *satis*, *parum*. These are used as **quasi-substantives**, and are joined with the genitive of substantives and adjectives, an idiom not unknown in English, but exceedingly common in Latin.

Compare Latin and English in—

Quantum voluptatis, how much pleasure; plus *detrimenti*, greater loss; *nihil praemii*, no reward; *satis*, or *parum*, *virium*, sufficient, or insufficient strength; *quid novi*? what news? *nimum temporis*, too much time; *hoc emolumenti*, this (*of*) gain.

Obs.—This genitive is even used with *adverbs*: *tum temporis*, at that time; *eo audaciae*, to such a pitch of boldness; *ubi gentium*, where in the world? and in such adverbial phrases as *cum id aetatis puero*, *ad id locorum*, up to that point (*of* time). (See 238, iii.)

¹ Note this **intensive** use of *unus* with the superlative.

295. Cautions in the use of the partitive genitive.

(a) It is not used with adjectives where the genitive has no separate form for the neuter gender: write *nihil humile*, not *nihil humilis*, for "nothing degrading."

(b) It is not used with adjectives expressing the *whole, middle*, etc.: *tota, media*, urbs, not *urbis totum, medium*, for "the whole," "middle of the city" (60).

(c) It is not used with words joined with *prepositions*, or with other cases than the *nominative* and *accusative*.

Ad multam noctem. To a late hour, not *ad multum noctis*.

Tanto sanguine, not *tanto sanguinis*. At the cost of (280) so much blood.

296. With **numerals**, and words expressing *number*, as *nemo, multi, unus, pauci*, etc., and even with superlatives, the ablative with *ex, e, de*, or *inter* with the accusative, is often substituted; *multi, nemo, unus* e vobis, for *unus*, etc. *vestrum*.

Obs.—Where the *whole* is a numeral, or contains a numeral or adjective expressing number or quantity, the preposition is always used.

De tot millibus vix pauci superfuere. Of so many thousands scarcely a few survived.

297. **Further Cautions.**—The *partitive genitive* is only used to denote a larger amount than the word with which it is joined.

If the two words denote the **same persons**, or the **same amount**, *apposition* is used. (*Nos omnes*, "all of us" (i.e. "we all"). *Equites*, qui *pauci* aderant, the cavalry, few of whom were there (lit. who were there in small numbers). (See 225 and 69.)

298. (a) *Uterque* is used as a substantive with pronouns; but with substantives it is treated as an adjective.

Uterque vestrum; but *frater uterque*.

(b) To the partitive genitive belong the phrases:—

Nihil reliqui fecit. He left nothing remaining.

Nihil pensi habuit. He cared not at all.

Quid hoc rei est? What is the meaning of this?

Exercise 37.

1. There was¹ nothing mean in this sovereign, nothing base, nothing degrading; little learning (but²) fair ability, some experience of life and a dash of eloquence, much good sense, abundance of honesty and strength of mind. 2. Of the many³ contemporaries of your father and myself, I incline to think that no one was more deserving than he of universal praise and respect. 3. Which of you two has entailed greater loss and⁴ injury on the nation it is hard to say; I hope and trust that you will⁵ both before long repent your crimes. 4. Fate has left us nothing except either to die⁶ with honour or to live under disgrace. 5. The battle⁷ has been most disastrous; very few of us out of so many thousands survive, the rest are⁸ either slain or taken prisoners, so that I greatly fear that (138) all is lost. 6. Where in the world are we to⁹ find a man like him¹⁰; it would¹¹ be tedious to enumerate, or express in words his many¹² good qualities; and¹³ would that he had been¹⁴ here to-day! 7. So much blood has this victory cost us that for myself I doubt whether the conquerors or the conquered have sustained most loss.

¹ Either *sum* or *insum*. ² Express by order of words. (Intr. 107.)

³ Use *tot*. (Compare the use of *tantus*, 88, *Obs*.)

⁴ Repeat "greater;" this repetition of a word already used is very common in Latin in place of a conjunction.

⁶ The fut. in *-rus* of *poenitet* rare. What is the substitute? (193, iii.)

⁶ *Ut* with subj., compare 125, *g*.

⁸ See 187, *Obs*.

¹⁰ Use *ille*, why? (339, iii.)

¹² *Tot*.

¹³ *Qui*. (78.)

⁷ See 218.

⁹ See 150.

¹¹ Mood. (153.)

¹⁴ See 152.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

GENITIVE—Continued.

Subjective and Objective Genitive.

299. The Genitive case always implies a **close relation** between the noun in that case and another noun.

(i.) Sometimes that relation is such that, if the other noun were converted into a **verb**, the word in the genitive would become the *subject* to the verb.

Thus *post fugam Pompeii* might be expressed by *postquam fugit Pompeius*.

This is called the **subjective genitive**.

(ii.) Sometimes the genitive as clearly represents the *object* of a verb.

Thus, *propter mortis timorem*=*quod mortem timuit*. This is called the **objective genitive**.

Obs.—Both of these genitives may be combined in a single phrase.

Helvetiorum injuriæ populi Romani. The wrongs inflicted *by* the Helvetii *on* Rome.

In such phrases the *subjective* genitive is placed first.

We may compare the English, “a *criminal’s* fear of death,” or the French, “le danger *de la mer*,” “le danger *du vaisseau*,” the danger *of* the sea, the ship’s danger.

300. The **objective genitive** is very common in Latin. It represents not only the *accusative*, as the nearer object to a transitive verb, but also the *dative* as completing the sense of intransitive verbs; and even such combinations of a *preposition* with an *accusative*, or *ablative*, case, as are used to complete the sense of many verbs. It represents therefore many English phrases besides the possessive case and the preposition *of*.

Instances are—*Literarum studium* (*studere literis*), devotion to literature; *doloris remedium* (*dolori mederi*), a remedy *against* pain; *rei publicæ dissensio* (*de r. p. dissentire*), a disagreement *on* political matters, or a political disagreement; *Pyrrhi regis bellum* (*cum Pyrrho bellum gerere*), the war *with*, or *against*, King Pyrrhus; *sui fiducia* (*sibi confidere*), confidence *in* one’s-self. So also, *legum obedientia*, submission to law; *Deorum opinio*, an impression *about* the gods, and many others.

301. This objective genitive is combined not only as above with substantives, but also with many **adjectives**.

(i.) Thus, adjectives which signify *desire, knowledge, recollection, fear, participation*, and their *opposites*; certain *verbals* in *-ax*, and many adjectives that express *fulness* or *emptiness*, are followed by a genitive.

Rerum novarum cupidus, desirous of change; *militiae* ignarus, ignorant of warfare; *imperii* capax, with a capacity for rule.

These adjectives have an *incomplete meaning*, and may be compared with transitive verbs, as they require a noun to define and complete their meaning.

(ii.) Many of them, such as *cupidus, ignarus, memor*, etc., answer to English adjectives which are followed by the preposition *of*, and will cause no difficulty; with others the Latin genitive represents (as with substantives) various English prepositions and constructions.

Rei publicae peritus, imperitissimus, rudis. Skilled, most unskilled, unversed, *in* the management of the state.

Pugnandi insuetus. Unaccustomed to fighting.

Literarum studiosissimus. Most devoted to literature.

Hujus sceleris particeps, expers, affinis. With part *in*, free *from*, connected *with*, this guilt.

Beneficii immemor. Apt to forget a favour.

Obs.—*Plenus* takes both ablative and genitive, oftener the former; *prudens* and *rudis*, sometimes *in* with ablative.

Certiorem facere = to inform, has a double construction.

(English) He has informed me of his plan.

(Latin) *Certiorem me sui consilii fecit*; or, *Certiorem me de suo consilio fecit*.

302. The objective genitive is combined with the **present participle** of transitive verbs, when the latter is used as an adjective, *i.e.* to denote a *permanent quality*, not a *single act*.

Thus *regnum appetens* = “*while aspiring to the crown*,” but—*regni appetens* = aspiring to kingly power (*habitually*, or by character).

Such participles are, *amans, patiens, diligens*, etc. (cf. also *juris consultus*, one consulted on law).

These present participles, when thus used, admit, as adjectives, of degrees of comparison, *tui amantissimus*, etc.

Exercise 38.

1. He was always most devoted to literature, at the same time (366) most uncomplaining under toil, cold, heat, want of food and of sleep; for myself, my fear¹ is that he consents to allow himself too little repose and rest. 2. Such was the soldiers' ardour for the fight,² such the universal enthusiasm, that they refused to obey the orders of their general, (though) thoroughly versed in warfare of the kind, and as,³ full of self-confidence and contempt for the enemy, and cheering each other on, they advanced as³ to certain victory, they fell unawares into an ambuscade. 3. In spite of the greatest disagreement on politics, the friendship⁴ which existed⁵ between your gallant father and myself remained firm longer⁶ than either (*et*) he or I had hoped. 4. He had⁷ enough and to spare of wealth, but he was at the same⁸ time most inexperienced in political life, with but little desire for fame, praise, influence, or power, and very averse to all competition for office⁹ or distinction.⁹ 5. But these¹⁰ men (though) they-have-borne¹¹ no part in all these toils, craving only for pleasure and repose, most indifferent to the public interest, devoted to feasting and gluttony, have reached such a pitch of shamelessness, that they have ventured in my hearing to taunt with luxury an army that-has-borne-uncomplainingly¹² all the hardships of a prolonged warfare.

¹ *Illud vereor.* (See 341.)² Gerund, 99.³ Note carefully the different meanings of "as." *As* he does this (time), *dum haec facit.* *As* (though) to victory (comparison), *tanquam* . . . I did this *as* a boy, *puer hoc faciebam.* (63.)⁴ Insert *tamen*, "yet."⁵ "Which was to me *with* your," etc. (Intr. 49, *Obs.*)⁶ See 277.⁷ See 251.⁸ *Idem.* (See 366, ii.)⁹ Plural. Latin would not represent either word here by an *abstract* term in the singular.¹⁰ *Isti.* (See 338, *Obs.* 2.)¹¹ Use adjective *expers* (301, ii.) in apposition with "these men."¹² Use a single word, "most uncomplaining under."

EXERCISE XXXIX.

GENITIVE—Continued.

Quality and Definition.

303. The resemblance of the Latin genitive to the adjective is to be further noticed in its next use, the **genitive of quality**.

(i.) A Latin substantive in the genitive is often added to another substantive, in the same manner as in English a substantive with “of” prefixed, to denote some quality, either *predicated* of, or attached as an *attribute* to, that substantive. (Intr. 7, 8.)

Vir est priscae severitatis. He is a man of old-fashioned austerity.

Vir summae fortitudinis. A man of the greatest courage.

(ii.) But this Latin substantive in the genitive has invariably an **adjective** attached to it. “A man of courage” is not *homo fortitudinis*, but *homo fortis*; a man of good sense, *homo prudens*, not *prudential*.

This use of the genitive resembles that of the ablative of quality (271), but—

Obs. 1.—If the qualifying substantive denotes *number*, *amount*, *precise dimensions*, *age*, or *time*, the **genitive** is always used.

Septuaginta navium classis, a fleet of seventy ships; *viginti pedum erat agger*, the embankment was twenty feet high; *puer tredecim annorum*, a boy thirteen years old; *provectae, exactae, aetatis homo*, a man advanced, far advanced, in years; *tot annorum felicitas*, so many years of good fortune; *quindecim dierum supplicatio*, a thanksgiving of fifteen days’ duration.

Obs. 2.—The **Genitive** is used mainly to express *permanent* and *inherent* qualities: *optimae spei adolescens*, a youth of the highest promise; the **Ablative** both these and *external* characteristics of dress or appearance: *canis capillis, veste sordida*; not *canorum capillorum*, etc. So also the ablative is used for any state or feeling of the moment: *fac bono sis animo*, “Be of good cheer.”

304. A word in the genitive is sometimes added to another substantive to *explain*, or *define*, or *restrict* its sense: *Virtus justitiae*, the virtue *of* justice; *gloriae praemium*, a reward *consisting in* glory. This is called the **genitive of definition**.

Cautions.—The resemblance of these uses of the Latin genitive to those of the English preposition *of* is obvious, but it must be remembered that—

(i.) After such words as *urbs*, *insula*, etc., apposition is used, not the **defining** genitive, to express the English *of* with the proper name.

Urbs Saguntum, the city *of* Saguntum; *insula Britannia*, the island *of* Britain. (See 222.)

(ii.) With the names of **towns** or **countries** the Latin **adjective** is used in place of the **possessive** genitive where we use “*of*.”

Res Romanae, the affairs *of* Rome; *civis Thebanus*, a citizen *of* Thebes. (See 98.)

(iii.) Remember also: *media urbs*, the middle *of* the city (295, b), *quot estis?* how many *of* you are there? (297), and avoid here the **partitive** genitive.

Exercise 39.

1. It is said that serpents of vast size are found in the island of Lemnos. 2. No one denies that he was a man of courage;¹ the real question is, whether he was (one) of good sense,¹ and experience.¹ 3. It seems that your son is a boy of the highest promise, and of great influence with² those of his own age. 4. After three days³ procrastination he at last set out with a fleet of thirty ships; but being⁴ far advanced in life was scarcely competent to carry out so toilsome a task. 5. I would have⁵ you therefore be of good cheer, and do not on account of a short-lived panic throw away the result of so many years of toil. 6. He is a person⁶ of old-world, as all of us know, and perhaps of excessive, rigour: but at the same time a man⁶

¹ What part of speech? (303, ii.)

² Apud (*acc.*).

³ 303, *Obs.* 1.

⁴ Turn by *homo* in app. (See 224, *Obs.* 1.)

⁵ *Fac* or *velim*. (141.)

⁶ *Homo*, in a neutral sense, with either good or bad qualities; *Vir*, with marked social virtues. (See 224, *Obs.* 2, note).

of justice and honesty, and of the most spotless life. 7. Gallant fighting¹ and an honourable death in the field becomes citizens of Rome; let the few therefore of us² who survive show ourselves worthy alike of our ancestors and of the nation of Rome. 8. It seemed that there stood by him in his sleep an old man far advanced in years, with white hair, and kindly countenance, who bade him be of good cheer and hope for the best,³ for (that) he would reach in safety the island of Corcyra after a voyage of some⁴ days.

¹ 96, a.² 297.³ Neut. plur.⁴ *aliquot*.

EXERCISE XL.

GENITIVE—Continued.

Genitive with Verbs.

THE genitive is also used to complete or define the sense not only of nouns but of certain verbs.

305. (i.) The **genitive of price**¹ is thus used with verbs of **valuing** and **buying**, etc., especially the former.

Magni, maximi, pluris; parvi, minoris, minimi; tanti, quanti, nihili, are used with *factitive* verbs such as *facio, habeo, aestimo*, etc., sometimes with *emo* and *vendo*.

Te quotidie pluris facio. I value you more highly every day.

Rempubicam nihili habet, salutem suam maximi. He sets no value on the national cause, the highest on his own safety.

Emit hortos tanti quanti Pythius voluit. He bought the pleasure-grounds at the full (or, exactly at the) price that Pythius wished for.

Obs.—This genitive of value is also used as a predicate with **link** verbs, such as *sum, fio*.

Tua mihi amicitia pluris est quam ceterorum omnium plausus.

Your friendship is of more value to me than the applause of all the world besides.

306. (ii.) Verbs of **accusing, condemning, acquitting**, such as *accusare, arguere, reum facere, condemnare, absolvere*, take a genitive defining the **charge**.

Proditionis accusare, reum facere. To accuse, to prosecute, for treachery.

Furti ac repetundarum condemnatus est. He was condemned for, found guilty of, theft and extortion.

Paricidii eum incusat. He taxes him with parricide.

Sacrilegii absolutus est. He was acquitted of sacrilege.

¹ The origin of this genitive is doubtful; it may possibly have originated with the locative in *-i* (at a price), and in course of time been transferred to other genitives; but is more probably adjectival.

This construction may be explained by the omission of *crimine*, "on the charge," or *nomine*, "under the title," which are sometimes expressed.

Obs.—Instead of the *genitive*, the *ablative* with *de* is very common.

De pecuniis repetundis damnari. To be condemned for extortion.

Aliquem de ambitu reum facere. To bring an action against a man for bribery.

So—*De vi, de sacrilegio, de caede, de veneficiis, etc., se purgare.* To clear one's-self of assault, sacrilege, murder, poisoning.

But—*Inter sicarios accusatus est.* He was accused of assassination.

307. The **punishment** stands sometimes in the *genitive*; far oftener in the *ablative*.

Capitis, or capite, damnatus est. He was capitally condemned, *i.e.* to death or exile.

Octupli condemnatus est. He was condemned to pay eightfold.

But—*Morte, exilio condemnatus (multatus) est.* He was condemned to (punished with) death, exile.

308. The *genitive* is also used to complete the sense of verbs of **compassionating, remembering, reminding, forgetting.**

Such are *misereor, meminī, commonefacere, oblivisci.*

But—(a) Verbs of reminding, *admoneo*, etc., take an accusative of the thing as well as of the person, with *neuter pronouns*; *hoc, illud, te admoneo.*

(b) *Memini*, an accusative with a person, in the sense of "I still remember him."

(c) *Miserari*, "to express pity for," "to bemoan the lot of," an accusative.

Thus—

Ciceronem meminī; rerum praeteritarum (the past) meminī.

Nostri miserere, take pity on us; *casum nostrum miserabatur*, he bemoaned our disaster.

But—*Illud nos admonuit*, he reminded us of that; *nos officii nostri commonefecit*, he reminded us of our duty.

Obs.—Even an impersonal phrase equivalent to a verb of remembering is followed by a similar *genitive*.

Venit mihi in mentem ejus diei. I have a recollection of that day.

¹ This may be looked on as a cognate accusative (236, 237).

The Genitive with Impersonal Verbs.

309. The impersonals, *pudet*, *piget*, *poenitet*, *taedet*, *miseret*, take an **accusative** of the *person feeling*, a **genitive** of what *causes* the feeling.

Ignavum poenitebit aliquando ignaviae. The slothful man will one day repent of his sloth.

Me non solum piget stultitiae meae, sed etiam pudet. I am not only sorry for my folly, but also ashamed of it.

Taedet me vitae. I am weary of my life.

Tui me miseret; mei piget. I pity you; I am vexed with myself.

What causes the feeling may also be a *verb* (in the *infinitive*, or in an *indicative* clause with *quod*).

Tuedet eadem audire milites. The soldiers are tired of hearing the same thing.

Poenitet nos { *haec fecisse.*
 { *quod haec fecimus.* } *We are sorry that we acted so.*

Obs. 1.—The neuter pronouns *hoc*, *illud*, *quod*, are used in place of the genitive with these verbs. *Hoc pudet*, *illud poenitet*. (Cf. 308, a.)

Obs. 2.—The genitive with *pudet* is also used for the person *before whom* the shame is felt.

Pudet me veteranorum militum. I blush before the veterans.

310. The construction of the impersonals *interest* and *rēfert* requires attention.

(i.) The *person* to whom it is of importance is put in the *genitive* with *interest*; but *possessive pronouns*, *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, etc., are used in the *ablative feminine*.

Interest omnium recte facere. It is the interest of *all* to do right.
Quid nostrā interest? Of what importance is it to *us*? (or, What does it signify to *us*?)

(ii.) The *thing* that is of importance may be either (a) an *infinitive* (with or without accusative) or (b) a *neuter pronoun* (*hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *quod*), or a *clause* introduced either (c) by an *interrogative* pronoun or particle, followed by the subjunctive mood, or (d) by *ut*, *nē*.

(iii.) The *degree of importance* is expressed either by the *genitive of price* (*magni*, *tanti*, *pluris*), or by an *adverb* or *neuter adjective* (*mag-nopere*, *vehementer*, *magis*, *parum*: *multum*, *plus*, *nihil*, *nimum*, *quantum*, etc.)

(iv.) The *thing* with reference to which it is of importance is sometimes indicated by *ad*.

Examples.—The following examples should therefore be well studied and analysed :—

- a. *Magni interest ad laudem civitatis haec vos facere.* Your doing this is of great importance to the credit of the state.
- b. *Multum interest quos quisque audiat quotidie.* It of great consequence whom a man listens to every day.
- c. *Illud¹ mea pluris interest te ut videam.* It is of more consequence to me that I should see you.
- d. *Vestra interest, commilitones, ne imperatorem pessimi faciant.* It is of importance to you, my comrades, that the worst sort should not elect your commander.
- f. *Hoc et tuā et rei publicae interest.* This concerns both yourself and the nation.
- e. *Nihil meā interest quanti me facias.* Your estimate of me is of no concern to me.

The constructions of *refert*, *it concerns*, are similar to those of *interest*, except that *refert* is rarely used with a genitive of the person concerned, but with the feminine possessive, or *ad*.

Exercise 40.

1. He was a man of moderate abilities, but of the highest character, and in the greatest crisis of a perilous war he was valued more highly in his old age than any² of (his) juniors. 2. He was a man of long-tried honour and rare incorruptibility, yet at that time he was taxed with avarice, suspected of bribery, and prosecuted for extortion; you all know that he was unanimously acquitted of that charge; but who³ is there of you but remembers the (that) day on which he refused to deprecate the undeserved disgrace of condemnation, and not only cleared himself of that indictment, but exposed the malice and falsehoods of his accusers? None⁴ of those who were present in the court that day will easily forget his magnificent address; nothing ever made a deeper impression on his audience.⁵ 3. The whole nation has long⁶ been weary of the war, regrets its own rashness, and blushes for the

¹ The substantival *ut*-clause is especially common after *illud* or *hoc* at the beginning of the sentence.

² *Quisquam.* (See 358, ii.)

³ To whom of you does not, etc., 308, *Obs.*

⁴ *Nemo.*

⁵ "The mind (*pl.*) of his audience." Either genitive participle of, or relative clause with, *audio.* (73, 76.)

⁶ Tense? (See 181.)

folly and incompetence of its general. 4. I remember well the man¹ whom you mention; he was a person of very low origin, of advanced age, with white hair, mean dress, of uncultivated and rustic demeanour; but no one was ever more skilled in the science of war, and his being made general² at such an emergency was of the utmost importance to the welfare of the state. 5. It makes no difference to us, who are waiting for your verdict, whether the defendant be acquitted or condemned; but it is of general interest that he should not in his absence and unheard be sentenced to either exile or death.

¹ *Ille*. (339, iii.)

² 310, ii. *a*.

EXERCISE XLI.

PLACE, SPACE.

Locative Case.

IN answer to the questions, *where? whither? whence?* we employ in English the prepositions *at* or *in*, *to*, *from*, etc.

In Latin all these questions can sometimes be answered merely by **case-endings**; but a **preposition** is often necessary.

311. Place at which; answer to “where?”

This is generally expressed by the *local ablative* (272, 273) either with or without a **preposition**. Thus, in *Italia*, in *urbe*; but where an adjective is attached, *mediā urbe*, *totā Italia*.

Obs.—Of course other prepositions of place are used with their proper cases. Thus—

Ad¹ *urbem est*. He is *in the neighbourhood* of (outside) the city.

Ad (*sometimes apud*) *Cannas pugnatum est*. There was a battle *at (near)* Cannae.

312. But with **towns** and **small islands** as opposed to countries, the old rule is as follows:—

If the name of a town, *at which* anything is or happens, is a *singular* noun of the *first* or *second* declension, it is put in the **genitive**; if not, in the **ablative**.

Vixi Romae, Tarenti, Athenis, Rhodi, Tiburē (or *Tiburi*). I have lived at Rome, Tarentum, Athens, Rhodes, Tibur.

The explanation of this is that *Romae* (for older form *Romai*) *Tarenti*, *Rhodi*, are remains of the locative case in *i*, which in other declensions was supplanted by the ablative. (*Tiburi*, *Carthagini* are perhaps old ablatives.) In the plural the two cases coincide.

Other instances of this case are *domi*, at home; *humi* on the ground; *belli*, *militiae*, in war (only used in contrast with *domi*). *Ruri*, in the country, *vesperi*, in the evening, may be old ablatives.

Obs.—*Pendēre animi*, “to be in suspense,” as also the genitive of *value* (305), may be locative cases.

¹ This is often used of Roman generals, who could not enter the city without laying down their *imperium*.

313. Place to which—whither ?

As a rule the **prepositions** *ad*, *in*, etc., are used with the accusative ; but

With the names of **towns**, etc., as above, the **accusative** is used without a preposition: thus, *In or ad Italiam, Africam, urbem, navem*, but, *Syracusas, Romam*, etc., *rediit*.

Obs.—The same construction is used with *domus* and *rus*: *domum rediit*; *rus fugit*.

314. Place from which—whence ?

As a rule the **ablative** is used, joined with the **prepositions** *e*, *ex*, *a* (*ab*): *a Pyrrho, ex Italia, ab Africa, e nave, ab urbe*.

But with *towns*, etc., the **ablative** alone is generally used, as also with *domus* and *rus*.

Romā scribit, he writes *from* Rome; *Tarquinios Corintho fugit*, he fled, *or* went into exile, *to* Tarquinii *from* Corinth: so, *rure, or ruri rediit*.

These rules are quite simple, but the following idiom must be carefully observed.

315. We cannot, in Latin, say, as in English, "He came to his father *at* Rome," or "from Carthage *in* Africa." With verbs of motion, all such phrases must follow the rules for motion *to* or *from*, given above. Thus—

He returned home from his friends *at* Corinth. *Corintho ab amicis domum rediit*.

He sent a despatch to the Senate *at* Rome. *Romam ad Senatum literas misit*.

He returned to his friends *in* Africa. *In Africam ad amicos rediit*.

In such sentences Latin connects both nouns closely with the verb of motion.

316. None of the rules given above apply to the names of towns when joined with adjectives.

(i.) We cannot say *totius*, or *toti*,¹ *Corinthi*, for "*in* the whole of Corinth," but must use with both words the **local ablative**, *tota Corintho*. (311.)

¹ This is because the old locative case no longer exists in any but certain words.

(ii.) When *urbs*, or *oppidum*, comes before the proper name, the preposition must be used.

In *urbe Londino*, in the city of London ; ad *urbem Athenas*, ex *urbe Roma*. (See 222.)

(iii.) With *domus* the locative construction is extended to *possessive pronouns*. With other adjectives the preposition is used.

Domī meae (or *apud me*) *commoratus est*. He stayed at my house. But—In *veteri domo*, ad *veterem domum*. In, or to, his old home.

317. When an adjective is joined with the name of a town, the construction resembles that used with the names of persons. (See 224.)

The name of the town is placed first, in either the *locative*, *accusative*, or *ablative*, according to the meaning ; then follows the word *urbs* or *oppidum* combined with the adjective, with or without a preposition according to the rules already given. Thus—

Archias Antiochiaē natus est, *celebri quondam urbe* (local ablative). Archias was born in the once famous city of Antioch. *Athenas*, in *urbem praeclarissimam veni*. I reached the illustrious city of Athens.

Syracusis, ex *urbe opulentissima*, *profectus est*. He set out from the flourishing city of Syracuse.

318. (i.) **Space covered** (answer to the question *how far* ?) is generally expressed by the **accusative**.

Tridui iter processit. He advanced a two days' march.

Ab officio cave transversum, ut aiunt, digitum discedas. Do not swerve "a finger's breadth" from your duty.

(ii.) For **distance from** (question, *how far off* ?) either the **accusative** or **ablative** is used. (238, iv., and 279.)

Ariovistus vix plus duo milia passuum (or *duobus milibus*) *aberat*. Ariovistus was at a distance of scarcely more than two miles.

Obs.—After *plus*, *amplius*, *minus*, *quam* is rarely used with numerals, but the case of the numeral is unaffected by the comparative.

(iii.) **Dimension** is generally in the **accusative**.

Mīlites aggērem latum pedes trecentos extruxerunt. The soldiers threw up a mound three hundred feet broad (or in breadth).

Occasionally the **genitive** of quality, or description, is used and the adjective omitted : *fossa quindecim pedum*, a ditch fifteen feet deep. (See 303, *Obs.* 1.)

319. In English the name of a town or country is often personified and used for the nation or people : "Spain," "France," "England," etc. This is much rarer in Latin prose. (Cf. 17, and end of 174.)

"The war between *Rome* and *Carthage*" is *Bellum, quod populus Romanus cum Carthaginienſibus gessit*.

For "*Rome*" in this sense we may use *Populus Romanus*, *res publica Romana*, or *Romani*, but rarely *Roma*.

Exercise 41.

1. After living¹ many² years at Veii, a town at that period of great population³ and vast resources, he removed thence late in life to the city⁴ of Rome, which was at a distance of about fourteen miles from his old home. 2. His parents, sprung originally from Syracuse, had been⁵ long resident at Carthage; he himself was sent⁶ in boyhood to his uncle at Utica, and was absent from home for full three years; but after his⁷ return to his mother, now⁸ a widow, at Carthage, he passed the rest of his youth at his own home. 3. The enemy (*pl.*) was now⁸ scarcely a single day's march off; the walls of the fortress, scarcely twenty feet high, surrounded by a ditch of (a depth of) less than six feet, were falling into ruin from age; Doria, after waiting¹ six days in vain for reinforcements, sent a despatch by⁹ a spy to the governor at Pisa, earnestly imploring¹⁰ him not to waste time any longer, but to bring up troops to¹¹ his aid without delay. 4. Born and brought up in the vast and populous city of London, I have never before had permission to exchange the din and throng of the city even¹² for the repose and peace and solitude of rural life; but now I hope shortly to travel to my son at Rome,

¹ "After living," i.e. "having lived." (14, a.)

² Case? (See 321.)

³ May be turned either by "flourishing (superlative of *florens*) with a multitude of citizens and vast resources," or "most populous and wealthy."

⁴ *Urbs* may be removed into the relative clause, "which city."

⁵ Tense? (See 181.)

⁶ Participle, and omit "and." (15.)

⁷ Use verb and *postquam*. (14, a.)

⁸ Why not *nunc*? (See 328, b.)

⁹ Why not *ab*? (See 267, *Obs.*)

¹⁰ "(in) which he implored." Why not participle? (See 411.)

¹¹ For construction see 259. Is "his" *ei* or *sibi*? (See 353.)

¹² = not even. (Intr. 99.)

and from Italy to sail, before the middle of winter, to the city of Constantinople, which I have long been eager to visit; you, I fancy,¹ will winter at Malta, an island² which I am not likely ever to see. In the beginning of spring I have decided to stay in the lovely city of Naples, and to betake myself to my old home at London in the month of May or June. 5. Caesar shows himself, I fancy, scarcely less tenacious of his purpose at home than in the field; it is said³ that he is outside the city waiting for his triumph, and wishes to address the people. 6. Exasperated and provoked by the wrongs and insults of Napoleon, Spain turned at last to England her ancient foe.

¹ See 32, b.

² "Which island."

³ See 43, 44.

EXERCISE XLII.

EXPRESSIONS OF TIME.

320. In answer to the question **when ? at what time ?** the **local ablative** (272) is used with words which in themselves denote *time*.

Vere, auctumno, nocte, solis occasu, primā luce, etc.

With words which do not *in themselves* denote time, the preposition *in* is mostly inserted, unless an adjective is attached : *in bello*, in time of war ; but *bello Punico secundo*, in the second Punic war. (Cf. 311.) But the rule is not universal.

Obs.—*In tempore* means at the *right* moment, but *Alcibiadis temporibus*, at the *time* (in the *days*) of Alcibiades.

For the difference made by the preposition *in*, see 273, *Obs.*

321. In answer to the question **how long ?** the **accusative** is used. (See 238, iv.)

Multos jam annos hic domicilium habeo. I have now been living (181) here *for* many years.

Obs. 1.—Sometimes the idea of duration is emphasised by the addition of *per*.

Per totam noctem, per hiemem.

Obs. 2.—The answer to **for how long past ?** is often expressed by an *ordinal* adjective (of course in the singular).

Annum jam (or, hunc) vicesimum regnat. He has been king *for* the last twenty years.

322. In answer to **how long before ? how long after ?** two constructions may be used.

(a) The word, or words, expressing the length of time may be in the *ablative of measure of difference* (279), and *post* or *ante* may be used as *adverbs*. Or

(b) *Post* and *ante* may be used as *prepositions* with the *accusative* of the amount of time.

For example, for the phrase “the fleet returned after three years,” we may write either, *tribus post annis (tertio post anno) classis rediit*, or *post tres annos*, etc. There is the same variety in English : “Three years *after*, the fleet returned” is English, though “After three years” is less ambiguous.

Obs.—Even when joined with this *ablative*, *post*, *ante*, may still govern a case. We may say for “a few days before his death,” either “*paucis diebus ante ejus mortem*,” or “*paucis ante diebus, quam e vita excessit.*”

323. The following examples may be noticed:—

- (a) "Three hundred and two years after the foundation of Rome."
 1. Anno trecentesimo altero *quam Roma condita est.* Or,
 2. Post trecentesimum alterum annum *quam Roma condita est.*
- (b) *Pridie quam excessit e vitâ.* The day before his death.
Postridie quam a vobis discessi. The day after I left you.
Postero anno quam, etc. The year after, etc.
Priore anno quam, etc. The year before, etc.
- (c) (He did it) *three years after he (had) returned.*
 1. *Post tres annos (or tertium annum)* } *quam redierat.*
 2. *Tertio anno*¹
 3. *Tribus post annis (or tertio anno) quam redierat.*
 4. *Tertio anno, quo redierat.* (Rare.)

324. **How long ago?** reckoning from the present time, is answered by *abhinc* with the **accusative**; the *abhinc* always coming first.

Abhinc annos quatuor Virgilium vidi. I saw Virgil four years ago.

325. **Within, or in, what time?** is answered by the **ablative**, or the preposition *intra* with the **accusative**.

The singular of the *Ordinal* ("second," "third," etc.) often takes the place of the plural of the *Cardinal* ("two," "three").

Vix decem annis, or decimo anno, or intra decimum annum, urbem capiemus. We shall scarcely take the city *in, or for, or within*, ten years.

Obs.—His tribus diebus, in or for the last three days (from the present time); illis, etc., from a past time; hoc biennio, within two years from this time.

326. *In* with the **accusative** denotes a time *for* which provision or arrangement or calculations are made.

In diem vivere, to live for the day (only); in sex dies indutiae, a truce for six days; ad coenam me in posterum diem invitavit (ad, an exact date in the future); ad calendas solvam, I will pay on, or by, the 1st; ad tempus, at the appointed time, punctually.

Ex, ab, starting from the time at which a period begins. Ex eo die ad extremum usque vitae diem.

¹ It might be supposed that "*tertio anno quam (or quo) redierat*" would mean "after two completed years from his return, and before the completion of the third." This however does not appear to be so. "*Octavo mense, quam coeptum oppugnari, captum Saguntum,*" etc. (LIV.); ἐν ὀκτῷ μηνί (POLYB.); "*Tyrus septimo mense capta est*" (CURT.); πολιορκῶν ἐπτά μῆνας (PLUT.).

327. In answer to the question **how old**? the usual construction is *natus* with the accusative.

Annos quinque et octoginta natus excessit e vita. He died at the age of eighty-five.

But *quum annos quinque et octoginta haberet*, or *quum annum octogesimum quintum ageret*, would be equally good Latin.

The adjectival genitive (303, Obs. 1) may also be used: *puer quindecim annorum*.

"Under, over, twenty years," may be expressed by *minor* (*major*) *viginti annis*, or *annos natus minor* (*major*) *viginti*, and by several other curious variations, such as—

Minor viginti annis natu.—C1C.

Minor decem annorum.—LIVY.

"When under," etc., by *quum nondum viginti haberet annos*.

Notes on Adverbs of Time.

328. The correct use of certain adverbs of time is important.

(a) "**No longer**" is only *non diutius* when a long time has already passed, otherwise *non jam*; "no one any longer" is *nemo jam*, or (with *and*) *nec quisquam jam*.

(b) **Now.** *Nunc* is "at the present moment," or "as things are now." It cannot be used of the past. "Caesar *was now* tired of war" is, *jam Caesarem belli taedebat*. Occasionally, if the "now" of the past is very precise, *tum*. *Jam* can be used also of the future: *quid hoc rei sit, jam intelleges*, "you will soon be aware of the meaning of this."

(c) "**Daily.**" *Quotidie* as a rule; *in dies* only with comparatives, or verbs of *increasing* or the reverse; *in singulos dies* is more emphatic: *Diem de die*, day after day; *de nocte*, after night has begun. *Diurnus* (adj.) is "daily" as opposed to *nocturnus*; *quotidianus* is "daily" in the sense of "every-day."

(d) "**Not yet**" is *nondum, necdum*; "no one yet" *nemo unquam*, or, where the present is opposed to the future, *adhuc nemo*.

"**Still**" (=even now) is *etiam nunc*.

(e) *Jam diu* is "now for a long while" simply; *jam pridem* looks back rather to the *beginning* of the time that is past; *jam dudum* "for some, or a considerable, time."

(f) **Again.** *Rursus*, "once more;" *iterum*, "a second time," opposed to *semel* or *primum*; *de integro*, "afresh" as though the former action had not taken place; "again and again," *saepe, saepissime*. (57, a.)

Exercise 42.

1. Mithridates, who in a single day had butchered so many citizens of Rome, had now been on the throne two-and-twenty years from that date. 2. It seems that here too the swallows are absent in the winter months; I at least have seen not a single¹ one for the last three weeks. 3. He died at the age of three-and-thirty; when less than thirty years old he had already performed achievements unequalled² by any either of his predecessors or successors. 4. The famine is becoming sorer daily; exhausted by daily toil (*pl.*) we shall soon be compelled³ to discontinue the sallies which up to this day we have made both by night⁴ and by day. Day after day we look in vain for the arrival of our troops. 5. He promised to be by my side by the first of June; for the last ten years I have never so much as once known⁵ him to be present in good time. 6. Nearly three years ago I said that I had never yet seen any one⁶ who surpassed⁷ your brother in character or ability, but in the last two years he seems to be growing daily sterner and harsher, and I no longer estimate him so highly as I did before. 7. I saw your father about three weeks after⁸ his return from India. Years⁹ had not yet dulled the keenness of his intellect or the vigour of his spirit; in spite of his advancing years he had commanded an army within the last six months, and was just preparing to be a candidate for office. 8. Misled by a mistake in the date,¹⁰ I thought you had stayed at Athens more than six months. 9. I have spoken enough on this question, and will detain you no longer; six months ago I might¹¹ have spoken longer.¹²

1 " = not even one." (Intr. 99.)

2 "Such as (86) not even one (had performed)."

3 "The sallies must be," etc., part. in *-dus*. (See 199.)

4 Use adjectives. (328, c.)

5 *Cognosco*, "I find or ascertain."

7 Mood? (77.)

9 i.e. age.

11 See 196, b.

6 328, d.

8 See 323, c.

10 Genitive. (300.)

12 "Said more." (53.)

EXERCISE XLIII.

PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions with Accusative.

329. With the use of **Cases** is closely connected that of *Prepositions*.

(i.) **Prepositions** are indeclinable words which, besides other uses, are placed before substantives and pronouns to define their relation to other words. (Intr. 20-24.)

(ii.) Their use therefore is precisely the same as that of the *case-endings* (see 203), but as the number of cases is not nearly sufficient to mark all the different relations of a noun to other words, prepositions¹ are used to aid the cases in making their meaning more definite and clear. Thus, to take the simplest instance, the use of the preposition distinguishes the relation of the *agent* from that of the *instrument* (267).

(iii.) In Latin, as in modern languages, they come, as a rule, before² the noun, and are used almost exclusively with the *accusative* and *ablative* cases.

Obs.—The ablatives *gratiā*, *causā*, are used as *quasi-prepositions* with the *genitive*, and resemble such English *prepositional phrases* as “in consequence of,” “in spite of,” etc.

330. The following prepositions are used with the *accusative* :—

(Those marked with an asterisk are used also as *adverbs*, *i.e.* without being attached to a noun, but as qualifying a *verb* or *adjective*.)

*ante**, *apud*, *ad*, *adversus**,
*circum**, *circa**, *citra**, *cis*,
erga, *contra**, *inter*, *extra**,
*infra**, *intra**, *juxta**, *ob*,

¹ Prepositions were doubtless originally adverbs formed from nouns and pronouns; in some languages, as occasionally in Latin, they follow the noun; the case-endings may have had their origin in prepositional words added to the noun, cf. *whereof*, *whereby*, *therefore*, etc.

² For the position of *cum* in *tecum*, etc., see 8, *Obs.*; *tenuis* also follows its noun (*Alpibus tenuis*, *as far as the Alps*), as does *versus*, and occasionally *propter* and others.

penes, pone, post* and praeter,
prope*, propter*, per, secundum,
supra*, versus, ultra*, trans.*

The following are joined with the *accusative* when they express *motion towards*; otherwise with the *ablative* :—

sub and *subter**, *super**, *in*.

The following are followed by the *ablative* :—

a (*ab, abs*), with *cum* and *de*,
*coram**, *pro* with *ex* or *e*,
tenuis, sine, also *prae*;

and where *place at*, not *motion towards* is denoted—

sub and *subter**, *super**, *in*.

331. Their meanings are so various that no attempt will be made to illustrate more than some of the most important.

The *local* meaning is the earliest, but from this many others are deduced.

1. **Ad**, “towards,” “to,” used after verbs of motion, and transferred to various other senses.

- (a) *Ad te scripsi* (to); (b) *ad haec respondit*, “in answer to;” (c) *ad Cannas*, “in the neighbourhood of,” “near;” (d) *hoc ad nos conservandos pertinet*, “this tends to our preservation;” (e) *dies ad urbis interitum fatalis*, “the day destined to the ruin of the city” (*final*); (f) *ad unum*, “to a man” = all.

2. **Adversus**, “opposite to.”

- (a) *Adversus castra nostra*; (b) “against,” “with,” *adversus te contendam* = *contra te* or *tecum*; (c) “in answer to” (a speech), *adversus haec respondit*.

3. **Ante**, “before” (*place*), *ante aciem*: but mostly “time,” *ante me*, “before my time;” often used adverbially; see 322.

4. **Apud**, “close by:” *apud Cannas*, “near, or at, Cannae,” but mostly in such phrases as:

- (a) *Apud me*, “in my house;” (b) *apud Xenophontem*, “in (the writings of) Xenophon;” (c) *apud vos concionatus est*, “he made a speech in your hearing;” (d) *apud me*, “in my judgment;” *apud me plus valet*, “has more influence with me.”

5. **Circum, circa**, “round:” *circa tellurem*, “round the earth;” *circa viam*, “on both sides of, along, the road;” often used adverbially; *circa* and *circiter*, “about,” with numerals.

6. **Cis**, *citra*; **trans**, "this side," "the other side:" *cis*, *citra*, *trans*, *flumen Rhenum*.

7. **Contra**, "facing:" *contra urbem*; oftener "against," *contra rempublicam facere*, "to act unconstitutionally;" *contra nos bellum gerit* = *nobiscum*, *contra* (*praeter*) *spem*, *opinionem*, etc.

8. **Erga** (local sense obsolete): *erga me benevolentissimus*, "full of kindness towards me."

9. **Extra**, "outside of:" *extra urbem*; *extra culpam*, "free from blame;" *extra ordinem*, "out of his proper order;" "extraordinarily."

10. **Inter**, "amongst:" *inter hostium tela*; "between," *inter me ac vos hoc* (or *illud*) *interest*; "this difference between;" *inter se diligunt* (reciprocal), "they love each other."

11. **Infra**, "below:" *infra montes*.

12. **Intra**, "within:" *intra teli jactum*, "within the cast of a javelin;" *intra diem decimum* (325).

13. **Juxta**, "close to," "near:" *juxta murum*; often adverbially, *juxta constiti*; sometimes = *pariter*, and joined with *ac*.

14. **Ob**, "before, opposite to:" *ob oculos*; "on account of," *ob delictum*, *quam ob rem* = "wherefore (therefore)."

15. **Penes**, "in the power of:" *penes te hoc est*, "this depends on you."

16. **Per**, "through," (place and time).

- (a) *Per provinciam*; (b) *per hos dies*, "during the last few days" (325, *Obs.*); (c) "(causal)," *per me licet*, "you have my leave, you may (do it) as far as I am concerned;" (d) (instrument or secondary agent), *per speculatores*, "by means of spies;" (e) (manner), *per vim*, "by violence, violently."

17. **Post**, "behind," "after," = **pone**.

- (a) *Post tergum*; (b) (time), *post hominum memoriam*, "since the dawn of history," "within human memory;" often adverbial (see 322).

18. **Praeter**, "past."

- (a) *Praeter castra*; (b) "beyond," "more than," *praeter ceteros*; (c) "contrary to" = *contra*, *praeter spem*; (d) "except," *praeter te unum omnes*.

19. **Prope** (**propius**, **proxime**), "near to:" *prope me*, *propius urbem*, (often adverbial).

20. **Propter**, "close to."

- (a) *Propter murum*; (b) "on account of," *propter se*, "for its own sake;" "thanks to," *propter te salvus sum* = *tua opera*.

21. **Secundum**, "along" (following).

- (a) *Secundum flumen*; (b) *secundum naturam*, "in accordance with;" (c) *secundum pugnam*, "next to, immediately after, the fight" (time); (d) *secundum Deos*, "next to the Gods."

22. **Versus**, only with *domum* and *towns*; placed after the substantive: *Romam versus*, "in the direction of Rome."

23. **Ultra**, "beyond."

- (a) *Ultra flumen*; (b) *ultra vires*, "beyond his strength."

In, sub, super, with accusative.

24. **In**, "into," "to."

- (a) *Athenas in Graeciam exulatum abiit*, "went into exile at Athens in Greece" (315); *exercitum in naves imponere*, in *terram exponere*, "to embark," "disembark," an army; in *orbem se colligunt*, "form a circle (for defence);" (b) (time), in *quartum diem in hortos ad coenam invitavit*, (326) "to supper in his grounds four days from that time;" in *praesens*, "for the present;" in *dies*, "daily;" in *posterum*, "for the future;" (c) "against," in *me invectus est*, "inveighed against me;" (d) "towards," in *republicam merita*, "services to the nation" (but *de r. p. mereri*); (e) (manner), "after;" in *hunc modum locutus est*.

25. **Sub** ("motion"), "up to."

- (a) *Sub ipsos muros adequitant*, "they ride close up to the walls;" (b) (time), "just before;" *sub lucem*; *sub haec*, "just after this."

26. **Super**, "above."

- (a) *Super ipsum*, "(next) above the host at table;" (b) *alii super alios*, "one after another."

Exercise 43.

1. Next to heaven,¹ I ascribed this² great favour mainly to you and your children. 2. I hope that when once³ he has reached Rome he will stay in my house. 3. It seems that this year is destined for the ruin of the nation. 4. He is generally believed to be free from blame, and no one supposes that such⁴ a good patriot would have⁵ done

¹ Why not *caelum*? (See 17.)

² Express "once" by the right tense. (190, ii., Obs.)

⁴ 88.

² 88, Obs.

⁵ 193, v.

anything unconstitutionally. 5. He drew up his line on the other side the Danube; our men, who had now for some time been¹ marching along the river, halted close to the other bank opposite the enemies' camp. 6. You had my leave to return home to your friends in London. Whether you have gone² away or no depends on yourself. 7. There is this difference between you and others: with them (339, iv.) my client has, thanks to his many³ services to the nation, great weight; with you, for the same reason, he has absolutely none. 8. It seems that he invited your son to supper with him three days from that time at his house; since that date none of his friends have seen him anywhere. 9. The enemy had now disembarked, and had come within the reach of missiles; our men hurled⁴ their javelins and tried to pass by between them and the river. 10. Such was their joy for the present, such their hopes⁵ for the future, that no one suspected the real state of the case.⁶ 11. Having inveighed against me with the utmost fury, he sat down; in answer to his long speech I made a very few⁷ remarks. 12. Having ridden past the many⁸ tall trees which stood along the road, I halted at last close to the gate.

¹ 181.² See 171.³ So many, *tot.* (Cf. 88, *Obs.*)⁴ Historic infinitive. (See 186.)⁵ Singular. In Latin prose *spes* is very rarely used in the plural.⁶ "What was really happening" (*fit*), see 174; or "that which etc." see 176.⁷ "Said very little." (See 53, 54.)⁸ See 56, also 69.

EXERCISE XLIV.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ABLATIVE.

332. Here also the **local** meaning is the earliest.

1. **A** (before consonants and *j*, otherwise) **ab**.

- (a) "From," *ab Africa*; (b) (*time*), a *puero*, "from boyhood;" "*ab urbe conditā*," "from (*after*) the foundation of the city;" (c) "from the side of" = "*on*," a *dextro cornu*; a *fronte*, "*in front*;" so, (d) a *senatu stare*, "to take the *side* of the senate;" (e) *securus ab hoste*, "free from care *as to* the enemy;" a *re frumentariā laborare*, "to be in distress *for* provisions;" (f) a *te incipiam*, "I will begin *with you*;" (g) *confestim a praelio*, "immediately *after* the battle." Cf. (b).

2. **Cum**, "with" (opposed to *sine*).

- (a) "In company with," *tecum Romam redii*; hence "having," "wearing," *cum gladio*, *cum sordida veste*; even, *cum febris*, "suffering from;" so, *cum imperio esse*, "to be invested with military power."
- (b) "With," of friendly, or unfriendly, relations: *tecum mihi amicitia, certamen*, etc., *est*; *tecum* (or *contra te*) *bellum gero*; *hoc mecum communicavit*, "he imparted this *to me*."
- (c) Accompanying circumstances, or results: *maximo cum damno meo*, "to my great loss."

3. **De**, "down from."

- (a) *De moenibus deturbare*, "to drive in confusion *from* the walls;" (b) *de spe deicere*, "to disappoint;" (c) "from," *homo de plebe*, "a man *of* (taken *from*) the people;" (d) "concerning," etc., *de te actum est*, "it is *all over with* (concerning) you;" (e) ("time," 328, c), *de via languere*, "to be tired *after a journey*;" (f) *de industria*, "on purpose;" (g) *bene mereri de . . .*, "to deserve well *of*," "to serve;" (h) *poenas sumere de . . .*, "to punish."

4. **Ex** (before all letters), **e** (only before consonants), "out of;" many uses.

- Ex equo pugnare*, "on horseback;" *e rebus futuris pendere*, "to depend upon the future;" *ex sententiā*, "according to one's wish or views;" *e republicā* (opposed to *contra r. p.*), "in accordance with the constitution;" *ex improviso*, "unexpectedly," etc.

5. **In**, "in," also "among," etc.

- (a) *In bonis ducere*, "to reckon among blessings;" (b) (*time*), in *deliberando*, "whilst deliberating;" (c) *quae in oculis sunt*, "before our eyes;" (d) in *armis esse*, "under arms;" (e) *quid in nobis fecit?* "as concerns, or, with us;" (f) in *te nihil potestatis habet*, "no power over you;" (g) *quantum in me est*, "to the utmost of my power;" (h) (of circumstances), *satis ut in re trepida impavidus*, "with fair courage considering the critical state of things;" (i) "in spite of, in face of," in *tanto discrimine*. (See 273, *Obs.*)

6. **Prae**, "in front of;" commonest uses metaphorical.

- (a) *Prae se ferre*, "to avow," "make no secret of;" (b) "as a preventive cause," *prae clamore vix audiri potuit*, he could scarcely be heard for the shouting—"his voice was drowned in the shouting."

7. **Pro**, also "in front of."

- (a) *Pro tribunali dicere*, "to speak (in front of) from the magistrate's tribunal;" (b) "in defence of," *pro aris et focis*; (c) "in place of," "as good as," *unus ille mihi pro exercitu est*; (d) "as," *pro certo habere*, "to feel sure of;" (e) "in proportion to," *pro meritis ejus gratiam reddere*; (f) "in accordance with," *pro prudentiâ tuâ*; (g) "in virtue of," *pro potestate*; (h) "in proportion to;" with comparatives, *caedes minor quam pro tantâ victoria*, "small in proportion to the greatness of the victory."

8. **Sine**, "without," but not nearly so often used as the English preposition. Its place is taken by many constructions.

- Nullo negotio*, "without trouble;" *re infecta*, "without result;" *nullo repugnante*, "without resistance;" *imprudens*, "without being aware." (See 425.)

Compare also—

Stetit impavidus neque loco cessit. He stood, etc., without yielding ground;

or—*Non potes mihi nocere quin tibi ipsi noceas*. You cannot hurt me without injuring yourself.

333. There is nothing difficult in the use of the other prepositions.

Tenus is used occasionally with the genitive, and follows its noun; it should be noticed in such forms as *hactenus*, *aliquatenus*, and *verbo tenus*, "as far as words go."

Sub must never be used with the ablative after verbs of motion towards; its metaphorical use, "under a leader or king," is rare in Latin; "under his guidance" is *eo duce*.

Exercise 44.

1. In the midst of this dire confusion and tumult, the emperor was seen with his staff on the left wing. He was now¹ free from care as to the enemy's cavalry, and his words of encouragement were drowned in shouts of joy and triumph. 2. I fear that² it is all over with our army: for³ ten successive days there has been the greatest want of provisions; in front, in flank, in rear, enemies are threatening (them); all the neighbouring tribes are in arms: on no side is there any prospect of aid: yet, for myself,⁴ in the face of these great dangers, I am unwilling wholly to despair. 3. Immediately after the battle they bring out⁵ and slay the prisoners: they begin with the general; none⁶ are spared; all are butchered to a man. 4. I will begin, then,⁷ with you: you pretend that your countrymen are fighting for their homes and hearths; and yet⁸ you avow that they have repeatedly made raids upon our territory, and wasted our land with fire and sword without provocation or resistance. 5. I have known this young man from a boy: both his father and he have again and again in your father's lifetime stayed under my roof; and I consider him wanting in nothing either in point of knowledge or natural powers. 6. In virtue of the power with which my countrymen have intrusted me, I intend to reward all who have deserved well of the nation: the rest I shall punish in proportion to their crimes. 7. I will aid you to the utmost⁹ of my power; but I fear that it is all over with your hopes. 8. I should be sorry to disappoint you, but I fear that your brother has returned without result. 9. Considering the greatness of the danger, he showed great courage, and we ought all to show him gratitude in proportion to his many services to us and to the nation. 10. We should¹⁰ all of us look at what is before our eyes; to depend on the future is useless.

¹ See 328, b. ² 138. ³ Turn in two ways. (See 321, Obs. 2.)

⁴ 334, i. ⁵ Accusative of passive participle. (See 15.)

⁶ Use *nemo*; case? ⁷ Why not *tum*? = "therefore." (Intr. 56, d.)

⁸ Use *idem*. (See 366, ii.) ⁹ (See 332, 5, g.) Tense? (See 190, ii.)

¹⁰ *Oportet*. (See 198, ii.)

EXERCISES ON PRONOUNS.

* * *The following Exercises—XLV. to XLVIII.—may either be done consecutively, in the order in which they stand, or any one of them may be taken singly at any time after the first twenty-four Exercises have been done.*

EXERCISE XLV.

PRONOUNS.

Personal and Demonstrative.

334. It has already been stated that the English pronouns, *I, you, he, we*, etc., when used as subjects to a verb, are, in the absence of any special emphasis, sufficiently expressed by the termination of the Latin verb. (See 11, *a, b.*)

But many causes will account for their insertion.

(i.) *Ego* often begins a sentence in which the speaker is giving an account of his own conduct or feelings.

Ego cum primum ad rempublicam accessi. (*For myself*) when first I entered on political life.

(ii.) *Tu* (especially) is often used indignantly.

An tu Praetorem accusas? Or is it that you (*one like you*) are bringing a charge against a Praetor?

(iii.) *Ego, tu*, and even *ille*, are often inserted without any special emphasis side by side with the oblique case of another pronoun. (Intr. 106.)

His ego periculis me objeci: te ille semper contempsit. These were the dangers to which I exposed myself; he always had a contempt for you.

(iv.) They, especially *ille*, are often joined closely with *quidem*, and inserted in a clause where an admission is made in contrast with a statement which follows.

Vir optimus ille quidem, sed mediocri ingenio. He was an excellent man, but of moderate abilities.

The following are the main uses of the **Demonstrative Pronouns**, those which **point out** (*demonstro*), without naming, the person or thing of which we are speaking.

Is, ille, hoc, iste.

335. Latin has many words which answer to our "he," "she," "they," in addition to the termination of the third person. In "he" says that *he* has not done wrong," the second "he" might be expressed in Latin by *negat se, eum, hunc, istum, or illum peccasse*, according to the precise meaning of *he* in the English sentence. The first "he" might be either unexpressed as above, or translated by *is, hic, iste, ille*, according to circumstances.

336. *Is* is the pronoun of **mere reference**. It is regularly used, especially in the oblique cases, for "he," "she," "him," "her," "it," as an unemphatic pronoun referring to some person or thing *already mentioned, or to be mentioned*.

Is is, in all cases, the regular pronoun corresponding to *qui*. The other demonstrative pronouns have each a special force of their own, in addition to that of mere reference to some person or thing indicated.

337. *Hic* is the demonstrative of the *first person*. "This person, or thing, *near me*" (the speaker).

Haec patria, this *our* country ; *haec vita*, this *present* life ; *haec omnia*, everything *around* us ; *piget haec perpeti*, it is painful to endure the *present state of things* ; *his sex diebus*, in the *last six days* ; *his cognitit*, after learning *this (which I have just related)*.

338. *Iste* on the other hand is the demonstrative of the *second person* (the person addressed), "that *near you*."

Cur ista quaeris? why do you put *that, or this*, question ? *opinio ista*, that belief *of yours* ; *Epicurus iste*, your friend Epicurus ; *casus iste*, your *present* disaster.

Obs. 1.—In the language of the law-court *hic* is often opposed to *iste*. *Hic* then means "the man *near me*," "my *client*¹ and friend *here*," and is opposed to *iste*, "the man *near you*," "my *opponent*," "the *defendant*." "*Iste*" has this meaning because the jury are addressed, and the accused sat near the seats of the jury ; so *iste* has its proper meaning, "the man *beside you*."

¹ *Clieus* is never used in this sense ; either *hic*, or, if more emphatic, *hic cujus causam suscepi*, *hic quem defendo*, etc.

Obs. 2.—This meaning “that of yours” often, but by no means always, gives *iste* a meaning of contempt: *ista novimus*, we know *that* story; *isti*, those *friends of yours* (whom I think lightly of).

339. *Ille* is the demonstrative of the *third person*, other than those present, or engaged in conversation: “that *yonder*,” “that *out there*.” Hence come various uses.

(i.) The remote in *time* as opposed to the present: “*Illis temporibus*, “in those days;” *antiquitas illa*, “the far-off past,” “the good old times.”

(ii.) The “distinguished,” as opposed to the common: *Cato ille*, “the great Cato.”

(iii.) The *emphatic* “he,” the “he” of whom we are all thinking or speaking; whom we all know; *ille* is substituted for *is*, where a well-known person is meant, even with *qui*; *illi qui*, *those* (whom we all know) who, not merely “*men* who.”

(iv.) So, “he” in the sense of “the other” of two parties; often substituted for a proper name in a narrative.

340. *Hic* and *ille* are often opposed to each other.

(i.) Of two persons or things already mentioned, *hic* relates to the *nearer*, the *latter*; *ille* to the *more remote*, the *former*.

Romulum Numa excepit; *hic pace*, *ille bello melior fuit*. To Romulus succeeded Numa; the *latter* excelled in peace, the *former* in war.

(ii.) So, of persons or things already mentioned or implied.

Neque hoc neque illud. Neither the *one* nor the *other*.
Et hic et ille (= *uterque*). Both *one* and the *other*.

(iii.) Sometimes they answer to “*some*,” “*others*.”

Hi pacem, *bellum illi volunt*.

341. *Illud* is often used to introduce an *emphatic statement*, or a quotation.

Illud vereor, ne fames in urbe sit. My real fear is, or, what I fear is, lest there should be a famine in the city.

Notum illud Catonis. The *saying* of Cato is well known.

It will sometimes answer to the English “*this*,” “*the following*.”

Ne illud quidem intellegunt . . . They do not even perceive *this*, that . . .

342. *Is*, as the *pronoun of reference*, is the regular correlative to *qui*, and is used with all three persons.

Read again 70-76, and explain the following examples :—

- (a.) *Qui hoc fecerint* (190, i.) *poenas dabunt.*
- (b.) *De eis qui hoc fecerint, poenas sumam.*
- (c.) *Qui olim terrarum orbi imperavimus, ei* (ii) *hodie servimus.*
- (d.) *In eos qui defecerant saevitum est.* The rebels¹ (175) were treated with severity.

343. For the difference between *cum eo res est, qui nos semper contempserit* (subjunctive), and the same sentence with *contempsit*, see 506.

It will be enough to say here that

Is *sum qui feci*, is, "I am the man *who did* (it)."

Non is *sum qui faciam*, is, "I am not *such* a person *as to do* it,"
"one to do it."

344. *Et is, isque, idque*, etc., are often added with some detail to which attention is drawn.

Decem capti sunt, et ii Romani. Ten men have been taken, and *those too* Romans.

Litteris operam dedi, idque a puero. I have been a student, and *that* from my boyhood.

345. The pronoun "that," "those," is most rarely used, as it is constantly in English, to represent with a genitive case a noun already mentioned.

"Our own children are dearer to us than *those* of our friends," is, *nostri nobis liberi cariores sunt quam amicorum*; never, *ei* (ii) *amicorum*.

If the second substantive represented by "those" is in a different case it is repeated.

Liberi nostri amicorum liberis cariores sunt.

346. So also it must be again noticed (see 74) that neither *is* nor *ille* can be used like the Greek article, or the English demonstrative, to define a participle, adjective, or phrase.

"He ordered *those* near him" is not *eos prope se*, but *eos qui prope se erant* or *stabant*; "to *those* questioning him" is not *iis interrogantibus*, but either *interrogantibus*, or *eis qui interrogabant*; "those like ourselves" is not *eos nostri similes*, but *nostri similes*, or *eos qui nostri sunt similes*.

¹ Observe that the Latin substantives in *-tor*, *-sor*, express a more permanent and inherent quality than the English in *-er*: *gubernator* is not the "steerer" of the moment, but the *professional pilot*. *Defector* is first used in Tacitus.

347. When *is*, *hic*, or *qui*, etc., stands as the *subject* of the verb "to be," or some link verb, the pronoun generally agrees with the predicate where we might have expected it to be *neuter*. (See 83.)

Ea demum est vera felicitas. This and this only is true good fortune.

N.B.—*Felicitas* never means "happiness" (see 98, *b*), but "good luck" or "fortune;" note also the use of *demum*: this "at length," "nothing till we come to this."

348. Both *ille* and *is* sometimes represent the English "article" *the*, itself a shortened demonstrative.

I remember *the* day on which. *Venit mihi in mentem dii illius, quo.*

The friendship which existed between you and me. *Ea quæ mihi tecum erat amicitia.*

So "*the* saying of Cato;" see above, 341.

Exercise 45.

1. Those friends of yours are in the habit of finding fault with the men, the institutions, the manners, of the present¹ day, and of sighing for, and sounding the praises of, the good old times; possibly you yourself have sometimes fallen into that mistake. 2. There is the greatest disagreement on² political matters in my house; one party wishes everything changed, the other nothing. For myself, I believe neither of the two parties to be in the right. 3. He³ always showed himself proof against these perils, these bugbears; do⁴ not you then appear unworthy of your noble forefathers. 4. Of this at least I am convinced, that that belief of yours as to² the antiquity of this custom is groundless; it is for you to consider⁵ its origin.⁶ 5. The saying of Caesar is pretty well known, that chance has the greatest influence in war. 6. When just on the point of pleading his cause, my client was

¹ See 337. Repeat the pronoun with each word. (See 49.)

² See 300.

³ 334, iii.

⁴ See 143.

⁵ See 146.

⁶ See 174, *c*.

ready to be reconciled with the defendant, and this design ¹ he shortly accomplished against my will, and in the teeth of all his friends. 7. To the question why he preferred being an exile to living in his own home, the other replied that he could not return yet without violating the law, (and) must ² wait for the king's death. 8. This only, it is said,³ is true wisdom: to command one's-self. 9. I value my own reputation more highly than you (do) yours, but I am ready to sacrifice my freedom to that of the nation. 10. I who ⁴ twenty years ago never quailed even before the bravest foe, now in the face ⁵ of an inconsiderable danger am alarmed for my own safety and that of my children. 11. To those who asked why they refused to comply with the royal caprice, they replied that they were not men ⁶ to quail before pain or danger. 12. You have been praised by an excellent man, it is true,⁷ but by one most unversed in these matters.

¹ *Id quod.* (See 67.)

² See 32 *b*, and 44.

³ 273, *Obs.*

⁴ 198, *iii.*

⁵ See 75, and 342, *c.*

⁶ See 343. ⁷ 334, *iv.*

EXERCISE XLVI.

PRONOUNS—Continued.

Reflexive and Emphatic Pronouns—*Se, suus, ipse.*

349. *Se, sese, sui, sibi*, as also the possessive *suus*, are used where the person whom they denote is the same as the grammatical subject of the sentence in which they occur, *i.e.* as the nominative to the principal verb.

They are used of the **third person** only. In the first and second, *me (memet)*, *te (temet)*, are used with *ipse*. (See 356.)

Brutus pugione se interfecit suā. Brutus killed *himself* with his dagger.

An temet ipse contemnis? Is it that you despise *yourself*?

Obs.—*Suus* is not expressed wherever we use *his, theirs, etc.*, but only for emphasis, or to avoid ambiguity.

Animum advertit, "he turned *his* attention;" *filiī mortem deplorabat*, "he was lamenting *his* son's death."

But it is often used emphatically, as opposed to *alienus*; *suo tempore*, "at the time that suited *himself*;" or in combination with *quisque*, *suam quisque virtutem laudant*; and always in the phrase *sua sponte*. *Sui* is often used for a man's "friends," "party," "followers," or even "countrymen:" *ad suos rediit*.

350. *Se (suus)*, when used as the subject to a verb in the **infinitive**, refers to the *subject* of the verb on which the infinitive verb depends.

This use will cause no difficulty, though the English idiom is different.

Ait se haec vidisse. He says *he* saw this. (See 34.)

Obs.—Where there is no danger of ambiguity, the *se* may refer to the *object* of the principal verb.

Reliquos sese convertere cogunt. The rest they compel to turn.

Diffidentem rebus suis confirmavit. He cheered him while distrustful (against his distrust of) his own position.

For the insertion of *se* after verbs of *promising*, etc., see 37.

351. Sometimes, as with the English "one's self," "one's own," the subject must be supplied from the context ; Latin, like English, having no such indefinite word as the Greek *τις*, or the French *on*.

Alienis injuriis vehementius quam suis commoveri. The being more deeply moved by other men's wrongs than by *one's own*.

So *sui poenitere, sibi placere*, "self-reproach," "self-satisfaction."

352. Very common uses of *se, suus*, are—*sua sponte*, of his own accord ; *secum habere*, to keep to one's-self ; *fiducia sui*, self-confidence ; *per se, propter se, pro se quisque* ("each in turn") ; *sui compos*, master of himself, his reason ; *quantum in se fuit*, to the utmost of his power.

These phrases are freely used without any reference in the *se* to any other than the nearest word.

Tum illum vix jam sui compotem esse videt. Then he sees that he (the other) is scarcely any longer master of himself.

Haec omnia per se ac propter se expetenda esse ait. All these things are, he says, desirable in themselves and for their own sake.

Obs.—So *se, suus*, are constantly combined with *quisque*, either in a different case or with a different construction.

Milites ad sua quemque signa redire jussit . . ., "to their respective, or several, standards."

353. In dependent clauses introduced by *qui* or a conjunction no precise or mechanical rule for the use of *se* (*suus*) can be given ; but

(i.) In **adjectival** clauses *se* generally refers to the subject of the verb in its own clause.

Milites, qui se suaque omnia hosti tradiderant, laudare noluit.

He objected to praise soldiers who had surrendered themselves and all that belonged to them to the enemy.

(ii.) In all other subordinate clauses *se* generally refers to the subject, not of its own, but of the principal clause.

Cicero effecerat, ut Q. Curius consilia Catalinae sibi proderet.

Cicero had contrived that Q. Curius should betray to him (Cicero) the designs of Cataline.

But neither rule is universal ; sometimes in subordinate clauses *ipse* represents the subject of the principal, *se, suus*, that of the dependent verbs ; the general rule is the opposite of this.

354. Sometimes, and constantly with *inter*, *se* supplies the place of the **reciprocal pronoun**, which is wanting in Latin.

Furtim inter se aspiciabant. They would look stealthily at each other.

Otherwise *alius alium*. (See 371, iv.)

355. *Ipsē* can be used of any person (with *ego*, *tu*, etc.) and in any case; it may also emphasise *se* and *suus*, and is joined freely with substantives.

Quid ipsi sentiatis velim fateamini. I would fain have you confess *your own* sentiments.

It answers to various English expressions.

(a.) *Ipsis sub moenibus*, close beneath the walls (place).

(b.) *Illo ipso die*, on that *very* day (time).

(c.) *Adventu ipso hostes terruit*, "by his *mere* arrival."

(d.) *Ipsē hoc vidi*, "with my own eyes," or, as with *inveni*, "unaided," or "of my own accord," sometimes "on my part."

Obs. 1.—*Ipsē* is often inserted in Latin for the sake of clearness or contrast where we should hardly express it.

Dimissis suis ipse navem conscendit. He dismissed his followers and embarked.

Obs. 2.—It very often denotes the leading person, the host as opposed to the guests, "the master" as opposed to "the disciples."

356. (i.) When used to emphasise *suus* ("own"), it is added to it in the possessive genitive, singular or plural as the sense requires.

Mea ipsius culpā, vestra ipsorum culpā. Through *my own*, or *your own*, fault.

(ii.) When *ipse* emphasises the oblique case of *se* or a personal pronoun ("self," "selves"), it sometimes agrees with that case—

Nos ipsos omnes natura diligimus. We all of us instinctively love ourselves;

but more commonly it is used in the nominative as subject to the verb—

Me, or memet, ipse consolor. I console *myself*.

Virtus per se et propter se ipsa expetenda est. Goodness is desirable in itself and for its own sake.

The most emphatic combination is *egomet ipse, temet, or semet, ipse, vosmet ipsi*, etc.

Exercise 46.

1. Many evils and troubles befall us through our own fault, and it¹ is often men's lot to atone for the offences of their boyhood in mature life. 2. Having thus spoken, he sent back the officers to their several regiments, and then, telling² the cavalry to wait for his arrival under shelter of the rising ground, he started at full gallop

¹ "It" emphatic. (341.) ² Why not present participle? (See 411.)

and encouraged by voice and gesture the infantry, who had retreated quite up to the camp, to turn back¹ and follow him. 3. You are one whom your countrymen will intrust² with office from the mere impression of your goodness. 4. It is a king's duty (291) to have regard not only to himself, but to his successors. 5. I heard him with my own ears deploring the untimely death of his son, a calamity which³ you pretend that he treated very lightly. 6. We ought, says he, to be scarcely more touched by our own sorrows than by those of our friends. 7. Having returned to his countrymen, he proceeded⁴ to appeal to them not to surrender him at the conqueror's bidding to men who were⁵ his and their⁶ deadliest enemies, to his father's murderers and their⁶ betrayers, but rather to brave¹ the worst, and perish in the field. 8. He intends, he says, to lead his men out to fight⁷ at his own time, not at that of the Germans. 9. Any one⁸ may be dissatisfied with himself and his own generation; but it requires⁸ great wisdom to perceive how we can retrieve the evils of the past, and treat with success the national wounds. 10. To those who asked what advantage he had reaped from such numerous friends, he replied that friendship was to be cultivated in itself⁹ and for its own sake. 11. Taking¹⁰ his seat, he sent¹ for the ambassadors of the allies, and asked them why they were ready to desert him, and betray their own liberties at such a crisis.

¹ Participle, see 15, (for mood of "follow" and "perish" see 118).

² Mood? (343.)

⁴ Tense? (184.)

⁶ Use *ipse* for "their" in both places.

⁸ See 292, 4, and 291, *Obs.* 4.

¹⁰ Why not present participle? (See 411.)

³ "Which calamity."

⁵ Mood? (77.)

⁷ *Ad* with Gerund.

⁹ See 352.

EXERCISE XLVII.

PRONOUNS—Continued.

Indefinite Pronouns—*Quisquam, aliquis, etc.*

THERE are many pronouns which may be called **indefinite demonstratives** in Latin; but their main distinctions are easily pointed out. We may divide them into (1) those that are of a **negative** as well as of an indefinite nature ("Any"), and (2) those that are mainly **affirmative** ("Some").

357. "**Any**," after *si, nisi, num, ne, quo, quanto*, is the very indefinite **quis** (**qui**, when used as an adjective, *i.e.* as attached to a substantive).

Si quis ita fecerit, poenas dabit. If *any one* does (191, i.) so, he will be punished.

Num quis irascitur infantibus? Does *anybody* feel anger towards infants?

Ne quis aedes intret, januam claudimus. We shut the door to prevent (101, ii.) *any one* from entering the house.

Quo quis versutior, eo suspectior. The more shrewd a man (*any one*) is, the more is he suspected.

N.B.—*Quis* in this sense can never begin a sentence.

Obs.—In place of *quis*, in all but the last sentence, *quisquam* might be used. "Does *any one at all*, *any though it be but one*, feel anger?"

358. (i.) A more emphatic "**any**" is **quisquam** (subst.), (**ullus**, adj.). It is used after a negative **particle** (*nec, vix, etc.*), or a **verb** of denying, forbidding, preventing, or a

question implying a negative, or *si*, where the negative sense of "any" is emphasised.

Haec aio, nec quisquam negat. This I say, and no one denies it. *Negant se cujusquam imperio esse obtemperaturos.* They refuse to (136, a) obey any one's command.

Estne quisquam? Is there any one? (It is implied that there is no one.)

*Vetat lex ullam rem esse cujusquam, qui legibus parere nolit.*¹ The law forbids that anything should belong to any one who refuses to obey the laws.

Obs.—*Nec quisquam* is always used (not *et nemo*) for "and no one." (See 110.)

(ii.) As *quisquam* (*ullus*)="any at all," it is naturally used in comparisons.

Fortior erat quam amicorum quisquam. He was braver than any of his friends.

Solis candor illustrior est quam ullius ignis. The brightness of the sun is more intense than that of any fire.

359. "Any," in the affirmative sense of "any one (or thing) you please," almost equivalent to "every," is *quivis* or *quilibet*.

Quodlibet pro patria, parentibus, amicis adire periculum oportet. We ought to encounter any danger (i.e. all dangers) for our country, our parents, and our friends.

Mihi quidvis satis est. Anything is enough for me.

Obs.—*Quivis* expresses a more deliberate, *quilibet* a more blind or capricious choice (*voluntas* compared with *libido*).

360. "Some" is *ali-quis* (*-qui*), *quispiam*, *quidam*, *nescio quis*. We might say for "some one spoke," *locutus est aliquis*, *quidam*, *nescio quis*, according to our precise meaning.

(i.) *Aliquis* (*-qui*) is "some,"² "some one," as opposed to "none," "no one."

Dixerit aliquis. Some one (no definite person thought of) will say (have said).

Senes quibus aliquid roboris supererat. Old men who had still some strength remaining.

¹ For mood of *nolit* see 77 with *Obs.*

² Hence with *sine* in a negative sentence *aliqui*, "some," is used, just as with *sine* in a positive sentence *ullus*, "any:" *nemo est sine aliqua virtute*, there is no one without some virtue (or other); *homo est sine ulla virtute*, he is a man without any virtue.

(ii.) **Quispiam** is not so often used, and is vaguer.

Dicet quispiam. Some one will say.

(iii.) "Some," when used in an emphatic and yet indefinite sense is often *sunt qui, erant qui*, with the **subjunctive**.

Sunt qui dicant. Some say. *Erant qui dicerent.* Some said.

(iv.) **Nonnulli** is "some few," "more than one," as opposed to "one" or "none."

Desertos cognovi nonnullos, eloquentem neminem. I have met with several clever speakers, but not a single man of eloquence.

361. Quidam is "a certain one," or simply "a." It expresses some **definite** person (and therefore differs from *aliquis*) sufficiently known to the speaker for the purpose in hand, but not further described.

Quidam ex (or de) plebe orationem habuit. A man of the commons made a speech.

Quodam tempore. At a certain time (I need not go on to give the date).

Civis quidam Romanus. A (certain) citizen of Rome.

Obs. 1.—*Quidam* also is very commonly used to qualify a strong expression, or to introduce some metaphorical language; it corresponds in use to *ut dicam*, "so to speak." (100, note ¹.)

Erat in eo viro divina quaedam ingenii vis. There existed in that man almost a divine, or, a really heroic, force of character.

Progreditur respublica naturali quodam itinere et cursu. The state advances in a natural path and progress.

Obs. 2.—As the English language admits of the use of metaphorical expressions much more readily than the Latin, the Latin *quidam*, or some qualifying phrase (*tanquam*, "as if," etc.), will often be used where no answering phrase is required in English.

362. Nescio quis (-qui) is also used as a single word with the **indicative**, or even without a verb (e.g. *contra nescio quem*). (See 169.) It does not merely decline to name, as *quidam* does, but asserts ignorance. When used of a person it is often therefore contemptuous.

Alcidamas quidam, "one Alcidamas," whom I need not stop to describe further.

But—*Alcidamas nescio quis*, "an obscure person called Alcidamas."

363. The phrases *nescio quid*, *nescio quo modo*, *quo pacto* (also *quodam modo*), are used where there is anything expressed that is not easily defined or accounted for.

Inest nescio quid in animo ac sensu meo. There is something (*which I cannot define*) in my mind and feelings.

Boni sunt nescio quomodo tardiores. Good people are *somehow or other* rather sluggish.

Nescio quo pacto evenit ut *Somehow or other* it happened that

364. *Quicumque*, *quisquis* (substantive), "whoever," though occasionally used as indefinite demonstratives, as a rule are indefinite **relatives**, and as such are followed by a dependent verb in the **indicative**; by the subjunctive only when required on other grounds.

Cras tibi quodcumque voles dicere licebit. To-morrow you may say *whatever you like*. (190, ii.)

Quisquis huc venerit, vapulabit. *Whoever comes* (190, i.) here shall be beaten.

Caution.—Beware of thinking that *quicumque* governs a subjunctive. (153.)

Exercise 47.

1. Do not,¹ says he, be angry with any one, not to mention² your own brother, without adequate grounds. 2. Scarcely any one³ can realise the extent and nature of this disaster, and perhaps⁴ it can never be retrieved. 3. Your present disaster might have⁵ befallen any one, but it seems to me that you have been somehow more unlucky than any of your contemporaries. 4. No one ever attained to any such goodness without, so⁶ to speak, some divine inspiration, and no one ever sank to such a depth of wickedness without any consciousness of his own guilt. 5. Some believed that after the defeat of Cannae the very name of Rome⁷ would disappear, and no one imagined

¹ Use *cave*. (143.)

² *Ne dicam* (the *dicam* does not govern the case of "brother"). (See 100, note.)

³ 291, *Obs.* 4.

⁴ = "which perhaps." (See 169.)

⁵ See 196.

⁶ 361, *Obs.*

⁷ Adjective. (58 and 319.)

that the nation would have¹ so soon recovered from so crushing a calamity. 6. It seems to me, to express² myself with more accuracy, that this nation has long been advancing in learning and civilisation, not of its own impulse, but by³ what I may call an engrafted training. 7. Some one of his countrymen once said that my client was naturally disposed to laziness and timidity; to me it seems that he is daily becoming somehow braver, firmer, and more uncomplaining under any toil or danger. 8. In the⁴ army that was investing Veii was a⁵ Roman citizen who had been induced to have a conference with one or other of the townsmen. He⁶ warned him that such a terrible disaster was threatening the army and people of Rome, that scarcely a soul was likely to return home in safety.

¹ See 193, v.

⁴ See 348.

² See 100, note.

⁵ 361.

³ *Quidam*. (See 361, Obs. i.)

⁶ 339, iv.

* * The next Exercise (XLVIII.) is on certain words nearly allied to Pronouns (sometimes called **Pronominalia**), and is divided into two parts, **A** and **B**.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

A

PRONOUNS.

Idem, alius, alter, ceteri.

365. Idem. It has been already said (84) that "the same as" is usually expressed in Latin by *idem qui*, occasionally by *idem atque*, or (before consonants only) *ac*. (90.)

Idem sum qui semper fui. I am the same as (or that) I have always been.

Eadem vos quae, or atque, ego sentitis. Your views are the same as mine.

366. Idem has two idiomatic uses.

(i.) It joins together two *similar* ideas in the sense of "also," "at the same time."

Quicquid honestum est, idem est utile. Whatever is right, is also expedient.

It is sometimes repeated :—

Idem vir fortissimus, idem orator eloquentissimus. At once a man of the highest courage and the most eloquent of speakers.

(ii.) It also unites two *contrasted* statements as regards a common subject.

Accusat me Antonius, idem laudat. "Antonius accuses and at the same time, or not the less, or in the same breath, praises me."

367. Alius. To express "different from, or to," *alius ac, atque*, is used. (91.)

Alio ac tu est ingenio. He is of a different disposition to you.

So with the adverb *aliter*; so also with *pariter, juxta*, etc.

Aliter atque sentit loquitur. His language is different to his (real) sentiments.

368. *Alius*, "other" (of any number), is opposed to *alter*, "other of two," or "second" or "one" of two, as opposed to the other.

Consuluni alter domi, alter militiae, famam sibi paravit. One of the consuls won glory at home, the other in war. (312.)

Duorum fratrum alter mortuus est. One of the two brothers is dead.

Amicus est tanquam alter idem. A friend is a second self. (361, Obs. 2.)

Dies unus, alter, plures intercesserant. One, two, several, days had passed.

369. A repeated *alius* is used in four common constructions.

(i.) In a distributive sense, "some . . . some . . . others."

Tum alii Romam versus, in Etruriam alii, alii in Campaniam, domum reliqui dilabuntur. Thereupon they disperse, some towards Rome, some, etc.

Of course, of two persons, *alter . . . alter*, or *unus . . . alter*, will be used for "one . . . the other," sometimes *hic . . . ille*. (See 340.)

370. (ii.) When used as a predicate in separate clauses, a repeated *alius* marks an essential difference. (92.)

Aliud est maledicere, accusare aliud. There is a vast difference between reviling (94) and accusing.

Aliud loquitur, aliud facit. His language is irreconcilable with his actions.

371. (iii.) When *alius* is repeated in different cases in the same clause, it answers to a common use of the English "different," "various."

Hi omnes alius aliā ratione rempublicam auxerunt. All of these by different methods promoted the interests of the nation.

So with adverbs: *alii aliunde congregantur; omnes alius aliter sentire videmini.* "They flock together from various quarters;" "all of you, it seems, have different views."

Obs.—The singular of the doubled *alius* is generally used in apposition with a plural subject.

Caution.—Avoid using *diversus* or *varius* in this sense. *Diversus* is rather "opposite;" *varius*, "varying."

Diversi fugiunt, is, speaking strictly, "fly in opposite directions."

(iv.) Sometimes a repeated *alius* (or of two persons *alter*) supplies the place of the reciprocal "each other." (354.)

Tum omnes alius alium intuebamur. Thereupon all of us began to look at *each other*.

At fratres alter alterum adhortari. . . . But the (two) brothers began to encourage *each other*, etc.

372. *Ceteri* is "the rest;" as is *reliqu-us, -i*.

Reliqui is opposed to "the mass," those who (or that which) remain after many have been deducted.

Ceteri, "the rest," as contrasted with some one or more already named, or indicated.

Thus either *ceteri* or *alter* will answer to our "others," "your neighbours," "fellow-creatures," as opposed to "yourself."

Qui ceteros, or alterum, odit, ipse eis, or ei, odio erit. He who hates his neighbours will be hated by them.

Obs. 1.—*Ceteri* has no singular masculine nominative; in other forms it may be used in the singular, but only with collective nouns: *cetera multitudo*.

Obs. 2.—Note the phrase, *nec quidquam nobis Fortuna reliqui fecit nisi ut serviamus*. (All else is lost,) and Fate has left us nothing but slavery. (298, b.)

Exercise 48.

A.

1. Human beings pursue various objects; of these brothers, the one devoted himself to the same tastes and studies as his distinguished father, the other entered political life in quite early manhood. 2. Your judgment (91) in this matter has been quite different to mine. You might¹ have shown² yourself a true patriot, and lived in freedom in a free country; you preferred riches and pleasure³ to the toil and danger which freedom involves. 3. All of⁴ these men in different modes did good service to the human race; all of them preferred being of use to their neighbours to studying their own interest. 4. We form different aims; some are devoted to wealth, others to pleasure; others place happiness in holding⁵ office,³ in

¹ 196.

² 241.

³ *Plural*, as also for "toil," "danger," "office;" why? Latin uses abstract terms much less than English. (See 174.)

⁴ 297.

⁵ Gerundive. (389.)

power, in the administration of the state, others again¹ in popularity, interest, influence. 5. Hearing this, the soldiers began to look² at each other, and to wonder silently what the general wished them to do, and why he was angry with them rather than with himself. 6. You pay me compliments in every other word, at the same time you tax me with the foulest treachery. I would have³ you remember that speaking the truth is one thing, speaking pleasantly another. 7. The enemy now fled² in opposite directions; of the fugitives the greater part were slain, the rest threw down their arms⁴ and were taken⁵ prisoners to a man. Few asked for quarter, none obtained it. 8. We, most of us, came to a stand, looking silently at each other, and wondering which of us would be⁶ the first to speak. But Laelius and I held our peace, each waiting for the other. 9. After raising⁷ two armies, they attack the enemies' camp with one, with the other they guard the city. The former (*pl.*) returned without success, and a sudden panic attacked the latter; thus in both directions the campaign was most disastrous.

¹ *Denique*=lastly, used often in enumerations.

² Historic inf. (See 186.)

³ 149, i.

⁴ Abl. abs. (See 15.)

⁵ Present, 179.

⁶ 173, iii. and 62.

⁷ Abl. abs.

EXERCISE XLVIII.—(Continued.)

B

PRONOUNS—Continued.

Quisque, uterque, singuli, etc.

373. *Quisque* is “each,” “any,” or “every one,” of a large number. It so far (in classical prose) resembles an *enclitic* (p. 27, *n.*) that it always comes *after* the word to which it most nearly belongs.

Such words are **relative**, **interrogative**, and **reflexive** pronouns, **superlatives**, **comparatives**, **ordinal** numerals, and **ut**.

It is very rarely used in the plural in prose, but often stands in the singular in apposition to a plural noun. (Cf. *alius* and *alter*, **371**, *Obs.*, and **371**, *iv.*).

Romani domum, cum suā quisque praedā, redeunt.

In the neuter, *quidque* is substantival, *quodque* adjectival.

It is sometimes emphasised by prefixing *unus*: *unus quisque*, “each and every one.”

374. With **pronouns** its use is simple, if its proper place in the sentence is remembered.

Milites, quem quisque viderat, trucidabant. The soldiers would butcher whomever *any* of them saw. (**192.**)

Non meum est statuere quid cuique debeas. It is not for me (**291**, *Obs.* 2) to determine your debt to *each*.

Suum cuique tribuito. Give to *every one* his due.

Its other uses are more idiomatic.

375. It is used with **superlative** (most rarely with positive) adjectives, almost always in the *singular*,¹ to express “all,” or “every.”

Haec optimus² quisque sentit. These are the views of *all good men*, or, of *every good man*.

Beware of *bonus quisque*, or, *optimi quique*.

¹ In the *neuter* the plural is occasionally used, *fortissima quaeque consilia tutissima sunt*; masculine and feminine most rarely.

² This phrase is generally used in a *political* sense, = all good patriots, all the “well-disposed.”

376. (i.) If the superlative is repeated, we have one of the Latin modes of expressing *proportion*.

Optimum *quidque* rarissimum est. Things, or all things, are rare in *proportion* to their excellence.

(ii.) The same idea is sometimes expressed by *quisque* with *ut* and *ita*.

Ut *quisque* est sollertissimus, ita *ferme* laboris est patientissimus. In *proportion* to a man's skill is, as a rule, his readiness to endure toil.

(iii.) Sometimes by *quisque* with *quo*, *eo*, *quanto*, *tanto*, and a **comparative**.

Quo *quisque* est sollertior, eo est laboris patientior.

Quo, "in proportion," *quanto*, "in exact proportion."

377. *Quisque* is also joined with **ordinal numerals**: *quinto quoque* anno, "every five years;" *decimus quisque*, "every tenth man;" *quotusquisque*, "how few" (lit. each, one only of how large a number,—"the thousandth," or "ten-thousandth," that you meet).

Primum quidque videamus. Let us look at each in turn, take each (in turn) as first.

Primo quoque tempore. At the earliest opportunity possible.

It is also joined with *ut* in a *frequentative* sense.

Ut *cujusque* sors exciderat, alacer arma capiebat. As each man's lot fell in turn, he took up arms with enthusiasm. (See 192.)

378. (i.) *Uterque* is "both," in the sense of "each of two," and denotes two things or persons as looked on *separately*.

Propter utramque causam. For both reasons, i.e. for each of the two.

Ambo is "both," but it is used of two individuals as forming *one whole*; "both together."

Qui utrumque probat, *ambobus* debet uti. He who approves of each of these (separately) is bound to use them both (together).

So *alter ambove*, "one or both."

(ii.) *Uterque* (like *nemo*) is used with the genitive of *pronouns*, but in apposition with *substantives*.

Horum utrumque, "each of these;" so *vestrum uterque*, but *filius uterque*; so *horum nemo*, but *nemo pictor*.

(iii.) *Uterque* is used in Latin after *interest inter*, where we should use "the two."

Quantum inter rem *utramque* *intersit*, *vides*. You see the great difference between the two things.

(iv.) *Uterque* can be used in the plural only where it denotes not two single things or persons, but each of two *parties* or *classes* already represented by a plural word.

Stabant instructi acie Romani Samnitesque; par utrisque pugnandi studium (each felt the same ardour for the fight).

379. As *uterque* unites two, and = *unus et alter*, so *utervis*, *uterlibet*, disjoin them, and = *unus vel alter*, "whichever of the two you 'like,' i.e. excluding the other. (See 359, *Obs.*)

Uter is generally interrogative (occasionally a relative); it is often repeated.

Uter utri plus nocuerit, dubito. I doubt which of the two injured the other most.

380. *Singuli* (-ae, -a) is only used in the plural, and has two main uses.

(a) A distributive numeral, "one apiece," "one each."

Cum singulis vestimentis exeant. Let them go out each with one set of garments.

Ejusmodi homines vix singuli singulis saeculis nascuntur. Such men come into the world scarcely once in a century (*one in each century*).

(b) As opposed to *universal*, "the mass," "all," looked on as forming one class, *singuli* denotes "individuals;" "one by one."

Romanos singulos diligimus, universos aversamur. While we feel affection for *individual* Romans, we loathe the *nation*, or "them as a nation."

Nec vero universo solum hominum generi, sed etiam singulis provisum est. Nor is it only mankind *in general* (as a whole), but the *individual* that has been cared for.

381. "A single person," where the *single* is emphatic, may be turned by *unus aliquis*: *ad unum aliquem regnum detulerunt*, "offered the crown to a single person;" "not a single," = an emphatic "no one," is *ne unus quidem*.

Obs.—*Singularis* is generally used of *qualities*, and denotes "rare," "remarkable."

Exercise 48.

B.

1. As a society we praise the poet whom as individuals we neglected. 2. All true patriots and wise men are on our side, and we would fain have those whom we love and admire hold the same sentiments as ourselves. 3. Men are valued by their countrymen in proportion¹ to their public usefulness; this man was at once a brave² soldier and a consummate statesman; for both reasons therefore he enjoyed the highest praise and distinction. 4. It is often the case that men are talkative and obstinate in exact³ proportion to their folly and inexperience. 5. It is a hackneyed saying that all weak characters⁴ crave for different things at different times. 6. It was now evident that the enemy intended⁵ to attack our camp at the first possible opening, but that at the same time they would wait for a favourable opportunity. 7. We are one by one deserting and abandoning the man who saved us all. 8. All good patriots are, I believe,⁶ convinced of this,⁷ that it is quite impossible for us to effect anything by hesitation, procrastination, and hanging back; so that I feel⁸ sure that there is need of haste rather than of deliberation. 9. He found a difficulty in persuading his countrymen that⁹ their enemies and allies were powerless separately, most powerful in combination. 10. Thereupon all, each in turn, answered his questions; this done,¹⁰ the greater part besought the senate, appealing¹¹ to the whole body and to individuals, that one or both the consuls should at the earliest opportunity bring them relief.

¹ May be done in two ways. (See 376, ii. and iii.)

² 57, a.

³ 376, iii.

⁴ "Characters" is of course not to be expressed literally in Latin, it = men. (See 174, end.)

⁵ 14, c.

⁶ 32, b.

⁷ 341.

⁸ Mood? (106.)

⁹ See 122, b.

¹⁰ Abl. abs.

¹¹ Past participle of *obtestor*. (See 413.)

* * *The five next Exercises (XLIX.-LIII.) will be on the
Gerund, Gerundive, Supines, and Participles.*

These, like the infinitive mood (see 94, and note), are all **verbal nouns**. They are all derived directly from the verb; but they are none of them true verbs, for they cannot by themselves make a statement or predication (Intr. 11). But they retain in other respects more or less of the nature of the verb from which they are formed, combined with that of either the **substantive** or the **adjective**.

EXERCISE XLIX.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.¹

Nominative Case.

THE GERUND.

382. The **Gerund** is a verbal substantive in *-ndum*, formed from the present tense of the verb.²

It has no plural, but is declined throughout the singular like other neuter substantives in *-um*. Its cases are determined by the same rules as those of other substantives, and are often combined with prepositions: *regnandi studium*, "the desire of reigning;" *ad regnandum natus*, "born to rule," or "a born ruler."

383. But it resembles a verb in so far as it is (a) qualified by adverbs, not by adjectives, and is (b) followed by the same case as the verb from which it is derived: *ad bene vivendum, parcendo hostibus, orbem terrarum subigendo*.

¹ These are names given by grammarians to a substantival and an adjectival form of what is often called the *participle in -dus*, sometimes the *future participle passive*. Their origin and precise nature are much disputed. Whether the Gerund arose out of the Gerundive, or *vice versa*, is a question which lies outside the scope of this work; it will be taken for granted here that by the **Gerund** is meant the whole substantival declension, including the *nominative*, of the singular neuter form, *faciendum*, *-i*, *-o*; by the **Gerundive** the whole adjectival declension, as seen in *facien-dus*, *-da*, *-dum* (when attached to, or predicated of, a noun), through all cases and genders, and in both numbers.

² The word Gerund is derived from this active sense, as expressing the *action* of the verb (*a gerendo, gerundo*), the verb *agere* being already appropriated to the term *active verbs*. Most grammarians limit the term Gerund to the oblique cases; it is perhaps more reasonable to include the *nominative*.

384. The **gerund** therefore, like the **infinitive** mood, corresponds to the English verbal substantive in *-ing*: "for *living* well," "by *sparing* the enemy," "by *subduing* the world," (see 94); sometimes to the English infinitive in the form "*to do*," "*to see*," properly itself a gerundial infinitive.

But as the Latin infinitive is not used as a substantive in the genitive, dative, or ablative, or with prepositions, its place is taken by the gerund in *-ndi, -ndo, -ndum*. (See Examples in 99.)

385. In the nominative (and accusative in *oratio obliqua*) the two verbal nouns, the **infinitive** and **gerund**, exist side by side, but their uses are quite different.

(a) The **nominative gerund** has *laid aside* its power¹ of governing an accusative of the nearer object, and has acquired **the sense of duty, necessity, obligation**.

(b) Thus *currere* = running, and we can say, *currere mihi jucundum est*, running is delightful to me; but we do not use *currendum* in the same sense; for *mihi currendum est* (*lit.* there is a running for me), is only used in the sense of "I must run."²

386. But this use of the *nominative* of the gerund is only found with **intransitive** verbs, or **transitive** verbs used **absolutely**. (Intr. 40.)

We cannot say, *hostes nobis vincendum est*, we must conquer the enemy, but must use the **gerundive**, *hostes . . . vincendi sunt*; but we can say, *vincendum est*, we must win the day; and we can say *hostibus parcendum est*, we ought to spare the enemy, or *occasione utendum fuit*, the opportunity should have been used, for *parco* and *utor* are *intransitive* verbs. (See 228, *Obs.*)

387. The **person** on whom the duty lies is in the **dative**.

But with verbs which are combined with a *dative* as their object, the ablative with *a, ab*, is substituted in order to **avoid ambiguity**: *civibus a te consulendum est*, you must consult the interests of your countrymen; *tibi* would leave the meaning doubtful; but, *suo cuique judicio utendum est*, each should follow his own judgment.

Obs.—The gerund therefore, though properly **active**, has sometimes the construction of **passive** verbs.

¹ There are still traces of this construction in classical Latin:—

Aeternas poenas in morte timendum est.—LUCRETIVS.

Quam (viam) nobis quoque ingrediendum sit.—CICERO.

² The reader may be referred to a very interesting discussion of the whole question in Mr. Roby's preface to the second volume of his *Latin Grammar*.

388. By the aid of the gerund and the verb *sum*, a whole conjugation can be formed to express the idea of what *is, was, will be*, etc., a duty or necessity.

Mihi, tibi, ei, etc., *scribendum est, fuit, erit*. I, you, he, etc., *must write, should have written, shall or will have to write*.

So also—*Ne nobis moriendum sit*. To prevent our *having to die*.

Or—*Dixit sibi scribendum esse, fuisse*. He said that he *had, had had, to write*.

Obs.—This is the commonest of all modes of expressing duty, obligation, etc., commoner even than *oportet, debeo, or necesse est*. (See 198, iii.)

THE GERUNDIVE.

389. When we wish to use a transitive verb *with its direct object expressed*, we cannot use the gerund, but must have recourse to the **gerundive**.

The **gerundive** is a verbal *adjective* in *-ndus*, and as such is used in agreement with (Intr. 9) substantives and pronouns.

Though probably not originally passive, it has assumed a passive meaning; the object of the transitive verb will therefore, where a duty is asserted, be in the nominative, and the gerundive be used as a *predicative adjective*.

The person on whom the duty falls will still be in the *dative*.

Hostes tibi timendi erant. You *ought to have feared* the enemy.

390. In the **nominative** (and accusative of *oratio obliqua*), the gerundive, like the gerund, denotes *necessity or duty*; in **other cases** it, like the gerund, denotes merely the *action of the verb*, the English verbal in *-ing*.

Nom. Amici tibi consolandi sunt. You *ought to console* your friends.

Gen. Tui consolandi causā. For the sake of *consoling* you.

391. The use of the gerundive is confined to **transitive verbs, including deponents**.

N.B.—We cannot say *tu parcendus eras*, “you ought to have been spared,” but we can say *gloria consequenda est*.

With verbs which govern any case but the accusative, the **gerund** must be used, not the **gerundive**.

Tibi parcendum¹ erat, tibi persuadendi causā.

¹ Such exceptional uses as *hæc utenda, fruenda, pudenda*, etc., *sunt*, are to be accounted for by the fact that in older Latin these verbs were occasionally transitive, i.e. were used with the accusative; it is better to write, *his rebus utendum est*.

Obs.—The difference will be shown by the double use of *consulo*. Just as *consulo* Caium, means, "I ask Caius for advice," *consulo* Caio, "I consult the interests of Caius," so we must say—

Caius *consulendus est*. Caius must be consulted.

But—Caio *consulendum est*. The interests of Caius must be consulted.

So also *tibi credendum fuit*; *haec credenda sunt*, for, "you ought to have been believed (trusted);" "these (statements) ought to be believed." (See 248.)

Compare the impersonal use of the passive voice of intransitive verbs. (217.)

392. As with the gerund, a whole conjugation may be formed by the *gerundive* and verb *sum*.

Hostes tum debellandi fuere. The enemy *should have been* conquered then.

Dixit rem perficiendam fuisse. He said that the matter *should have* (=ought to have) been finished.

393. The gerundive is sometimes used as an *attributive* adjective with a sense of *necessity*, *fitness*, etc., even in the *oblique cases*.

Cum haud irridendo hoste pugnari. I have fought with no *despicable* foe (no fit object for ridicule).

394. Caution.—Neither gerund nor gerundive denotes **possibility**; our "is to be" is ambiguous, and may mean either *possibility* or *duty*.

"Your son was not to be persuaded" is not *filio tuo non fuit persuadendum* (=your son *should* not have been persuaded), but, *filio tuo persuaderi non potuit*.

But sometimes with a *negative* word it approaches the idea of possibility.

Calamitas vix toleranda. A scarcely *endurable* calamity.

Exercise 49.

The Gerund and Gerundive to be used exclusively for "ought,"
"should," etc.

1. He ought voluntarily to have endured exile, or else died on the field of battle, or done anything¹ rather than this. 2. Ought we not to return thanks to men to whom we are under an obligation? 3. The soldiers should have been ordered² to cease from slaughter, and to slay no unarmed person; women at least and children ought to have been spared, to say nothing³ of the sick and wounded. 4. I do not object to your exposing your own person to danger, but you ought in the present emergency to be careful for your soldiers' safety. 5. This is what one so sensible⁴ as yourself should have done, and not left that undone. 6. Seeing⁵ that he must either retreat, or come into collision on the morrow with a far from contemptible enemy, he decided on forming line and fighting at once. 7. Nor should we listen to men (72) who tell us that we ought to be angry with a friend who refuses⁶ to flatter and fawn upon us. 8. Your son was unwise enough⁷ not to be persuaded to confess that the matter should or could be forgotten. 9. We shall all have to die one day: when⁸ and how each will have to meet the common and universal doom, is beyond⁹ the power of the wisest of mankind to foresee or to predict. 10. It seems that you have one and all come to me in¹⁰ the king's palace from two motives, partly for the sake of consulting me, partly to clear yourselves;¹¹ you must therefore seize the opportunity, and plead your cause while the king is present (*abl. abs.*).

¹ 359. ² Do in two ways, *i.e.* use both *jubeo* and *impero*. (See 120.)

³ Use *ne dicam* (100, note); it is used almost as an adverb, *i.e.* any case may be used by the side of the *dicam* (364, Ex. note¹).

⁴ 224, Obs. 2.

⁵ *Quum videret*. (See 429.)

⁶ Mood? (See 77.)

⁷ Turn "your son, being most unwise, was not," etc. (224, Obs. 1.)

⁸ Not *quum*. (See 157, ii.)

⁹ "Not even the wisest of mankind can," etc.

¹⁰ See 315.

¹¹ See 399, Obs. 1.

EXERCISE L.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE—Continued.

Oblique Cases.

395. In other cases than the nominative (and accusative of *oratio obliqua*) neither the Gerund nor (with few exceptions) the Gerundive conveys any sense of *duty*, *necessity*, etc.

They merely denote the **general action** of the verb, and correspond to the infinitive mood used as a noun, and to the English verbal substantive in *-ing*. (See 384, 390, and 99.)

When thus used, the **gerund** retains its proper verbal power of governing an accusative (385); we can say “*patres vestros videndi*,” of seeing your fathers; “*vera judicando*,” by forming a right decision; but oftener than not, and especially in the *accusative* and *dative*, it gives place to the **gerundive**. Thus—

Acc. *Ad Gallos insequendos* is far more common than *ad Gallos insequendum*, which is scarcely ever used.

Dat. *Bello gerendo* is always used, rather than, *bellum gerendo*.

Abl. *Epistolā scribendā* is commoner than *epistolam scribendo*.

Gen. *Epistolae scribendae* is commoner than *epistolam scribendi*.

Of course with **intransitive** verbs the **gerund** is invariably used. (391.)

Ad succurrendum miseris, parcendo feminis, hostibus persuadendi, etc., never *ad miseros succurrendos, parcendis feminis*, etc. So, *miseris succurritur*, not *miseri succurruntur*, etc.

396. The **accusative** of both the gerund and gerundive is used with *ad*, as a substitute for a separate **final clause**, with *ut*, *quo*, etc. (See 100.)

"To," "in order to," "for the purpose of," is constantly thus expressed; sometimes also by the **genitive** with *causā* or *gratiā*.

Gerund.—*Ad consultandum*, or *consultandi causa*, *huc venimus*. We have come here *to deliberate*.

Gerundive.—*Ad pacem petendam*, or, *pacis petendae causā missi sumus*. We have been sent for the purpose of asking for peace.

Sometimes we find the participle in *-rus*: *consultaturi adsumus*, we are here *to deliberate*.

Its use with other prepositions is rare: *inter ludendum*, *ob iudicandum*: "in the midst of play," "for the sake of giving a verdict."

397. The **dative** of both forms is used after certain verbs and adjectives such as *praeſicere*, *praeſeſſe*, *dare operam*, *impar*, etc., and also in the sense of *aim* or *purpose*.

Gerund.—*Legendo dabat operam*. He was giving his attention *to reading*.

Gerundive.—*Bello gerendo me praeſeciſtiſ*. You made me preside *over the carrying on the war*.

Gerundive.—*Comitia conſulibus creandis*. The meeting *for the election of consuls*.

Note also, *ſolvendo non eſſe*, not to be *able to pay* (one's debts). The **gerundive** is almost invariably preferred with transitive verbs.

398. The use of the **ablative** is mainly *instrumental* and *causal*.

With transitive verbs the **gerundive** is more common (except with neuter pronouns) than the **gerund**; *aliquid agendo* (by doing *something*); but, *bello trahendo vinces* (by prolonging the war).

Obs.—It is also occasionally used with the preposition *in*; but it is not used with *pro* and *sine* to represent our "instead of," "without," followed by the verbal substantive; you cannot say *pro ſequendo*, *sine ſequendo* for "instead of," or "without following." (See 332. 8.)

399. The **genitive** of both gerund and gerundive is used in most of the senses of the genitive; with transitive verbs the latter is to be preferred, unless **ambiguity**, or a recurrence

of the same sound, would arise. Thus *discendi* aliquid (*alicujus* would be ambiguous); *vera judicandi*; *patres vestros videndi causā* (to avoid *vestrorum videndorum*).

Obs. 1.—The genitive singular of the gerundive is used with *sui*, even when it denotes a number of persons: *sui purgandi causa adsunt*, they are here to clear themselves, so *vestri, nostri*.

Obs. 2.—Notice such phrases as *respirandi spatium*, a breathing space; *sui colligendi facultas*, an opportunity of rallying; *pacis faciendae auctor et princeps fui*, I was the suggestor of, and the leader in making peace. The idiom *hoc conservandae libertatis est*, this tends to the preservation of freedom, has been noticed above. (292, *Obs.*)

400. The accusative of the gerundive is used **predicatively** (239) in a *final* sense in combination with certain verbs: *do*, I give, *curo*, I take care of, *suscipio*, I undertake, etc.

Obsides Aeduis custodiendos tradit. He hands over the hostages to the Aedui, to keep in guard.

Agros eis habitandos dedit. He gave them lands to dwell in.

Caesar pontem faciendum curavit. Caesar had a bridge made.

It thus retains the idea of **obligation**, and often answers to the English infinitive (*to* keep, etc.), itself originally a dative of aim or purpose.

Exercise 50.

1. These men came, it is said, to our camp for the purpose of praising themselves¹ and accusing you (*pl.*); they are now intent on pacifying you, and clearing themselves of a most serious indictment. 2. The matter must on no account be postponed; you must on this very day come to a decision, as to whether it tends to the destruction or to the preservation of the constitution. 3. Such gentleness and clemency did he show in the very hour of triumph, that it may be questioned whether he won greater² popularity by pardoning his enemies or by relieving his friends. 4. There can be no question that

¹ 399, *Obs. 1.*

² *Plus.* (See 294.)

in point¹ of consulting his country's interests rather than his own, of sacrificing his own convenience (*pl.*) to that² of his friends, of keeping in check alike his temper and his tongue, this young man far outdid all³ the old. 5. All the spoil which the defendant had obtained by sacking temples, by confiscating the property of individuals, and by levying contributions on so many communities, he secretly had⁴ carried out of the country. 6. It was by venturing on something, he said, and by pressing on, not by delay and hanging back, nor by much⁵ discussion and little action, that they had effected what they had hitherto achieved.⁶ 7. It was I who suggested the following up the enemy (*sing.*), in order to leave⁷ him no breathing space, no⁸ opportunity of rallying, or of ascertaining the nature⁹ or number of his assailants.

¹ Simply abl. of limitation, or reference. (274.)

² See 345.

³ Use *quisque*. (375.)

⁴ *Curo*. (400.)

⁵ "Much," "little," with gerund. (See 53.)

⁶ Repeat the same verb ; mood ? (See 77.)

⁷ Use the passive. (216.)

⁸ Use *ullus* after *ne*, as more emphatic than *qui*. (See 357, 358.)

⁹ See 174.

EXERCISE LI.

THE SUPINES.

401. The so-called **Supines** in **-um** and **-u** are the accusative and ablative cases of a **verbal substantive** of the fourth declension.

This substantive is formed in the same manner as the passive participle (*auditus, factus*, etc.), and the name *supine* is a Latin translation of the Greek *ὑππίος* (on his back), which, by a metaphor borrowed from wrestlers, was fancifully applied to the passive as distinguished from the active voice. Neither, however, of the supines has a really passive signification.

402. The **Supine** in **-um** is used only in combination with *verbs of motion*. It expresses the purpose, design, or *final cause*, of the motion. It is thus included among the various Latin modes of expressing purpose or design mentioned in 100.

It so far keeps its verbal nature as to govern the case of the verb from which it is formed.

Pacem nos flagitatum venerunt (230). They have come to importune us for peace.

Pabulum emisit milites. He sent his soldiers out to forage, or "a foraging" (a=an, on).

Obs.—This *supine* is one of the few instances of *motion towards* being expressed by the accusative without a preposition. (See 235.)

403. It is used with *ire* (to go) oftener than with any other verb, and forms with this sometimes a kind of additional tense, though rarely, if ever, in Caesar or Cicero: "I am on the way to," "I set about." It thus gives the action an intensive force, sometimes almost equal to our "goes out of his way to."

Video te patris tui injurias ultum ire. I observe that you are on the way to avenge the wrongs done to your father.

Fortunas suas perditum it. He is on the way to ruin his own fortunes.

Sibi nocitum it. He is on the way to damage himself.

Obs.—Its use with the impersonal passive of *iri* to supply the place of the absent **passive infinitive future** has been noticed (193, iv.).

Injurias patris ultum iri dixit. He said that the wrongs done to his father would be avenged.

404. The **Supine** in **-u** is the **ablative** of a similar verbal substantive. It is in fact an ablative of *limitation* (274). It is mostly confined to forms derived from verbs of **speaking** and of the **senses**, such as *dictu*, *memoratu*, *auditu*, *visu*, etc., but includes *factu* and *natu*.

It is only used with **adjectives** (mostly such as express *difficulty and ease, credibility and the reverse*), and a few **substantives** resembling adjectives, such as *fas*, *nefas*, *scelus*, and the verb *puet*.

Difficile est dictu quanto simus in odio. It is hard to say how hated we are.

Nefas est dictu talem senectutem miseram fuisse. It is sacrilege to say that such an old age was wretched.

Note that the *supine* in **-u** does not, as that in **-um**, govern a case ; but it may, as in these two examples, have either an interrogative clause (165), or an infinitive dependent upon it.

It may be compared with the Greek infinitive active *καλός ἰδεῖν*, or the English "fair to see."

Exercise 51.

1. Ambassadors came from the Athenians to Philip at Olynthus¹ to complain of wrongs done to their countrymen. 2. He started to his father at Marseilles from his uncle at Narbonne to see the games, but within the last² few days was killed, either by an assassin, or by brigands, while³ on his journey. 3. Do you (*pl.*) remain within the camp in order to take food and rest and all else that you require ; let us, who are less exhausted with fighting—for did we not arrive fresh and untouched immediately after the contest?—go out to get food and forage. 4. We have come to deprecate your (*pl.*) anger, and to entreat for peace ; we earnestly hope that we shall obtain what (*pl.*) we seek for. 5. He sent ambassadors to the senate to congratulate Rome⁴ on her victory. 6. It sounds incredible how repeatedly and how urgently I have warned⁵ you to place no reliance in that man. 7. It is not easy to say whether this man should be spared, and be⁶ sent away with his companions, or whether he should at once be either slain or cast into prison.

¹ For this and the "at's" in the next sentence, see 315.

² See 325, *Obs.* ³ Either *dum* (see 180), or present participle (410).

⁴ Why not *Roma* ? (See 319.)

⁵ Mood ? (See 165, 166.)

⁶ *ipse*. (See 255, C)

EXERCISE LII.

PARTICIPLES.

General Remarks.

405. Participles are verbal adjectives, or rather verbs used as adjectives.¹

Hence their name, *participia*, as sharing in (*participari*) the nature of two parts of speech. They differ from the Gerundive as they may govern all cases precisely as finite verbs, and also as representing more distinctly *tense* and *voice*; but they are inflected as adjectives, and, as adjectives, are both *attached to*, and, as in compound tenses, *predicated of*, substantives and pronouns. (See Intr. 8.)

Res abstrusa ac recondita (attribute). A deep and mysterious question.

Multi occisi sunt (predicate). Many were slain.

406. (i.) But their most characteristic use is that in which they stand in **apposition to the subject or object of a verb**, and form as in English, but to a still greater extent, a substitute for a *subordinate clause*, either adjectival or adverbial. (Intr. 81, 82.) Thus—

Caesar haec veritus. Caesar fearing (= *who*, or *as he*, feared) this.

Haec scribens interpellatus sum. I was interrupted *while*² I was writing this.

Urbem oppugnaturus constitit. He halted *when*² he was on the point of assaulting the city.

Nobiles, imperio suo jamdiu repugnantes, uno praelio oppressit. He crushed in a single battle the nobles, *who had* long been contesting his sovereignty.

¹ The **action** or **state** which the verb in its finite form (*i.e.* when used as a true verb) *predicates*, is looked on as a **quality** embodied in, and attached by language, or *attributed*, to some person or thing. "Caesar seeing this, etc."—we add to our general idea of Caesar the special quality of *seeing this*.

² In English the temporal conjunctions *when*, *while*, can apparently be closely connected with participles, "when coming," "while writing." These are really elliptical expressions, "when (he was) *a coming*," "while (he was) *a writing*;" and the apparent *participle* was originally a verbal noun. In Latin such combinations as "*dum scribens*," "*quum veniens*," are of course absolutely inadmissible.

(ii.) Sometimes the Latin participle represents not a *sub-ordinate*, but a *co-ordinate*, clause. (Intr. 74, 75.)

Militem arreptum trahebat. He seized the soldier, and began to drag him off. (See 15.)

Patrem secutus ad Hispaniam navigavit. He followed his father, and sailed to Spain.

407. Some participles are used precisely as **adjectives**, and as such admit of comparative and superlative degrees.

(i.) Such past participles as *doctus*, *eruditus*, *paratus*, *erectus*, etc., are constantly so used.

(ii.) So also such present participles as *abstinens*, *amans*, *appetens*, *fidens*, *florens*, *nocens*, etc.; these when transitive are often joined with the genitive in place of the accusative: *patriae amantissimus*. (See 302.)

(iii.) Some even, as adjectives, admit the negative prefix *in-*, which is never joined with the verb: *innocens*, *impotens*, *insipiens*, *indomitus*, *invictus*, *intactus*.

Obs.—At the same time, though this use of the participle is common in both languages, we must be cautious in translating English *participial adjectives* literally: “a threatening letter,” is “*literae minaces*,” “a moving speech,” “*oratio flebilis*,” “a smiling landscape,” “*aspectus amoenus*,” “burning heat,” “*aestus fervidus*.”

408. Others, like adjectives, are used exactly as **substantives**: *adolescens*, *infans*, *senatus-consultum*, *candidatus*, *praefectus*, etc. (See 51.)

Such are—*Institutum*, “fixed course,” “principle” (sing.), “institutions” (pl.); *acta*, “measures,” “proceedings,” “*facta*,” “deeds,” “*merita* (in),” “services” (towards); *peccatum*, *delictum*, “wrong-doing,” “crime,” the *future participle* is only so used in the word *futur-um* (-a, pl.).

Obs.—It has already been said that many of these still retain their true participial, i.e. *verbal*, construction: *multa ab eo praeclare facta*. (See 55.) But we may also say *merita ejus*, *facta*, *acta*, *dicta*, *praecepta*, *delicta*, *ejus*, etc.

409. There are in Latin **three** participles, exclusive of the **gerundive**, which is not here included among the participles as it cannot govern a case.

Active verbs have **two**: *Dicens* (pres.), *dicturus* (fut.).

Deponent verbs have **three**: *Sequens* (pres.), *secutus* (past), *secuturus* (fut.).

Passive verbs have **one**: *Dictus* (past).

Obs.—This last has occasionally a middle signification. (See 413.)

Present Participle.

410. This participle is always **active**. When used as a participle (not as a mere adjective) it denotes **uncompleted action contemporaneous with** that of the verb to whose subject or object it is in apposition.

Haec dixit moriens. He said this *while dying*.

Provincia decedens¹ Rhodum praevertectus sum. In the act of (or, *while*) returning home from my province, I sailed past Rhodes.

Ad mortem eunti obviam factus sum. I met him as he was going to death.

Obs.—Thus after “to hear,” and “to see,” the present participle is used when the actual presence of the hearer or seer is emphasised.

I heard you say. *Audivi te dicentem.*²

He saw the house blaze. *Aedes flammantes vidit.*

411. Hence (especially in the **nominative**) its meaning is far more limited than that of the English present participle, which is often used *vaguely*, as regards even time, and *widely* to represent other conjunctions than those of mere time. Thus—

“*Mounting* (i.e. after mounting) his horse he galloped off to the camp;” “*arriving* (i.e. having arrived) in Italy he caught a fever;” “*hearing* this (i.e. in consequence of hearing), he ordered an inquiry;” “*throwing* themselves at his feet (i.e. having thrown) they made a long speech.”

In all these cases the Latin present participle would be entirely wrong; *equum conscendens* would mean that he galloped to the camp while in the act of mounting; *in Italiam perveniens*, that the fever was caught at the moment of reaching Italy; *haec audiens*, that the inquiry was ordered while he was listening to a story; *se projicientes*, that they made a long speech whilst in the very act of falling prostrate;—all of which would of course be wrong or absurd.

In the first three instances *quum* should be used with the pluperfect subjunctive: *quum equum conscendisset*; *quum pervenisset*; *quum haec audivisset* (or *his auditis*); and in the last the passive, or rather middle, past participle,—*ad pedes ejus projecti*.

¹ *Decedere* is the technical word for to return home from holding the government of a province.

² Sometimes, *audivi te, cum diceres*. (See 429.)

412. So too, when the English present participle, while expressing time **contemporaneous with a verb in the past**, implies also a *cause*, *quum* with the **imperfect subjunctive** should be used.

"Caesar, *hoping* soon to win the day, led out his men," should be, *Caesar, quum se brevi victurum esse speraret, suos eduxit*; not *Caesar sperans*, etc.

Though this rule should be strictly observed, it is not without exceptions, especially in Caesar.

Obs.—The present participle sometimes represents a *concessive* or *though-clause*. (Intr. 59, g.)

Re consentientes, verbis, or vocabulis, discrepamus. Though we agree (while agreeing) in substance, we differ in words.

413. On the other hand, the **past participles of deponent and semi-deponent verbs** (Intr. 44), such as *veritus, ratus, ausus, confusus, diffusus, usus, progressus* (advancing), *aversatus* (expressing disgust at), *indignatus* (feeling indignation at), and those of passive verbs used in a *middle* or *reflexive* sense, as *conversus* (turning), *projectus* (throwing himself), *humi provolutus* (rolling on the ground), are used much in the same sense as the English participles "fearing," "thinking," "venturing," "trusting," "advancing."

"Caesar *fearing* this" should be either, *Caesar haec veritus*, or, *Caesar quum haec timeret*; "*turning* to his friends" should be either, *quum ad suos se convertisset*, or, *ad suos conversus*.

414. But the oblique cases, especially the **dative** and **genitive**, are used with greater freedom, and often take the place of an adjectival (or adverbial) clause, or of a substantive. (See 73.)

Verum (or *vera*) *dicentibus facile cedam*. I will always yield to those *who* speak the truth; or, to men *if* they speak the truth.

Pugnantium clamore perterritus. Alarmed by the shouts of the *combatants*, or of those *who* were fighting.

Nescio quem prope adstantem interrogavi. I questioned some one *who* was standing by.

Obs.—Even here a relative clause is equally common, and in the **nominative**, "men doing this," or "those who do this," should be translated by *qui hoc faciunt*; *hoc facientes laudantur* would mean, not "*men who* do this are praised," but "*they* are praised *while doing* this," and *ii hoc facientes*, in imitation of "those doing this" (*οἱ ταῦτα ποιοῦντες*) is not Latin at all. (See 346.)

415. These two oblique cases of the present participle very often take the place of an **English noun**.

(a.) *Interroganti mihi respondit.* He replied to my *question*.

So—*Haec interroganti hoc respondit.* To this *question* he made this *answer*.

(b.) *Lugentium lacrimae*, tears of *mourning*. *Gratulantium clamores*, shouts of *congratulation*.

(c.) Notice also, *vox ejus morientis*, his *dying* voice or words; *adhortantis verba*, his *cheering* words, or words of *encouragement*.

Caution.—Beware of such Latin as *luctus lacrimae*, *voces doloris*, etc.

Past Participle.

416. The **past participle** belongs entirely, except in *dependent* verbs, to the **passive voice**. We cannot say *adventus*, "having arrived," *auditus*, "having heard," but must use *quum*. (See Elementary Rules, 14.)

The use of this participle to form the compound tenses of the passive is obvious; its use with *habeo* (*hoc cognitum habeo*) has been pointed out (188); also the phrases, *tibi consultum volo*, "I wish your interests consulted" (240, *Obs.*), and, *properato, or consulto, opus est*, "there is need of haste or deliberation." (286.)

417. (i.) The passive participle combined with a substantive often answers to an English verbal or abstract noun, connected with another noun by the preposition *of*, and used to denote a fact in the past.

Post urbem conditam. After the *foundation* of the city.

Violati foederis poenas dabis. You shall be punished for the *violation*, or breach, of the treaty.

Nuntiata clades. The *news* of the disaster.

(ii.) Occasionally the **gerundive** is used in a similar way as almost the equivalent of a present passive participle.

Qui violandis legatis interfuere. Those who took part in the *outrage* on the ambassadors.

Obs.—We have here (and in 415) another instance of the comparative **poverty of Latin in substantives**, especially in those of an *abstract* and *generalising* nature. (See 54, 174.)

Future Participles.

418. The **future participle** in *-rus* is always **active**; for its various meanings besides those of mere futurity, see 14, c. It forms (with *sum*) a substitute for the **future subjunctive** (114) and for the **future infinitive** (193, iii.) The following examples will recall some of its more idiomatic uses.

- (a.) *Hoc se unquam facturum fuisse negat.* He says he *would never have done* this. (193, v.)
- (b.) *Nunquam futurum fuisse ut urbs caperetur respondit.* He replied that the city *would never have been* taken.
- (c.) *Vereor ne domum nunquam sis rediturus.* I fear that you are *never destined* to return home. (139.)
- (d.) *Plura locuturos dimisit.* He sent them away, as they were *on the point of* speaking further.
- (e.) *Adeo territi sunt ut arma facile tradituri fuerint.* They were so terrified that they *would have* easily delivered up their arms. (115.)
- (f.) *Hic mansurus fui.* Here I *intended*, or *was prepared*, to remain.
- (g.) *Fiet, quod futurum est.* That which *is to be*, will be.

Exercise 52.

The asterisk* means that the participle is to take the place of the *relative* or *conjunction*.

1. Are we¹ then to spare those who* resist (us), and hurl darts at us? 2. Are we to spare these men even though* they resist us? 3. I heard you ask more than once whether we were going to return to² my home, or to go to your father in London. 4. I heard the whole city ring with the shouts of joy and triumph. 5. Returning in his old age from India, he died in his own house; his sons and grandsons stood round his sick-bed, gazed sadly (61) on his dying countenance, and retained in their memories his prophetic words. 6. To my complaint that he had broken his word, he said that he had done nothing of the kind, but was ready to pay the penalty of having caused⁴ such a loss. 7. I saw the soldiers brandishing

¹ Gerund with *erit*. (See 388.)

² 316, iii.

³ 415, c.

⁴ = of the causing of . . . (417.)

their weapons throughout the city; I heard the voices of joy and triumph; I recognised the clear proofs of the announcement of a victory. 8. Throwing themselves at the king's¹ feet, they solemnly appealed to him not to give over to certain destruction men who* were not guilty up to that time, and who* were likely to be of the utmost value to the nation one day. 9. Embarking at Naples, and fearing for the safety of himself and his family,² he took refuge with my father at Marseilles. 10. His words alike of praise (415, c) and of rebuke were drowned in shouts of indignation, and in groans and outcries of disapproval. 11. Distrusting my own sense of hearing, I asked some³ one who* was standing nearer you whether I had heard aright; he answered my question in the affirmative.⁴ 12. Are you not ashamed and sorry for the abandonment of your undertaking, the desertion of your friend, and the violation of your word?

¹ See 257.

³ *Nescio quis*, 362.

² *Sui*, 349, *Obs.*

⁴ See 162.

EXERCISE LIII.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

ONE of the commonest uses of the Latin participle is that called the **Ablative Absolute**.

419. A **participle** and **substantive** (or **pronoun**) joined together in the **ablative**, and standing by themselves, often in a Latin sentence form a substitute for a **subordinate clause**. *Caesar, acceptis litteris, proficisci constituit.* *Acceptis litteris* is here the exact equivalent of such a clause as *quum litteras accepisset*.

420. (i.) This **ablative absolute** is represented in English, sometimes by a **participle** in apposition, "receiving" or "having received;" sometimes by such phrases as "on," "after," "in consequence of," "in spite of," "without," "instead of," followed by a verbal substantive, as that in *-ing*; sometimes by a subordinate clause introduced by "after that," "when," "while," "because," "although," "if," etc., sometimes by a co-ordinate clause (406, ii.); **very rarely by the almost obsolete English absolute case**, once a dative, now a nominative: "this said," "this done."

Thus—(ii.) *His auditis*, having heard, or, hearing this; *te praesente*, in your presence; *me invito*, against my will; *hoc comperto scelere*, in consequence of discovering this crime; *te repugnante*, in spite of, in the teeth of, your resistance; *illo manente*, as long as he remains; *Antonio oppresso*, if Antony is crushed; *his dictis abiit*, this said, he went off; *patefacta porta erupit*, he had the gate opened and sallied forth.

421. The **ablative**, therefore, is occasionally that of mere *time*, as *regnante Tiberio*, "in the reign of Tiberius," but much oftener of *attendant circumstances* and *cause*.

Owing to the absence of a past participle active in Latin, the use of this idiom, as of the *quum* clause, is exceedingly frequent.

It is a good rule never to translate it into English by an absolute case, or by a clause beginning with "when."

422. Cautions.—The **ablative absolute**, however, is not always admissible.

(a.) It can of course only be used in the passive with *transitive* verbs (416). You cannot say *Caesare pervento* for “Caesar having arrived,” or *Caesare persuaso* for “Caesar having been persuaded,” but *Caesar quum pervenisset, Caesari quum persuasum esset*.

(b.) It must never be used if the person denoted by its substantive or pronoun is either the subject or object of the principal verb of the clause.

“Caesar having taken the *enemy* massacred *them*” is not *captis hostibus Caesar eos trucidavit*, but *Caesar captos hostes trucidavit*. “As I was reading this I saw you” is not, *me haec legente te vidi*, but *haec legens te vidi*.

423. (c.) It need not be used when a past participle active is supplied by a deponent verb.

Haec locutus is as good Latin as *his dictis*.

(d.) It is *rarely* used to represent more than a substantive and verb, or verb with its accusative : *haec me dicente* ; but for so long a combination as *Caesare a militibus imperatore salutato*, a *quum*-clause should be substituted.

(e.) Its use with a **future** participle is very rare in the best *prose*. The phrase *Caesare venturo* is from Horace.

424. Sometimes (as the verb *sum* has no participle) the place of the participle is taken by an **adjective** or **substantive**, which is joined in a predicative sense with another substantive or pronoun.

Me invito, against my will ; *te duce*, with you for leader (under your leadership (333)) ; *me auctore*, at my suggestion ; *salvis legibus*, without violating the law ; *honestis iudicibus*, if the judges are honourable men.

Obs.—Sometimes the participle is used alone with a dependent clause.

Missis qui rogarent. Having sent people to ask.

Comperto eum aegrotare. Having ascertained that he was ill.

425. With a **negative** the ablative absolute often represents the English “without” joined to the verbal noun. (See 398, *Obs.*) Thus—

Te non adjuvante, without your assistance ; *nullo expectato duce*, without waiting for any guide ; *re infecta*, without success ; *nullo respondente*, without receiving an answer from any one ; *causā incognitā*, without hearing the case ; *indictā causā condemnatur*, he is condemned without pleading his cause.

426. The proper place for the ablative absolute is early in, or quite at the beginning of, a sentence. (Intr. 104.) It is only when extremely emphatic that it comes last. (Intr. 92.)

Exercise 53.

N.B.—1. “And” enclosed in brackets is to be omitted and a participial construction substituted. (406, ii.)

2. The asterisk* marks the use of the participle as in Ex. 52.

1. Thereupon, after saluting the enemies’ general, he turned to his companions, (and) setting spurs to his horse, rode past the ranks of the Germans without either waiting for his staff or receiving an answer¹ from any one. 2. It was at my suggestion, to prevent your voice and strength failing you, that you suspended for a while the speech which* you had begun. 3. For myself, fearing that glory and the pursuit of honour had but little effect with you, I abandoned such topics² (and) tried to work upon your feelings by a different method. 4. All this he did at the instigation of your brother, without either receiving or hoping for any reward. 5. It was most fortunate for me that, fighting³ as I did against your wishes and advice, not to say in spite of your opposition and resistance, I gained the victory without the loss of a single⁴ soldier, and with few wounded. 6. After attacking the camp for several hours, the barbarians were so exhausted by the heat and with thirst and fatigue, that having lost more than 1200 men they abandoned⁵ the attempt and returned⁵ home without success. 7. It was at your suggestion, not only against my will, but in spite of my opposition, resistance, and appeals to heaven and earth, that your countrymen were persuaded to condemn a whole people without a hearing. 8. This I am persuaded of, that you will not pass this law without violating the constitution. 9. As I was thus speaking, the news of the enemies’ arrival, and the handing in of a despatch from the king, filled my

¹ = or any one replying.

² Present participle. (412, *Obs.*)

³ Use different tenses. (See 113.)

² Simply *ista*. (54.)

⁴ See 381.

audience¹ with mingled rage and panic ; but some,² judging that haste was necessary, seized their arms (and) hastened to go down to meet the foe. 10. So long as you survive and are unharmed, I feel sure that my children will never be orphans. 11. Under your leadership I was prepared (418, *f*) to take up arms, but hearing³ that you were ill, I resolved to remain behind at home without⁴ taking part in that contest.

¹ "The minds (*animi*) of my audience." (See 17, *Obs.*)

² Use *erant qui*. (360, iii.)

³ 424, *Obs.*

⁴ Use "and not to," *neque*. (332. 8.)

EXERCISE LIV.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

427. Temporal clauses are those which qualify the statement made by the verb in the main clause, in some particular as to **previous, contemporaneous, or subsequent time**. They are therefore *adverbial* clauses. (See Intr. 82.)

They are introduced in Latin and English by various temporal **conjunctions**, such as those given in Intr. 59, *c*, and others.

Obs.—Their place is often taken by the participial constructions given in the last two exercises, *e.g. haec locutus, his dictis* are exactly equivalent to *haec quum dixisset*.

428. Of those conjunctions which answer to the English “when,” all but *quum* (*cum*) are as a rule used with the **indicative** mood, precisely as in English.

Thus in past time—

*Quae postquam (postea quam), ubi, simul atque,*¹ *audivit* (or *audiverat*), *abiit*. “When he heard (or had heard) this he took his departure,” or “no sooner had he heard this than,” etc.

Obs. 1.—This use of *audivit* (aor.) in place of the more strictly correct *audierat* is even more common in Latin than in English.

So also with **present** and **future** time—*Quae simul atque audit, abit ; quae postquam, ubi, quoties, simul atque, audierit* (190, i.) *abit*.

Obs. 2.—Though the indicative is the rule with these conjunctions, the **subjunctive** must be used if the principal verb is in **oratio obliqua** : *dicunt eum, postquam haec audiverit, abiisse.* (77.)

¹ *Simul ac* only before consonants.

Quum.

429. The exception to the rule is *quum*, or *cum*, the commonest of all these conjunctions. With the **imperfect** or **pluperfect** tenses *quum* is joined with the **subjunctive**.

Caesar, quum haec videret, milites impetum facere jussit.

Caesar, seeing this, ordered his troops to charge.

Legati, quum haec non impetrassent, domum redierunt.

The ambassadors having failed (or on failing) to obtain this, returned home.

The reason of this is that, while the other conjunctions express the relation of *time*, and time only, *quum* introduces the **circumstances** which led up to, or accompanied, the fact stated by the principal verb. These circumstances are looked on as not merely preceding, or accompanying, but as affecting and accounting for the fact, like our own participial construction: "*seeing that* I could be of no use, I went away."

Now whenever *quum* (conjunction formed from *qui*) implies in any way *cause* (or *contrast*) the tendency is to use the subjunctive, precisely as with the relative itself (see 501). Hence in describing *past* events *quum* is habitually joined with the subjunctive mood, as the previous circumstance introduced is looked on as more or less influencing, or even causing, the main event which followed it, even when such causal relation is scarcely discernible; hence such a sentence as—

Quum in portum venisset, vitā excessit. He died *after* reaching the harbour.

430. Sometimes *quum* expresses more clearly still the idea of **cause**.

Quae quum ita se habeant, or haberent. Seeing that, or as the case stands, or stood, thus; this being the case.

In this purely causal sense it is regularly joined with the subjunctive mood in **all** tenses.

431. Sometimes also *quum*, without laying aside the idea of time, answers almost to "*although*," and points a **contrast**, i.e. is used as almost a *concessive* conjunction. (Intr. 59, g.) It is then also joined with the **subjunctive**.

Quum liber esse posset, servire maluit. At a time when, or *although*, he might have been free, he preferred to be a slave.

Quum dicere deberet, conticuit. At a time when, or *although*, he ought to have spoken, he held his peace.

Obs.—This is an obvious mode of turning the English “instead of” with the verbal noun in *-ing* (see 398): “Instead of being free,” “instead of speaking.”

It can, however, only be used where the neglect of a *duty* or *opportunity* is implied, otherwise we may use *adeo non . . . ut*, or *non modo non . . . sed*. (See 124.)

Quum with the Indicative.

432. *Quum* however is frequently used with the **indicative**. Thus, if simply temporal, it is regularly used with the indicative of the *present* or *future* tenses.

Quum in portum dico, in urbem dico. When I say into the harbour, I say into the city; or, In saying into the harbour, I say into the city.

Poenam lues quum venerit (190, i.) solvendi dies. You shall pay the penalty when the day of payment comes.

Obs.—So also *Decem sunt anni*, or *decimus hic est annus*, *quum haec facis*. You have been doing this (181) for the last ten years.

433. It is used also with the indicative even of **past** time in certain cases.

(a) When two clauses mark strictly *contemporaneous* events. This is often impressed on the reader by the presence of a *tum* in the principal clause.

Quum tu ibi eras, tum ego domi eram. At the time, or at the moment, when you were there, I was at home.

As the cause must come *before* the effect, the presence of *tum* excludes from the *quum* any notion of *causal* circumstances, and fixes it down to a purely temporal meaning.

434. (b) In a **frequentative** sense, where a number of repeated acts are described, *quum* in the sense of “when-ever,” “as often as,” is joined with the indicative.

If the principal verb is in past time, *quum* (*cum*) is used with the **pluperfect**; if in present time, with the **perfect**.

Cum rosam viderat, tum ver esse arbitrabatur (184). Whenever he saw the rose in bloom (year after year), he judged that it was spring-time.

Cum ad villam veni, hoc ipsum nihil agere me delectat. As often as I come to my country-house, this mere doing nothing (94) has a charm for me.

Obs.—The same construction is used with *si quando*, *ubi*, *ut quisque*, and the relative *qui*, *quicumque*.

Ut quisque huc venerat, haec loquebatur. Whenever any one came here, he would use this language.

Quos cessare viderat, verbis castigabat. Whomever he saw hanging back he made a point of rebuking.

But in Livy often, in Tacitus regularly, the subjunctive is used, in accordance with the Greek use of the optative.

Id fetialis ubi dixisset, hastam immittebat. As soon as (in every case) the herald had uttered this, he would launch a spear, etc.

N.B.—*Quoties* is only used where the idea of “every time that” is strongly emphasised.

435. (c) The indicative is also used where, by an inverted construction, what would otherwise be the principal assertion is stated in a subordinate clause introduced by *quum*.

*Jam ver appetebat, quum Hannibal ex hibernis movit.*¹

Spring was already approaching, when Hannibal left his winter quarters.

This sentence would stand with the same sense almost more naturally—

Vere jam appetente Hannibal ex hibernis movit.

The indicative is natural, for *quum* here = “and suddenly,” “and at once,” and may be compared with the co-ordinating use of *qui*. (See 78.)

Exercise 54.

The asterisk * means that one of the various constructions of *quum* is to be used. Where “and” is in brackets use the participial construction (406, ii.).

1. This * being the case, he was reluctant to leave the city, and openly refused,² in the governor's presence, to do so. 2. As* I was wearied with my journey, I determined (45) on staying at home the whole day and doing nothing. 3. No sooner was he made aware, by the hoisting of a flag from the summit of the citadel, that the advanced guard of the enemy was approaching, than, taking advantage³ of the darkness⁴ of the night, he caused a gate to

¹ A military term : *castra* must be supplied.

² See 136. ³ *Utor* (413.)

⁴ = night and darkness.

be thrown open (and) sallied out boldly into their midst. 4. No sooner had he heard of the landing of the enemies' forces, than, instead of remaining quietly at home, he determined on taking up arms and doing his utmost¹ to repel the invasion. 5. Seeing* that his prayers and entreaties were of no avail with the king, he brought his speech to an end; no sooner was he (*qui*) silent, than the door was opened (and) two soldiers were introduced each² with a sword. 6. At the moment when* the enemy was entering the gates of your crushed and ruined city, not one of you so much as heaved a groan; when* even worse than this (*pl.*) befalls you, who will³ pity you? you will bewail, I fear, your⁴ destiny in vain. 7. Whenever* he heard anything of this kind, he would instantly say that the story was invented by some neighbour. 8. Whom-ever he saw applauding the conqueror he would blame, and exhort not to congratulate their country's enemies. 9. For the last five years the enemy has been⁵ sweeping in triumph through the whole of Italy, slaughtering our armies, destroying our strongholds, setting fire to our towns, devastating and ravaging our fields, shaking the allegiance of our allies, when* suddenly the aspect of affairs is changed, (and) he sends ambassadors, and pretends to sigh for peace, tranquillity, and friendship with⁶ our nation.

¹ See 332. 5, *g.*⁴ *Iste.* (338.)² Why not *quisque*? (378.)⁵ 432, *Obs.*³ 309.⁶ Genitive. (288.)

EXERCISE LV.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES—Continued.

Dum, donec, priusquam, etc.

436. The other temporal conjunctions will cause little difficulty, if the remarks on Tenses are carefully read, especially those in 190.

The general rule is that **the indicative is used unless** (a) **the clause falls under oratio obliqua** (77), or (b) **some other idea than that of time** is introduced. Thus—

437. *Dum*, as also *donec*, *quamdiu*, *quoad* in the sense of “while,” “as long as,” where they connect together two periods of time of *equal length*, are used with the **indicative** in various tenses.

Haec feci, dum licuit. I did this as long as I was permitted.

Vivet ejus memoria, dum erit haec civitas. His memory will live as long as this country exists.

Obs.—*Quamdiu* implies a long period; *donec* generally in prose “until,” or “up to the last moment that;” *quoad* also “to the last moment that,” but not limited to time: *quoad potui*, “to the utmost extent of my power” = *quantum in me fuit.* (332. 5.)

438. But *when dum*,¹ “while,” denotes a longer period, **during part of which** something else has happened, it is joined with the **present indicative** (historic) even when past time is referred to (see 180), and even in *oratio obliqua*.

Allatum est praedatores, dum latius vagantur, ab hostibus interceptos fuisse. News was brought that the plunderers, while they *were* wandering too far, had been cut off by the enemy.

¹ “While” is constantly used in English without any idea of time, simply to place two statements side by side, generally with the idea of contrast, “while you hate him, we love him.” *Dum* is never used in this sense in Latin: we must write either, *tu quidem eum odisti, nos vero amamus*; or simply, *tu eum odisti, nos amamus.* (See also 406, note ¹.)

439. When *dum* is used for "so long as," in the sense of "if," "provided that," it invariably takes the **subjunctive**, and with negative clauses is joined with *ne*.¹

Veniant igitur, dum ne nos interpellent. Let them come then, provided they don't interrupt us.

440. When *dum*, *donec*, *quoad* mean "until," their mood is determined by the rule in 436. If nothing more than **time** is indicated they take the **indicative** (except in *oratio obliqua*).

Mane hic, dum ego rediero, redibo, or even redeo. Remain here till I return. (182 and 190.)

In senatu fuit quoad (or donec) senatus dimissus est. He was (as we should say) in the House, till the moment when it was adjourned.

441. But if some further idea of *expectation, purpose, or watching* is introduced, the **subjunctive** is used, as the mood proper to **final** clauses.

Num expectatis dum testimonium dicat? Are you waiting till he gives his evidence? *i.e. with a view of hearing him.*

Thus—*Epaminondas ferrum in corpore retinuit, quoad renuntiatum est vicisse Boeotios.* Epaminondas retained the spear in his body, till it was reported to him that the Bœotians were victorious.

Here the two facts are related as connected together in time, but by nothing else.

Esset in place of *est* would imply that he retained the spear *with the purpose of* waiting till the news should be brought.

Differant, donec ira defervescat. Let them put off till their anger cools; *i.e. let them put off with the purpose that their anger may cool, till they feel their anger cool.*

Defervescet would mean simply till the *time when* their anger shall be cooling; *deferbuerit*, "has cooled." (190, i. ii.)

442. *Antequam* and *priusquam* follow the same principle. To denote simple *priority of time* the **indicative** is used.

Quarto ante die quam huc veni. Four days (323, *n.*) before I came here.

¹ *Modo ne* is often used in the same sense; literally "only let (them) not."

But when the idea of an *end in view*, *motive*, or *result prevented*, is added to that of time, the subjunctive of **final** and **consecutive** clauses (see 106) is invariably used.

Priusquam e pavorē recipere animos, impetum fecerunt hostes.

The enemy made a charge before they *could recover* from the panic, *i.e. to prevent them from recovering (end in view)*.

Priusquam pugnaretur nox intervenit. Before the fight *could begin* night interposed (*result prevented*).

The subjunctive is also used in general maxims, especially when the second person is used in an indefinite sense. (141, Obs.)

Priusquam incipias, consulto opus est. Before *men* begin, they require deliberation.

Obs.—In these wider senses *priusquam* is more common than *antequam*.

443. *Priusquam* (as *antequam*) is properly a *phrase* of two words, which may be placed in separate clauses, especially in negative sentences.

(i.) So used, they are often equivalent to *not . . . until*.

Non prius respondebo quam tacueris. I will *not* answer *until* you are silent.

(ii.) They may also sometimes translate *without*. (See 425.)

Prius ire noluit quam iudicium sententias audivisset. He refused to go *without hearing* the verdict of the jury. (*Audivisset* is *virtual oratio obliqua*, “*said he would not go*.” See 448.)

Obs.—“Not until” is often expressed by *tum demum* (or *denique*).

Tum demum respondebo, quum tacueris. I will *not* answer *till* you are silent.

Exercise 55.

The asterisk * means that *dum* is to be used in one of its various constructions. ** *Antequam* or *priusquam* is to be used.

1. I am ready to pay you the greatest possible honour, so* long as you are ready to estimate at its proper value all the slander and detraction of my rivals. 2. The¹ launching of this handful of cavalry against the enemies' left wing caused such universal panic that, while* the king was inquiring of his staff what was happening, even the centre began² to fall into confusion; before

¹ 417.

² “Even in the centre confusion began.” (See 219.)

worse¹ befell us, night intervened, so that fighting ceased² on both sides. 3. And now before we could reap the fruit of a contest which had cost us so much bloodshed, a second army came on the scene, so that, while* our general was sleeping in his tent, the battle had to be³ begun anew. 4. He will be dear to his countrymen as long* as this nation exists, nor will his memory die out of the hearts of men till** all things are (190) forgotten. 5. He did not enter political life till⁴ by the death⁵ of his father he was able, as⁶ he had long desired, to join the ranks⁷ of the aristocratic party. 6. Let them venture on anything,⁸ provided* they do not injure the influence and authority of those with whom rests the administration of the nation. 7. As long⁹ as I believed you to be studying these matters for their own sake, so long I honoured you highly; now I estimate you at your true value. 8. As long* as those who are to¹⁰ command our armies are chosen either by chance, or on grounds of interest, the nation can never be served successfully.

¹ Neut. pl.² Impersonal construction. (219.)³ Gerundive; tense of *sum* as in 115.⁴ See 443, *Obs.*⁵ Abl. abs. with *mortuus*.⁶ 67.⁷ Why not *ordines*? (See 17.)⁸ See 359.⁹ *Quamdiu* (437, *Obs.*), *tamdiu*.¹⁰ 418, *g*.

EXERCISE LVI.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN ORATIO OBLIQUA.

444. It has been already said (77) that in all subordinate clauses in *oratio obliqua*, whether introduced by a relative or a conjunction, the subjunctive mood takes the place of the indicative.

This usage is so unlike English that it is constantly overlooked by the young scholar.

In English, if we alter "the man who does this *is* foolish" into "*he says that* the man who does this *is* foolish;" or, if to "as soon as they saw the enemy they *fled*," we prefix the words, "*they say that*," no change takes place in the mood of either of the verbs.

In Latin not only does the principal verb, "*is*," "*fled*," pass in such cases into the *infinitive* mood, but it carries with it, so to speak, all verbs really subordinate to it into a fresh mood, the *subjunctive*.

Oratio recta.

Stultus est, qui hoc facit.
Simul atque hostem viderunt,
fugere.
*Qui hoc fecerint,*¹ *poenas dabunt.*

Oratio obliqua.

(Ait) *stultum esse, qui hoc faciat.*
(Dicunt eos) *simul atque hostem*
viderint, fugisse.
(Dixit) *eos qui hoc fecissent, poenas*
datuos esse.

445. The same rule applies to indirect or dependent questions and commands as much as to indirect statements, for the term *oratio obliqua* in its full sense includes all three kinds of such substantival sentences. (Intr. 80.)

Oratio recta.

Cur priusquam vidistis hostem,
pedem retulistis?

QUESTION.

Oratio obliqua.

(Rogavit) *cur priusquam vidissent hostem, pedem retulissent.*

COMMAND.

Qui adsunt, me sequantur.

(Jussit) *eos qui adessent, se sequi.*

¹ For the tense of *fecerit* see 190, ii. This *future perfect* will be represented after a past verb of *saying* by the *pluperfect subjunctive*. (See 471, Obs.)

446. It will be remembered therefore that rules as to *postquam*, *quod*, *quanquam*, etc., being joined with the indicative, do not apply to clauses that are dependent on any form of *oratio obliqua*; in such clauses the **indicative is inadmissible**.

447. The principle is the same throughout. Let A be the author of the book, or the speaker; B any one else *through* whom A makes any statement, or whom he mentions as asking or commanding something: no verb that forms any part of what B says will be in the indicative mood. In the examples (444, 445) all on the left hand, but on the right hand only *ait*, *dicunt*, *rogavit*, *jussit*, are A's words; the rest of each sentence expresses the ideas of the subject of each of those verbs, or of B, and the **indicative therefore is excluded**.

Obs.—Indeed, the *tendency* is to introduce the subjunctive into the subordinate clause when the principal verb is in the infinitive or subjunctive for *any* cause; and though such *assimilation* does not amount to a rule, it will sometimes help to account for unexpected subjunctives.

Hoc feci, ut eos qui me sequerentur, incolumes praestarem. I did this to secure the safety of my followers.

Virtual *Oratio obliqua*.

448. The subjunctive also takes the place of the indicative, not only where the form of the sentence shows that the writer is reporting what *some one else* said, thought, asked, or ordered, but where in the absence of any verb *declarandi*, *sentendi*, *rogandi*, or *praecipendi* we have ourselves to supply the idea, “as he said,” or even “as I thought.”

It is a short mode of distinguishing what the writer or speaker (A) states on his own responsibility, from that for which he declines to be responsible, and which he tacitly shifts to B.

Thus in the fable, “The vulture invited the little birds to a feast which he was going to give them,” “*quod illis daturus erat*” would mean that he really *was* going to give them the feast: but “*quod illis daturus esset*” would only mean that *he said* he was going to do so. So with the verbs of *accusing*, the charge often stands with *quod* in the *subjunctive*, because the *accusers* are made to assert that the crime has been committed; the *indicative* would make the historian or speaker assert, and be *responsible for*, the truth of the charge.

This has been happily named the subjunctive of *virtual oratio obliqua*.¹

Socrates accusatus est quod corrumperet juventutem. Socrates was accused of corrupting the young men.

Quod corrumperet throws the responsibility of the charge on the accuser. *Corrumpebat* would imply that the historian agreed with the charge.

This construction is especially common with *quod*-clauses. (See below, 484.)

EXCEPTIONS.

449. Sometimes the subordinate clause, though *grammatically* subordinate to a verb in *oratio obliqua*, is really an explanatory parenthesis inserted by the writer, and is therefore in the indicative.

Themistocles certiores eum fecit, id agi, ut pons, quem ille in Hellesponto fecerat, dissolveretur. Themistocles sent him word that it was intended to break down the bridge, which he (Xerxes) had made over the Hellespont.

The words "*quem ille in Hellesponto fecerat*" are inserted by the historian, they do not belong to the words reported as used by Themistocles. They belong to A, not to B. (447.)

Similarly, in such a sentence as "he ordered him to send for the troops who were in the rear," the *who*-clause would be in the *subjunctive* if it were part of the order given, in the *indicative* if a mere definition of the troops were meant, and inserted as such by the historian.

Exercise 56.

1. Then turning to Cortes, he made a vehement attack upon the Spaniards, who, without any² adequate justification, were invading his territory, and were either inviting or compelling his subjects to rebel. 2. He gave orders not to spare a single (358) person who had been present at the massacre of the prisoners, or the outrage on the ambassadors. 3. Then the gallant and undaunted chief, though surrounded on all sides by armed men, turned to the

¹ Dr. Kennedy. Such curious constructions as *quod religionibus impediri se diceret*, for *quod impediretur*, though by no means uncommon, will not be noticed here.

² See 335, note.

conqueror and denounced the cowardice of his countrymen, who by surrendering him to the Spaniards had flung away the priceless possessions¹ of freedom and of honour. 4. He promised not to leave the city till they had brought safely within the walls all who had survived from the massacre of yesterday. 5. He asked the many² bystanders whether those who wished for their king's safety were ready to follow him, and using³ all speed to inflict chastisement on those who had violated their allegiance and their oath. 6. On reaching the summit of the mountain he called to him his staff, and pointed out to the streams which (he said) flowed down towards Italy. 7. He said that he would not allow himself to put faith in men who had not only showed themselves cowardly and disloyal, but were still, in the face of such a political emergency, on the point⁴ of sacrificing everything to their own comfort and interest.

¹ See 222, *Obs.*

² Abl. abs. of *adhibeor*.

³ See 69.

⁴ Either fut. in *-rus*, or *in eo esse ut*.

EXERCISE LVII.

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

Rules for Mood and Tense after *si*.

450. Conditional clauses are those which are introduced by the Latin and English conjunctions *si*, "if," etc., enumerated in Intr. 59, *e*. Their *adverbial* relation to the principal clause is explained in Intr. 82.

The use of the right **mood** and right **tense** in such clauses will require some care, owing mainly to the almost entire obliteration in English of the *subjunctive mood*, and the want of a true future tense. (190.)

A. Mood after *si*.

451. The construction of such clauses, as regards the **mood** to be used after *si*, will be perfectly clear if the following **observations** and **rules** are borne in mind.

Obs.—In all conditional or hypothetical sentences, *i.e.* such compound sentences as contain an *if*-clause, or its equivalent, it is quite true that the *truth* of any assertion made in the principal clause depends upon that of the condition contained in the *if*-clause; as a matter of *reasoning* or *inference*, the principal clause, called also the *apodosis*, is dependent on the subordinate clause, or *protasis*.

Thus, in "*if it has lightened there will be thunder*," that "*there will be thunder*" is dependent, as an *inference*, on whether or no "*it has lightened*."

But *grammatically* "*there will be thunder*" is the principal clause, *qualified* by the secondary or subordinate clause, "*if it has lightened*."

It is this *grammatical* relation, and this only, which we need consider in writing grammatically, and we shall find that in **conditional sentences the mood of the verb in the *si*-clause will depend, as a rule, on that of the verb in the main clause.**

The following two Rules must be carefully observed.

452. RULE I.—If the verb in the principal clause is in the **indicative** or **imperative** mood, the verb in the conditional clause will be in the **indicative**.

Si hoc dicis, erras; *si abire vis, abi*. If you *say* this you are wrong; if you *wish* to depart, *depart*.

Obs. 1.—Dismiss all idea that *si* “governs a subjunctive” because it suggests a doubt, and the subjunctive mood implies a doubt. The word *si* (“if”) in its very nature implies doubt; but the mood with which it is joined depends upon the nature of the whole sentence, and this is decided by that of the *principal*, not of the subordinate, clause. If the principal verb is in the *indicative* or *imperative*, this shows that the whole sentence belongs to the sphere of *practical* and *real* life, and the indicative is the appropriate mood for the *qualifying si*-clause, as well as for the main clause.

Obs. 2.—Nor does the mood of the *si*-clause depend upon the *likelihood*, *unlikelihood*, *possibility*, or the *reverse*, of the supposition made; but simply on the mood (that is to say, the general tone) of the *principal clause*. Cicero says, *excitate eum, si potestis, ab inferis*; he did not think it possible that they could raise a man from the dead; yet he says *si potestis*, not *si possitis*.¹

Caution.—Beware then of such Latin as—

Si hoc dicas, errabis. If you *were* to say so, you *will* be wrong.

The Latin is as bad as the English; half the sentence belongs to one sphere of thought, the *practical*, “you *will*,” etc., half to that of mere *conception*, “if you *were* to,” etc. (See Note.)

453. RULE II.—If the verb in the principal clause is in the *subjunctive* mood, the verb in the *si*-clause will be also in the *subjunctive*.

Si hoc dicas, erres. If you *were* to say this, or, *were* you to say this, you *would* be wrong.

Erres is in the subjunctive mood because it does not say “you *are* wrong,” but only that you *would* be in certain imagined conditions, on a certain *hypothesis*; it shows that the whole sentence has left the sphere of *fact* and *practice* to which the *indicative* and *imperative* belong, and entered that of *conception* or *imagination*. The *si*-clause therefore will, as the subordinate clause, follow the mood of the

¹ Cicero says, *Parcite Lentuli dignitati, si ipse famae suae unquam pepercit*. This is in accordance with Rule I. Of course Cicero did not mean that Lentulus *had* shown tenderness to his own reputation, but the very reverse, yet he uses the indicative after *si*. So he says, *Si es Romae, vix enim puto*, *sin es*, . . . he uses the *indicative* because he goes on to make a *practical request*. The indicative mood is, so to speak, *colourless*; it makes a statement (Intr. 11): but colour may be given to the statement it makes by another word. *Fortasse hoc dicit*; *si hoc dicit*: the *doubt* and *condition* are expressed by *fortasse* and *si*, the verb is left unaltered.

ruling or principal clause, and may be called a *hypothetical* as distinct from a *conditional* clause.¹

Si hoc dixisses, erravisses. If you had said this, *or*, had you said this, you *would have* been wrong.

If these two RULES, I. and II., are observed, few mistakes will arise as to the **mood** of the Latin verb.

Exercise A (page 286) should now be done.

B. Tense after *si*.

454. Under RULE I. the main difficulty as regards **tense** will be in the use of the **future**.

(i.) Read carefully 190 and examples 5-10 in 194, and you will see that the best mode of translating

"If you *do* this you *will* be punished," is, *hoc si feceris, poenas dabis*.

Si facis would be "if you are now doing," or, "intending to do" (an *anticipative* use, 182); *si facies*, "if you shall be doing," i.e. at the time (189); but *si facias* would be entirely wrong, "if you *were* to do this, you *will* be punished."

(ii.) Remember also that, if a **command** regards the *future*, as most commands do, the **future** must be used with *si*. "Come (to-morrow) if you *can*" will be, *veni (cras) si poteris*, because "can" is really future time, and contemporaneous with the tense denoted by "come;" *potes* would mean, "if you can *now*."

Obs.—This future is especially common with *volo* and *possum*.

Cras veniant (imperative) or *venient* (fut.), *si salvi esse volent*.

Let them come, *or*, they will come, to-morrow if they (then) wish for safety.

455. Remember also the idiomatic use of the Latin **pluperfect indicative** with *si* to express *repetition* or *frequency*; it corresponds with the **imperfect** in the principal clause. (See 192 and 434.)

Si quem cessare viderat, non verbis solum sed etiam verberibus castigabat. If he *saw* that any one was hanging back, he *would correct* him, not with words only, but with stripes.

¹ The word "condition" would be used in such practical matters as a *treaty* or *lease*, etc.; "*hypothesis*" we apply to an assumption in science on the truth of which we base an unproved theory. The *apodosis* to the *condition* is naturally in the **indicative**, to the *hypothesis* in the **subjunctive**.

456. Under RULE II., the only difficulty as regards Tenses will be in the use of the **imperfect subjunctive**, as distinct from that of the **pluperfect** and **present** of the same mood.

(i.) The **imperfect** represents in the subjunctive, as in the indicative, *continuous action* in the past (183) ; the **pluperfect** simply past time.

Hoc si dixisses, erravisses. Had you (before some past time) said this, you would have been wrong (once for all).

But—*Hoc si diceres, errares.* Had you been saying this (during some past time), you would (during that time) have been in the wrong.

(ii.) But sometimes the imperfect subjunctive extends up to the *present* moment, and *hoc si diceres, errares*, means, “Had you been saying this *now*, you would have been *now* wrong.”

The meaning of the imperfect subjunctive in a Latin sentence must therefore sometimes be decided by the **context**.

457. The more ordinary form in speaking *hypothetically* of the **present** is, *hoc si dicas, erres* ; but, especially when we wish strongly to imply that the supposition is false, we may use in Latin, as in English, a **past** form. But this use of the **imperfect** can never, either in suppositions or wishes, extend to the **future**.

Utinam adsit. Would he were here (now, or for the future).

Utinam adesset. Would he had been here (either yesterday, or even to-day).

Si adsit. If he were here (to-day, or in the future).

Si adesset. Had he been here, or were he but here (previously, or to-day).

458. The sense sometimes calls for a difference of *tense* in the two clauses.

Ego nisi peperissem, Roma non oppugnaretur. Had I not become a mother, Rome would not now be under siege.

Peperissem, merely past time, oppugnaretur, a continued state, extending to the present moment.

Caution.—Remember that *si* is never used in Latin as an **interrogative** particle. “He asked him *if* he was well,” is, *ex eo, num valeret, quaesivit.* (167.)

Obs.—*Si* begins a sentence less commonly in Latin than in English. It often follows a name or pronoun : *Caesar si*, etc., *Ego si*, etc. Often *quod* is prefixed to connect it with the previous sentence : *quod si* = “but if,” sometimes “and if,” properly “as to which, if.”

459. The following examples should be carefully studied.

RULE I.

Si quid habebat, dabat. If he (*during* a past time) had anything, he gave it, or *would give* it (habitually).

Si quid habuit, dedit. If he (*at* a past time) had anything, he gave it (aorist).

Si quem viderat, irascebatur. If he saw any one (*frequentative*, 434, Obs.) he *would* get angry.

Si opus erit, or fuerit (see 190), adero. I will be there if need arises.

RULE II.

Tum *si hoc* dixissem, non auditus fuisset. If I had said this then, I should not have found a hearing (aorist).

Tum *si hoc* dicerem, non audirer. If I had said (*i.e.* been saying, 183), I should not have found (been *likely* to find) a hearing.

Si hoc dicam, non audiar. If I *were* to say this (*now*, or at any *future* time), I should not be listened to.

Si hoc dicerem non audirer. If I *were* to say (or *had been* saying) this *now*, I should not be (or *have been*) listened to (as I am).

Exercise 57.

A.

Mainly on the **Moods** to be used with *Si*.

1. If you love me, be sure to send a letter to me at Rome. 2. If you are at home—I am not yet sure whether¹ you have returned—I hope soon to receive a letter from you. 3. Were your country to use this language to² you, would she not have a claim to obtain her request? 4. If I am speaking falsely, Metellus, refute me; if I am speaking the truth, why do you hesitate³ to put confidence in me? 5. Were virtue denied this reward, yet she would be satisfied with her own self.⁴ 6. Time⁵ would fail me were I to try to reckon up all his services to the nation. 7. If ever any⁶ one was indifferent to empty fame and vulgar⁷ gossip, it⁸ is I. 8. If any one were to make this request of you, he would be justly ridiculed. 9. If you

¹ 167.

² “With you” (*tecum*).

³ 136, b.

⁴ See 356, ii.

⁵ “The day,” *dies*.

⁶ See 357.

⁷ Gen. of *vulgus*. (See 59.)

⁸ “I am *he*,” *is*. (See 70.)

are desirous to enter political life, do not¹ hesitate to count me among your friends. 10. Had he been a man of² courage, he would never have declined this contest. 11. If you have any regard, either for your own safety or your private property, do not³ delay your reconciliation with the conqueror. 12. But if you are aiming at the crown, why do you use the language of a citizen,⁴ and pretend⁵ to sacrifice everything to the judgment and inclination of your countrymen?

B.

On the **Moods and Tenses** used with **Si**.

1. If the enemy had with a veteran army invaded our territory, and routed our army of recruits, no⁶ German would have survived to-day. 2. If I either decline the contest, or show⁷ myself a coward and a laggard, then you may⁸ taunt me if you will, with my lowly birth, then call⁹ me, if you choose, the basest and meanest of mankind. 3. If once¹⁰ Napoleon throws his army across the Rhine, I am afraid that¹¹ no one will be able to stand in his way on this side the Vistula. 4. If we have had¹² enough of fighting to-day, let us recall the soldiers to their several (352, *Obs.*) standards, and hope for better things for¹³ the morrow; if to-morrow resistance¹⁴ is manifestly no longer possible, let us yield, however¹⁵ reluctantly, to necessity, and bid each take care¹⁶ of himself. 5. If, when you have got to Rome, you care¹⁷ to receive a letter from me, mind you are the first¹⁸ to write to me. 6. When once Italy is reached,¹⁹ I will either lead you (*pl.*), said he, at once to Rome, if you wish, or having let you

¹ See 142.² 303, ii.³ *Cave.* (143.)⁴ Adj. *civilis*. (See 58.)⁵ 39.⁶ See 233.⁷ *Praebeat*. (241.)⁸ *Licet* with subj. (197.)⁹ Fut. imperat. of *dico* (p. 113, n.).¹⁰ Need not be expressed otherwise than by the right tense. (190, i.)¹¹ *Ut quisquam*. (See 138.)¹² See 218.¹³ *In*. (See 326.)¹⁴ 219.¹⁵ *Quamvis*. (480, *Obs.*)¹⁶ Use *consulo*. (248.)¹⁷ *Volo*.¹⁸ *Prior*. (See 62.)¹⁹ 217, *Obs.*

sack such¹ wealthy cities as Milan and Genoa, will send you home, if you prefer it, laden with plunder and spoil. 7. If they saw any of our soldiers running forward from (*ex*) the line of march, or left behind by his comrades, they would all hurl their darts at him. 8. It is haste,² said he, not deliberation, that we need; had we used it³ earlier, we should have had⁴ no war to-day. 9. These men, had you permitted it, would have been alive to-day, and been maintaining with the sword the national cause. 10. Had you asked me yesterday if I feared so worthless a person as your brother, I should have answered no; to-day the news of this defeat makes⁵ me so anxious, that, were you to ask the same question, I should answer yes.

¹ Apposition, *urbs* used as *homo* in 224, *Obs.* 2. (See 317.)

² Use *properatim*, and see 286.

³ Relative.

⁴ Use *sum*. (251.)

⁵ See 240.

EXERCISE LVIII.

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES—Continued.

Exceptional Constructions of *si*.

460. **Exceptions** will be found to RULES I. and II. as given above in 452 and 453; these exceptions, however, are in many cases part of the regular construction of Latin, and are always easily accounted for.

461. **Apparent Exceptions.**—With the **modal verbs** *possum*, *debeo*, *oportet*, etc., and with **periphrastic tenses**, formed either by the *gerund* or *gerundive* (to express *duty*, etc.), or by the *future participle* (to express *intention*, etc.), with the verb *sum*, the **indicative** is regularly used in the *apodosis* or principal clause in place of the **subjunctive**. (153.)

The place of these modal verbs and participial phrases is taken in English by the auxiliary verbs *may*, *might*, *would*, *should*, *must*, *ought*, *am to*, *have to*, etc., which often form a substitute for our nearly obsolete subjunctive mood. Thus—

Quid, si hostes ad urbem veniant, facturi estis? In case the enemy *should* come to the city, what *would* you do? = what do you intend to do?

Hunc hominem, si ulla in te esset pietas, colere debebas. If you *had had* any natural affection (as you *had not*), you *ought to have* respected this man.

Deleri totus exercitus potuit, si fugientes persecuti victores essent. The whole army *might have been* destroyed, if the victors had pursued the fugitives (*which they did not*).

Hos nisi manu misisset, tormentis etiam dedendi fuerunt. If he had not set these men free, they *must have been* given up to torture.

Bonus vates poteras esse, si voluisses. You *might have been* a good prophet, had you cared to be one.

Aliiter si fecisses, idem eventurum fuit. Had you acted otherwise, the result *would have been* the same.

These are exceptions to, but not real violations of, RULE I. Thus *facturi estis* is another form of expressing *faciatis*, *colere debebas* of *coluisses*. These *modal verbs*, and the other periphrastic forms, supply the Latin verb with, as it were, fresh *moods*, or *modes* of

statement. (See 42.) They add an assertion of *intention, duty, probability*, etc., to the idea conveyed by the verb.

Thus in, *Si quis haec loquatur, vix puto eum impetraturum esse*, "if any one were to use this language, I scarcely think he would obtain his request," the *vix puto*, etc., is equivalent to a subjunctive mood, *vix impetret*.

So *facturus fui* is almost equivalent to *fecissem, culpari potui* to *culpatus fuisset*.

462. Nor is, *Si hoc dixi, nolim dictum*, "If I said this, I am sorry," a violation of RULE II., for *nolim* is only a polite form of the indicative. (See 149, i.)

So, *moriar, nisi hoc verum est* (may I perish, if this is not true), is no real violation of RULE I., for *moriar* is practically an *imperative*, not "I should die," but "let me die;" nor is, *Si in hoc erravi, quis mihi irascatur* (if I have done wrong in this, who would be angry with me?) a violation of RULE II., for the question is a *virtual* negative, equivalent to *nemo mihi irascetur*. (See 150.)

463. Real Exceptions.—Sometimes, however, RULES I. and II. are really violated.

(a) *Perieram nisi tu accurrisses*. I should have perished if you had not run to my assistance.

We use the same idiom: "*I had perished had you not run up.*"

(b) *Si fractus illabatur orbis, impavidum ferient ruinae*. Were the globe to be rent and fall upon him, the fragments *will* strike but not dismay him.

In the first example (a) what is *unreal* (he had not perished) is stated *as though it were real*, for the sake of making the language more emphatic: "*I all but perished.*"

The second (b) is from the poet Horace, who in *ferient* passes from the ordinary form of the conditional sentence to that of strong assertion or *prophecy*. These idioms, at all events the second, should never be imitated by the young composer.

Exercise 58 A should now be done (page 293).

Nisi, si non, sin, si minus; sive, seu.

464. The rules for *mood* and *tense* are the same as those given for *si*.

Nisi, "if not," "unless," negatives a *whole clause*; with *si non* the negative applies to a *single word*.

Moriatur, nisi medicum adhibuerit. Unless he calls in, or, if he does not call in, a physician he will die.

Moriatur, si medicum non adhibuerit. He will die, if he fails-to-call-in a physician.

465. *Sin* (*si ne*, properly "if not") = "but if," and is used to introduce a fresh *si*-clause, *contrary* in sense to one already expressed or implied. If the fresh clause is *negative*, *si non* with a verb, or simply *si minus*, takes the place of *sin*.

Si luna clara est, domo exeunt, sin obscurior, domi manent. If the moon is bright, they leave their houses, *but if* it is at all dim (57, b), they stay at home.

Si haec fecerit, gaudebo, { si non fecerit, } aequo animo feram. If he does this, I shall be glad; if he does not (or if not), I shall take it quietly.

466. *Si, nisi, si non, si minus*, are sometimes like some other conjunctions (Intr. 27) joined with single words in place of clauses.

(a) *Juravit se, nisi victorem, nunquam reditum.* He swore never to return, unless victorious.

(b) *Nihil aliud discere est, nisi recordari.* Learning is nothing else than recollecting.

(c) *Cum spe, si non optimā, at aliquā tamen vivere.* To live with some hopes, if not the highest. (Note order of English.)

Caution.—It is only in such phrases, where it emphasises a single word, that *at tamen* should be used; it should **never begin a sentence**, as it so often does in later Latin.

467. *Sive, seu*, though translated by "whether," "or," are never used as *interrogatives*, never, that is, as identical with *utrum, an.* (See 171.) They introduce two or more alternative *conditions*, between which the speaker makes no choice; they affect the principal clause, or *apodosis*, equally.

Sive adhibueris medicum, sive non adhibueris, convalesces.

You will get well, *whether* you call in a physician or no, *i.e.* if you do, and if you do not.

The rules for the **mood** are the same as the two given for *si* (452, 453).

Seu legit, seu scribit, nihil temporis terit. Whether he reads or writes, he wastes no time. (RULE I.)

Seu legat, seu scribat, nihil temporis terat. Whether he were to read, or were to write, he would waste no time. (RULE II.)

Caution.—Great care must be taken to distinguish *sive* . . . *sive*, *seu* . . . *seu*, from *utrum* . . . *an*, and *aut* . . . *aut*.

- (a) *Sive* . . . *seu* introduce **adverbial** clauses (conditional).
- (b) *Utrum* . . . *an* „ **substantival** clauses (interrogative).
- (c) *Aut* . . . *aut* „ **co-ordinate** clauses.

(a) *Seu legit, seu scribit, nihil temporis terit.* Whether he reads or writes, he wastes no time.

(b) *Utrum legat an scribat nescio.* I do not know whether he is reading or writing.

(c) *Aut legit aut scribit.* He is either reading or writing.

The manner, therefore, in which “whether” and “or” are to be translated into Latin depends entirely on the sense in which they are used, that is, on the nature of the clause which they introduce. (See 171.)

468. *Dum, modo* (*dum modo*), *ita* . . . *ut* (consecutive), when used in the sense of “provided that,” “on the condition that,” will cause no difficulty, as they are invariably used with the **subjunctive**.

- (a) *Oderint dum metuant*; (b) *maneant, modo taceat* (jussive);
- (c) *ita maneant ut¹ mihi pareat, ut ne quid me invito faciat.*

(a) is “Let them hate me, so long as they fear me;” (b) “let him remain on condition of being silent;” (c) “let him remain on condition that he obeys me, (and) does nothing against my will.”

But *ita* . . . *ut* (comparative = as) is sometimes used in a similar sense with the **indicative**.

Ita vivam ut te amo. May I die if I do not love you; *lit.* may I live so far (only) as I love you.

Exercise 58.

A.

Exceptional uses of the Mood with *Si*.

1. Had he listened to your warnings, had he endured everything in silence, the result would have been the same then as to-day. 2. Had you been in office during

¹ The *ut* here is of course consecutive, “so as to,” and hence equivalent to a *condition*; but it approaches also a *final* sense “with the intention of;” hence the *ne* in the next clause. Cf. the Greek ὥστε, ὥστε μή.

(in) the same year as my father, had you encountered the same political storms as he did, you would have shewn,¹ if not² as great self-control, yet as much good sense as he did. 3. Had I said this with the intention of being of use to, and of pleasing, him, yet I should have had to put up with his abuse and insults. 4. Had your father said this with the intention of displeasing you, yet you should have remembered that he was your father, and have endured his angry mood calmly and in silence. 5. This is the course, which, had I been born in the same position as you, I should have had to take; but happily I have never had to undertake such a task. 6. Had the son been of the same character as the father, I might have touched his heart by prayer³ and entreaty; but in truth he is so inhuman, so cruel, that, had all mankind endeavoured to soften him, no one would⁴ have prevailed. 7. If you wish to see me before I leave the city, I would have⁵ you write to your father not⁶ to summon me to the army till you have come to Rome. 8. If you have been persuaded⁶ to pardon him his offences, and not to exact punishment for so many crimes, would any⁷ one impute that to you as a fault, or taunt you with your clemency and gentleness? It might perhaps have been⁸ better not to have listened to prayer; but error is one thing, wrong-doing another.

B.

Nisi, si non, sin; sive, seu.

1. If you fail to return at the end of a week, you will greatly injure your own⁹ cause. 2. I should not have written thus¹⁰ had not I been convinced that your father took the same view on this question as I. 3. He was a man of the highest ability, the highest character, of respectable, if humble origin. 4. If I obtain my request,

¹ Use *adhibeo*, I employ, call in.

² See 466.

³ Gerund.

⁴ See 115.

⁵ 141.

⁶ 122, c, b.

⁷ 358.

⁸ 153.

⁹ See 356, i.

¹⁰ *Haec*. So *haec*, or *hoc*, *facere*, is "to act thus," never *ita agere*.

I shall be most grateful; if not, I will do my best¹ to bear it with resignation. 5. In the morning he² promised and bound himself by oath never to return from the field, unless victorious; yet³ in the evening I saw him with my⁴ own eyes walking in the park, with countenance unmoved and calm, if not cheerful. 6. Let him speak out his whole mind, his whole wishes; provided that he is silent for the future, it matters little what he says at present. 7. You shall obtain your request, but only on⁵ condition that you depart at once, and never more return. 8. Whether you were absent intentionally, or by chance, concerns yourself, and is of no small importance to your own reputation; what⁶ we have to decide is whether you were absent⁷ or present; if you were absent⁷ during⁸ the battle, whether it happened by design or by mere chance, you will be condemned, and that⁹ deservedly, by a unanimous verdict, for you ought never to have¹⁰ left the camp. 9. Whether you will do me this favour or not, I do not yet know, but whether you consent to do it or no, I shall always be grateful to you for¹¹ your many kind deeds, and will show my gratitude if I can. 10. Whether this bill is constitutional or unconstitutional may be questioned; but whether it is constitutional or unconstitutional, I venture to say this, that if not indispensable, it is so beneficial, so useful to the nation in the face¹² of the present crisis, that it has been approved of by every patriot.

¹ See 332, 5, *g.* (p. 222).

² *Idem* for "yet him." (See 366, ii.)

³ *Ita . . . ut.* (468, c.)

^{7,7} Tenses? one the mere fact, the other continuous time. (173.)

⁸ "Then . . . when the fight was going on." (218.) Mood? (See 433.)

⁹ *Idque.* (See 344.)

¹¹ *Propter tot.*

² *Iste.* (See 338, *Obs.* 2.)

⁴ *Iipse.* (355, *d.*)

⁶ 341.

¹⁰ Tense? (198, i., ii., *b.*)

¹² 273, *Obs.*

EXERCISE LIX.

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES—Continued.

Si-clause in Oratio obliqua.

469. If a verb of *saying* or *thinking* is inserted before the **principal** clause of a conditional sentence, the verb of that clause will of course pass from the **indicative** or **subjunctive** mood into the **infinitive** (31), which represents the English finite verb with "that" prefixed.

(i.) With the apodosis, or main clause, of sentences under RULE I., this will give no difficulty; in those that fall under RULE II., the subjunctive, answering to the English *would*, *would have*, will be (somewhat roughly) represented by the future in *-rus* with *esse* and *fuisse* respectively. (See 36.)

Amem (I would love) will be represented by (*dico*) *me amaturum esse*.

Amarem and *amavissem* (I would have loved), by (*dico*) *me amaturum fuisse*.

(ii.) The verb in the **si-clause** will, in all such cases, be in the **subjunctive** mood; the indicative has no proper place in any clause dependent on a verb in *oratio obliqua*. (444.)

470. (i.) Thus with sentences under RULE I. (452.)

Oratio recta.

Oratio obliqua.

- | | | |
|--|-------------|---|
| (a) <i>Si hoc dico, erro,</i> | will become | (<i>dicit</i>) <i>me, si hoc dicam, errare.</i> |
| (b) <i>Si hoc dicebam, errabam</i> | ,, | (<i>dicit</i>) <i>me, si hoc dicerem, erravisse.</i> |
| (c) <i>Si hoc dixi erravi</i> | ,, | (<i>dicit</i>) <i>me, si hoc dixerim, erravisse.</i> |
| (d) <i>Si hoc dico, or dicam (fut.) errabo</i> | | (<i>dicit</i>) <i>me, si hoc dicam, erraturum esse.</i> |

(ii.) If, as in narrative is more usual, the verb of saying is in a **historic** tense. (177, b.)

Oratio obliqua.

- (a) and (b) will become (*dixit*) *me, si hoc dicerem, errare.*
 (c) ,, (*dixit*) *me, si hoc dixissem, erravisse (or dixerim).*
 (d) ,, (*dixit*) *me, si hoc dicerem, erraturum esse.*

471. But when, as is more usual, the **future perfect** is used in the protasis to a future clause, care must be taken.

Oratio recta.

Oratio obliqua.

Si hoc dixero, errabo, will become (dicit) me, si hoc dixerim, erraturum esse, but (dixit) me, si hoc dixissem, erraturum esse.

That is, after a past verb, expressed or implied, of *narrating*, the **future perfect** of *oratio recta* passes into the **pluperfect**, after a *present* verb into the **perfect**, subjunctive.

Obs.—The *future perfect* of the indicative of *oratio recta* has a **double** sense, *future* and *past* (*shall have*) ; both cannot be represented in the subjunctive ; accordingly Latin represents only the **past** sense, English sometimes only the future, sometimes the past very vaguely.

Oratio recta.

Oratio obliqua.

Eng. If ¹once he does this he shall, or will, die. He said that if he should once do, or once did, this, he should, or would, die.

Lat. *Si hoc fecerit, morietur. Eum si hoc fecisset, moriturum fore.*
Or *Ei, si ,, ,, moriendum erit. Ei, si ,, ,, moriendum fore.*

472. With sentences under RULE II. (453) there will be no change in the mood of the *si*-clause ; the tense will of course vary with that of the verb of *saying* or *thinking*.

Oratio recta.

Oratio obliqua.

Si hoc dicam, erram, will become (dicit) me, si hoc dicam, erraturum esse. (dixit) me, si hoc dicerem, erraturum esse.

Si hoc dicerem, errarem ; { dicit } me si hoc dicerem, erraturum fuisse. If I had been saying this, I should have been in error.

Si hoc dixissem, erravissem ; { dixit } me si hoc dixissem, erraturum fuisse. If I had said, etc.

¹ Remember how often our "if once" is expressed by the Latin future perfect (*semel* need rarely be inserted), and this tense and its representatives in the subjunctive must always be used if the time indicated is, though still future, prior to that of the principal verb.

473. The periphrasis for the future, and contingent future, **passive** must not be forgotten. (193, iii. and v.)

(a) "He said that the city *would be taken*, if Caesar *did not come* to its aid." (*Dixit urbem, nisi subvenisset Caesar, captum iri, or, fore ut urbs caperetur* (*captum fore* is found, but rarely).

(*Nisi subveniret* would mean, *were coming*, or *were ready to come*.)

(b) "He said that the city would *have been taken* if Caesar had not come to its aid," or "*but for Caesar having come*," etc. (*Dixit Caesar nisi subvenisset, futurum fuisse ut urbs caperetur*).

In *oratio recta* we should have (a) *urbs, nisi subveniret Caesar, caperetur*, (b) *urbs capta fuisset*, or *capi potuit* (see 461), *nisi subvenisset Caesar*.

474. Such apparent violations of RULE I. as (a) *mortem mihi denuntiavit pater, si pugnassem*, (b) *expectabat Caesar, si hostes posset opprimere*, are both instances of **virtual oratio obliqua**. (See 449.)

(a) is "My father threatened me with death, *if I should fight*, or *fought*;" (b) "Caesar was waiting, *in hopes of being able* to crush the enemy."

In (a) *si pugnassem* is not really the *protasis* or adverbial clause to *denuntiavit*, which is quite unqualified: it belongs really to a suppressed clause contained in *mortem*, such as *fore ut perirem*; it is therefore a perfectly regular instance of a *si*-clause in *oratio obliqua*: "He said that I should die if I fought" (his words were "*si pugnaveris moriere*").

In (b) *si posset* does not qualify *expectabat*, which is quite unqualified. It is used in the sense "in hopes that," and it answers to a suppressed clause expressing what *was in Caesar's mind*, "intending to use the chance, in case," etc. It is therefore virtual *oratio obliqua*, and the mood is quite regular.

475. How to express "would have" in the **principal clause** of a conditional sentence after consecutive *ut*, or a dependent interrogation.

The **pluperfect subjunctive** is not used, but gives place to the **perfect subjunctive** of the modal verb *possum* or of the periphrasis formed by the future in *-rus*, or gerund or gerundive with *sum*. (461.)

Quid tu, si tum adesses, dixisses, will become *rogo, quid tu, si tum adesses, dicturus fueris*.

Si id fecissem, periissem, will become *ut* ("so that") *si id fecissem, periturus fuero, or pereundum mihi fuerit*. (115.)

Some additional examples of apparently **exceptional** constructions are added for careful observation.

1. *Debuisti enim, etiam si falso in suspicionem venisses, mihi ignoscere.* You ought to have forgiven me, or it would have been your duty to forgive me, even if you had been falsely suspected. (461.)
2. *Atrox certamen aderat, ni Fabius rem expedisset.* A desperate contest was at hand (would have taken place) had not Fabius solved the difficulty. (463.)
3. *Ibi erat mansurus, si ire perrexisset.* It was there he would have stayed, had he continued his journey. (461.)
4. *Quid enim futurum fuit, si res agitari coepta esset.* For what would have happened, if once the question had begun to be discussed. (461.)
5. *Neque hostem sustinere poterant, ni cohortes illae se objecissent.* And they could not have maintained themselves against the enemy, but for those cohorts' exposure of themselves. (461.)
6. *Virgines si effugissent, impleturae urbem tumultu erant.* Had the maidens escaped, they would have spread disorder through the whole city. (461.)
7. *Praeclare viceramus, nisi fugientem Antonium recepisset Lepidus.* We should have won a splendid victory, had not Lepidus given a reception to Antony when in full flight. (463.)
8. *Si in hoc erravi, id mihi velim ignoscas.* If I have blundered in this, I beg you to forgive me. (462.)
9. *Circumfunduntur hostes, si quem aditum reperire possent.* The enemy swarm (historic pres.) round, in hopes of finding some means of approach (with the view of breaking in, if), etc. (474.)
10. *Praemium proposuit, si quis ducem interfecisset.* He offered a prize, i.e. said that he would give a prize, in case any one should kill the leader. (474.)
11. *Nuntium ad te misi, si forte non audisses.* I sent you a messenger, in case you had not heard. (We must supply *ut audires*, etc.) (474.)
12. *Non recusavit quo minus vel extremo spiritu, si quam opem reipublicae ferre posset, experiretur.* He did not flinch from trying even with his latest breath whether he could not give some aid to his country—lit. from making the experiment in hopes that he could . . . (474.)

Exercise 59.

A.

1. Did you imagine that, if all the rest were cut off either by the sword or by famine, you alone would be saved? 2. He feared, he said, that unless he consented to do everything that the king should command, he would never be allowed to return to his native land. 3. He will bear, he says, cheerfully his own destitution and that¹ of his family, if once he be freed from this degrading suspicion. 4. He warned them of the extent² and suddenness² of the crisis, that they could win the day if they were ready to show themselves brave men and worthy of their forefathers, but that if they hesitated or hung back, all the neighbouring tribes would soon be in arms. 5. He felt convinced of this, that if once he crushed the barbarians who had long been³ infesting the mountains, the way to Italy would be open to himself and his soldiers. 6. He said that he would never have imparted this story to you, had he not when⁴ leaving home promised his father to conceal nothing from such dear friends as⁵ yourselves. 7. He felt convinced, he said, that unless they had placed so experienced a general as yourself at the head of a veteran army, the city would have been stormed within a week. 8. He said he would never have pardoned you so monstrous a crime, had not your aged father thrown⁶ himself at his feet and implored him to spare you.

B.

The following Exercise is recapitulatory; the sentences contain various kinds of *if*-clauses.

1. If you are at Rome, I scarcely imagine you are, but if you are, please write at once. 2. If the enemy reaches the city, there will be reason⁷ to fear a dreadful massacre. 3. I sent you a letter of Caesar's, in case you wished to

¹ See 345.² Tense? (See 181.) Mood? (See 444, 449.)³ 224, Obs. 2.⁴ See 174, *b* and *e*.⁵ See 406, *note* 2.⁶ See 257. Use passive (or middle) participle.⁷ "must (*tense* ?) be feared."

read it. 4. He declared that it was absolutely impossible for the Germans to win the day, if they engaged in battle before the new moon. 5. If you are ready to make some exertion, you will take the city. 6. If you once exert yourselves, you will take the city. 7. He said that if they once exerted themselves, they would take the city. 8. As the neighbouring tribes were all jealous of his fame, he felt that if he and his people surrendered their arms, their doom¹ was certain. 9. If anything falls out amiss,² we shall make you responsible. 10. He threatened him with violence and every species³ of punishment, if he entered the senate-house. 11. It was certainly⁴ a wonderful speech; I could not imitate it if I would; perhaps I would not if I could. 12. The Dictator announced a heavy penalty in case any one should fight without his permission. 13. They feared that if they once departed without success, they would lose everything for the sake of which they had taken up arms. 14. They now at last perceived that if, at his suggestion, they had consented to abandon the popular party, and join the nobles, they would have lost all their privileges and their freedom, if not their lives. 15. If you do this, you will possibly incur some loss; if you do not you will undoubtedly have acted dishonourably; it is for⁵ you to decide which of the two you prefer to do. 16. If any one evades military service, he shall be declared infamous; if any one has fears for his own safety, let him at once lay down his arms, and leave his native land safe and sound.

¹ "were doomed to certain destruction."

² *Secus*, otherwise than *well*.

³ Simply *omnis*.

⁴ *Sane*, "certainly," in the sense of making an *admission*.

⁵ 291, *Obs.* 2.

EXERCISE LX.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

Quanquam, quamvis, etc.

476. By **concessive clauses** we mean such adverbial clauses as are introduced in English by “although” and the like, in Latin by the conjunctions *etsi* (*tametsi, etiam si*); *quanquam, quamvis, licet*. (See Intr. 59, g.)

Such clauses are called *concessive* because they admit or *concede* something, in spite of which the statement made in the main clause is true; its truth is emphasised by the contrast.

477. Their syntax is not difficult.

RULE.—When the point conceded in the concessive clause is **admitted** as a **fact** the **indicative** is used; otherwise, when only conceded **for the sake of argument**, the **subjunctive**.

The difference is still occasionally marked in English: “though he *is* guilty,” “though he *be* guilty;” “though he *was* guilty,” “though he *were* guilty;” but the nearly obsolete use of the English subjunctive is a precarious guide.

(a) In the sense of the Latin **indicative** we constantly use such phrases as, *in spite of*, or *notwithstanding*, his guilt, or, guilty *as* he is, etc.

(b) In that of the **subjunctive**, *whatever* his guilt=*however* guilty he is (be), *were* he guilty, etc.

478. *Etsi* (*tametsi*), when it contrasts one *fact* with another *fact*, is joined with the **indicative**.

Etsi mons Cevenna iter impediēbat, tamen ad fines Arvernorum pervenit. Although mount Cevennes was in the way of his march (or *in spite of* . . . *being* in the way) he reached the territory of the Arverni.

But when both the concession and the other statement are purely **imaginary**, the **subjunctive** is used.

Ego etsi abessem, tamen cum ceteris me condemnasset?
Though I *had been* absent (all the time), would you yet have condemned me with all the rest?

That is, the *etsi* clause follows the mood, as a rule, of the main clause, precisely as the *si*-clause, of which it is only another form.

479. *Quanquam* (a doubled *quam*), which contrasts one *fact* with another, naturally takes the **indicative**. It should never be joined with the subjunctive unless in **oratio obliqua**.

Romani quanquam itinere et aestu fessi erant, tamen obviam hostibus procedunt. Though the Romans were fatigued with the march and the heat, yet they advanced (historic present) to meet the enemy.

Observe how often *tamen*, "yet," "still," is inserted in the main clause to mark the contrast; but at *tamen* should never be used except with single words. (See 466.)

Obs.—*Quanquam* is often used co-ordinately¹ to introduce an entirely fresh sentence in contrast with what precedes it, and is then = "and yet;" cf. the co-ordinate use of *quum*. (435.)

480. (i.) *Quamvis*, on the other hand, **requires a subjunctive**.

Quamvis sit magna expectatio, tamen eam vinces. Although expectations are (*or*, may be) great, you will surpass them (*or*, *however* great are (*be*) the expectations formed of you).

Quamvis = *quam vis*,² "as you will," must have a subjunctive from the nature of the case, as the above sentence would originally be, "Let expectations be as great as you please, you will surpass them."

Obs.—*Quamvis*, like *nisi* (466), is sometimes joined closely with a single word (*quamvis audax*, "however bold," "whatever his boldness"), without a verb.

(ii.) *Licet*, "although," is simply the impersonal **verb**, "it is granted" (197). It should therefore never be used with the indicative.

Licet undique pericula impendeant, tamen subibo. Though dangers threaten me on every side, I will face them.

481. As in English, so in Latin, the same idea as is denoted by the concessive conjunctions "although" *quanquam*, etc., may be expressed in many other ways.

¹ Cf. the opening of the fine passage in *Georgic* I. 469—

"Tempore *quanquam* illo," etc.

² *Quamvis* is properly a separate clause, "as you choose," and the subjunctive is *jussive* (144); it is sometimes even inflected: *quam volet cunctetur*, (lit.) let him delay as much as he chooses. But in later Latin its origin, and that of *licet*, became obliterated, and they were used freely with the indicative, *quanquam* with the subjunctive.

Thus "Though he is an excellent man, he does wrong sometimes," may be translated not only by, *Quoniam homo optimus est, tamen interdum peccat*, but by (a) *Homo optimus ille quidem, sed interdum peccat* (334, iv.); or (b) *Ut* ("granted that") *sit homo ille optimus, tamen interdum peccat*; or (c) *Ita homo optimus est ut interdum peccet*, i.e. "so far only," etc. (111); or (d) *Sit* (jussive) *homo ille optimus, tamen interdum peccat*; or (e) very commonly by the use of *sane* in one clause, followed by an *adversative conjunction* (Intr. 56, c) in the other,—*res sane difficilis, sed tamen investiganda*, "though a difficult question, yet still one that demands investigation;" or (f) by the mere participle,—*hoc crimine absolutus, furti tamen condemnatus est*, "though acquitted on this charge he was found guilty of theft." (406.)

For the use of *qui* for "although" see 509, b.

"	<i>quum</i>	"	431.
"	<i>sicut . . . ita</i>	"	492 (i.).

Exercise 60.

1. Though he feels neither remorse nor shame for this deed, yet he shall pay me the penalty of his crime.
 2. Even though it were quite impossible to pardon his fault, yet you ought¹ to have taken into account his many services to the nation. 3. Whatever his guilt,² whatever his criminality, no one has a right to indict him in his absence and to condemn him unheard. 4. Entirely guilty as he is, and absolutely deserving of condign punishment, yet I cannot help comparing his present fallen and low condition with his former good fortune and renown. 5. Miserable as it is for an innocent man to be suspected and charged, yet it is better for the innocent to be acquitted than for the guilty not to be accused. 6. However criminal he had been, however worthy of every kind of punishment, yet it would have³ been better for ten guilty persons to be acquitted, than for one innocent to be found guilty. 7. In spite of his having had the sovereignty and supreme power offered and intrusted to him by the unanimous vote⁴ of his countrymen, he long refused to take any part in politics, and was the only person in my day who attained to the highest distinctions

¹ Gerundive. (389.)

² Mood? (153.)

³ Use adjective. (477, b.)

⁴ Number?

against his will, and almost under compulsion. 8. Though¹ freed from this apprehension, I was soon suspected of a darker² crime, and perhaps but for your having come to my aid, might have fallen a victim³ to the hatred and schemes of my enemies. 9. Many⁴ as are the evils that you have endured, you will one day, I still believe,⁵ not only enjoy good fortune, but a rarer gift,⁶ happiness.

¹ 481, *f*.

² Metaphor. (See Vocab.)

³ Metaphor; (17)="been crushed by."

⁴ "Although . . . so many" (*tot*, 477, *a*).

⁵ 32, *b*.

⁶ "Gift," metaphor; "that which (67) more rarely falls to men's lot."

EXERCISE LXI.

CAUSAL AND EXPLANATORY CLAUSES.

482. By these are meant such **subordinate**¹ adverbial clauses as give a **reason** or **explanation** of the statement, etc., made by the verb in the principal clause. They are introduced in English by "because," "inasmuch as," "seeing that," "whereas," "considering that," etc. (Intr. 59, *d.*)

483. The conjunctions *quod*, *quia*, "because," *quoniam* (i.e. *quum jam*), *quandoquidem*, "since," are followed by an **indicative mood**.

Vos, inquit, quoniam jam nox est, domum discedite. Do you, says he, *since* it is now night, depart home.

Obs.—These conjunctions are all formed from the *relative*, and like the relative (84) often have a *demonstrative* particle or phrase corresponding to them in the other clause. Cf. *tamen* in concessive, *idcirco* in final, clauses, etc. (See 107.)

Idcirco, eo, hanc ob causam, etc., ad te scribo quod me id facere jussisti. The reason of my writing is *that* you told me to do so. *Nullam aliam ob causam . . . quam quod, etc.* The one and only cause or motive . . . is *that*, etc.

484. All of these conjunctions however may be joined with the **subjunctive**, on either of two grounds.

(a) The principal clause may be in *oratio obliqua*. (446.)

Jussit eos, quoniam nox esset, discedere.

(b) The *quod*-clause may be in *virtual oratio obliqua*. (See 448.)

That is, we may supply in thought the words "as he (they) said," or "thought," after the causal conjunction; or translate *quod* by "asserting that," "under the impression that," "in the belief that."

Abire voluit, quoniam nox esset. Since it was, *as he said*, night.

¹ The connexion of cause and effect may be stated by a *co-ordinate clause* with causal or inferential conjunctions (Intr. 56, *d* and *e*): *Rediisti: gaudeo igitur*; or *gaudeo: rediisti enim*; but the construction of such co-ordinate conjunctions presents no difficulty, as they have no effect on the mood of the verb.

Obs.—This use of the subjunctive in a *quod*-clause is exceedingly common after words of *praising, blaming, accusing, admiring, complaining, wondering*.

Rex civibus odio erat, quod leges violasset. The king was hated by his subjects, because (*they felt that*) he had broken the law, or, as having, or, for having (*as they thought*), broken the law.

Violarat would be a statement made and accredited by the historian, "for having (as he had) broken the law."

It is naturally most common after verbs of *complaining, blaming, etc.*

Mihi irascitur, quod eum neglexerim. Because (*as he says or fancies*) I have neglected him, as having neglected him.

The responsibility of the statement is shifted from the speaker or writer to the subject of the principal verb. (See 448.)

485. When a reason is mentioned only to be set aside, *non quo*, "not that," *non quin*, "not but what," are used, always with the **subjunctive**.

Sometimes the reason *accepted* follows, with *sed quod* and the **indicative**.

Non quo tui me taedeat, or, *non quin me ames, sed quod abire cupio.* Not that I am tired of you, or not but what you love me (or, not that you don't), but because I am anxious to depart.

Quum with the subjunctive is often causal (see 430). So also is *qui* (see 509).

486. *Quod* ("that") often answers to the English "the fact that," or, "of," and is used to **explain** the object or subject of a verb, especially in apposition with a neuter pronoun.

Magnum est hoc, quod victor victis pepercit. This is no small thing, I mean the fact of his having spared the vanquished when victorious.

*Omitto illud, quod regem patriamque prodidit.*¹ I pass over the fact of his having betrayed his king and country; or simply, "his betrayal of," etc.

¹ Sometimes a kind of *virtual oratio obliqua* is used, where there is only a single speaker, who looks on himself as, so to speak, *two persons*: *Omitto . . . quod prodiderit*, I pass over my belief that he betrayed.

Obs.—This *quod* with the indicative (or subjunctive) will be found very useful in translating the English verbal substantive of the present or perfect tense, e.g. “your saying or having said this,” and such abstract nouns as “circumstance,” “fact,” “reason,” “reflexion.”

Of course it cannot be used for “that” after verbs *sentendi et declarandi*. (See 32, a.) *Illud dico, quod patriam prodidisti* would mean, not, “I say that you have betrayed your country,” but, “I mean the fact of your having betrayed,” etc.

487. Notice also the phrases—

- (a) *Peropportune accidit quod venisti.* Your coming was very fortunate (only substituted for *ut* (123) when an adverb is joined with *accidit*).
- (b) *Accedit quod domi non est.* There is the additional reason that he is not at home.
- (c) *Quod scribis eum rediisse, num verum sit dubito.* As to your writing to say that he has returned, I doubt its truth.

Obs.—With verbs of rejoicing, etc., there is no perceptible difference between the infinitive (41, b) and the *quod*-clause: *Te rediisse gaudeo* = *quod rediisti gaudeo*. The latter emphasises the fact of the return.

Exercise 61.

1. The reason of my somewhat disliking in my youth one so attached to me as¹ your excellent relative, was my being unable to bear his want of steadiness and principle. 2. I am hated by every² bad citizen for having been the very last to uphold the national cause, and because I have constantly disdained to flatter the conqueror. 3. I received³ the thanks of parliament and the nation for having been alone⁴ in not despairing of the commonwealth. 4. It was scarcely possible⁵ for you not to incur the hatred⁶ of your countrymen,—not that you had been guilty of betraying your country, but because you had the courage to be the advocate of a burdensome and distasteful, however⁷ necessary, peace. 5. All honoured your gallant father for having sacrificed the unanimous offer⁸ of a throne to the true and more substantial glory of

¹ 224, and *Obs.* 2.

² = “thanks were returned to me by . . .”

³ 375.

⁴ See 62, and 484, *Obs.*

⁵ 132, e. ⁶ *Pl.*, why? Because “countrymen” is plural.

⁷ Use either *ille quidem* (481, a) or *si . . . at tamen* (466, c) or *quamvis*. (480, *Obs.*)

⁸ Same construction as that in 417.

giving¹ freedom to his country. 6. Though the whole world is angry with me for having pardoned (as they say²) my father's murderers, yet I shall never be ashamed of the reflexion³ of having spared the vanquished in the hour of victory. 7. As for your having still a grudge against me, under the impression² that six years ago I injured you in your absence, and sacrificed your interests to my own gain (*pl.*), my only motive in wishing to refute such a charge is because I count your friendship worth seeking. 8. And now, in spite of his being incapable of any such baseness, he was the object of universal unpopularity, as having² supplied the enemy with funds, and treated the office with which the nation had intrusted him as a source of disgraceful gain; though no one was ever more incapable of so black a crime.

¹ Same construction as that in 417.

² 486, *Obs.* and *note*.

³ See 484, *b*.

EXERCISE LXII.

COMPARATIVE CLAUSES.

Proportion.

488. By **comparative clauses** we mean here such adverbial clauses (Intr. 82-84) as express *likeness*, *agreement*, or the *opposite*, with what is stated, asked, or ordered, in the principal clause.

He acted *as I had ordered him*; why was he treated worse *than he deserved*? Do *as I bid you*; he behaved *as though he were mad*; are instances of such clauses in English.

In Latin the number of **conjunctions** or **conjunctive phrases** used to introduce such clauses is very large; *ut* (*sicut*), *quemadmodum*, *atque* (*ac*), *quam*, *quasi*, *velut* (*si*), *tanquam* (*si*), *quasi*, *ac* *si*. (Intr. 59, f.)

They correspond also to a number of **demonstrative adverbs** or phrases, which stand to them in the same relation as *is* to *qui*, *tantus* to *quantus*, *idcirco*, or *adeo*, to *ut*, *tamen* to *quanquam*, etc.

Such are *ita*, *sic*, *pro eo*, *perinde*, *pariter*, *potius*, *aliter*, *secus*, etc.

489. All such clauses, both in English and Latin, fall naturally into **two classes**.

Class I.—Those in which the **comparison** made in the subordinate clause is *stated*, or *predicated*, as something *real*, as for example:—

He was punished *as he deserved*. *Perinde ac meritis est, poenas persolvit.*

Class II.—Those in which such **comparison** is introduced as a mere *conception* of the mind, something *imaginary* or *unreal*, not stated as a *fact*; as—

He was punished *as though he had deserved it*. *Perinde ac si, or ut si, or quasi, meritis esset, poenas persolvit.*

In **CLASS I.** the **indicative** is the rule (except in *oratio obliqua*), in **CLASS II.** the **subjunctive**.

Class I.—Comparative Clauses with the Indicative.

490. Observe that the ideas of *likeness*, *equality*, *difference*, etc., which are often expressed by *adverbial* or *conjunctive* clauses, may be otherwise expressed both in English and Latin.

(i.) In Latin the place of the **conjunction** is often taken by the **relative**, i.e. we have an adjectival (correlative) instead of an adverbial clause.

Tanta est tempestas quam numquam antea vidi. The storm is greater than I ever saw before, or, is unparalleled in my experience. (See 84, 85.)

(ii.) In Latin, but to a far greater extent in English, the place of the adverbial clause of comparison is taken by an adverbial phrase included in a simple sentence. (Intr. 70.)

Thus in the compound sentence, "he was punished as he deserved," the adverbial clause may in both languages be expressed in three different ways: (1) by an *adverbial* clause; (2) by an *adjectival* clause; (3) by an *adverbial phrase*, or an *adverb*.

- (1) *Perinde ac meritis est poenas persolvit.* He was punished as he deserved.
- (2) *Poenas quas debuit persolvit.* He paid the penalty which he merited.
- (3) *Pro meritis, or merito, or pro scelere, poenas persolvit.* He was punished in accordance with his guilt, or, deservedly.

In English one of the last of these modes, the *adverbial phrase*, is far commoner than in Latin, and must constantly be translated by a Latin *adverbial clause*.

General Rule.

491. In Class I.—To express (a) **likeness**, *ut* ("as") corresponds to *ita*, *sic*, sometimes to *perinde*; *atque* (ac) corresponds to *perinde*, *pariter*, *aeque*, *juxta*, *pro eo*, etc.

To express (b) **difference**, *atque* (ac) corresponds to *aliter*, *secus*; *ac* and *quam* to *contra*; *quam* to *potius*, and other *comparatives*.

- (a) *Ut sunt, ita nominantur senes.* Their title "old men" corresponds to the fact.

Pro eo ac, or perinde ac, debui, feci. I have acted in accordance with my duty.

- (b) *Aliter ac, or non perinde ac, meriti sumus, laudamur.* We are not praised in proportion to our deserts.

Contra quam pollicitus es fecisti. You have acted in violation of your promises.

Obs. 1.—Note the recurrence of the **indicative** mood, and the constant substitution of the English **adverbial** and other **phrases** for the Latin **adverbial clause**.

Obs. 2.—A very strong contrast may be marked by a double *aliter*.

Aliter tum locutus es, aliter te geris hodie. Your behaviour today is *most inconsistent with your language at that time.*

Special Idioms.

492. Ut as a comparative conjunction (=“as”) has many uses.

(i.) Sometimes with *ita*, *ut* (or *sicut*) marks a contrast, “as, or while (p. 274, note) one fact is true, so, on the other hand, is another,” and is virtually *concessive*.

Ut fortasse honestum est hoc, sic parum utile. Though this is perhaps right, yet it is scarcely expedient.

(ii.) Sometimes, with *ita*, it is used in a *restrictive* sense, and is virtually *conditional*.

Ita vivam ut te amo. May I live so far only as I love you, i.e. May I die if I do not love you. (468, ad fin.)

(iii.) Without *ita*, it introduces a *general remark* in accordance with which a particular fact is noticed.

Tum rex, ut erat natura benignus, omnibus veniam dedit. Thereupon the king, in accordance¹ with the kindness of his nature, forgave them all.

(iv.) It introduces, as the English “as,” parenthetical clauses : *ut fit*, “as (often) happens,” *ut aiunt*, “as the proverb says.”

But such parentheses as, *ut credo*, *ut arbitror*, *ut videtur*, are far rarer in Latin than in English, and are used in an *apologetic* and self-depreciatory sense, “as at least I think,” or else are *ironical*, as is almost invariably the parenthetical *credo*. (See 32, b.)

(v.) It is used even *without any verb* in two senses.

(a) “As you would expect.”

Magnus pavor, ut in re improvisa, fuit. The panic was great, as was natural in so unexpected an occurrence.

(b) In a *restrictive* sense, “so far as could be expected.”

Satis intrepide, ut in re improvisa, se gessit. He showed considerable presence of mind, considering the unexpected nature of the occurrence.

¹ The same idea might be expressed by *quā erat animi benignitate*, or *pro solitā ejus benignitate*, or *homo natura benignissimus*. All these are substitutes for the much needed present participle of *esse*. (224, *Obs. 1.*)

493. Quam (see 275) generally introduces a clause of the same construction as that of the main clause.

Nec ultra saevit quam satis erat. Nor did he show more severity than was necessary,—any needless severity.

Nos potius hostem aggrediamur quam ipsi eum propulsemus. Let us take an aggressive, rather than a merely defensive, attitude.

But where **design** or **result** is indicated, a subjunctive is of course necessary.

Nihil ultra commotus est quam ut abire eos juberet. He was only so far moved as to bid them depart.

Obs. 1.—A **subjunctive** clause is used where a course is mentioned only to be rejected.

Omnia potius tentanda quam hoc faciamus. We ought to try any course rather than (allow ourselves to) act thus.

With *tam*, *quam* expresses equality¹ of degree.

Tam timidus hodie est quam tum fuit audax. He is as cowardly to-day as he was then over bold.

Obs. 2.—When two **adjectives** or **adverbs** are contrasted by the comparative degree followed by *quam*, Latin often uses the comparative degree with *both*.

Pestilentia minacior fuit quam perniciosior. The pestilence was more alarming than fatal.

Hoc bellum fortius quam feliciter gessistis. You have carried on this war with more courage than good fortune.

494. Quum, tum. These are often used, in the sense of “whereas,” “so especially,” to unite two clauses, of which the *tum*-clause is always the most *emphatic in sense*, as well as the main clause in grammar.

Quum omnis servitus misera est, tum haec omnium est miserrima. As all slavery is wretched, so is this the most wretched of all, or, all slavery is wretched, but this, etc.

Obs.—The indicative is used with *quum* when the **time of the two verbs is the same**; but when the *quum*-clause denotes a time prior to

¹ In Livy the comparative clause is often introduced in a way impossible to imitate in English.

Cujus rei non tam ausim tantum virum insimulare . . . quam ea suspicio hanc sane purgata est. Though I would not venture . . . yet that suspicion, etc.

that of the *tum*-clause the usual idiom is followed, and the subjunctive used even though a fact is asserted in the former. (See 429.)

Cum te semper amavi, tum mei amantissimum cognovi. Not only have I always felt affection for you, but I have found you most affectionate towards myself.

But—*Cum te semper dilexerim, tum hodie multo plus diligo.* I have always loved you, but I love you far more now.

Class II.—Comparative Clauses with the Subjunctive.

495. In comparisons made with an **unreal** or **imaginary** case, the adverbial clause is introduced by *velut, tanquam* (often with *si* added), *ut si, quasi, ac si*. The corresponding demonstratives are *sic, ita, perinde, proinde, non secus*, or such phrases as *similes sunt, similiter faciunt*, etc. The **subjunctive** is always used in the adverbial clause.

Sic eum ames velim ut si frater esset tuus. I would have you love him *as if* he were your own brother.

Ita se gessit quasi consul esset. He behaved *as though* he were consul.

496. These conjunctions are often used with a **single word** (substantive, adjective, or participle) or a **phrase**.

Eum tanquam hostem, or tanquam patriae proditorem, odi.

I hate him *as (though he were) an enemy, or, a traitor.*

They are constantly so used in Latin to **qualify a strong expression** or **metaphor**, and must often be inserted where there is nothing answering to them in English, where metaphors are much more freely used. (See 17.)

“The soul flies forth from the *prison-house* of the body.”

E corpore, velut e carcere, evolat animus.

Neve te obrui, tanquam fluctu, sic magnitudine negotii, sinas.
And do not suffer yourself to be overwhelmed by the *tide of business.*

In the same sense *quidam* (361, *Obs.* 1, 2), *quodammodo*, and *ut dicam* are often used.

497. **Proportional clauses.**—Such ideas as are expressed in English by a clause introduced by “in proportion as,” or by the phrase “in proportion to,” or by a double *the* with the comparative (“*the more . . . the more*”), may be best translated into Latin by one of two constructions.

(a) *Ut quisque* with a **superlative** in one clause may correspond to *ita* with a **superlative** in another (376), or (b) *Tanto, or eo*, the ablative

of *measure of difference* (279), joined with a *comparative* adjective, or adverb, in one clause, may correspond to *quanto*, or *quo* with a *comparative* in another.

- (a) *Ut quisque est vir optimus, ita difficillime alios esse improbos suspicatur.* In proportion to a man's excellence is his difficulty in suspecting others to be evil-minded, *or*, the better a man is, the greater his difficulty in, etc., *or*, those whose character is the highest will find most difficulty, etc.
- (b) *Quo quisque est vir melior, eo difficilior, etc.*

The same constructions would express such a sentence as, "A man's readiness to suspect others is in inverse proportion to his own goodness."

Obs.—*Tanto . . . quanto* mark a more precise correspondence than *eo . . . quo*. The latter is identical with the English *the . . . the*; "the" is the old ablative of the *demonstrative* pronoun, which in the form *that* came into use as a relative earlier than the *interrogative* "who," "which."

Exercise 62.

The asterisk (*) indicates that the *Phrases* are to be translated by a Latin clause. (See 490, ii.)

1. The soldiers having now reached the summit of the mountain, and seeing a vast level plain, fertile territory, and rich cities, spread beneath their eyes, crowded round their leader, and as though they had already triumphed over every obstacle, congratulated him on the conquest¹ of Italy. 2. He behaved far differently to what I hoped and you expected. For in violation* of his repeated promises,² as though he made no account of the ancient tie which had long existed between his own father and mine, instead³ of coming to my aid in my adversity, he has rejected up to this day my friendship, and has paid no attention to my more than once repeated and solemn appeals.⁴ 3. May each and every one of you, when the hour of battle arrives, conduct himself in accordance* with his duty, and may each fare in accordance* with his deserts. 4. Let us endure everything rather than act in this matter contrary to* our promises. 5. We should⁵ abide by the

¹ See 417, i.

² 491, b; "repeated" will of course be turned by an adverb.

³ See 398, *Obs.*, and use one of the constructions given in 124.

⁴ i.e. "to me more than once solemnly appealing." (415.)

⁵ Gerund, and for second clause see 493, *Obs.* 1.

most oppressive conditions, rather than break our word and brand our country with dishonour. 6. Then, with his usual¹ passionateness and want of self-control, he orders the ambassadors to be brought before him; as though their mere sight had added fuel to his fury,² after roaring out that their king had acted in defiance* of his promise and oath, he ordered them to be dragged to prison. The next day he showed more gentleness than was consistent³ with the ferocity of his language of the day before, and, after apologising for his outrage on the rights of hospitality, invited them to a banquet on⁴ the next day as though he had done nothing strange⁵ or unusual. Their answer showed⁶ more daring, considering the⁷ perilous ground on which they stood, than caution. 7. Then, putting spurs to his horse, he dashed, with his usual⁸ eagerness for battle, into the thick of the contest, as though it were the part of a good general to act with spirit⁹ rather than with deliberation. 8. The longer the war is protracted, the more oppressive will be the conditions of peace which will be imposed upon us; do not wonder then at the reason¹⁰ of the truest patriots being the most ardent advocates of peace. 9. The more hidden a danger is, the greater will be the difficulty¹¹ in avoiding it, and those¹² among our enemies (*gen.*) are likely to be the most formidable who are readiest in dissembling their ill-will. 10. And it seemed to me that, considering the importance¹³ of the matter, he spoke with some want of energy, as though he were ashamed to speak in the presence of the conqueror with greater warmth and emotion than became³ either his former rank or his recent disaster.

¹ 492, iii.² Participle of *ardeo*. (415.)³ *Quam pro*. (See 332, 7, h.)⁴ 326.⁵ Case? (See 294.)⁶ "Showed." Avoid *ostendit*. (See 241.) "They answered with more daring (*adv.*) than caution." (493, *Obs.* 2.)⁷ "Ground," etc., a mere metaphor. (See 273, *Obs.*, and 492, v. b.)⁸ Use *ut* with *semper*. (492, iii.)⁹ Two comparative adverbs. (Intr. 19.)¹⁰ *Cur*. (See 174, a.)¹¹ Substitute *adverb*, "will be avoided with greater difficulty."¹² Use *ut quisque*. (497, a.)¹³ Simply *tanta res*.

EXERCISE LXIII.

Qui WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

498. (i.) Recapitulatory.—It has been already said that **qui**, when used simply as the **relative** pronoun, to introduce what are called **adjectival** clauses (Intr. 81), is regularly followed by the **indicative** mood. (See 77.)

Qui boni sunt, iidem sunt beati. Those who are good are *also* happy. (366, i.)

Obs.—Here *qui* is used in its widest and most *indefinite* sense, = *quicunque*, but for all that is joined with the **indicative** in classical Latin, as is *quicunque*. (364.)

(ii.) It has been also pointed out, that if such adjectival clauses are subordinate to a verb in *oratio obliqua*, the mood must be the **subjunctive**. (444.)

The same principle applies equally to **virtual oratio obliqua**. (448.)

Omnia, quae pater suus reliquisset, mihi legavit. He bequeathed to me everything which his father *had left*.

Legavit is, “he bequeathed in the *terms of his will*,” *quae reliquisset*, “which the will *spoke of as left by his father*.”

But in such cases the subjunctive is used, not as *governed by qui*, but on the general principle that in *all* clauses subordinate to *oratio obliqua*, whether adjectival or adverbial, the **indicative** is **inadmissible**.

499. qui also, in its **co-ordinating** use, when it stands in the place of an English *conjunction* and demonstrative *pronoun*, or even of the latter alone, can of course have no effect on the mood of the verb, which will depend entirely on the nature of the clause which it introduces.

Fratrem tuum, virum praeclarissimum, vidi, qui brevi consul fiet, or, qui utinam brevi consul fiat, or, quem brevi consulem factum iri spero. (See 78.)

500. But there are many cases in which *qui*, even in *oratio recta*, must be joined not with the indicative but with the **subjunctive**.

This is because *qui*, while in form a mere relative, yet in addition to referring to some antecedent word often conveys some additional idea of either *purpose, result, cause, or contrast*. It then takes the place

of such conjunctions as *ut*, *quia*, *quanquam*, and introduces clauses which, though in form **adjectival**, are **adverbial** in sense; and in proportion to its departure from its proper nature as a pure relative, is the urgency with which it calls for a **subjunctive** mood to mark the amount of that departure.

501. RULE.—Whenever *qui* is used in a **final** or **consecutive** sense, it is *invariably*, and whenever in a **causal** or **concessive** sense, it is *generally*, followed by the **subjunctive**.

Qui final

502. (i.) *Qui* may express a **purpose**; it is then equivalent to *ut* *is*, and is always followed by a **subjunctive**.

Legatos misit, qui pacem peterent. He sent ambassadors to sue for peace (lit. *who were to sue* for peace; jussive, see 151).

Equites in castris reliquit, qui erumperent. He left cavalry behind in the camp, to make a charge.

With this compare *qui* with **indicative**.

Legatos misit, qui pacem petierunt. He sent ambassadors, who sued for peace.

Equites in castris reliquit, qui eruperunt. He left cavalry behind in the camp, who made a charge.

In these cases *qui* is equivalent to *et ii*, "and they," and therefore has no effect on the mood.

It will be seen at once that the difference of meaning between two such uses of *qui* is very great.

Qui consecutive.

503. (ii.) *Qui* may express a **consequence**, and *sometimes* even be translated by a **consecutive phrase** in English; but whenever the English "who" or "that" implies "*such as to*," "*of such a kind as to*," *qui* must be joined with the **subjunctive**.

Darius exercitum, quem immensa planities vix caperet, comparavit. "Which could not be contained," = "*such as was not to be contained within*," etc.

*** This use of *qui* extends very widely; the commonest of the less apparent examples of this meaning may be thus arranged.

504. The **subjunctive** is used after *sunt qui, erant qui* (= "some") *reperiuntur qui, quotusquisque est qui*, and such **negative** and **interrogative** forms as *nemo est qui, quis est qui? neminem habeo qui*, etc. Thus—

Erant qui putarent. Some fancied (there were people of *such a kind as to fancy*).

Nihil est quod dicere velim. There is nothing that I care to say (*of such a kind as for me to, etc.*).

Quotusquisque est (invenitur) qui haec facere audeat. How few there are (are met with) who venture to do this (one of how great a number ["one in a thousand," "*the thousandth*"] is he *who is such as to, etc.*).

Hence the use of the subjunctive after *quin* (= *qui ne* [non]).

Nemo est quin sciat. All the world knows (134), i.e. there is no one of *such a kind as not to know*.

Obs.—When *est, sunt*, etc., are joined in an affirmative clause with a *numeral* or *plural* adjective of *number* the **indicative** is used.

Multi, trecenti, duo, quidam, sunt qui haec dicunt. There are *many, three hundred, two, certain*, persons who say this.

Qui is here used in its proper relational sense, "the people *who say this* are three hundred, etc."

But after *solus, unus*, used as predicates, with *sum* as link verb, the **subjunctive** is used.

Solus es cui omnes pareamus. You are the only person whom all of us obey (somewhat more emphatic than, *tibi soli paremus omnes*.)

505. *Qui* is also used with the **subjunctive**—

(i.) After *dignus* or *indignus*.

Dignus est qui ametur. He deserves to be loved (*lit. He is worthy that he should be loved*).

Indignus erat cui summus honos tribueretur. He was not a proper person to receive the highest mark of distinction.

(ii.) After **comparatives** followed by *quam*.

Quae beneficia majora sunt quam quibus gratiam referre possim. These favours are greater than I can requite (*too great for me to requite*).

(iii.) After **negative** and **interrogative** clauses, *qui* may take the place of *ut* in correspondence with *tam, sic, adeo*, and even *tantus*.

Quis tam, or nemo tam, ferreus est qui haec faciat. Who is, or no one is, *so hard-hearted as to do this*.

Nulla vis tanta est quae hoc efficiat. No force is *so great as to produce this result*.

But you cannot say with an *affirmative* clause, *hic homo tam ferreus est qui . . .*, but must use *ut*.

506. *Is* is largely used (both affirmatively and negatively) with *qui* in a consecutive sense.

Non is *sum qui haec faciam*. I am not the man to do this, or, I am not one to do this.

Ea est Romana gens quae victa quiescere nesciat.¹ The race of Romans is one (of a kind) that knows not how to rest under defeat.

The difference between *is qui* with an **indicative** and *is qui* with a **subjunctive** must be carefully noticed, as it is one which is often not at all marked in English.

(a) When *is* and *qui* denote *identity*, the **indicative** is always used (in *oratio recta*).

Is sum qui feci. I am the man who did this.

Cum eo hoste pugnamus cui nullo modo parcendum est. We are fighting with an enemy who ought in no wise to be spared.

In both these cases *is* and *qui* are *co-extensive*; the *qui*- and *cui*-clauses apply to the person denoted by *is* and *eo*, and to *no one else*.

(b) But when the *qui*-clause is used *generically*, denotes a *larger class* to which we say that the *is* belongs, the **subjunctive** is used.

When we say, *non* is *sum qui haec faciam*, we mean, "I do not belong to the larger class (or *genus*) of men who do this."

By *cum eo pugnamus hoste cui nullo modo parcendum sit*, we mean, "we are fighting with a foe who is *one of those who* ought in nowise to be spared;" not a single person who *in himself* does not deserve quarter (**indicative**), but *one of those who* do not deserve quarter. In such sentences therefore we may use either mood according to the precise meaning of the English; the **subjunctive** is far more common.

507. *Qui* also, like consecutive *ut*,² is used in a *corrective* or *limiting* sense.

Nemo, quod sciam; nemo, qui quidem paulo prudentior sit.

No one to my knowledge; no one, at all events no sensible man. (57, b.)

Obs.—But *quantum scio, quod attinet ad*; because the word *quantum* and the phrase *quod attinet ad* express limitation by their own meaning, and do not need a change of mood.

508. All that has been said of the **final** and **consecutive** use of *qui* applies equally to **relational adverbs**, *ubi*, *unde*,

¹ *Nesciat* is here a *modal verb* (42), equivalent to *non possit*, or *nequeat*. Compare the English "I can," properly "I know" (*ken*).

² Compare—*Ita sapiens est ut interdum erret*. He is wise with this limitation, that he sometimes makes a mistake; and see 111.

cur, etc., when used as final or consecutive conjunctions.¹

Massiliam ivit ubi exularet. He went to Marseilles to live in exile there.

Cupit habere unde solvat. He wishes to have means to pay.

Nihil est cur irascere. You have no reason to be angry.

Exercise 63.

1. Caesar, seeing that the tide of battle² was turning, and that he must take advantage of the critical³ moment, sent forward all his cavalry to attack the enemies' infantry in the rear; he himself, with the rest of his soldiers, whom wounds, heat, and fatigue left⁴ scarcely capable of supporting their arms, hastened to charge them in front.

2. He was one who was worthy of every kind of distinction, for no one, within my knowledge, has governed the nation in this generation, whose public services have been equal to his, and who has been satisfied with so moderate a reward of his exertions. How few there are who have been, or will be, like him. 3. The chiefs of the enemy easily perceived that in the recent rebellion and mutiny their offences had been too great⁵ to be pardoned; at the same time (366, ii.), in spite of this great defeat, they were too high-spirited to ask for mercy, and too powerful to obtain it. 4. He is not, so far as I know, one who hesitates to follow his own line in a discussion, or prefers to bow to the opinion⁶ of others. 5. Who is there in the whole world so stony-hearted as not to be ashamed of having, in order to please his worst enemies, abandoned his friends, and of having betrayed his country to win the favour of its most ancient foes? 6. We have⁷ to carry on war with an enemy who has no respect for any treaty, or armistice, or promise, or agreement; unless we conquer him in the field, there will be nothing which can keep him back from our shores, or repel him from our walls and homes.

¹ When used, that is, not to qualify the verb, or predicate, of a simple sentence, but to connect together two clauses. (Intr. 16 and 25.) Mr. Roby uses the term *connective adverbs*.

² Use the phrase *res inclinatur*. Why would the use of this English metaphor be less admissible in Latin?

³ Simply *tempus*.

⁴ Use *possum* with *prae*. (332, 6, b.)

⁵ Use *majora delinquere*, or *peccare*. (See 54.)

⁶ *Auctoritas*. As an opinion which claims to have weight.

⁷ Gerundive.

EXERCISE LXIV.

Qui—CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE.

509. *Qui* is also used both in a **causal** and a **concessive** sense; and in each of these is joined with the **subjunctive** on the principle stated in 500.

- (a) *Me miserum, qui haec non viderim!* Unhappy that I am (229, note ¹) in not having seen this.

Here *qui* is obviously **causal** = *quod haec non vidi*.

- (b) *Ego, qui serus advenissem, non tamen desperandum esse arbitratus sum.* For myself, though I had arrived late (or in spite of my having, etc.), yet I did not think I need despair.

Here *qui* is as obviously **concessive** = *quanquam serus adveneram*.

510. But in neither of these senses is the subjunctive (though it should be used by the young scholar) so invariable after *qui* as in its **consecutive** and **final** uses.

The writer sometimes prefers to emphasise the **reality** of the statement which *qui* introduces, and to leave the reader to infer the relation of **cause** or **contrast** in which it stands to the other clause.

Gratiam tibi habeo, qui vitam meam servasti, is as good Latin as, though less usual than, *gratiam . . . servaveris*, for, "I am grateful to you, for you have saved my life."

So, *Caesar fertur in caelum, qui contra te bellum comparavit*, "Caesar is extolled to the skies (by you), although he (or, and yet he) levied war against you:" *comparaverit* would be more usual, but the indicative **emphasises the fact**, and leaves the reader to draw the **contrast**.

511. An exceedingly common use of *qui* with the **subjunctive** in either its causal or concessive sense is to represent the **circumstances under**, or **in spite of**, which the action of the principal verb takes place.

It corresponds therefore exactly to the use of *quum* (429) or to the *abl. abs.* (420), or the *past participle of deponent verbs* (413), and to a common use of the English participle (411).

Tum Caesar, qui haec omnia explorata haberet, redire statuit.

Then (or thereupon) Caesar, *having* full knowledge of all this, etc.
Tum ille, qui homo esset justissimus, etc. Then he (the other) *being* a just man, etc.

Obs.—Where a concessive sense, or *adversative* circumstances, are implied, this is generally made clear by a *tamen* in the main clause, cf. the use of *idcirco*, *adso*, etc., to mark the precise sense of *ut*. (107.)

Tum Caesar, qui hoc intellexeret, tamen redire statuit. Then Caesar, in spite of his being aware of this, yet, etc.

512. The **causal** force of *qui* is sometimes made more clear by prefixing *quippe*, sometimes *utpote*, or *ut*.

In Cicero *quippe qui* (=for or because he, etc.) is always followed by the subjunctive.

Eum semper pro amico habui, quippe quem scirem mei esse amantissimum. I always looked on him as a friend, for I knew that he bore me the warmest affection.

In Sallust and Livy *quippe qui* is used with the indicative as though=*quod*, but *ut qui* with the subjunctive is very common in Livy.

Nec consul, ut qui id ipsum quaesisset, moram certamini fecit. Nor did the Consul, as this was the very object at which he had aimed, delay the contest.

513. When *qui*, or *quicunque*, expresses an action repeated in past time, a difference of usage is found in the best Latin writers.

(1) In Cicero and Caesar it is followed by an **indicative** of the pluperfect.

(2) In Livy, by a **subjunctive**.

Quicunque venerat, damnabatur.—(Cicero and Caesar.) Whoever came (from time to time), was condemned.

Quocunque eques impetum tulisset, Romani cedebant.—(Livy.) Wherever the rider charged, the Romans yielded. Cicero or Caesar would have written *tulerat*.

This difference has been already noticed under Temporal Clauses (434). Nor in the best writers is *qui* used with a subjunctive, because it means "any¹ who," "all who," 498, *Obs.*; this usage came in, as in the *frequentative* sense, under the influence of Greek.

Exercise 64.

The asterisk * indicates that *qui* causal or concessive is to be used.

1. Thereupon the messenger, seeing* that it was im-

¹ In Livy's description of Hannibal's character, *id quod gerendis rebus superesset, quieti datum* (Bk. xxi. 4), "Any time that remained (or might remain) after active work was done, was given to repose," the mood of *superesse* is no doubt due to Greek influence.

possible by fair¹ words to succeed in persuading the Spaniards not to advance further, aimed at producing² the same effect by menaces (*gerund*), and appeals to fear. The forces, he said,³ which were gathering and concealed on the other side of the mountain, were too numerous (505, ii.) to be counted, while⁴ those who were already assembled, and were visible close at hand, were veteran soldiers, too brave and well trained to be routed, as⁵ the Spaniards seemed to hope, in the first onset of a single fight. 2. Who is there of you, who in any way is worthy of this assembly and this nation, that does not cherish and value highly the memories⁶ of the heroes⁷ of the past, even though he has never seen them.* 3. There are things which I fear still⁸ more; in his absence his brother, since* his influence with that faction is unrivalled, will be still more formidable; as long as he lives, will the party⁹ of disorder, do you³ suppose, ever lack a standard round which to rally? 4. Thereupon he dismissed the council, and ordered the Indian¹⁰ chiefs to be brought before him; the unhappy men, as* they had no suspicion or fear of his intentions,¹¹ hurry in joyfully,¹² for there was none among¹³ them who had any fears either for¹⁴ his freedom or his safety, or was aware of the extent¹⁵ of the danger which threatened them, or of the¹⁵ character of the host with whom he was to have an interview. Even he, though* he blushed at no treachery, and felt remorse for no crime, was, it seemed, somewhat touched by the confidence and friendliness of those whom he (felt¹⁶ that he) was on the point of betraying.

¹ "By pleading gently."² *Idem efficere.* (See 54.)³ Beware of this parenthesis. (32, b.)⁴ Why not *dum*? (438, note): *et* or *vero* would do.⁵ 67, *Obs.*⁶ *Memoria* is never used in the pl., cf. *spes*.⁷ Why not *heros*? a Greek word = demigod; say of "illustrious men, and those (344) ancient (ones)."⁸ Rarely expressed in Latin.⁹ Use *perditi*, or *improbi*, *cives*; the latter is Cicero's usual term as opposed to the *boni*, or *optimus quisque*.¹⁰ "Of the Indians." ¹¹ "As to what he would do." (173, iii.; 174.)¹² Adj. (61.)¹³ Gen. or ex. (296.)¹⁴ 248.¹⁵ 174.¹⁶ See 448.

EXERCISE LXV.

REPORTED SPEECHES IN ORATIO OBLIQUA.

Preliminary.

514. In reporting another person's language two methods may be used.

(i.) The historian may name the speaker, and give what purport to be the words he used in the precise form in which he spoke them, as (*e.g.*) in a play of Shakespeare,

To this Caesar replied, "I will come if you are ready to follow."

In such professedly *verbatim* reports the whole speech may be spoken of as being in *oratio recta*, as coming, as it were, *directly* from the lips of the speaker.

(ii.) This method is used in Latin, sometimes in a formal report of long speeches in the senate or elsewhere, sometimes in reporting a short saying, if very memorable or striking. In the latter case it is marked, as by *inverted commas* in English, so by the insertion of *inquit* after the first or second word of the speech or saying. Such speeches should never be preceded, as in English, by verbs like *dixit*, *ait*, *respondit*, etc., which are as a rule reserved for the second and more usual mode of reporting, the *indirect* rather than the *direct*.

"I will come, he said," "I will come, he replied," must be translated either by "*se venturum esse dixit, respondit*," or by "*veniam, inquit*." (See 40.)

515. But the more usual method in Latin, more common even than it is in English, is not to profess to give the speaker's words in the form in which they were spoken, but to insert (or imply) ¹ a verb of *saying, asking*, etc., and then to report what was said, or its substance, in the third person, that is, in *oratio obliqua*. All the principal verbs will now be dependent on a verb of *saying*, expressed or understood. Thus, instead of Caesar's own words, "I will go, if you are ready to follow," we should have "Caesar replied that *he* would go, if *he* were ready to follow."

¹ The actual verb is often omitted, the infinitive or subjunctive moods being sufficient evidence of the construction.

Legatos ad Caesarem mittunt: "se se paratos esse portas aperire."

They send ambassadors to Caesar: (*saying*), We are ready to open the gates.

Colonis triste responsum redditum est: facesserent propere ex urbe.

The colonists received a severe answer: "Begone at once from the city."

516. The great difference between the two methods will be seen at a glance.

Oratio recta.

Oratio obliqua.

Tum Caesar, ibo, inquit, si tu me sequi vis.

Tum Caesar, iturum se respondit si ille se sequi vellet.

Obs.—This method of reporting speeches, or even reflexions, in the third person is common in English (as for instance in reporting speeches in Parliament), but far more common in Latin, and should often be used in translating into Latin what in English is reported in the more dramatic form of *oratio recta*.

The following are the principal rules for the conversion of *oratio recta* into *oratio obliqua*.

Pronouns.

517. The **first** and **second** person will entirely disappear; both will be converted into the **third**.

(a) *Ego, meus, nos, noster*, will become *se*,¹ *suus* (in the nominative *ipse*).

(b) *Tu, vos, tuus, vester*, will become *ille, illi, illius, illorum, ipsius*, etc.

Tu Tarentum amisisti; ego recepi, will become, *respondit illum Tarentum amisisse, se recepisse*; or better (216, *Obs.*), *ab illo amissum esse Tarentum, a se receptum*.

Nostram patriam civitati vestrae antepoñimus, will become, *suam se¹ patriam illorum civitati antepoñere*.

So *hic* and *iste* will give place to *ille* and *is*.

Obs. 1.—Latin has here a great advantage over English; “I and you” have alike, in English *oratio obliqua*, to be expressed by *he*; hence constant obscurity. In Latin the “I” will become *se*, the “you” *ille*.

Obs. 2.—*Ille* will be in very constant use in place of *is*, as it is more distinctive, and opposes the *other party* to the speaker; sometimes as in English, a proper name will be introduced.

Adverbs.

518. As speeches are generally reported in *past* or *historic* time, **adverbs** of **present** time must be changed into those of **past** time. *Nunc, hodie*, will become *jam, tunc, illo die*, etc. So with **place**, *hic* will become *ibi*, etc.

¹ The insertion of the *se* will often be necessary where no pronoun is required in *oratio recta*: compare *tibi parco* with *dixit se ei parcere*.

But all these changes are common to Latin with English. "*I say that I will speak to you now and here*" would in English be converted into "*He said that he would speak to them then and there.*"

The rules more peculiar to Latin are connected with the use of **Moods** in **principal** and **subordinate** clauses.

Principal Clauses.

519. In all these the **indicative** will entirely disappear.

Statements and **denials** made in Latin by a verb in the **indicative** will of course pass into the **infinitive**. *Nihil doleo*, "I feel no pain," will become, *nihil se dolere*, "he felt no pain;" *hoc faciam*, will become, *id se facturum esse*, etc.

Obs. 1.—This infinitive will even follow *qui* if strictly **co-ordinate**.

Adsunt hostes, instat Catalina, qui brevi scelerum poenas dabit.

Adesse hostes, instare Catalinam, quem brevi scelerum poenas daturum esse. (499.)

Obs. 2.—Statements (hypothetical) made in the **subjunctive**, because qualified by a *si*-clause, will pass from the

Present subjunctive into the future in *-rus* with *esse* or *fore*.

Imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive into the future in *-rus* with *fuisse*. (See 469, i.)

Thus, *Rideat si adsit into risurum eum fore, si adesset.*

Rideret si adesset } into risurum eum fuisse, si adesset, or,
Risisset si adfuisset } adfuisset.

520. **Questions** asked by the speaker in the **indicative** mood will pass into the **subjunctive**; and if, as is usual, the narrative is in past time, from the **present** into the **imperfect** tense.

Nonne auditis? will become, *nonne audirent?*

Quid vultis? quid optatis? will become, *Quid vellent? quid optarent?*

Questions already in the **subjunctive** (150) will remain in the **subjunctive**; the *tense* only being altered if, as is usual, it is necessary, and of course the *person*.

Quid faciam? "what *am I* to do?" will become, *quid faceret?*
"what *was he* to do?"

Quo eamus? "whither *are we* to go?" will become, *quo irent?*
"whither *were they* to go?"

521. But questions that do not expect an answer (rhetorical questions, 150), especially those in the **first** and **third persons**, will pass from the **indicative** or **subjunctive** to the **infinitive**, for such questions are really **denials** in disguise.

Ecquis unquam ejusmodi monstrum vidit? "did any one ever see such a monster?" will become, *Ecquem unquam ejusmodi monstrum vidisse?*

Num haec tolerare debemus? will become, *Num illa se tolerare debere?*

So quo eamus? will often become, *quo sibi eundum esse?* for the meaning is often merely, "we have no place to go to."

522. **Commands, prohibitions, and wishes**, expressed by the **imperative** or **subjunctive**, will pass into the **subjunctive** with the necessary alteration of **tense** and **person**.

Oratio recta.

Festinate; utinam salvi sitis.

Nolite cunctari; ne despexeris.

Oratio obliqua.

Festinarent; utinam salvi essent.

Ne cunctarentur; ne despiceret.

Obs.—The **hortative** 1st person (and even other forms of command) will be easily converted into a statement by the aid of the **gerund** or **gerundive**.

Nihil temere agamus. Nihil sibi temere agendum esse.

Subordinate Clauses.

523. **Moods.**—The **indicative** will entirely disappear.

Even the exceptional indicative after *qui* mentioned in 449 will hardly find place in the report of a speech of any length.

RULE.—**Subordinate** clauses, whether introduced by the **relative** (except where strictly **co-ordinate**) or by any subordinating **conjunction** (except occasionally *dum*), will always be in the **subjunctive**.

This has been fully explained before. (See 444.)

524. **Tenses.**—As reported speeches are usually part of a narrative of **past** events, the most usual and regular tenses in subordinate clauses will be the **imperfect** and **pluperfect subjunctive**.

(i.) The **imperfect**, as the tense of *time contemporaneous with a date now past*, will take the place of the **present**, **imperfect**, and even the **future I.** of *oratio recta*.

Qui adsunt, fugiant, will become *qui adessent, fugerent.*

Idcirco fugi, quod timebam „ *fugisse se, quod timeret.*

Qui hoc dicet, errabit „ *qui id, or illud, diceret, erraturum esse.*

(ii.) But **future II.** (future perfect) will be changed into the **pluperfect**. (See 471, *Obs.*)

Qui hoc dixerit, errabit will become *qui illud dixisset, erraturum esse*.

(iii.) The **perfect** as well as the **pluperfect** will generally be represented by the **pluperfect** subjunctive.

Hic est locus quem ostendi. Illum esse locum quem ostendisset.

525. But though the exclusive use of the **imperfect** and **pluperfect** subjunctive would be grammatically correct, yet the **present**, **perfect**, and **future perfect** are very often introduced into *oratio obliqua* (just as in *oratio recta* the *historic present* often takes the place of the [*aorist*] *perfect*), in order to give greater *liveliness* to the reported speech by representing parts of it in the actual tense used, as though the speaker were *in our presence*.

Indignum videri ab iis se obsideri quorum exercitus saepe fuderint. They said that it seemed degrading to be besieged by men whose armies they had (lit. *have*) often routed.

In *oratio recta* the word used would have been *fudimus*—"we have routed."

There are few reported speeches in Caesar or Livy in which this rhetorical use of present for past, perfect for pluperfect, tenses will not be found.

526. The following examples should be carefully studied:—

1. "Your children have gone; when will they return? (rhetorical question), try to avenge them."¹

Oratio recta.

Profecti sunt liberi vestri; quando redituri sunt? vos, quantum potestis, ultum ite.

Oratio obliqua.

Jam liberos illorum profectos esse; quando redituros fore? quantum possent ultum irent.

¹ In English *oratio obliqua* the passages would run thus:—

"*Their children had gone; when would they return? Let them try to avenge them.*"

"Away then with such follies! *Did they* not see that *their* liberty and lives were *that day* at stake? Why *did they* obey a few centurions, still fewer tribunes, who *could* do nothing against *their* will? When *would they* dare to demand redress? It *was* of the utmost importance what *they did*. *Let them* awake at last and follow *him*, remembering the ancestors from whom *they were* sprung. If *they* let slip this opportunity, *they would* deservedly be slaves, and no one *would* give *them* a thought, or compassionate *their* present condition."

2. Away then with such follies! Do you not see that your liberty and lives are at stake to-day? why do you obey a few centurions, still fewer tribunes, who can do nothing against your will? When will you dare to demand redress! It is of the utmost importance what you do. Awake at last, and follow me! remember the ancestors from whom you are sprung. If you let slip this opportunity, you will deservedly be slaves, and no one will give you a thought, or compassionate your present condition.¹

Oratio recta.

Pellantur igitur, inquit, ineptiae istae; nonne videtis de libertate, de vitis vestris, agi hodie? Cur paucis centurionibus, paucioribus tribunis, qui nihil invitis vobis facere possunt dicto audientes estis? quando remedia exposcere audebitis? Maximi quid faciatis refert. Expergiscimini aliquando; majorum quibus orti estis reminiscimini: me sequimini. Hanc occasionem si praetermiseritis, merito servibitis, nec quisquam vel rationem vestri habebit, vel istius fortunae miserebitur.

Oratio obliqua.

Pellerentur igitur ineptiae illae; nonne viderent de libertate ipsorum, de vitis, eo die agi? Cur paucis centurionibus, paucioribus tribunis, qui invitis illis nihil facere possent, dicto audientes essent? quando remedia exposcere ausuros? maximi referre quid facerent. Expergiscerentur aliquando, et se sequerentur. Majorum quibus orti essent reminiscerentur. Eam occasionem si praetermisissent, merito servituros esse, nec quenquam vel rationem eorum habiturum fore, vel fortunae illius miseritum.

Caesar and Livy will furnish abundant instances for practice, and the learner should translate every "reported speech" in either, into English *oratio recta*.

Exercise 65.

A.

The following sentences are all to be converted into *oratio obliqua*; the tenses to be altered throughout from *primary* to *historic*. (See 177.) It may be well to begin by converting the sentences into *English oratio obliqua*.

1. Can any² one endure this? ought we to abandon this great undertaking? it would have been better to have fallen on the field with honour, than to submit to such slavery. 2. Do not delay then; a few soldiers will suffice; we have no other allies anywhere, no other hopes, whither can we turn if you think of abandoning us? but if you wish³ for our safety, you must away⁴ with all

¹ See 526, note.

³ See 240, Obs. 1.

² Use *ecquis*.

⁴ Use *pello*. (See 526. 2.)

niceties of argument ;¹ it is haste, not deliberation, that is needed. 3. What are you doing ? what are you wishing for ? are you waiting till the enemy is at hand, till you hear their shouts, till you see their standards ? Even now² resistance is possible, provided you do not linger or hesitate. 4. It is possible that I on my part³ have made the same mistake as you ; if the case is so, I pray, forget the past,⁴ and in union with your king consult the national interests. Is there any thing in the world which we ought to value more highly ? 5. What am I to do ? whither to turn ? do you bid me to go to meet the enemy ? I would do so most gladly, if it could be done without ruin to the nation. But what could be more foolish, what more fatal, than with⁵ an army of recruits to engage in conflict with veteran soldiers⁶ trained in twenty years of battle ?⁷ 6. How many of you are there ? whence do you come ? what do you demand or hope for ? when do you expect to⁸ be allowed to enjoy freedom, (and) to return home ? Possibly the time is even now at hand, provided you do not let slip the opportunity, or injure your cause by putting off the contest. But if you refuse to take up arms till⁹ I assist you, you will ruin the common cause, and sigh in vain for the¹⁰ freedom which brave men assert by arms.

B.

To be translated into *oratio obliqua* : a Spaniard speaks.

In vain therefore do you appeal to Spain ;¹¹ it makes no difference whether you intend to make an alliance with the rebels, or to threaten them with war. I shall neither rely on your friendship, nor do I dread your enmity. For what could be more despicable than your policy and schemes, seeing that within the last five years you

¹ Gerund.² See 518.³ See 355, *d*.⁴ "What is past."⁵ 270, note ².⁶ Sing.⁷ "Battles of twenty years." (See 303, *Obs.* 1.)⁸ *Fore ut*, etc. (193, iii.)⁹ *Prius* . . . *quam*. (443, i.)¹⁰ 348.¹¹ 319.

have thrice abandoned your allies, twice joined your enemies like¹ deserters, and have not now sent ambassadors to me to sue for a peace of which you are so unworthy, till² you had made sure that, unless with our³ aid you can get over this danger, you are doomed to infallible destruction? Would any one have put trust in such allies? would any one in the future feel gratitude to such friends? If you wish to find a remedy and shelter against⁴ your present⁵ dangers, return home; lay down your arms; throw open the gates of your cities and strongholds, place yourselves entirely at the mercy of the sovereign against whom you have been so long waging an unnatural war. Possibly I may be touched by your prayers; I shall pay no attention to your envoys and orations.

¹ *Velut.*

² 443, *Obs.*

³ Use for clearness the proper noun and abl. abs., "The Spaniards helping." (517, *Obs.* 2.)

⁴ See 300.

⁵ *Hic in oratio recta.* (337.)

EXERCISE LXVI.

NUMERALS.

Numerals form in Latin, as in English, a special class of **adjectives**; in certain cases, as in the plural of *mille* (*duo civium millia*, cf. hundreds, thousands), they have a **substantival** character, and they are all accompanied by appropriate **adverbs**.

Their two main classes are, as in English, **Cardinal** and **Ordinal**.

527. Cardinal (*cardo*, hinge), or primary, numerals answer the question "how many?" *quot*?

Unus, duo, tres, quattuor; undecim, duodecim, tredecim (*decem et tres*); *duodeviginti* (*decem et octo*), *undeviginti* (*decem et novem*); *viginti, unus et viginti* (*viginti unus*), *duodetriginta* (28), *quadraginta, nonaginta octo* (*octo et nonaginta*), *centum* (*et*) *unus* (101); *ducenti, -ae, -a, trecenti, -ae, -a, quadringenti, quingenti, ses-* (*sex*)-*centi, septingenti, octingenti, nongenti, mille* (substantive), *duo millia, unum et viginti millia, centum millia, quingenta millia, decies centena millia* (1,000,000).

The full list will be found in any Grammar; those enumerated are examples given for special reasons, the alternative forms are added in brackets.

528. The first three are (as in many kindred languages) declinable; the rest, including *viginti*, are indeclinable up to *ducenti, -ae, -a*: this, and the series of hundreds, are plural declinable adjectives; *mille* is indeclinable in the singular, *exercitus mille militum*, "an army of 1000," but declined in the plural (*cum duobus millibus*) as a **substantive**.

As in English so in Latin, from 20 to 100 a compound number may be arranged in two ways, "one-and-twenty" or "twenty-one;" above 100 the higher number stands first; 28,455 is, *duodetriginta millia quadringenti quinquaginta* (*et*) *quinque* (*et* is rarely expressed).

Unus.

529. The English numeral "one" gave rise to the indefinite article *an, a*, (not probably to the indefinite "one" in "one knows," etc.) The uses of *unus* in Latin are very different; thus (a) our "none" is *ne* "not" and *unus* "one," but *non unus* is the very opposite of *nullus*; it means "more than one;" *non uno praelio devictus sum*: "not one" is *ne unus quidem*, or even *nemo unus*. So (b) *unus* is a strong form of *solus*: *unus hoc fecisti*, "you are the only one who has done this." (c) It is used to strengthen *quisque, unus quisque*, each one, "each and every" (373), and (d) to emphasise **superlatives**: the Latin superlative often not retaining its full force (57, a). Thus *Ducem praestantissimum amisimus*, "we have lost one of our best leaders, or a distinguished leader," but *Ducem unum praestantissimum*, "we have lost the very best of our leaders." (e) It often, however, represents the English "one of" (a class) without any stress on the numeral: *unus ex captivis*, "one of the prisoners." (f) In the predicate it often answers to our "belonging to the class of:" *unus ex fortunatis hominibus esse videtur*, "he seems to be one of (i.e. to belong to the number of) fortune's favourites." (g) "One, two, three, several," is in Latin, *unus, alter, tertius, plures*. "One or two" is *unus vel (aut) alter, unus alterve*.

Ordinal Numerals.

530. These answer to the question "in what order?" *quotus?*

They are all *declinable adjectives*; only a few will be enumerated. *Primus* (prior); *secundus* or *alter*; *tertius* *decimus* (13th), *duodevicesimus* (*octavus decimus*) (18th), *unus* (*primus*) *et vicesimus* (21st), *alter* (*secundus*) *et tricesimus* (*tricesimus alter*) (32nd), *undetricesimus* (29th), *quadragessimus* (40th), *quintus et nonagesimus* (*nonagesimus quintus*) (95th), *centesimus primus* (*primus et centesimus*) (101st), *millesimus*, *bis millesimus* (2000th), *decies millesimus* (10,000th), *semel et vicies millesimus* (21,000th), etc.

531. Notice that (a), as in English, the two first **ordinals** are not derived from the corresponding **cardinals**; and that *alter*, as "other" in older English, is largely used for "second." *Secundus* is rather "following" next in time or in rank.

"*Alter idem*" is "a second self," *altero tanto*, "by as much again."

(b) *Unus* often takes the place of our "first" in enumerating.

Hujus rei tres sunt causae, una, altera (or alia), tertia; "first, second, third."

(c) The **ordinal** is often used in reckoning time.

Undevicesimum jam annum bellum gerebatur. The war had now gone on for 19 years. (See 321, *Obs.* 2.)

- (d) "After," "since," with an ordinal is expressed by *ab*.

Anno ab urbe condita millesimo. In the 1000th year (or the year 1000) after the foundation of the city. (See 323, a.)

- (e) The ordinal is always used in giving *dates*, as in the last example.

532. Another class is the **Distributives**, answering to the question "how many at a time?" *quoteni?* or "how many each?" "*by twos*," "*two each*." Among these are—

Singuli, bini, seni (6); *terni deni* (13); *viceni singuli* (21); *centeni, singula milia, centena milia*.

(a) *Ex singulis, or binis, familiis singulos, binos, ternos, obsides elegimus.* We selected *one, two, or three*, hostages from *each separate household, or each pair of households*.

(b) They are also used as **cardinal** numerals with names that have no singular, *uni, -ae, -a* taking the place of *singuli*.

In unis aedibus binae fuere nuptiae. There were *two* weddings in *one* house.

(c) For the special uses of *singuli* as opposed to *universi* and *singularis* (*imperium singulare* is used for "*a personal despotism*"), see 380.

Obs.—The distributive numerals are used with **multiplicatives**. (See below.)

533. The numeral **adverbs** are those that answer to the question "how often?" "how many times?" *quoties, (quotiens)?* Such are—

<i>Semel, bis, ter, sexies,</i>	<i>ter decies, vicies, bis et vicies, tricies, etc.</i>
Once, twice,	13 times. 20 times. 30 times.

(a) These are both adverbs of **time**, and also simple **multiplicatives**; cf. the English *six times, ten times*.

Sexies consul factus est. He was made consul *six times* (but *sexum, for the sixth time*).

Quinques tantum quam quantum licuit civitatibus imperavit.
He ordered the states to furnish *five times as much as* was legal.

(b) They are coupled with **distributives** in the multiplication table.

Bis bina sunt quatuor. Twice two is four.

(c) With *semel* as an adverb of **time**, *iterum* is used in place of *bis*. *Iterum* means not "again," but "for a second time;" *semel atque iterum* is not "once and again," in the sense of "frequently," but "once and even twice;" "once and again," "more than once," is *semel ac saepius*; "again and again," *saepissime*.

534. Ordinal adverbs of time are *primum, iterum, tertium*, etc.; these answer to the English "for the first, second, third, time," etc.

Iterum, quartum, Consul factus est. He was made Consul for the second or fourth time.

Tum primum justo praelio interfuit. That was the first occasion on which he took part in a regular engagement.

Obs.—"In the first place," "secondly," "lastly," is expressed in a narrative or argument, *primo* (-um), *deinde* (*deinceps*), *tum*, or *post*, *denique, postremo, ad extremum*; *denique* is often inserted in an emphatic and final clause.

535. Fractions are expressed thus:—(a) One-half, *dimidium* or *dimidia pars*. (b) Others, where the *numerator* is 1, by ordinals with *pars*: $\frac{1}{3}$, *tertia pars*, $\frac{1}{1000}$, *millesima pars*; "tithes," *decumae* (*sc. partes*). (c) $\frac{2}{3}$, *duae partes*; $\frac{3}{4}$, *tres partes*; $\frac{3}{5}$, *tres quintae* (*sc. partes*). (d) *Dimidio plures*, "half as many again;" *duplo plures*, "twice as many."

Dimidium exercitus quam quod, or quantum acceperat, reduxit. He brought back half the army which he had received.

536. The following are the common modes of expressing numbers.

(a) *Nostrorum*, or, *e nostris*, *decem, triginta, ducenti, ad mille ducenti* (1200, *ad* is here *adverbial* and governs no case), *tria millia quingenti* (3500) *interfecti sunt*.

(b) *Nostrorum*, sometimes *nostris* (the numeral being occasionally used in *apposition*), *duo millia caesa, or caesi* (*millia* being treated sometimes as masculine where men are concerned), *aut desiderati sunt* (were missing).

(c) *Milites praemisit ducentos viginti; pedites ad mille ducentos cum amplius¹ mille equitum praemisit, or peditum tria millia ducentos, etc.*

Obs.—Large indefinite numbers are expressed by sex-(ses)-centi, -a, -ae: *sexcenta alia*, "a hundred other things;" *millies mori praestat*, "twere better to die a thousand deaths;" *ne millesimam quidem partem intelligo*, "I don't understand a particle (of what he says)."

Exercise 66.

A.

1. In his ninety-second² year he was still³ able to answer those who⁴ asked his opinion. 2. I ask first

¹ Remember that with numbers *quam* is rarely expressed after *plus, amplius*, etc. (318, *Obs.*)

² Either *anno aetatis*, or as in 327.

³ "Still" need not be expressed.

⁴ Part. pres. (414.)

whence you come, secondly, whither you are going, thirdly, why you are armed, lastly, why you are in my house. 3. The generals met at the river side, each with an interpreter and ten soldiers. 4. One, two, three days had now passed, yet¹ no agreement had been come to as regards the conditions of peace. 5. In prosperity I thought your father one of Fortune's favourites, in these dark² days I see that he belongs, and always has belonged, to the class of great men.³ 6. He stayed at Milan, one of the richest and most populous of cities, one or two days; yet out of 100,000 citizens, not one thanked him for the preservation⁴ of the city and the repulse of the enemy from its walls, and perhaps⁵ not one single soul felt the gratitude which he owed. 7. There has been a disastrous⁶ battle; 2,500⁷ of our men have been slain; it is said that half as many again are taken prisoners, and that one or two⁸ of the four generals are missing. 8. We have lost an excellent man; if not the very best of his class, yet at all events one of those who come but once⁹ in a generation. 9. I have received two¹⁰ letters from you to-day, one yesterday; the rest I have looked for in vain; though I have waited for them one or two days, and sent to inquire,¹¹ not once,¹² but twice. 10. This is the nineteenth day from the commencement of the siege. The commander of the garrison is demanding two hostages from every¹³ household, to prevent¹⁴ any rising on the part of the townspeople, who are mostly¹⁵ armed, and who outnumber his troops by two to one.

¹ *Nec tamen quidquam.* (See 110.)

² Simply *tempora.*

³ Use *vir* with *summus.* (See 224, note ³.)

⁴ See 417, i.

⁵ Use *haud scio an.* (169.)

⁶ Impersonal, 218, *Obs.*

⁷ 536, a.

⁸ Ex, e. (296, *Obs.*)

⁹ 380, a.

¹⁰ 532, b.

¹¹ Supine of *sciscitari.* (402.)

¹² 533, c.

¹³ 532, a.

¹⁴ "That no (103) rising of . . . may take place."

¹⁵ Use *plerique* in app., often so used where *the whole* and *a part* are not contrasted. (297.)

Exercise 66.

B.

At the age of scarcely nineteen he had again and again taken part in regular engagements, and had more than once slain an enemy in single combat, and was now¹ on the point² of engaging an army half again as large as that which he³ commanded. Yet in the face of such a crisis, he did not hesitate to detach more than 1600 infantry to defend⁴ his allies against an irruption of the Indians, although two-thirds of his army consisted of recruits,⁵ who⁶ were now to fight their first battle. But he preferred to die a thousand⁷ deaths, rather than turn his back on a barbarian foe, who if once he won⁸ the day would, he well⁹ knew, afflict his country with every kind of wrong.

¹ 328, *b*.² 418, *d*.³ 355, *Obs.* 1.⁴ "To repel (gerundive) from his allies."⁵ *Tiro miles*, sing. (223.)⁶ Part. in *-rus*. (406.)⁷ 536, *Obs*.⁸ Mood and tense? (471, *Obs*.)⁹ 32, *b*.

EXERCISE LXVII.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

537. The Roman months consisted (after the reform of the Calendar by Julius Caesar) of the same number of days as the English months; but the days were numbered quite differently.

538. The *first* day of the month was called *Kalendas* (the **Kalends**); the **Nones** (*Nonae*) fell on the *fifth* or *seventh*; the **Ides** (*Id-us, -uum, f.*) were always eight days after the **Nones**, that is, the *thirteenth* or *fifteenth*.

“In March, July, October, May,

The **Nones** were on the seventh day.”

(The **Ides** therefore on the 15th.)

To these names of days, the names of the month were attached as *adjectives*:¹ *ad Kalendas* *Maias*, “*by the 1st of May*” (326); *In Nonas* *Junias*, “*for the 5th of June*”; *Idus* *Martiae*, “*the 15th of March*.”

539. From these three fixed points the other days of the month were reckoned *backwards*, and *inclusively*, *i.e.* both days were counted in.

Days between the **Kalends** and the **Nones** were reckoned by their distance from the **Nones**; those between the **Nones** and the **Ides** by their distance from the **Ides**; those after the **Ides** by their distance from the **Kalends** of the *following month*.

To suit this Roman way of reckoning, we must subtract the given day from the *number of the day* on which the **Nones** or **Ides** fall *increased by one*. If the day be one

¹ These forms are, *Januarius, Februarius, Martius, Aprilis, Maius, Junius, Quintilis (or Julius), Sextilis (or Augustus), Septem-, Octo-, Novem-, Decem-, bris.*

The months of July and August were called *Quintilis, Sextilis*, respectively (=the *fifth* and *sixth* month, reckoning from *March*, the old beginning of the year), till those names were exchanged for *Julius* and *Augustus* in honour of the two first Caesars.

before the Kalends, we must subtract from *the last day* of the month *increased by two*, as the Kalends fall within the next month.

Thus take the 3rd, 9th, 23rd of June:—

(1) In June the Nones are on the *fifth*; therefore three must be subtracted from $(5+1=)$ *six*; and the remainder being 3, the day is “the *third* day before the *Nones* of June.”

(2) In June the Nones being on the fifth, the Ides are on the *thirteenth*, and the subtraction must be from *fourteen*. Hence subtract 9 from 14; the remainder being 5, the day is the *fifth* day before the Ides of June.

(3) Since June has *thirty* days, we must subtract from thirty-two. Hence subtract 23 from 32; the remainder being 9, the day is the *ninth* day before the *Kalends* of July.

So December 30th is not the *second*, but the *third* day before the Kalends of January.

540. The names for days are thus expressed in Latin.

“On the third before the Kalends of March” is by rule “*die tertio ante Kalendas Martias*,” which was shortened by the omission of *die* and *ante* into “*tertio Kalendas Martias*,” or *iii. Kal. Mart.*

But another form is used (almost exclusively) by *Cicero* and *Livy*; this form is “*ante diem tertium Kalendas Martias*,” shortened into “*a. d. iii.¹ Kal. Mart.*”

This *ante-diem* came to be treated as an indeclinable substantive, and the prepositions *ad*, *in*, *ex* were prefixed to it, as to other substantives of time.

The last day of the month is *pridie Kalendarum* or *pridie Kalendas*.

The following are examples.

1. *Natus est Augustus ix. Kal. Oct. (nono Kalendas Octobres), i.e. on the 23rd of September.*
2. *Kalendis Augustis natus est Claudius, iii. Id. Oct. (tertio Idus Octobres) excessit. (1st of August and October 13th.)*
3. *Meministi me a. d. xii. Kal. Nov. sententiam dicere in Senatu?*
Do you remember my speaking in the Senate on the 21st of October?

¹ For an explanation of this form see ROBY, *L. G.* vol. i. p. 454.

4. *Quattuor dierum supplicatio indicta est ex a. d. v. Id. Oct.*
A four days' public thanksgiving has been proclaimed from the 11th of October.
5. *Consul comitia in a. d. iii. Non. Sext. edixit.* The Consul fixed the 3rd of August for the elections.
6. *In ante dies octavum et septimum Kalendas Octobres comitiis dicta dies.* The date fixed for the elections is the 24th and 25th of September.

Exercise 67.

1. We have been looking for you day¹ after day from the third of March to the tenth of April: your father and I² begin to fear that something has happened amiss.

2. Your father parted from us at³ Rhodes on the 14th of July: he seemed to be suffering seriously both from sea-sickness and home-sickness; we have not⁴ yet received any letter from him, but we hope that he will reach home safe and sound by⁵ the twelfth of August. The day after⁶ he left us we heard that he ought⁷ to have started three days earlier⁸ if he wished⁹ to be at home in good time.

3. You promised six months ago to stay in my house¹⁰ from the 3rd to the 21st of April. I hope that you will do your utmost to keep your word; you have been looked for now these ten¹¹ days.

4. Instead¹² of keeping his word by starting to his father at Rome on the last day of August, he preferred to linger in the fair city¹³ of Naples for over twenty days. He scarcely reached home by the 25th of September: a circumstance¹⁴ of which, as¹⁵ it was fatal also to his own prospects and his father's good name, he repented, I believe, from that day¹⁶ to the latest day of his life.

¹ 328, c.² See 26, note.³ See 315.⁴ *Nullus adhuc.* (See 328, d.)⁵ *Ad.* (326.)⁶ 323, b.⁷ Gerund. (388.)⁸ *Ante* with abl. (322, a.)⁹ Mood? (444.)¹⁰ 316, iii.¹¹ 321, Obs. 2.¹² 431, Obs.¹³ 317.¹⁴ *Quae res.* (67.)¹⁵ *Quum.* (430.)¹⁶ 326.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES.

541. The following Supplementary Exercises are added, partly for the purpose of enlarging the range of practice in applying the rules and remarks contained in the earlier portion of the book, partly also with a view of introducing a few specimens of continuous passages adapted to at least the standard of an ordinary Entrance or "Pass" Examination at the Universities or elsewhere.

The last Exercise (No. 15) is recapitulatory, and consists of a hundred short sentences bearing mainly on the same portion of the work (Exercises i.-xxiii.). Reference here and in other Exercises is frequently made to later sections. The sentences, though necessarily limited in their range, will be found to illustrate a large number of the most fundamental points of difference between the Latin and English languages.

Obs.—In attempting any more continuous passage it should be borne in mind that the connexion in thought between each fresh sentence and that which precedes it is much oftener indicated by some word or phrase in Latin than it is in English. Hence in writing Latin we must often insert some **co-ordinating conjunction** (Intr. 56), answering to "moreover," "but," "for," "therefore," etc., which is wanting in the English, or change "**not**" into "**nor**," or the **demonstrative** into the **relative**. (See 78.)

No. 1.

To follow Exercises 1 and 2.

1. Not even¹ the vilest of mankind would have envied his own father. 2. Yesterday he returned from Naples, to-morrow he is to² set out from Italy to Spain. 3. No one in the world is more secure against³ violence, for no one⁴ ever consulted to such⁵ a degree the interests of the country. 4. Having obtained the throne by violence, he yet became before long⁶ most dear to the whole nation, for no one ever less consulted his own interests. 5. On the fourth day after his father's death he ascended the throne, on the fifth he was saluted Emperor by the soldiers, on the sixth, having led his army into the enemies' country, he was wounded by his own sword while he was mounting⁷ his horse. 6. No one was ever more famous, and no one ever attained to higher (*greater*) rank, or acquired such (87) wealth; yet he was dear to few, hated by many, and no one ever did his country greater harm. 7. You are obeyed by no one, yet your father was the ruler⁸ of a mighty nation. 8. That⁹ deed of yours will never be pardoned by your countrymen.

¹ Intr. 99.⁴ *neque enim quisquam* (see 110); *non* is but rarely used before *enim*.⁵ *tantum*, adv.⁸ *impero*, -are. See 25.² Fut. in -*rus*. 14, c.⁶ = "soon."⁹ *iste*. 11, d.³ *q*, ab.⁷ Tense? See 180.

No. 2.

To follow Exercise 3.

1. For three days¹ we waited for you (*pl.*) and hoped in vain for your arrival: on the fourth day the Indians, who were blockading our camp, dispersed and² took their departure; a³ circumstance which gave us freedom from long-continued fear and anxiety. 2. You (*pl.*) crave for freedom, and are going⁴ to fight for⁵ your native land, for your altars and hearths; these (men) pray for peace, and are afraid of the hardships and toils of war. You I honour, them⁶ I despise. 3. Your riches increase daily, but they neither increase your leisure, nor bring you (243) either happiness or peace of mind. 4. Your native land, which was once the ruler of many nations, is now most cruelly oppressed by the vilest enemy, whom lately she both despised and hated. 5. I am waiting here in vain for the arrival of the soldiers whom I sent for yesterday, the enemies' forces are increasing daily, and we shall soon despair of peace. 6. By a bloody and long-continued war we have freed our country, and repelled from our walls a haughty foe; we now pray for peace. 7. Having⁷ advanced into the thick⁸ of the battle he received a mortal wound; while⁹ dying, he foretold the ruin of his nation and the triumph of the enemy.

¹ 9, a.⁵ *pro*. See 6.² 15.⁶ *ille*. 11, d.³ See 67.⁷ 14, a.⁹ See 406, note 2.⁴ 14, c.⁸ "midst of." See 60.

No. 3.

To follow Exercise 4.

1. Both your brother and you were at that time in exile; my father and I were at home, exposed to the fury and cruelty of our deadliest¹ enemies. We had provoked no one either by words or acts, yet we endured much, and long and sorely² sighed in vain for freedom and safety; now you and I are secure and free from care, and no³ one will any longer⁴ inflict on us injury or wrong. 2. Freed from the barbarous tyranny of an alien race, we have spared those⁵ who had most cruelly oppressed our country, (and) we have pardoned those who in the face⁶ of national ruin had neglected⁷ the welfare of the nation, and were consulting merely their own interests; but neither you nor I will any longer⁸ consent to forgive the offences of these⁹ men, or to listen to those who, having obtained rank and riches by the vilest arts, are now urging upon us a dishonourable peace.

1 55. 2 *multum diuque*.
5 *is*. 70. 6 *in* (abl.). 273, Obs.
8 *diutius*. See 328, a.

3 110. 4 *jam*. See 328, a.
7 Abl. abs. 14, b.
9 *iste*, contemptuous. See 338, Obs. 2.

No. 4.

To follow Exercises 5 and 6.

1. You and I were, he replied, in the country with¹ your brother, but would return to Naples on the first² of August; I believe that he made³ a great mistake, and that⁴ not designedly but by pure⁵ accident, for I do not imagine that he would have endeavoured to deceive a friend and guest; but we shall, it is plain, be looked for in vain both by your father and my relations. 2. He ascertained that the weather had changed,⁶ and that the crowd, which had gathered together in the morning, would soon disperse; he hoped therefore before night to be able to leave his house, and reach our camp in safety; having arrived there⁷ he wished to have an interview with Caesar, whom he had long been pretending to wish to join, and from whom he was anxious to obtain⁸ safety and assistance. For he hoped by his⁹ aid to attain to the highest rank and office in his⁹ own nation.

1 *i.e.* "in the house of," *apud*. 331, 4 a.
3 Use *multum* or *vehementer* with a verb. 25.
5 Use two adverbs with *ac*. See Vocab.
7 "Whither when he had arrived." 14, a.
9 See 11, d and e; "aid" is *opera*.

2 *Kalendis Sextilibus*. See 538.
4 *neque id*. Cf. 344.
6 Abl. abs. 14 and 15.
8 *i.e.* "by asking." See Vocab.

No. 5.

To follow Exercise 7.

1. News was now brought to me that my brother, having been struck by a javelin, and exhausted by many¹ serious wounds, was no longer able either to keep² the saddle, or lead his men³ against the enemy. Having⁴ heard this, I was much affected, for I could neither hurry to him as⁵ I wished to do, nor did I hope that he would be able any longer to keep the enemy in check. It seemed moreover, that the soldiers who were with⁶ me were losing heart, and it was said that the enemy was expecting large reinforcements before night, and would soon take the aggressive. I resolved therefore to try to finish the matter by a single charge. 2. Your brother was, he said, a man of⁷ a kindly heart, and abounded⁸ in wealth and resources, and he was sure that he would never desert his friends, nor wish such a blow to be inflicted on his own relations. 3. It seems that he had resolved to become consul in that year, but that he pretended to be craving for repose and quiet. 4. He was unwilling, he replied, to despair, but would rather be in exile than be a slave.

¹ See below, 56.
⁵ 67.

² *in equo haerere*.
⁶ 8, *Obs.*

³ *sui*.
⁷ *Abl.* 271.

⁴ *Intr.* 58.
⁸ *circumfuso*. 234.

No. 6.

To follow Exercises 7 and 8.

1. He talked very little about the past ; about the future his hopes were high, but he perceived that he was at variance on this question¹ with many excellent men, and he preferred being² silent to disagreeing² with these, and agreeing² with his own enemies, and his country's foes ; neither you nor I can think that he was mistaken, for we know that his good sense, honesty, and courage were worthy of all praise. 2. He promised to send me³ a letter on the 15th of March,⁴ and made many other fine pretences,⁵ but he has neither kept his promises, nor does he any longer venture to make a secret of having purposely broken his word. 3. He threatens, they say, to take from me all the distinctions which I have obtained from the Senate and people of Rome ; for myself,⁶ I hardly think he will succeed in this⁷ design. 4. He would rather, he replied, obey the most unjust laws, than be at variance with true patriots, and disagree with every sensible⁸ man. 5. We scarcely dare to hope that your brother will return to Rome and imitate the noble acts of his forefathers, but all his contemporaries can guarantee that he will never desert his friends, or break his word, or join the enemies of his native land.

¹ *in hac causa*, lit. "in this suit."

³ *ad me*. See 6.

⁶ *ego* or *equidem*, 11, a.

⁸ Superlative with *quisque*. 375.

² Infinitive in each case. See 94, and 42.

⁴ See 538.

⁷ *qui* (see *Intr.* 58), early in the clause.

⁵ See 54.

No. 7.

To follow Exercise 9.

1. You (*pl.*) have come here¹ manifestly with reluctance, and you say that you will not² wait any longer for the arrival of your friends, who will, you think,³ be far from⁴ secure in our camp. For myself, I have promised you again and again to say nothing about the past, and I have resolved both to pardon you, and to spare them. But you apparently expect that in the hour of triumph, I shall break my word, and act⁵ towards⁶ you and them with the height of treachery. I know that you can scarcely believe that I am speaking the truth, and that you are silently despairing both of your own and your children's safety. What falsehood⁷ have I ever told? When have I ever broken my word? 2. It is said that the king himself was the only one of⁸ the whole of his army to ride in safety past the fatal marsh (*pl.*), and the first to reach the foot of the mountains, whence on the next day he mournfully and reluctantly led back his troops and never⁹ again ventured to form such high hopes or embark¹⁰ on such great enterprises. It seemed that as¹¹ he had been the first to hope for the best,¹² so he was the first to abandon his undertaking; he preferred to appear fickle and cowardly rather than to bring ruin and destruction on his country.

¹ Why not *hic? huc* after verbs of motion.² 33.³ 32, *b.*⁴ *parum*, "but little."⁵ *utor*, "employ treachery" (with *abl.*).⁶ *in vobis*, "in your case."⁷ See 54.⁸ *e, ex*, "out of."⁹ *nec unquam postea*. Never join *et* with *nunquam*, or any negative word. 110.¹⁰ Metaphor. Use *moliri*, and see 54.¹¹ *sicut . . . ita*, or *et . . . et*. ¹² Neut. *pl.*

No. 8.

To follow Exercises 10 and 11.

1. As¹ I was making my way through the lowest part of the valley, I fell unawares into an ambush of brigands. My captors² had, it seemed, been long expecting my arrival, and having seized³ and made³ me fast with chains, and dragged me from the road⁴ into the neighbouring forest, they again and again threatened me with (247) torture and death. At last, when I promised to send a large amount⁵ of gold within four days, my chains⁶ were struck off and I was set at liberty, and in company⁷ with two armed guards, returned to the place⁸ whence I had set out. 2. He had now, he said, ceased to hope for much, for he had lost (he said) the best friends he had,⁹ and was going to live with men who had always been his deadly enemies, by whom he had been both accused and condemned in his absence, and who had reluctantly spared his life. 3. Your accusers¹⁰ will, I expect, reach the city to-morrow; I hope that you will be (193, *iv.*) unanimously acquitted. 4. You¹¹ who once set at nought bodily pain (*pl.*), are now apparently dismayed by it. It is¹² with reluctance that I say this of (*de*) the son of so great a man. 5. You obviously treat lightly the affairs of others; I hope that you will value highly the good opinion of your countrymen.

¹ *dum* with pres. See 180.² 76.³ Acc. of participle pass. 15.⁴ *de via*.⁵ *pondus*, *n.*⁶ *Abl. abs.*⁷ 8, *b.*⁸ *eo, unde*. See 89.⁹ Mood? See 77.¹⁰ 14, *c.* Not *accusator*. See 76.¹¹ See 75.¹² See 82.

No. 9.

To follow Exercises 12 and 13.

1. It is generally¹ agreed among historians that this king, trained by toil (*pl.*) and accustomed to bear with patience the frowns² of fortune, showed³ in the midst of disaster (*pl.*) and ruin the same character as in prosperity. As he had been the first to help his country in its hour⁴ of distress, so he was the last to despair of it (when) conquered and down-trodden. But he preferred being an exile in his old age to living in safety at home, and obeying one whom the rest of the world, almost without exception, believed to be likely to keep his word. 2. There is all the difference between returning thanks and showing gratitude. As I was the last to believe that you would have set at nought honour, honesty, and the good opinion of your countrymen, so to-day I refuse to think that you have proved⁵ to be of such a character as the rest of the world represent⁷ you to be ; and it is with reluctance that I yield to those who deny that you are the same man as I once fancied you to be.

¹ *satis* or *ferè*.³ See 241.⁵ See 14, c.⁶ Use *existo*. See 241.² Metaphor, "adverse fortune."⁴ Simply part. pres. of *laboro*, -*are*.⁷ "assert."

No. 10.

To follow Exercises 14 and 15.

On the next day the king, to avoid wearying by a long march his soldiers (who were) exhausted with a long and indecisive battle, kept his men within their lines. Meantime the enemy having sent for reinforcements were waiting for an attack (on the part) of our men, so that they seemed by no means desirous of fighting. After noon-day the king, seeing¹ that the strength and spirits of his men were now so much restored, that they were likely to shrink from no danger, and stood (up) prepared for fighting,² threw open³ two gates, and having made a sudden⁴ sally surprised the enemy (who were taken) unawares and looking for nothing of the⁵ kind. Great numbers they surround⁶ and slay, and so great was the slaughter that out of (*ex*) more than⁷ 3000 soldiers scarcely 500 escaped unwounded, and that, had⁸ not night interposed, not even these would have survived. So (entirely) in short did fortune change (sides), that those who quite lately⁹ were on the point of winning the day, were now stealing away and praying for night and darkness, and those who but lately¹⁰ were despairing of their safety, and looking for death or slavery, were exulting in victory and freedom.

¹ See 412.⁶ 14, c.² 99.⁷ 318, *Obs.*³ Abl. abs.⁸ *nisi* with pl.-perf. subj.⁴ Use adverb.⁹ *paulo ante*.⁵ 87.¹⁰ *modo*.

No. 11.

To follow Exercise 16.

Thereupon, he sent¹ for their chief men, and exhorted them not to be disheartened on account of such a serious disaster. He had warned them, he said,² that the enemy was at hand, but it had been impossible to persuade them not to put faith in idle rumours and fictitious messages. The Indians earnestly implored him to forgive them³ for this great error; they succeeded at last by their prayers or tears in persuading him that they would never again⁴ allow themselves to be so easily overreached and entrapped (*caught*). While⁵ they were thus⁶ conversing, it happened that a⁷ prisoner was brought to Cortes, who professed to be one⁸ of the king's⁹ bodyguard. The general ordered his¹⁰ fetters to be struck off and himself to be set at liberty, and sent him back with a letter to the king. He did this with the intention of appearing to be anxious for a truce; but so far was he from wishing for anything¹¹ of the kind that he was ready to reject any¹² conditions, and preferred to put the fortune of war a second time to the test (rather) than to accept from the king even the most honourable peace.

¹ Acc. part. pass. 15.² Avoid parenthesis. 32.³ Pronoun? See 353, ii. and 247.⁴ *postea*.⁵ *dum*: tense? 150.⁶ *haec*.⁷ *quidam*. 361.⁸ *unus e.* See 529, e.⁹ Adj. 58.¹⁰ Relative. 78.¹¹ *quisquam*. 358.¹² 359.

No. 12.

To follow Exercises 17 and 18.

I am afraid that this letter will not reach you across the enemies' lines. We have now been¹ invested here for a whole month, and² I cannot help beginning to despair of the whole state³ of affairs. The numbers⁴ of the enemy are such as we had never dreamed of,⁵ and as⁶ all the roads are closed, no supplies can be brought up; scarcely any letters reach us, so that it is impossible to doubt that we are involved in very serious danger. Do you therefore not hesitate to write to the general to hasten to bring us assistance, and do not allow yourself to think that I am writing thus with the intention of calling⁷ him away from his great designs and bringing him here for the sake of our safety. I fear that the enemy (if once) victorious here, will soon become formidable to him also, and I do not think that we can be crushed without⁸ drawing others into the same ruin.

¹ Tense? 181.² *neque*, etc.; cf. 110.³ *summa res*.⁴ *multitudo* (sing.).⁵ Metaphor, "fancied would come together."⁶ Abl. abs. 420.⁷ Part. pass. 15.⁸ See 111.

No. 13.

To follow Exercises 19 and 20.

Are we to say that Caesar was foully¹ murdered or that he was rightfully² slain? That either one³ or the other is true is most certain. Do you (*sing.*) then choose whichever⁴ you like; but do not say now this, now that, and⁵ do not to-day look on Brutus as a patriot, to-morrow as an assassin. Did Caesar pay the penalty of his crimes? You answer "No;" then let his slayers be either banished or put⁶ to death as traitors. Or⁷ did Brutus speak the truth,⁸ when (while) raising aloft the bloody dagger, he exclaimed that the nation's freedom was recovered? "Yes," you reply. Then why do you heap abuse on one to whom alone⁹ you are indebted for your freedom? Or⁷ do you think that what Brutus did was in¹⁰ itself right and a benefit¹¹ to the nation, but that he himself acted criminally, and should be punished¹² with banishment, or imprisonment, or death? For myself I decline to meddle with so nice¹³ a question; I leave it to philosophers (146).

¹ "criminally."² "*jure caesus*," a legal phrase answering to our "justifiable homicide."³ *hic, ille*. See 340, ii.⁴ *utervis*. 379.⁵ 145.⁶ "He is put to death, etc.," *more majorum in eum animadvertitur*, a euphemism for scourging and beheading.⁷ *An.* 161.⁸ *tum . . . quum*. 433, a.⁹ *unus*. 529, b.¹⁰ *per se*.¹¹ *Use utilis*, avoid *beneficium* in this sense.¹² Gerundive of *multo*, -are, with abl.¹³ *subtilis*, or *difficilis*.

No. 14.

To follow Exercises 21 and 22.

The king summoned his staff and set before them the nature and extent of the danger, the numbers of the enemy, the magnitude of their resources, their aims,¹ designs,¹ and hopes. For my part, said he, I will utter my real sentiments and will not hide the fact² that I have no doubt that both all (of) you and I myself are to-day involved in the greatest danger. I know that it is difficult to say³ whether the reinforcements which we look for will ever reach us, or whether we shall perish first⁴ overwhelmed by the weapons of this enormous⁵ host. But whether we are⁶ to live or die, I venture to feel sure of this at least, that no one of us will allow himself to think it a light⁷ matter, whether our countrymen are to be grateful to us in our graves⁸ or to scorn us in our lives; so that we shall only deliberate on one single question, by what⁹ course of action or of endurance we shall best serve our common country. Possibly we can consult our own safety by remaining here, sheltered and preserved by these walls; and perhaps this¹⁰ is the safer plan; but it sometimes happens that the most daring¹¹ course is the safest; and I hope to persuade you that it will so turn out to-day.

¹ 174. Use the verbs *peto*, and *molior*, -*iri*.² *illud*. 341.³ *Supine* in -*u*. 404.⁴ *prius*.⁵ Simply *tantus*. 83.⁶ *Fut.* in -*rus*.⁷ *parvi facere*. 305, i.⁸ Metaphor, use *mortuus*. 61.⁹ "By doing what, enduring what." 336.¹⁰ Relative.¹¹ See 375, note 1.

No. 15.

The following Exercise is mainly recapitulatory ; it, or any part of it, may follow Sections 1-194.

1. The whole world knows why you are envied. 2. He asked if you had ever spared a single enemy. 3. He hoped, he said, that the matter would turn out contrary to his expectations.¹ 4. Have you not come from the same place² as I? 5. He was the first to reach the summit of the mountain, the last to descend. 6. He was revolving many thoughts in silence. 7. He said that he was no longer³ such as he had once been. 8. There had been, he replied, as many opinions as there were men standing by. 9. It seems that you were the first within human memory to venture on this enterprise. 10. Having promised to settle these matters, he held his peace. 11. In my youth I travelled over many lands and seas, in my old age I remain at home. 12. He came home with a weapon intending⁴ to kill your father; fortunately⁵ no one was at home. 13. It seemed that he was returning thanks unwillingly; but it is most certain that he feels grateful. 14. All the world knows that you are under an obligation to me, no one believes that you will show gratitude. 15. I who was once your advocate am to-day your accuser. 16. So alarmed was he by the shouts of the bystanders that he could scarcely answer his questioners.⁶ 17. Both you and I have lost an excellent friend, whom we are never likely to see again in this world. 18. Neither you nor I are likely to believe that the world was made by chance. 19. I know not whether you wish to be a friend⁷ to me or an enemy. 20. I did this with the intention of pleasing you; I earnestly beg you therefore not to be angry. 21. He wrote me word⁸ not to leave the city; I happened by chance to have⁹ already set out. 22. I know not whether I am likely to deter him from¹⁰ injuring his friends. 23. I fear that we have lost the city; it remains to see if we can retake it. 24. Three months¹¹ ago the city¹² of Veii was invested by the troops of Rome; it has now been (181) long blockaded, it will soon be assaulted, and there is danger,¹³ they say, of its being stormed. 25. The weather was now changing, and the sailors were dreading the violence of the winds. 26. I have silently resolved to be at leisure to-morrow, but perhaps this is¹⁴ impossible. 27. I asked him first (534, *Obs.*) if he had committed that monstrous crime; he answered "Yes;" secondly, why he had acted so; next, when; lastly, with what weapon. 28. He turned to his companions¹⁵ and asked them when they intended to return home. 29. That your friend is fortunate is indisputable; I

¹ See 91. Mood, 77, *Obs.*⁴ 14, c.⁷ 46, d.¹⁰ 137, il.¹³ 138.² 89.⁵ 64.⁸ 122, c.¹¹ 324.¹⁴ 169.³ *jam.* 328, a.⁶ 73.⁹ 123.¹² 222.¹⁵ 349, *Obs.*

entirely disagree with those who say that he is happy; happiness¹ is one thing, prosperity another. 30. Having started with his followers the next day, he fell unawares into an ambush; most fortunately² I came to his assistance, and attacked the enemy from³ behind. 31. Both he and you, it is plain, were persuaded to believe men who were deceiving you. 32. I fear that in his old age he no longer has the same views as in his youth. 33. You ask me if⁴ he is of the same character as his brother, I unwillingly answer "No."⁵ 34. I earnestly implored him to warn his father not to put confidence in that man. 35. Perceiving (*quum*, 412) that he was unwilling to trust me, I ceased to urge him to go with me. 36. Be sure you come to me at Rome (315) that we may both⁶ have an interview with Caesar. 37. So cowardly and mean-spirited was he, that I think I have never seen any one like him.⁷ 38. I have stayed here so long that I begin to believe I shall never go away. 39. So dear was he to his friends that they never ceased to sigh for him in his absence, to admire him when present. 40. What was I to do? whither to turn? I could have wished you had stood by me; but both my friends and you were absent. 41. It would be tedious to tell all this⁸ story, but I cannot help praising one of (*ex*) his exploits. 42. Do not believe, judges, that I am of the character⁹ which this man attributes¹⁰ to me. 43. It is of great consequence whether (166) you inflict punishment on men who deserve punishment, or on the innocent. 44. Whether you have devoted me to death or¹¹ not, I know not, nor does it matter much. 45. Do you not perceive that it is absolutely impossible for the privileges and liberty of the nation to be outraged by you with impunity. 46. I asked him if he wished to make me responsible for a brother's¹² crime. He answered in the affirmative. 47. He asked if I was willing to aid men¹³ who were aiming at giving freedom to their oppressed and down-trodden country. 48. A (*is*) massacre followed, the like of which I had never seen; of such an extent and character that I can hardly dare to recall to mind the scene.¹⁴ 49. I have spoken thus with the intention of persuading him to pardon you; whether he will do so or not is uncertain. 50. He succeeded¹⁵ in persuading the king to forgive¹⁶ him this great error. 51. It has repeatedly fallen to my lot to be suspected of many crimes; I have never before been condemned in my absence and unheard. 52. Possibly your countrymen, freed from an alien despotism, are going to offer you the supreme power; what they doubt is (341) whether you will accept it. 53. He said that he had never taken any part¹⁷ in politics, or made it his aim (118) to attain to any distinctions, or to acquire rank or riches. 54. You are, I see, victorious and most fortunate; that you enjoy happiness I do not allow. 55. I might have¹⁸ said

1 98, a, b.

4 167.

7 255.

10 "pretends (*fingit*) that I am."

13 "(one) like which." 255.

16 125, j.

17 Use either *versari in republica* or *republicam attingere*.

2 64.

5 162.

8 54.

11 168, Obs.

14 "The things which I saw." 176.

16 247.

3 61.

6 *ambo*. 378, i.

9 *talis*. 84.

12 Adj. 58.

15 176.

18 196, b.

much more on (*de*) the vileness of these men ; but I do not wish to be either tedious or burdensome to you. 56. More than once (533, c) he took advantage of my gentleness and clemency ; in my absence, he loaded me with abuse and insults. 57. I fear that our soldiers have been incapable of sustaining the onset of such¹ a well-trained host. 58. Thrice with his army of recruits² he advanced against the enemy ; thrice he retreated ; at last his soldiers dispersed, and fled in opposite directions. 59. He was at last persuaded to spare the innocent (*pl.*) and unarmed ; but he long refused to do so. 60. As a young man, he attained to the height of fame, in his old age he was undeservedly disgraced. 61. Overreached and deceived by men³ who pretended to be his friends, he could no longer put confidence in those who wished his interest consulted (240, *Obs.* 1). 62. It is almost incredible how seldom it has been my lot to see so famous a person. 63. Do not object⁴ to be free. Let cowards act so, and those who dread death. 64. The manner⁵ of his death I have never heard, all the world knows that he is dead. 65. Having returned home in his old age, he became dear to many excellent members of the state. 66. So far from hating him, I am anxious to defend him against⁶ his deadliest enemies. 67. I could never see your brother without⁷ calling to mind his dead father's countenance. 68. I cannot help wondering at the reason⁸ of your having come here. 69. He swore (37) to confess to no one the motive⁹ of his having told these falsehoods. 70. It is almost incredible how often he has been warned against⁹ doing anything of this kind (87). 71. I was so foolish as to be almost persuaded (5) to turn back¹⁰ to the place from whence (89) I had set out. 72. No one in the world (16, b) could have spoken with more prudence,¹¹ or more candour. 73. What you have done is possibly (64) in accordance¹² with law, I greatly doubt¹³ whether it is constitutional.¹⁴ 74. Do you think that such a man as this¹⁵ can be restrained from¹⁶ using violence ? 75. I know that this is right and honourable, whether it is expedient or no I leave¹⁷ to wiser men to decide. 76. You pretend to be a citizen of Rome ; for myself I cannot help¹⁸ suspecting that you are not only a foreigner, but one of the soldiers of Carthage. 77. It is impossible to doubt (200, *Obs.*) that he has injured the nation ; whether he has done this accidentally or designedly, I leave to himself to decide. 78. I was the last to perceive what you were aiming at ; I shall be the first to oppose you in that aim¹⁹ (415). 79. He bade the soldiers drag their own (356, i.) general to execution ; reluctantly and mournfully they obeyed his orders (415, a). 80. Do you go to meet the enemy in front (61), I will charge him from behind, and off his guard. 81. The whole world knows now-a-days that the earth moves round the sun ; it is (82) into the nature,²⁰ properties, and

¹ 88.⁴ *recuso* with inf. 136.⁷ 132, b.¹⁰ *revertor*, "I turn back," return without completing my intended journey.¹¹ Adv. 64.¹⁴ 332, 4.¹⁷ 146.²⁰ See 179. Use *quid*, *quale*, etc.² See 223.⁵ 174, c.⁸ 174, a.¹² 331, 21.¹⁵ 87.¹⁸ 137, j.³ 72.⁶ *ab.*⁹ 118.¹³ *vehementer*.¹⁶ 131.¹⁹ "aiming at that." 415.

magnitude of the sun that philosophers are inquiring. 82. I never feared that you were not (138) going to consult my interest; the real¹ danger was that fortune would change. 83. So changed was your brother's face and features that I hardly knew that he was the same person that I knew in my youth. 84. To-morrow we are to fight; be sure to (141) take part in the contest, if you can (190, ii.). 85. What was I to do (150)? what to say? whither to turn? no one was coming to my aid; it seemed that the whole world thought me out of my mind. 86. He was unanimously (59) acquitted, but at the same time (366, ii.) universally condemned. 87. Your father refused to leave his own house; would he had been here (152) to-day. 88. The weather, I fancy, will change to-morrow; be sure, therefore, to cross the channel to-day. 89. Let us no longer obey a master of this kind, it would be better to die a thousand² deaths than endure such disgrace. 90. The whole of the city echoed with voices of weeping³ and mourning; you would have thought⁴ that there was no one but had lost a parent or children. 91. So earnestly did he implore me to spare the unarmed that I could no longer withstand his entreaties.⁵ 92. Having communicated⁶ this matter to me, he warned me to be on my guard⁷ against an⁸ enemy of my brother. 93. To this advice⁶ of his I replied that I had no fears for myself, but was anxious to provide⁷ for the safety of my friends. 94. I have been informed, said he, by⁹ my scouts that you have long been (181) supplying¹⁰ the enemy with corn. 95. It seems that you are threatening¹⁰ us with imprisonment and death; perhaps¹¹ it would have been better (153) to provide for your own safety. 96. It is said that he intrusted¹⁰ you with the whole of this matter; perhaps he relied¹² on you too much. 97. Three days¹³ ago, I asked when you were to come here; it seemed that no one knew. 98. Your father happened¹⁴ that day to be absent; he hoped to return within a¹⁵ week. 99. In the study of nature your son has made great progress; in everything that relates to literature I incline to think that many of his contemporaries have outstripped him. 100. It is uncertain whether at that¹⁶ time he preferred to be a politician or a student (175).

¹ 341.⁴ 149, ii.⁷ 248 (for this and next sentence).⁹ *Per.* 267, *Obs.*¹² 244, c.¹⁵ "the seventh day." 325.² 536, *Obs.*⁵ 415.¹⁰ 247.¹³ 324.³ 415, b.⁶ 253, iv.⁸ 361.¹¹ *haud scio an.* 170.¹⁴ 123.¹⁶ *tum temporis.* 294, *Obs.*

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

Caution.—It should be understood that the Latin words given in this Vocabulary are not necessarily equivalent to the English when the latter are used with a meaning and context different to that in which they occur in the Exercises. (See 17-19.)

Figures refer to sections, except where p. (= page) or Ex. (= Exercise) is prefixed.

- abandon, I (a person), deser-o,*¹
ère, -ui, -tum; de-sum, esse, -fui (dat., 251); destitu-o, ère, -i; de-scisco, ère, -scivi, ab or abl. (fall off from a party).
abandon, I (a thing or work), o-mitto, ère, -misi, -missum (see note under undone, I leave); de-sisto, ère, -stiti, ab, or abl. abandoned (wicked), perditus.
abandonment of, the, use o-mitto, ère, etc. (417, i.)
abide by, I, sto, are (abl.).
ability, or abilities, ingenium, n. (sing.).
able, I am, possum, posse, potui.
abound in, I, circum-fluo, ère, -fluxi. (284.)
about (adv.), circa, circiter; fere, ferme.
about (prep.), de. (332, 3, d.)
absence, in my. (61, and 420, ii.)
absent, I am, absum, esse; from, a, ab.
absolutely, plane; or superl. of adj. absolutely impossible. (125, f.)
abstain from, I. (264.)
abundance of, plurimum. (294.)
abuse, maledicta, n. pl. (51, b.)
accept, I, ac-cipio, ère, -cepi, -ceptum.
acceptable to, gratus. (See note under delightful.)
accident, cas-us, -ūs, m.
- accident, by, casu; fortuito. (268.)*
accomplish, I, ef- or con-ficio, ère, etc.
accordance with, in, perinde ac, etc. (491, a); pro (332, 7, f).
account of, on, propter (acc.).
account, on no, nullo modo; minime.
account, I take into, rationem habeo (gen.).
accuracy, with more, verius. (Intr. 52.)
accuse, I, accuso, are.
accuser, = he who accuses. (76.)
accustomed, I am, soleo, ère, solitus.
achievements, res gestae.
achievements, I perform, res gero, ère, gessi, gestum.
acquire, I, ad-ipiscor, i, -eptus. (See 19.)
acquit, I, absol-vo, ère, -vi, -utum. (306.)
across, trans (acc.).
act, I (behave), me gero, ère.
act rightly, I, recte facio.
act thus, I, haec facio.
action, by, agendo, aliquid (398); nom. agere (95, 99).
acts, facta, n. pl. (51, b.)
address (= speech), orati-o, -onis, f.
address (the people), I, verba (apud populum) facio.
adequate, justus.

¹ *Relinquo, I abandon, in neutral and general sense of "leaving;" desero, I quit a place or person where or with whom duty bids me stay; destituo, I leave "in the lurch" one who without me will be unaided; desum, I fail to be present where my presence is desirable or right; deficio (ab or acc.), "I fail" or "fall off from," those whom I have hitherto stood by.*

administering the government, rei publicae procurati-o, -onis, f.; iempublicam gubernare.

administration, procurati-o, -onis, f. admire, I, admiror, ari.

advance, I, pro-cedo, ěre, -cessi, -cessum; pro-gredior, i, -gressus.

advance in learning, I, doctior fio.

advanced (age), provecta (aetas). (See 303, Obs. 1.)

advanced in life or years. (303, Obs. 1.)

advanced guard, primum agm-en, -inis, n.

advantage, emolumentum, n.

advantage, to your. (269, Obs.)

advantage, what? quid emolumentum? (294.)

adverse, adversus (adj.).

adversity, res adversae.

advice, against your, turn by pres. part. of dissuadeo, ěre. (See 420, ii.)

advise, I, moneo.

advocate of (peace), auctor.

advocate of, I am an, suadeo, ěre, with acc. of thing. (See 247.)

advocate, I am your, te defendo, ěre.

affair, res, rei, f.

affected (agitated), I am, com-move-or, ěri, -motus.

affirmative, to reply in the. (162.)

afflict with, I, afficio, ěre. (283.)

afraid, I am, timeo.

afraid of, I am, = I fear (25), per-timesco, ěre, -timui (acc., or ne, ut, 138).

after (prep.), post (acc.). (See 322, 323.)

after (with verbal subst.), use quum. (429.)

again, rursus. (328, f.)

again (with neg.), posthac; postea.

again and again, saepe, saepissime. (57, a; see also 533, c.)

against, contra (acc.).

against (my wishes) = "in spite of." (420, ii.)

age (time of life), aet-as, -atis, f.

age (of things), vetust-as, -atis, f.

age, old, senect-us, -utis, f.

age, of that. (238, iii.)

age, those of his own, aequales (51, a.)

age of, at the. (327.)

aged, exactae aetatis. (303, Obs. 1.)

aggressive, I take the, ultro arma or bellum, infero.

agitation, there is, trepidatur. (218.)

ago. (324.)

agree with, I do not, parum (but little) consen-tio, ire, -si (cum).

agreed by (all), it is, constat inter (acc.).

agreed on by, it is, con-vēnit, -vēnit, inter.

agreement, an, pactum, n.

agreement is come to, an, convēnit (impers.).

agreement with, I am in, consen-tio, ire, -si, -sum, cum (abl.).

aid, auxilium, n.

aid, I, opem fero (dat.).

aid, I come to your, tibi subvenio.

aid or assistance, I come to your (Ex. 32). (260, 1.)

aid, by your, operā tuā.

aim at, I, or I form aims, pet-o, ěre, -ivi, -ii (-isti), -itum; ap-peto, ěre, etc. (trans.).

aim at (doing, etc.), I, or I make it my aim, id ago, ěgi, ut. (118.)

alarmed, I am, timeo, ěre.

alarmed (anxious) for, I am, metuo (with dat., 248).

Alexander, Alexan-der, -dri.

alien (adj.), externus.

alien (subst.), peregrin-us, -i, m.

alike (adv.), juxta, pariter.

alike . . . and; or . . . as, sicut . . . ita; vel . . . vel (p. 14, n.).

alive, I am, vivo, ěre.

all, omnis, also cunctus, universus.¹ *all (things)*, n. pl. of omn-is, -e.

all is lost, de summa re actum est.

allegiance, fid-es, -ei, f.

¹ *Universi*, all as a body, opposed to *singuli*; *omnes*, all without exception, opposed to *nemo* or to *unus*; *cuncti*, a stronger *omnes*, "all together;" *omnis* (sing.), every kind of; *cunctus* (sing.), all as a whole, nearly = *totus*, the whole as opposed to a part.

alliance with, I make, societatem in eo ire, -ivi, -ii, cum.
allow, I (let), per-mitto, ēre, -misi, -missum (dat., 128, end).
allow, I (grant), concedo, ēre.
allow, I (confess, admit), fateor, ēri, fassus; con-cedo, ēre, -cessi.
allow myself to, I will not, non committam ut. (125, i.)
allowed, I am, licet mihi. (197.)
allowed, it is, admitted, or agreed on, constat (impers.); *allowed by*, constat inter (acc.). (46, c.)
ally, an, soci-us, -i, m.
*almost, fere,*¹ *paene, prope.*
aloft, alte.
alone in doing this, I am, solus or unus (529, b), hoc facio. (62.)
along. (331, 5 and 21.)
already, jam.
also, quoque (Intr. 98); or (some-times), idem, idemque. (366, i.)
altars and hearths, arae atque foci.
altering, I am (intrans.), mutor, ari. (21, a.)
always, semper.
ambassador, legat-us, -i, m.
ambush, insidiae, f. pl.
among, inter (acc.).
ancestors, major-es, -um. (51, a, n. 5.)
*ancient, pristinus,*² *vet-us, -eris; vetustus, a, um, superl. vetustissimus; antiquus.* (See note.)
and, et, -que, atque, ac (p. 14, note; see also 110).
anew, de integro. (328, f.)
anger against, I cherish, suc-censeo, ēre, -censui, -censum (dat.).
angry with, I am, ira-scor, i, -tus (dat.).
angry mood, iracundia, f.
angry outcries. (See outcries.)
annihilate, I, del-eo, ēre, -ēvi, -ētum.

announcement, of, use nuntio, are. (417, i.)
another (a second), alt-er, gen. -erius. (368.)
answer, I, respon-deo, ēre, -di, -sum.
answer, I make no, = I answer nothing. (54 and 237.)
answer to, in. (331, i, b, and 2, c.)
antiquity (of a thing existing), vetust-as, -atis, f.
anxiety, sollicitud-o, -inis, f.
anxiety, free from, securus.
anxious for, I feel, dif-fido, ēre, -fisis (dat.).
anxious to, I am, cupio, ēre (inf.).
any (after negat.), any one, anything, quisquam, quidquam, ullus. (See 358.)
any? (impassioned interrogative), ecqui, ecquis.
any longer, ultra. (See also 328, a.)
any man may, cujusvis est. (292, 4.)
any one (in final and consec. clauses). (109.)
anything (you please), quidvis, gen. cujusvis. (359.)
anywhere (after negat.), usquam.
Apiolae, Apiolae, arum.
apologise for, I, veniam peto, with quod or gen. of participle.
apparently. (64.)
appeal to, I, obtestor, ari (acc.); to you, not to, te obtestor, ari, ne. (See 118.)
appeal to you, I solemnly, fidem tuam imploro, are, ut or ne.
appeal to fear, to, deterr-eo, ēre, -ui. (25.)
appear (seem), I, videor, ēri, visus. (43.)
applaud, I, plau-do, ēre, -si, -sum (dat.).
apprehension, met-us, -ūs, m.

¹ *Fere* (*ferme* in Livy) is "more or less," "about;" *paene, prope*, less than but bordering on. Hence *quod fere fit*, as generally happens; but, *prope divinus*, all but divine, "heroic."

² *Antiquus*, old and no longer existing; *vetus* (fem. and neut., often borrowed from *vetustus*), old and still existing. Thus *domus antiqua*, "what was long ago my home;" *domus (vetus) or vetusta*, "what has long been my home;" *mos antiquus*, an old custom now obsolete; *veteri more*, in accordance with long-established custom. *Antiquus* = "of the good old times," often used in praise. *Priscus* = "old-fashioned," "rarely seen now;" *pristinus*, simply "earlier," as opposed to "the present."

approach, I, advento, are.
approval for this, I get your, hoc tibi probō. (247.)
approved of (by you), it is, (tibi) probatur. (258, ii.)
apt to, I am, = I am wont, soleo.
ardently, vehement-er, -ius, -issime.
ardour for, studium, n. (with gen.). (300.)
argue, I, dis-sero, ēre, -serui.
aright, recte.
aristocratic party, the, optimat-es, -um or -ium, m. pl. (See 51, a, and note.)
arm (one), brachium, n. (alterum, 368).
armed, armatus.
arms, arma, n. pl.
armistice, an, indutiae, f. pl.
army, exercit-us, -ūs, m.
arrival, advent-us, -ūs, m.
arrive (at), I, per-vēnio, ire, -vēni, -ventum (ad with acc.).
arrow, sagitta, f.
art, ars, artis, f.
as, or as . . . so, sicut (with ita in main clause); et . . . et.
as (as though), tanquam. (496.)
as (= while), dum. (180.)
as often as, quoties; cum. (See 192, 434.)
as regards, or as to (= about), de (abl.). (332, 3.)
as to (free from care as to), ab (332, 1, e); (from the side of, as regards), ibid.
as to (inf.) (See 108.)
ascend the throne, I (see 17), rex fio, or regnum accipio.
ascertain, I, cog-nosco, ēre, -novi, -nitum; certior fio.
ascribe to you, I, tibi acceptum refero. (See indebted to you.)
ask, I (a question), te rogo, inter-rogo; ex, abs, te quae-ro, ēre, -sivi. (See p. 157, note.)
ask (you), I (request, beg), te oro, are; abs te pet-o, ēre, -ivi, -ii, -itum (ut). (See 127, c.)
ask for, I, posco, ēre, poposci.
ask your opinion, I, te consul-o, ēre, -ui, -tum. (248.)

aspect of affairs, the, rerum faci-es, -ei, f.
assailants, = those who assail (ag-gredior). (See 175.)
assassin, sicari-us, -i, m.
assemble, to (intrans.), convenire.
assembly, convent-us, -ūs, m.
assist, I, adjuvo, are. (245.)
assistance, I bring you, tibi opem fero.
assistance, I come to his, subvenio, ire, etc. (dat.).
assert, I (pretend), dictito, are.
assert, I (as a fact), affirmo, are.
assert, I would. (149, i.)
assert, I (maintain), vindico, are.
assert my country's freedom, I, patriam in libertatem vindico.
assertors of (freedom), = those who have asserted, etc.) (See 175.)
assured, I am. (240.)
Athenians, Atheniens-es, -ium.
atone for, I, luo, ēre; poenas do (gen.).
attached to me, mei amantissimus. (302.)
attack, I (general sense), ag-gredior, -i, -gressus (acc.).
attack, I (a city or place), oppugno, are. (See 24.)
attack, I (in words), in-vehor, i, -vectus, in (acc.).
attack, to (of a pestilence, panic), inva-dēre, -si, -sum.
attack, I (suddenly), ad-orior, iri, -ortus.
attain to, I (= arrive at), pervenio ad. (19.)
attain to, I (= obtain), adipiscor. (19.)
attempt, I, conor, ari; id ago ut.
attempt (subst.), inceptum, n.; conat-us, -ūs, m.
authority, potest-as, -atis. (See influence, note.)
avail myself of, I, utor, i, usus (abl.).
avail with, I am of no, nihil valeo apud. (331, 4, d.)
avarice, avaritia, f.
avoul, I (a burden, etc.), de-fugio, ēre, -fūgi.

avoid, I (a danger), vito, are.
avoid, to (= in order not to, etc.).
 (101, ii.; cf. 109.)

avow, I, prae me fero.

aware of, I am, or become, sen-tio, ire, -si, -sum.

backs, they turn their, terga dant, dederunt.

band, man-us, -ūs, f.

banish, I, civitate pello, expello; in exilium pello, ēre, pepuli, pulsum, or exigo, ēre, exēgi, exactum.

bank, ripa, f.

banquet, a, epul-ae, -arum, f.

barbarian, a, barbar-us, -i, m.

barbarous, superl. of crudelis.

(57, a.)

base (adj.), turpis.

baseness, turpitud-o, -inis, f.

baseness of, the, = how base it is.

(174, c.)

battle, proelium, n.

battle, in, in acie.

beautiful, pul-cher, -chrior, -cherri-mus. (See Voc. 9, n.)

because, quia, quod, etc. (Intr. 59, d.)

become, I, fio, fieri, factus.

becomes (us), it, (nos) decet (234); or gen. with est. (291, Obs. 4.)

befall, to, acce-dere, -di (dat.).

before (adv.), antea; antehac; ante. (322.)

before (prep.), ante (acc.).

before long, = soon or shortly.

begin, I, in-cipio, ēre, -cēpi, -cep-tum; coepi (I begin) (mostly modal), coeptum est (219); often expressed by imperf. tense (184).

begin anew, I, redintegro, are (acc.).

begin with, I. (332, 1, f.)

beginning, the, initium, n.

behalf of, on, pro (abl.).

behave, I, me gero, ēre, gessi, ges-tum (with adv.). (See 241.)

behold, I, a-spicio, ēre, -spexi, -spec-tum.

belief, a, opini-o, -onis, f.

believe, I, cred-o, ēre, -idi, -itum: with dat. = I trust. (248.)

belong to the class of, I, unus sum ex. (529, f.)

beneficial, salutaris; utilis.

benefit you, I, tibi prosum, pro-desse, profui.

besiege, I (blockade), ob-sideo, ēre, -sedi, sessum; (by actual attack), oppugno, are.

best, the very. (529, d.)

bestow (these things on you), I, haec tibi larg-ior, iri, -itus.

betake myself to, I, me confero ad.

betray, I, pro-do, ēre, -didi, -ditum.

betrayers, = those who had betrayed. (See 175.)

better, for the, in melius.

better, it would have been, satius, melius fuit. (153.)

between. (331, 10.)

bewail, I, comploro, are.

bid, I, ju-beo, ēre, -ssi, -ssum. (120.)

bidding, at the, jussu. (269, Obs.)

Bill, a, rogati-o, -onis, f.

bind myself, I, me obstrin-go, ēre, -xi.

black (metaph. of crime), simply tantus; or tam atrox.

blame, culpa, f.

blame, I, vitupero, are; reprehendo, ēre, -di, -sum.

blessing, a, bonum, n. (51, c.)

blind, caecus.

blockade, I. (See besiege.)

blood, sangui-s, -nis, m.; cru-or, ōris, m.; so much. (295, c.)

bloodshed, caed-es, -is, f.

bloody, cruentus.

blow, a (metaph.), calamit-as, -atis, f.

blunder, err-or, -oris, m.

blush at, or for, I, me pudet, with inf. (202) or gen. (309).

boast, I make a, glorior, ari.

body, the whole, universi. (380, b.) (See note under all.)

body-guard, a, satell-es, -itis, m.

boldly, audacter; ferociter; often adj. (61), ferox.¹

¹ *Ferox* is not used in the sense of "ferocious;" it denotes "high spirit" carried to excess.

book, a, lib-er, -ri, m.
born, natus (nascor).
born and brought up, natus educatusque.
both, uterque; ambo. (See 378.)
both . . . and, et . . . et, vel . . . vel (p. 14, n.).
bound, I am (in duty) (p. 143, note).
bow to, I (metaph.), obsequor, i (dat.).
boy, pu-er, -eri.
boy, from a, or from boyhood, a puero; *when used of more than one*, a pueris.
boyhood, in. (63.)
brand (you) with dishonour, I, ignominiae notam (tibi) in-uro, ěre, -ussi, -ustum.
brandish, I, jacto, are.
brave (adj.), fort-is, -e; *adv.* fortiter.
brave the worst, I, ultima ex-perior, iri, -pertus.
break, I (metaph.), violo, are.
break my word, I, fidem fallo, ěre, fefelli, falsum.
break up, I (trans.), dissipo, are.
break up, I (intrans.), dissipor, ari.
breathing space. (399, Obs. 2.)
bribery, ambit-us, -ūs,¹ m.
brigand, a, latr-o, -onis, m.
bring, I, duco, ěre, duxi, ductum.
bring (you this), I, hoc tibi af-fero, ferre, attuli, allatum.
bring back word, I, renuntio, are.
bring (a person) before you, I, ad te ad-duco, ěre, etc.
bring credit to, = be creditable to. (260, 3)
bring forward, I (a law), fero, ferre, tuli.
bring help, I, opem fero, ferre, etc.
bring loss on you, I, tibi damnum in-fero, ferre, -tuli, illatum.
bring out (persons), I, pro-duco, ěre.
bring (cause) punishment to. (260, 3.)

bring (my speech) to an end, I, finem facio *with gen. of gerund.*
bring under, I, facio, *with gen. of jus (juris)*, or arbitrium. (See 290, Obs.)
bring up, I (of supplies, etc.), sub-ve-ho, ěre, -xi, -ctum; *sup-orto, are; of soldiers*, adduco, ěre.
bringer of a message, I am the, nuntio, are.
broad, latus.
brother, frat-er, -ris.
brought up (= bred), educatus (educor, are).
bugbears, terrores, m. pl.; terri-cula, n. pl. (Livy).
burden (of administering), use res laboriosissima in appos. (222, Obs.)
burdensome, molestus; gravis.
business, the, res, rei, f.
but, sed; verum (emphatic).
butcher, I, trucidor, are.
bystander, bystanders, use adsto or circumsto. (See 71, 73, and 175.)
Caesar, Caes-ar, -aris.
call away, I, avoco, are.
call to me, I, ad me voco, convoco, are.
called, I am, vocor, ari. (7.)
calm (adj.), tranquillus.
calmly, aequo animo.
camp, castr-a, -orum, n. pl.
campaign, = year, ann-us, -i, m.
campaign was disastrous, was prosperous, res infelicitate (-issime), prospere, gesta est.
can, I, possum, posse, potui.
candidate for, I am a, pet-o, ěre, -ivi, -ii, -itum. (22, 23.)
Cannae, of, Cannensis. (58.)
cannot, I, nequ-eo, ire, -ivi, -ii.
caprice, libid-o, -inis, f.
care, cura, f.
care, free from, securus.
care to, I, volo, velle, volui.
careful for (your safety), I am, tibi caveo. (248.)

¹ Ambio, lit. "I go round," or "I canvass;" hence for illegal canvassing or bribery.

carry across, *I*, transporto, are. (229, Obs.)

carry on, *I*, = *I* wage, gero, ěre, gessi, gestum.

carry out, *I*, exsequor; conficio.

carry out of the country, *I*, exporto, are.

Carthage, C[K]arthag-o, loc. -ini.

case, in our, in nobis ("in us").

case, it is the, fit ut. (123.)

Cassius, Cassi-us, -i.

catch, *I*, capio.

cause, a, causa, f.

cause (loss), *I*, infero, ferre, etc.

cause (panic), *I*, injicio, ěre, etc., with acc. and dat.

cause of, *I* am the, per me fit ut, stat quominus. (131.)

cause to be thrown open, *I*. (See *I* open.)

caution, want of, temeritas, -atis, f.

caution, with, caut-e, -ius.

cavalry, equit-es, -um, m. pl.

cease, *I*, de-sino, ěre, -ivi, -ii, -itum; or de-sisto, ěre, -stiti.

certain, certus.

certain (victory), exploratus.

certain, as, pro certo. (240, Obs.)

certain, *I* am, certo (adv.) scio, -ira.

certainly (= *I* grant that), sane.

centre of, the. (60.)

centre (of army), media (60) aci-es, -ei.

centurion, centuri-o, -onis, m.

chain (general term), vinculum, n., and see fetters.

Chance (personified), Fortuna, f.

chance, by mere, forte ac casu. (268.)

change, *I* (trans.), muto, commuto, are (see 20, 21); (intrans.), mutor, ari.

change of purpose, inconstantia, f.

change of sides, transiti-o, -onis, f.

channel, fretum, n.

character, often turned (as in Ex. 22) by a dependent clause. (See 174.)

character (natural), ingenium,¹ n.

character (good), virt-us, -utis, f. (See note.)

character (mode of life), mor-es, -um, m. (See note.)

character, highest, optimi mores; virtus summa.

character, of the same, as, talis, . . . qualis. (See 84.)

characteristic of, it is the. (291, Obs. 4.)

charge, a (of troops), impet-us, ūs, m.

charge, *I* make a, inva-do, ěre, -si, -sum (in); impetum facio (in).

charged, *I* am (with), in crimen venio (gen.).

charm (subst.), dulced-o, -inis, f.

chastisement on, *I* inflirt, animad-vert-o, ěre, -i, in (acc.).

check, *I* keep in (temper, etc.), moderor, ari. (249.)

check, *I* keep in (troops), contineo, ěre, -ui.

cheerful, hilaris.

cheerfully, facile.

cheer, *I* am of good. (303, Obs. 2.)

cheer on, *I*, hortor, ari; adhortor.

cherish, *I*, tueor, ěri.

choose to, *I* (or like), mihi libet. (246.)

choose (for), *I*, e-ligo, ěre, -legi, -lectum. (See 259, note.)

chief, a (chieftain), regul-us, -i.

chief (chief man), a, prin-ceps -cipis.

child, a, pu-er, -eri.

children (offspring), liber-i, -orum.

circumstance, res, rei, f.

circumstances (*I* yield to), temp-us, -oris, n. (292, 7.)

citadel, arx, arcis, f.

city, urb-s, -is, f.

civilisation, *I* advance in, humani-or fio.

¹ *Ingenium* (*ingignō*), "natural gifts," mostly used of intellectual as *indoles* of natural moral gifts: *ingenium* *moresque* sometimes expresses the whole idea of "character" as natural and acquired by habit. *Ingenium* often = "abilities," "genius," as distinct from *indoles* or *virtus*. It is never used in the plural of a single person: once Cicero joins the two words, *summa ingenit indoles*, "the highest natural gifts." When "character" = good character, *virtus* should be used.

claim, I have a, debeo.
clamour for, I, flagito, are (acc.).
class, gen-us, -ëris, n.; of his class,
sui generis.
clear, certus; manifestus.
clear as, as, clari-or, -us. (276.)
clear, it is, appar-et, ère, -uit (see
46, c); or manifestum est.
clear (myself) of, I, (me) purgo,
are, de (306, Obs.), or with abl.
simply.
clemency, clementia, f.; adj. cle-
mens.
client, my, hic. (338, Obs. 1.)
Clitus, Clit-us, -i.
close (friend), superl. of amicus.
(55.)
close, I (shut up), interclu-do, ère,
-si, -sum.
close at hand, prope; haud procul.
close to. (331, 13 or 19.)
closely resembling, use superl. of
similis.
clothing, vestit-us, ùs, m.
coast along, I, (nave) praeter-ve-
hor, i, -vectus (acc.). With
praetervehor, nave and equo are
often omitted.
cold (subst.), frig-us, -oris, n.
colleague, collèga, -ae, m.
collision (with), I come into, con-fligo,
ère, -flixi, -flictum (cum).
colony, colonia, f.
combination, in, conjuncti.
comfort, commoda, n. pl.
command (an army), I, praesum
(dat., 251); duco.
command myself, I, mihi impero,
are.
commander (of garrison, etc.), prae-
fectus. (408.)
commanders (general sense), = those
who lead (duco).
commencement of, initium, n. or
part. pass. of incipio. (See 417,
i.)
commit, I (a crime), com-mitto,
ère, etc.; facio.
commit a fault, I, pecco, are. (25.)
common (belonging to many), com-
munis; common to you and me,
communis tibi mecum.
commonwealth, respublica.

communicate to, I (= I impart to),
communico, are, cum. (253, iv.)
community (civil), civit-as, -atis, f.
companions, his, sui. (349, Obs.)
compare, I, con-fero, ferre (cum).
compassion, misericordia, f.
compel, I, cogo, ère, coëgi, coactum.
competent, I am, = I am able.
competition for, contenti-o, -onis,
f. (with gen., 300).
complain, make complaints, I,
queror, i, questus; conqueror.
comply with, I, ob-sequor (dat.).
(See 253, i.)
compulsion, under, coactus (cogo).
comrades, his. (See companions.)
conceal, I, celo, are. (See 230.)
concerning (prep.), de (abl.).
concerns, it, pertinet (253, iv.) ad;
used with inf.
condemn, I, condemno, are. (306,
307.)
condemnation, condemnati-o, -onis,
f.
condign (punishment), gravissimus.
condition (lot), fortuna, f.
condition, a (term), conditi-o, -onis,
f.
condition of slavery. (58.)
conduct myself (of soldiers), I, rem
gero.
conference (with), I have a, col-lo-
quor, i, -locutus, (cum).
confess, I, fateor, èri, fassus; con-
fiteor, èri, -fessus.
confidence, fiducia, f.
confidence in, I put, con-fido, ère,
-fisis (282, Obs.); fidem (tibi)
habeo.
confiscate, I, publico, are.
confusion, trepidati-o, -onis, f.
confusion reigns, etc.; use impers.
pass. of trepido, are. (See 218.)
congratulate you on this, I, hoc
(acc.), hanc rem, or ob hanc rem,
or de hac re, tibi gratulor, ari.
conqueror, the, vict-or, -oris.
conscience, with a good. (See 64.)
consciousness, sens-us, -ūs, m.
consent (subst.), consens-us, -ūs, m.
consent to, I (modal verb), volo.
consider, I, arbitror, ari. (See
note under fancy.)

- considerations, all, = everything.* (53, 54.)
considering, ut in (492, v. b.); *considering the greatness of, ut in with tantus.* (332, 5, h.)
consist of, I, consto, are, e, ex.
consolation, is a great, magno est solatio (dat.). (260, 3.)
conspire, I (against), conjuro, are (contra) (acc.).
conspirator, turn by qui with verb. (175.)
Constantinople, Constantinopolis, acc. -im, loc. -i.
constantly, semper or nunquam non.
constitution, the, respublica. (See 292, Obs. and note.)
constitutional; unconstitutional, e respublica (332, 4); *contra rempublicam.*
consul, cons-ul, -ulus.
consulship, consulat-us, -ūs, m.
consult, I (= I ask the opinion of), consul-o, ēre, -ui, -tum (with acc.).
consult the good or interest of, I, consulo, with dat. (See 248.)
consummate. (See statesman.)
contemporary, a, aequalis. (51, a.)
contempt for, contemptus, -ūs, m. (with gen., 300.)
contemptible, far from, haud (169, n.) *contemnendus* (393).
content with, I am, contentus sum (abl.).
contest, a, certam-en, inis, n.; or use impers. pass. of certo, are. (218.)
continent, the, continen-s, -tis (sc. terra).
contrary (adj.), contrarius.
contrary to, contra quam. (491, b.)
convenience, commoda, n. pl.
conversation, I have, col-loquor, i, -locutus.
converse (with), I, colloquor, i (cum) (of two or more, inter se, 354).
convinced, I am, = I am persuaded. (See 122, b.)
convinced of this, I am, or feel, hoc mihi persuasum habeo. (240.)
corn, frumentum, n.
Cortes, Cortesi-us, -i.
cost, I, consto (280, Obs.); *costs too much, it, nimio constat.*
council, a, consilium, n.
count, I (number), numero, are.
count, I (= I hold), habeo; duco.
count among, I. (240, Obs. 2.)
countenance, vult-us, ūs, m.
country (one's), patria, f. (see 16, a); (the), respublica.
country (territory), fin-es, -ium, m. (See 16, a.)
country (as distinct from the town), rus, ruris, n. (see 16, a); in the country, ruri.
countryman, civ-is, -is.
courage, virt-us, -utis, f.; constan-tia, f.; fortitud-o, -inis, f.
courage, a man of. (58, Obs.)
courage, I show. (241.)
courage to, I have the, = I venture (25); *audeo, ere, ausus.*
course, I take this, haec facio; hanc rationem in eo.
course which, a, id quod. (67.)
court, the, iudicium, n.
cover, I (with armies or fleets), in-festum habeo. (240.)
coward, timidus, ignāvus; cowards, ignavi.
cowardice, ignavia, f.; timidit-as, -atis, f.
cowardly, ignavus; timidus.
crave for, I, desidero, are (acc.) (mostly for what I have had and have lost); in Ex. 48 B use appeto, ēre.
craving (partic.) for, appetens (with gen.). (302.)
credible, it is scarcely, vix credi potest. (200, Obs.)
credit, a, or creditable, it is. (260, 3.)
crime, a, facin-us, -oris, n.; flagitium, n.; scelus,¹ -eris, n.; delictum, n. (See note.)

¹ *Scelus*, a crime; offence against a fellow-creature, ἀδικημα; also the guilt which causes overt crimes, ἀδικία; *vitium*, a fault, that which marks imperfection; *peccatum*, a sin or offence which deserves blame or punishment; *delictum*, an omission, or contravention, of some duty; *flagitium*, a crime as a breach of duty towards oneself; *facinus*, an act of heinous crime (sometimes a great exploit); *nequitia*, wickedness in the sense of "worthlessness."

criminal, sceleratus.
criminally, nefarie.
crisis, a, discrim-en, -inis, n.; temp-us, oris, n.
critical moment (such a), use simply tempus, or occasio.
cross, I, trajicio, ěre.
crowd, a, multitud-o, -inis, f.
crowd, to (intrans.), congregari.
crowds, in. (61.)
crown (kingly), regnum, n. (See 17.)
crown (circlet), corona, f.
cruel, crudelis, e.
cruelly, crudel-iter, -ius, -issime.
cruelty, crudelit-as, -atis, f.
cruelty, I show, saev-io, ire, -ii, itum.
crush, I, op-primo, ěre, -pressi, -pressum; crushed (pass. part.), oppressus.
crushing (calamity), use tantus or tantus tamque gravis.
cry, I raise a, conclamo, are.
cultivated, to be (= sought for), expetendus.
custom, a, mos, moris, m.
cut off, I (destroy), ab-sumo, ěre, etc.
cut off (destroyed), I am, intereo, ire.
dagger, pugi-o, -onis, m.
daily, quotidie; with comparatives and certain verbs, in dies. (See 328, c.)
danger, periculum, n.
danger was (of), the. (138.)
dangerous, periculosus.
Danube, the, Danubius, m.
daringly, audacit(act)-er, -ius.
dark (metaph. applied to crime), atrox.
dark, I keep you in the, te celo, are (acc., 230, or de; 231).
darkness, tenebrae, f. pl.
dart, a, jaculum, n.; telum, n.
dash (of), a, non nihil. (294.)
dash into, I, me im-mitto, ěre, misi in.
dash over, I (intrans., see 20, 21), in-fundor, i, -fusus (dat.).

date, temp-us, -oris, n.
day, di-es, -ei, m.
day after day. (328, c.)
day before, the, pridie.
day before, of the, hesternus.
day, for the, in diem.
day, in my, = in my time (pl.).
daybreak, prima lux (lucis).
deadly (hostile), infensus.
deadly (enemy). (See 55.)
dear, car-us, -ior, -issimus.
dear friends, homines amicissimi. (224, Obs. 2.)
death, mor-s, -tis, f.
death, after his. (61.)
debt, aes alienum; gen. aeris alieni, n.
deceive, I, decipio, ěre.
decide (resolve), to, or on, I, statuo; constituo. (45.)
decide (pass judgment), I, or I decide on (a fact), judico, are.
decide (let others, etc.). (148.)
decision, I come to a, decerno, ěre.
decision, depends on my. (292, 9.)
declare (war), I, indi-co, ěre, -xi, -ctum. (253, ii.)
decline, I (trans.), detrecto, are.
decline (to), I (modal), nolo.
decree, I, de-cerno, ěre, -crĕvi, -cretum.
decree, a, decretum, n. (See 51, b.)
deep (of feelings), gravis.
deeper (impression). See *impression*.
defeat, clad-es, -is, f.; of Cannae, Cannensis (adj., 58).
defend, I, defen-do, ěre, -di, -sum.
defendant, the, iste. (338, Obs.)
defiance of, in, contra, contra quam. (491, b.)
defile, a, salt-us, -ūs, m.
degrading, indignus (unmerited); humilis (abject).
delay (to), I, cunctor, ari.
delay, by, gerund of cunctor. (99.)
delay, without, confestim.
deliberation, need of. (286.)
deliberation, with, consult-o, -ius (adv.).
delightful, jucundus.¹

¹ *Jucundus* (*juvicundus*), that which causes joy or delight; *gratus*, what is acceptable, deserves gratitude; *ista veritas etiamst jucunda non est, mihi tamen grata est.*—(CICERO.)

demand, *I*, postulo,¹ are. (127, c.)
demand (exact) this from you, *I*,
 hoc tibi impero, are.
demeanour, habit-us, -ūs, m. (sc.
 corporis).
denied this, I am, hoc (abl.) careo, ēre.
denounce, I (upbraid), in-crepo, are,
 -crepui.
deny, I, nego, are.
depart, I (= go away), ab-eo, ire,
 -ii; dis-cedo, ēre, -cessi.
departure, I take my. (25.)
depend on, I, pendeo, ēre, e, ex.
 (332, 4.)
depends on you, this. (331, 15.)
deplore, I, deploro, are.
deprecate, I, deprecor, ari.
deprive of, I, privo, are (264); ad-
 imo, ēre, -emi, -emptum (243).
depth of, of the, use gen. (318, end.)
depth of, such a, use tantus; or eo
with gen. (294, Obs.)
desert, I, deser-o, ēre, -ui, -tum;
 destitu-o, ēre, -i. (See note
 under abandon.)
deserter, transfug-a, ae, m.
desertion, use desero, ēre. (417, i.)
deserts, in accordance with his.
 (490, ii. 3.)
deserve, I, mereo, meritus; also
 mere-o, ēre, -ui.
deserve well of, I. (332, 3, g.)
deservedly, merito.
deserving of, dignus. (285.)
design (subst.), consilium, n.; by
 design, or designedly (abl.) (268);
 consulto (adv.).
desire, I, am desirous to, cupio, ēre,
 ivi (ii); studeo, ēre (inf.).
desire (subst.), = that which (you)
 desire. (76.)
desire for, with little, parum appe-
 tens (with gen., 302).
despair, I, despero, are; of, de (abl.).
despatch, a, litterae, f. pl.
desperately, atro-citer, -cius.
despicable. (See 276.)
despise, I, contem-no, ēre, -psi,
 -ptum; de-spicio, ēre, -spexi,
 -spectum. (See Voc. 10, note.)

despot, domin-us, -i.
destitution, egest-as, -atis, f.
destined, fatalis, e (see Voc. 3,
 n.); for or to, ad. (331, I, e.)
destiny, fatum, n.
destroy, I, exsci-ndo, ēre, -di,
 -ssum.
destruction (general sense), exitium,
 n.; pernici-es, -ei, f.
destruction (massacre), interneci-o,
 -onis, f.
destruction of (tends to the). (See
 292, Obs.)
detach (troops), I, = I send.
detain, I, re-tineo, ēre, -tinui.
determine on, I, decerno, ēre (inf., 45).
detraction, obtrectati-o, -onis, f.
detrimental, it is. (260, 3.)
devote myself to, I, operam do (dat.);
 or (stronger), in-cumbo, ēre,
 -cubui, in. (253, iv.)
devoted to, studiosus (gen., 301, ii.).
devastate, I, vasto, are.
dictate terms to you, I, leges tibi
 impono.
dictator, dictat-or, -oris.
die, I, mor-ior, -i (-tuus est), vitā
 excessit. (See Voc. 7, note.)
die out of, to (metaphor), ex-cidēre,
 -cidi, e, ex.
difference between, there is this.
 (331, 10.)
difference, there is all the. (92.)
difference, it makes no, nihil interest
 (166); to us, nostrā (310, i.).
different, alius; to, ac. (91; see
 also 92, and 370, 371.)
*different times, at, alius alio tem-
 pore.* (371.)
differently to, aliter ac. (491, b.)
difficulty in persuading, I find a,
 = *I persuade this (illud) with*
difficulty (aegre).
*difficulty, with, aegre; vix; diffi-
 culter, comp. difficilis.*
din, strepit-us, -ūs, m.
dire, use tantus.
directions, in both, utrimque; in
different, diversi. (61; but see
 also 371, and caution.)

¹ Posco, I "call for," make a sharp, peremptory demand; often used of what is unjust;
 postulo, I claim in accordance with, or as though in accordance with, what is right.

disaffected, I am, male sentio.
disagree with, I, dissen-tio, ire, -si
ab or cum.
disagreement on, dissensi-o, -onis, f.
(with gen., 300).
disappear, I (=I am destroyed),
ex-tinguor, i, -tinctus.
disappoint, I. (332, 3, b.)
disapproval (expressed by clamour),
acclamo,¹ are. (415, b.)
disaster, cas-us,² -ūs, m.; calamit-as,
-atis, f.
disastrous, most, use the adv., infeli-
citer, -issime. (218, Obs.)
discharge the duties of, I, fung-or,
i, -ctus. (281.)
discipline, disciplina, f.
discontinue, I, inter-mitto, ěre,
mihi. (See note under undone,
I leave.)
discussion, by, in, gerund of dissero,
ěre. (99.)
disdain to, I, dedignor, ari.
disease, a, morbus, i, m.
disembark, I. (331, 24, a.)
disgrace, ignominia, f.
disgraceful, turpis, e. (See 57.)
disgraceful, it is. (260, 3, and Obs.
1.)
disheartened, I am. (See 118,
example.)
dishonour (subst.), ignominia, f.
dishonourable, inhonest-us; adv., -e.
dishonourable, it is. (260, 3.)
dislike, I somewhat, haud multum
amo.
disloyal, infidus.
dismayed, I am, perterreor, ěri.
dismiss, I, dimitto, ere.
disperse with, I, careo, ěre (284);
or carere volo.
disperse, to (intrans.), di-labi, -lap-
sus. (See 20.)
displease, I, displiceo, ěre (dat.).
disposed to (a quality), use compara-
tive of adj. (57, b.)
dissatisfied with oneself, one is, sui
poenitet.
dissemble, I (=I hide), dissimulo,
are.

distance, from a, e longinquo.
distance from, I am at a, absum.
(318.)
distant, longinquus.
distasteful, ingratus.
distinction (mark of difference), dis-
crim-en, -inis, n.
distinction (honourable), hon-os,
-oris, m.
distinguished (adj.), praeclarus
(sup., 224).
district, ag-er, -ri, m.
distrust, I, dif-fido, ěre, -fusus.
(244, c.)
ditch, fossa, f.
divine, divinus.
do, I, facio, ěre, feci, factum.
doer, the, = he who committed,
facio, committo.
doom, fatum, n.
doomed to, I am, destinor, ari,
with dat. or ad.
doors, for-es, -um, f.
Doria, Doria, f.
doubt, I am in (=I doubt), dubito,
are.
down from, de (abl.).
down-trodden, afflictus.
drag (to prison), I, tra-ho, ěre, -xi,
-ctum, in.
draw, I (=I drag), tra-ho, ěre.
draw up, I (a law), scribo.
draw up, I (soldiers), instru-o, ěre,
-xi, -ctum.
dread, I, reformido, are.
dreadful, atrox.
dress, vest-is, -is, f. (303, Obs. 2.)
drive from, I, ex-igo, ěre, -ěgi,
-actum; pello, ěre, pepuli,
pulsum.
drive on shore, to, ejicĕre, ejĕci,
ejectum.
drowned (metaph. of words). (332,
6, b.)
dull, I, hebĕto, are; afficio.
duration (its future), = how lasting
(diuturnus) it will, or would, be.
(174.)
duty, it is my, debeo. (198.)
duty of, it is the, use gen. (291.)

¹ *Acclamo* always in Cicero of disapproval; in later writers, of approval.

² *Casus*, properly an accident, that which falls out, is mostly used in a bad sense, as misfortune or disaster; but is not so strong a word as *calamitas*.

duty (as opposed to expediency), honest-as, -atis, *f.*; or honesta, *n. pl.* (51, c)
dwelling, domicilium, *n.*

each and every, unus quisque. (529, c.)

each other, one another, alius alium; *of two*, alter alterum (see 371, iv.); *inter se* (354).

eager for, cupidus (*gen.*, 301, i.).

eager to, I am, gest-io, ire, -ii.

early manhood. (See manhood.)

earlier (*adv.*), maturius.

earlier than (= before), ante (*acc.*, 331, 3).

earliest, = first.

earnestly, magnopere.

earnestly implore, I, oro atque obsecro (127, a). Notice double phrase equivalent to English *ad-verb*.

ears, with my own. (355, d.)

earth, the, tell-us, -uris, *f.*

easily (readily), facile; *nullo negotio* (without effort).

echo with, to, person-are, -ui (*abl.*).

effect, I, efficio, Ære.

effect on, I have but little, parum valeo apud.

eight, octo (*indecl.*).

eighteenth. (530.)

either . . . or, aut . . . aut; *vel . . . vel* (p. 14, note).

elected, I am, fi-o, -Ëri, factus.

eloquence, eloquentia, *f.*

else, or, aut (p. 14, n.).

embark, I (*intrans.*), navem conscend-o, Ære, -i.

emergency, temp-us, -oris, *n.*; *in the present*, see, for in, 273, Obs., and for present, 337.

emotion, with, commot-e, -ius.

Emperor, Imperat-or, -oris.

empire, imperium, *n.*

empty, inanïs.

enacted, I get (a law), per-fero, -ferre, -tuli.

encamp, I, castra pono, Ære.

encourage, I, co-, or ad-hortor, ari (*acc. and ut*, 118).

encouragement, words of, adhortantis vox. (415, c.)

encounter, I (death), oppe-o, Æret, -ii, -ivi, -itum; *evil*, exper-ior, iri, -tus.

end, fin-is, -is, *m.* (rarely *f.*).

endanger, I, periclitor, ari (*dep.*).

endeavour, I, conor, ari.

endure, I, per-fero, ferre, -tuli.

enemy (private), inimicus.

enemy (public), host-is, -is.

energy, with some want of, paulo (279) remissius.

engage (an enemy), I, con-gredior, i, -gressus, cum.

engage in, I (= I take part in), intersum (251); *in battle*, praelium committo, Ære; *in conflict*, manus conser-o, Ære, -ui, -tum.

England (= the people of England), Angli. (See 319.)

engrafted, insitivus.

enjoy, I, fru-or, i, -ctus (281); *the friendship of*, amico utor (282); *praise, etc.*, flor-eo, Ære, -ui (*abl.*).

enjoy happiness, I, beatus sum.

enmity, inimicitia, *f.*

enormity, flagitium, *n.* (See note under crime.)

enormous, such, tantus.

enough and to spare, satis superque (with *gen.*, 294).

entail this upon you, I, hoc tibi in-or af-fero. (252.)

enter, I, in-gredior, i, -gressus; venio, ire, in.

enter political life, I. (See political life.)

enterprise. (See 54.)

enthusiasm, alacrit-as, atis, *f.*

entire innocence. (See innocence.)

entirely, totus (with verbs, 61); *for adjs.*, use superl.

entreat, I, oro, are. (127, a.)

entreat for, earnestly, I, flagito, are. (127, d.)

entreaty, obsecrati-o, -onis, *f.*

entrust, I. (See intrust.)

enumerate, I, enumero, are.

envy, I, in-video, Ære, -vidi, -visus (*dat.*). (See 5.)

equal to, use tantus . . . quantus (490, i.)

err, I, erro, errare.

error, *err-or*, -oris, *m.*; or *errare*.¹
(94, 99.)

establish, *I*, *stabil-io*, *ire*, -ivi.

estimate, *I*, *aestimo*, *are*. (305.)

eternal, *sempiternus*.

evade (*shirk*), *I*, *subterfugio*, *ëre*
(*acc.*); *a law*, *legi fraudem facio*.

even, *etiam*; *quoque* (*enclitic*);
before adj., *vel*; *not even*, *ne . . .*
quidem. (*Intr.* 99.)

even now (*i.e. at the present time*),
hodie.

evening, *in the*, *vesperi*.

events, *at all*, *certe*. (See note
under least, *at*.)

ever (*always*), *semper*; *with negat.*
(= *at any time*), *unquam*.

every (= *all*, *pl.*), *omnis*; *every-*
thing, *omnia*, *n. pl.* (53.)

evident, *it was*, (*satis*) *apparebat*.
(46, c.)

evil, *an*, *in commodum*, *n.*; *malum*,
n. (51, b.)

exact from, *I* (*make requisition of*),
impero, *are*. (247.)

exact (*punishment*), *I*, *sum-o*, *ëre*,
-psi, *ab*, *de* or *ex*.

exasperate, *I*, *irrito*, *are*.

excellent, *optimus*, *a*, *um* (see 57,
a); *for use with proper noun or*
person see 224.

except to, *nisi ut*.

exception, *without*, = *all*.

excessive, *nimius*.

exchange for, *I*, *muto*, *are*; *per-*
muto, *are*. (See 280.)

exclaim, *I*, *ex- or con-clamo*, *are*.

execrable (*by*), *considered*, *execra-*
bilis (*with dat.*).

execution (*punishment*), *supplicium*,
n.

exertion, *I* *make* (*some*), (*paulum*)
ad-nitor, *i*, -nisus.

exertions, = *toils*.

exhausted, *fatigatus*; *confectus*; *I*
am, or *become*, *fatigor*, *ari*.

exhort, *I*, *hortor*, *ari*, *ut* or *ne*.
(118.)

exile, *an*, *ex-ul*, -ulis.

exile, *I* *am driven into*, *in exilium*
pellor. (See *banish*.)

exile, *I* *am in*, or *I* *endure*, *exûlo*,
are.

exist, *I*, *sum*, *esse*, *fui*. (*Intr.* 49,
Obs.)

existence, *use sum* (*no Latin subst.*);
est Deus = *God exists*.

expediency, *utilit-as*, -atis, *f.*

experience, *I*, *exper-ior*, *iri*, -tus.

experience of life, *rerum peritia*, *f.*
experienced (*adj.*), (*rerum*) *peritus*.
(301, ii.)

explain, *I*, *ex-pono*, *ëre*, -posui,
-positum.

expose, *I* (*to danger*, *etc.*), *ob-jicio*,
ëre. (253, ii.)

expose, *I* (*confute*), *coargu-o*, *ëre*, -i.
express myself, *to*, *ut dicam*. (109,
note.)

extent. (174, b.)

extortion, *res repetundae*, *f. pl.*

extreme, *extremus*.

extremely, *use superl. of adj.*

extremity of, *extremus* (*adj.*). (See
60.)

exult in, *I*, *exulto*, *are* (*abl.*).

eye, *ocul-us*, -i, *m.*

eyes, *with my own*, *ipse* (355, d);
before our (332, 5, c).

face, *I* (*meet*), *obviam eo*, *ire*
(*dat.*).

face, *I* (*put to the proof*), *ex-perior*,
iri, -pertus.

face of, *in the*, *in* (*with abl.*, 273,
Obs.)

fact, *a*, *res*, *rei*, *f.*

faction, *a*, *facti-o*, -onis, *f.*

fail, *I* (*am wanting to*), *deficio*, *ëre*
(*used absolutely or with acc.*);
desum (*dat.*, 251). (See note
under abandon.)

fain, *I* *would*; or *I* *would fain have*
(*done*), *velim*, *vellem*. (See 149, i.)

fair (*adj.*), *pulcher*; *amoenus*.
(Voc. 9, *note*.)

fair (= *fair amount of*), *satia*.
(294.)

faith, *good*, *fid-es*, -ei, *f.*

faith in you, *I* *put*, *fidem tibi*
habeo.

faithful, *fidelis*, *e*.

¹ *Errare*, error generally, in the abstract; error, an error or blunder.

fall, I (in battle), pereo, ire, ii.
fall into, I, in-cido, ēre, -cidi, in
(acc.); or praeipito, are (*fall*
headlong); *into ruin,* corru-o,
 ēre, -i.
fallen, afflictus.
falls out, it, accidit ut.
falls to (my) lot. (See lot.)
false (of persons), mend-ax, -acis;
(of things), falsus; fictus.
false to, I am, de-sum (dat., 251).
 (See note under abandon.)
falsehood, a, mendacium, n.
falsehood (abstract), mentiri. (98, a.)
falsehood, I tell a; I speak falsely,
 ment-ior, iri, -itus. (54.)
fame, gloria, f.
family, familia, f.; his family, sui.
 (349, Obs.)
family (adj.), domesticus.
famine, fam-es, -is, f.
famous, praeclarus. (19.)
fancy, I, puto,¹ are; opinor, ari.
far, by, multo. (279.)
far from (adv.), parum.
far removed from, alienus (superl.)
 ab.
fare (subst.), vict-us, -ūs, m.
fare, I, mihi evēnit (impers.).
farmhouse, villa, f.
fatal, pernicios-us, -issimus; funes-
 tus. (Voc. 3, note.)
Fate, Fortuna (personified).
father, pat-er, -ris.
fatigue, lassitud-o, -inis, f.
fault, culpa, f.
fault, I commit a, pecco, are. (25.)
favour (kindness), a, beneficium, n.
favour, I, fāveo, ēre, fāvi, fap̄tum
(dat., 5).
favour, I do you this, hoc (acc.,
 237) tibi gratificor, ari.
favour, I win your, apud te gra-
 tiam in eo, ire.
favourable (suitable), idoneus.

fawn upon, I, adolor, ari. (253,
 iii.)
fear, met-us, -ūs, m.; tim-or, oris,
 m.
fear, I,² metu-o, ēre, -i; vereor, ēri,
 veritus (see 138, 139); *I fear, or*
have fears, for, metuo with dat.
 (248).
fear for my safety, I, saluti meae
 dif-fido, ēre, -fusus.
feasting (subst.), epulae, f. pl.
features, vult-us, -ūs (sing.).
feel, I, sen-tio, ire, -si, -sum.
feelings, anim-us, -i, m.
fellow-subject, civis, -is, m.
ferocity (of an act), atrocit-as,
 -atis, f.
fetters, catenae, f. pl.
few, pauci, ae, a; perpauci (very
 few).
fickle, lēvis.
fictitious, fictus.
field of battle, aci-es,³ -ei, f.
field, in the (in war), militiae,
opposed to domi. (312.)
fiercely (boldly), ferociter; acriter.
fifth, quintus.
fight, I, pugno, are; a battle,
 praelium com-mitto, ēre, -misi,
 -missum.
fill with (panic), I, in-cutio, ēre,
 -cussai, -cussum. (See note to
 Ex. 53.)
find, I, reper-io, ire, -i, -tum
(by search); in-venio, ire, -vēni,
 -ventum (by chance).
find fault with, I, vitupero, are.
fine, pulcher. (Voc. 9, note.)
finish, I, con-ficio, ēre, -feci, -fec-
 tum.
fire and sword, ferrum et ign-is
 (abl. -i). (See Voc. 1, note.)
firm, constans.
first (adv.); first . . . then; first . . .
secondly, etc. (534, and Obs.)

¹ Puto, "I incline to think," "I fancy," "I suspect," I think without having as yet any full clearly reasoned grounds for thinking; opinor, "I conjecture," with still less clear grounds; reor, rather "I calculate," "I come to a conclusion;" arbitror, I form my own personal judgment; censeo, I form and express a clear view or judgment.

² Timere, the feeling of fear, causing a wish to fly; metuere, the sense of danger, causing us to take precautions; vereri, often, to look on with respect or awe.

³ Acies, the edge or line of battle, often answers to the English "field," or even "battle."

- first of June, the*, kalendae Juniae (538); *by the* (326).
first to, first who. (62.)
five, quinque.
fix (my eyes) on, I, defi-go, ěre, -xi, -xum, in (acc.).
flag, signum, n.
flank, a, lat-us, -ěris, n.; in. (332, I, c.)
flatter, I, assentor, ari. (253, i.)
fleet, a, class-is, -is, f.
flight, fuga, f.
fling away, I, pro- or ab-jicio, ěre, -jeci, -jectum.
flock (subst.), grex, gregis, m.
flock together, to, congregari.
flourishing, opulentus (use superl., 57, a).
flow down, I, de-fluo, ěre, -fluxi.
fly, I, fugio, ěre, fūgi.
foe, host-is, -is, m.
follow, I, sequor, i, secutus;
follow up, insector, ari (acc.).
follow that, it does not, non idcirco.
folly, stultitia, f.; or use adj. stultus. (376.)
food, vict-us, ūs, m.
food, I get (of soldiers), frumentor, ari.
food, I take, cibum capio.
food, want of, inedia, f.
foolish, insipiens; it is foolish. (291, Obs. 1.)
foot of (a mountain) imus. (60.)
foot-soldier, ped-es, itis.
for (prep.), pro. (See 6 and 332, 7, b.)
for (conj.), nam; enim (Intr. 98); quippe. (See also Intr. 56, e.)
for some time (past), jamdudum. (181.)
forage, I get, pabulor, ari.
force, vis, f. (abl. vi).
force of arms, by, vi et armis.
force from, I, deturbo, are, de (abl.); *force out of (= wrench from),* extor-queo, ěre, -si, -tum. (257.)
forces (troops), copiae, f. pl.
forefathers, major-es, -um. (See Voc. 2, n., and p. 63, note 5.)
foreign, externus.
foreigner, a (opposed to civis), peregrin-us, -i, m.
foremost, primus.
- foresee, I*, praesentio; pro-spicio, ěre, -spexi, -spectum, pro-video, -vidi, -visum. (248.)
forest, a, silva, f.
foretell, I, praedi-co, ěre, -xi, -ctum; praesagio, ire.
forget, I, obliviscor, i, oblitus (gen., 308).
forgive, I, ignosco, ěre, -novi, -notum (dat., see 5); veniam do (dat. of person, gen. of thing); or condono, are (dat. of person, acc. of thing).
forgotten, I become, or I am, in oblivionem venio, ire, veni.
form line (of battle), I, aciem instruo, ěre, -xi, -ctum.
former, pristinus (see note under ancient), often joined with ille. (339, i.)
formidable, formidandus (393); *comp. magis formidandus.*
fortress, arx, arcis, f.
fortunate, fel-ix, -icis.
fortunate, it was most, peropportune accidit ut. (123.)
fortune, fortuna, f.; fortunes, fortunae, pl.
fortune, good, felicit-as, -atis, f.
Fortune's favourites. (529, f.)
foul, foedus.
foully, nefarie.
found, I (a colony), de-duco, ěre, -duxi, -ductum.
fourteen, quattuor decem.
fourth, quartus.
free (adj.), liber, a, um; free from, vacuus (265); *free from blame, extra culpam* (331, 9); *free from care, securus* (19).
free, I; I give freedom to; or I set at liberty (from), libero, are, ab or abl. (264); freed from, I am, liberor, ari, etc.
freedom, libert-as, -atis, f.
freedom, in, liber. (61.)
fresh, recens.
friend, amic-us, -i (61 a, and 55, 256); *close friend, amicissimus.*
friend here, my; your friend there. (338, Obs. 1 and 2.)
friend, I make my, amicorum in numero habeo. (240, Obs. 2.)

friendliness, benevolentia, *f.*
friendship, amicitia, *f.*; *friendship of*, I enjoy the, amico utor. (232.)
from, a, ab (*abl.*). (332, 1.)
front, in, a fronte (332, 1, c); *adversus*, *adj* (see 61); *in the front of* (=before), ante (331, 3).
fuel, I add (*metaph.*), faces subsidio, ēre (*dat.*).
fugitives, use *pres. part.* of fugio.
full (=the whole of), totus. (60.)
full of, plenus (*abl.*).
funds, pecuniae, *f. pl.*
funeral, fun-us, -eris, *n.*
fury, ira, *f.*, not furor. (Voc. 6, note; see also Ex. 62, note.)
fury, with the utmost, vehemētissime.
future, the, futura, *n. pl.* (52, 408.)
future, in, or for, the, in futurum; in posterum. (331, 24, b.)
gain, emolumentum, *n.*; utilitas, -atis, *f.*; (*for*) a source of gain, quaestui. (260, 3.)
gain by, I, = it is profitable to me. (260, 3.)
gained, partus (pario, peperī, I produce).
gallant, fortis (*superl.*); *for usage with proper noun or word denoting a person*, see 224.
gallantly, fortiter.
gallop, at full, equo concitato.
games, the, ludi, *m. pl.*
garrison, praesidium, *n.*
gate, porta, *f.*
gather (together), to (*intrans.*), convenire, -venī, -ventum; congregari. (20.)
Gauls, the, Gall-i, -orum.
gaze on, I, intu-eor, -ēri.
general, a, dux, ducis.
general (*adj.*), = of all. (59.)
generally (*believed*), = by most men.
generation, a, aet-as, -atis, *f.*
Genoa, Genua, *f.*
gentle, mitis; mitissimi ingenii (303, i.); so gentle as (224, Obs. 2).
gentlemen of the jury, iudices.
gentleness, lenitas, -atis, *f.*; I show gentleness (241); such, tam or ad mitis, etc.

gently, leniter.
German, a, German-us, -i.
Germany, Germania, f.
gesture, gest-us, -ūs, *m.*
get over (danger), I, fungor, i, -ctus, or defungor. (281.)
get ready for, I, me paro, are, ad with gerund. (396.)
get to, I. (See I reach.)
give, I, do, dare, dedi, datum; a verdict, dico, ēre; a name, nomen in-do, ēre, -didi, -ditum; my word (*formally*), fidem interpono, ēre.
gladly, libenter; or use adj., libens. (61.)
globe, the, orbis terrarum, *m.*
glorious, praeclarus.
glory, gloria, *f.*
gluttony, gula, *f.* (*lit. the gullet*).
go away, I, ab-eo, ire, -ii, -iturus.
go down to meet, I, obviam (*dat.*) descend-o, ēre, -i.
go out, I, ex-cedo, ēre, -cessi; ex-eo, ire, -ivi, -ii (*abl. with or without*, e, ex).
God, De-us, -i, *nom. pl.* Di.
gold, of, aureus.
good fortune, I enjoy, felix sum.
good name, existimati-o, -onis, *f.*; fama, *f.*
good old times. (339, i.)
good sense, prudentia, *f.*
good-will, benevolentia, *f.*
goodness, virt-us, -utis, *f.*
gossip, rumusculi, *m. pl.* (*diminutive of contempt*).
govern, I, praesum. (251.)
government, the. (175.)
governor (of city), praefect-us, -i.
gradually, paulatim.
grandfather, av-us, -i.
grandson, nepo-s, -tis.
gratitude, I show, gratiam re-fero, -ttuli; I feel, habeo. (98, b.)
grateful, gratus; I am most grateful, maximam habeo gratiam. (98, b.)
great, magnus, *comp.* major, *superl.* maximus.
great men, summi viri; viri praestantissimi.
greater (= more of), plus. (294.)

greatly, magnopere; vehementer;
maxime; with comparatives,
multo. (279.)

greatness of (your) debt = how much
(you) owe (debeo). (174.)

Greeks, the, Graeci, -orum.

greet, I, saluto, are.

groans (angry), convicium, n.
(sing.).

ground, on the, humi. (312.)

ground, perilous, on which they
stood, tale tempus; tantum peri-
culum. (See Ex. 62, note.)

groundless, falsus.

grounds (= reason), causa, f.; on
grounds of, propter. (331, 19, b.)

grow, I, = become.

grudge against you, I have a, tibi
succens-eo, ēre, -ui.

guard, a, custo-s, -dis, m.

guard, off his, incautus. (61.)

guard, I, custod-io, ire, -ivi, -ii,
-itum.

guard against, I, caveo, ēre, cavi,
cautum. (248.)

guest, a, hosp-es, -itis.

guilt, scel-us, -eris, n. (See note
under crime.)

guilty, nocen-s, -tis.

guilty deed, a, facin-us, -oris, n.
(See note under crime.)

guilty, I find, condemn-o, are; I am
found, condemn-or.

guilty of, I am (not), (non) id com-
mitto ut.

habit of, I am in the, soleo, ēre,
solitus (inf.).

hackneyed, tritus, lit. "well worn"
(tero).

hair, white, cani capilli (pl.).

half as many again. (535, d.)

halt, I, or come to a halt, con-
sisto, ēre, -stiti.

hand, a, man-us, -ūs, f.

hand, I am at, ad-sum, -esse, -fui.

hand in, I, af-fero, ferre.

hand over to, I, per-mitto, ēre,
-misi. (128.)

handful of = so small a band of.

hang back, I, cesso,¹ are.

Hannibal, Hannib-al, -alis.

happens, it, accidit, ēre. (123.)

happily (see 64), deorum beneficio
or peropportune accidit.

happiness, vita beata; beate vivere;
beatum esse (98, b); I enjoy,
beatus sum.

happy, beatus.

hard pressed, I am, premor, i.

hard to say, difficile dictu. (404.)

hardly, vix.

hardship, incommodum, n.; hard-
ships, molestiae, pl.

harm, I do. (See injure.)

harsh, asper, asperior, asperrimus.

harvest, mess-is, -is, f.

haste (subs.), celerit-as, -atis, f.;
there is need of haste, properato
opus est. (See 286 and 416.)

hasten, I, propero, are; absolutely
or with inf.; contend-o, ēre.

hate, I, od-i, -isse, -eram (perf.
with pres. meaning); am hated,
odio sum. (260, Obs. 2.)

hatred, odium, n.

have you, I would. (149, i.)

he himself, ipse (355); he (11, a, d;
see Ex. 45).

head, cap-ut, -itis, n.

head of, I am the, prae-sum. (251.)

headlong, prae-ceps, -cipitis (adj.).

health, I am in good, valeo, ēre,
-ui.

heap (abuse) on you, I, te (male-
dictis) onero, are.

hear, I, or hear of, aud-io, ire, -ivi,
-itum; accipio, ēre.

heard of by, have been. (258, ii.)

hearing, in my, use abl. abs., pres.
partic. (420, ii.); without a hear-
ing (425).

hearing, sense of, aur-es, -ium,
f. pl.

heart (affections, spirit), anim-us,
-i, m.; (disposition), ingenium, n.

heat, aest-us, -ūs, m.

heave a groan, I, ingem-isco, ēre, -ui.

Heaven (metaph.), Di immortales.
(See 17.)

¹ Cesso, I hang back from something which I have begun or have to do; differo, I put off action, adjourn it to another time; cunctor, I delay from caution or indecision.

heaven and earth, I appeal to, deorum hominumque fidem imploro.

heavy, gravis; or, in metaphorical sense only, laboriosus (use superl., 57, a).

height of, summus. (60.)

heir, the, haer-es, -edis.

help, I can (not). (137, i, j.)

help you, I, auxilio tibi sum. (259, 260, i); tibi opem fero.

helplessness, in, in-ops, -opis (adj.). (See 61.)

henceforth, jam.

herdsman, bubulc-us, -i, m.

here, hic.

here, I am, ad-sum, -esse, -fui.

hesitate to, I, dubito, are, inf. (136, b.)

hidden, occultus.

hide, I (by silence), dissimulo, are (p. 55, note).

Hiero, Hier-o, -onis.

high, altus; high hopes. (See 54.)

high-spirited, ferox. (See note under boldly.)

highest, summus.

highly (I honour). (See I honour.)

himself, ipse, a, um. (355.)

his, ejus; illius; suus. (See 11, c, d and e, and Pronouns i.)

his own (enemy), sibi, or sui (55), ipse (inimicus).

historian, rerum script-or, -oris.

hoist (a flag), I, e-do, ěre, -didi, -ditum.

hold, I, obtin-eo, ěre, -ui (19); habeo.

hold, I (think), duco, ěre, duxi, ductum; hold (count) as, habeo (240); habeo pro (240, Obs. 2).

hold my peace, I, contic-esco, ěre, -ui. (See 17, Obs.)

home, at, domi (312); at his own home (316, iii.); from home (with verb of motion), domo (9, b); home (I return), domum (9, b).

home-sickness, suorum desiderium. homes and hearths, for, pro aris et focis.

honest, probus.

honesty, probit-as,¹ -atis, f.

honour (good faith), fid-es, -ei, f.

honour (distinction), hon-os, -oris, m.

honour (self-respect), dignit-as, -atis, f.

honour (as opposed to expediency), honest-as, -atis, f. (51, c; see note under honesty.)

honour, I pay (you), or I honour (you), honorem (tibi) habeo; te in honore habeo; honour highly, in summo honore habeo.

honour (with) I (publicly), orno, are (abl.); or pro-sequor, i, -secutus.

honourable, honestus; to be honourable (creditable to), honori esse. (260, 3.)

hope for, I, spero, are. (23.)

hopes, spes,² spei, f.; I form hopes, spero. (54.)

horrified at, I am, per-horresco, ěre, -horruī.

host, a, multitud-o, -inis, f.

hostage, obs-es, -idis.

hour, hora, f.

hour of victory, in the. (63.)

house, in my, apud me (331, 4, a); domi meae (316, iii.).

household, a, familia, f.

how. (See 157, ii.)

how (disgraceful, etc.) (260, Obs. 1.)

how much (adv.), quantum.

how much (with comparat.), quanto.

how often, quoties. (157, ii.)

human, humanus; or gen. pl. of homo. (59.)

human beings, homines.

humble means, tenuis fortuna.

humble origin, of, humili loco natus.

humour, I, gratificor, ari (dat.).

hundred thousand, a. (527.)

¹ *Honestas* is not "honesty," but the abstract term for what is honourable (*honestum*) in a general sense.

² *Spes* is one of the few words in which Latin goes further in forming an abstract noun than English: it is rarely used in the plural of the "hopes" of a single person, or even of many. Cf. *ingenium, memoria*.

hurl, *I*, con-jicio, ěre, -jĕci, -jec-tum; *at*, in (*acc.*).

hurry away from, *I*, avolo, are.

hurry to, *I*, conten-do, ěre, -di (*ad*); festino, are.

husband, vir, viri.

I, ego. (See 11, *a* and *b*; also 334.)

idle (vain), vanus.

if, si. (See Conditional Clauses and 171.)

if not . . . yet. (466, *c.*)

ignorant of, *I am*, ignoro,¹ are (*trans.*); nescio, ire. (174, *e.*)

ill, *I am*, aegroto, are.

ill-starred, infelix, *comp.* infelicior. (57, *b.*)

illustrious, praeclarus (*superl.*); praestans (*superl.*). (57, *a.*)

imagine, *I (think)*, puto, are. (See note under *fancy*.)

imagine, *I (conceive)*, animo concipio, ěre.

imitate, *I*, imitor, ari.

immediately after. (332, *i*, *g*, or 331, *21*, *c.*)

immensely, quam plurimum.

impart (to), *I*, communico, are (*cum*). (253, *iv.*)

impiety, impiet-as, -atis, *f.*

implore, *I*, obsecro, are.

importance of the matter, the, tanta res.

importance to me, it is of, meā interest (310); *of the utmost importance to* (= *with reference to*). (310, *iii.* and *iv.*)

important, gravis.

impose upon you (conditions), *I*, tibi impono, ěre.

impossible, it is, or it is quite. (125, *f.*)

impress (affect) you, *I*; *make an impression on you*, te, or oftener animum tuum, moveo or commoveo, ěre, -mōvi, -mōtum; *where more than one person is implied*, pl. animos.

impression (of), opini-o, -onis, *f.*

imprisonment, vincula, *n. pl.*

improvident, improvidus.

impulse, of its own, sua sponte.

(See note under *voluntarily*.)

impunity, with, impune (*adv.*).

impute this to you as a fault, *I*, hoc tibi vitio ver-to, ěre, -ti, -sum; culpa do, dāre, dedi, datum. (250, *2.*)

in; *in a time of*, in (*abl.*). (See 332, *5*; 273, *Obs.*)

incapable of, *I am (morally)*, abhorreo, ěre, ab; alienissimus sum ab. (See *unable*.)

inclination, volunt-as, -atis, *f.*

incline to think that, *I*. (169.)

incompetence (ignorance), inscitia, *f.*

inconsiderable (of danger), parum gravis.

inconsistent with, alienus ab.

incorruptibility, integrit-as, -atis, *f.*

increase, *I (trans.)*, au-geo, ěre, -xi, -ctum.

increase, *I (intrans.)*, cresco, ěre, crevi.

incur, *I*, incurro, ěre, in (*acc.*);

incur loss, damnum capio, ěre, cēpi.

indebted to you for this, *I am*, hoc tibi acceptum re-fero, -ferre,

-ttuli (*metaph. from account-book*).

indecisive, an-ceps, -cipitis.

India, India, *f.*

indict, *I*, reum facio; accuso. (306.)

indictment, crim-en, -inis, *n.*

indifferent to, neglegens (*with gen.*, 301); *I am indifferent to*, parvi or nihili (305) facio.

indignation, use indignor, ari. (415, *b.*)

indispensable, necessarius.

individuals; *as individuals*, singuli (380, *b.*)

induced, *I am*, mihi persuadetur. (244, *Obs.*)

indulge, *I*, indul-geo, ěre, -si (*dat.*).

indulgence (forgiveness), venia, *f.*

¹ Nescio, "I am absolutely ignorant of," opposed to scio; ignoro, "I have not made myself acquainted with," opposed to novi; illum ignoro (not nescio), I do not know him.

inexperience, use adj., imperitus. (376, iii.)

infallible, certissimus.

infamous, I am declared, ignominia notor, ari.

infant, infan-s, -tis.

infantry, pedit-es, -um.

inferior to. (278.)

infest, I, infestum habeo. (240.)

inflict (loss) on (you), I (damno te) afficio, ère. (283.)

inflict death on you (judicially), I, morte te multo, are.

inflict punishment on, I, poenas sum-o, ère, -psi, -ptum, de (abl.).

influence, auctorit-as,¹ -atis, f.

influence with, I have (much, etc.), possum apud. (331, 4, d.)

information, I give, doceo. (231.)

inhuman, inhumanus.

injure, I, noc-eo, ère, -ui, -itum (dat.).

injury (harm), damnum, n. (See note under *wrong*.)

innocence, entire, use superl. of innocens, and see 224, Obs. 1.

innocent, I am, extra culpam sum. (331, 9.)

innocent, the, innocentes. (50.)

inquire, I, quaero, ère, a or ex; (te) rogo, inter-rogo, are (231, note); *percunctor, ari* (acc.).

inspiration, afflat-us, -ūs, m.

instead of (doing, etc.), adeo non . . . ut; non modo . . . sed; tantum abfuit ut . . . ut (124); *or quum posset, deberet* (431, Obs.).

instigation, use auctor (424), *or suadeo, moneo* (420, ii.).

institution, an, institutum. (51, b.)

instrumentality, by your. (267, Obs.)

insult, an, contumelia, f.

intellect, men-s, -tis, f.

intend to, I, use fut. in -rus. (See 14, c.)

intent on, I am, do operam. (397.)

intention of, with the. (107.)

intentionally, consulto; consilio. (268.)

interest, gratia, f. (See note under *influence*.)

interest (advantage), utilit-as, -atis, f. (51, c.)

interest or interests of, I consult, consulo, ère with dat. (See 248.)

interest of, in the, causā. (290, Obs.)

interfere with, I, inter-venio, ire, vëni (dat.).

interpose, I (intrans.), = interfere.

interposition, miraculous. (64.)

interpreter, interpr-es, -etis.

intervene, I, inter-venio, ire, -vëni.

interview with, I have an, con-venio, ire, -vëni (trans., 24 and 229); col-loquor, i, -locutus (cum).

intimate terms with, I live on. (282.)

into, in. (331, 24.)

intolerable (to), almost, vix ferendus. (394 and 258, i.)

intrust, I, per-mitto, ère, -misi, -missum; mando, are. (See 247 and 128.)

invade, I, bellum, or arma, in-fero, ferre, -tuli, illatum, in (acc., 331, 24, c).

invasion, use bellum infero (pass. part., 417, i.).

invest (a city), I, circum-sedeo, ère (trans., 229).

inveigh against, I. (331, 24, c.)

invent, I (fabricate), fingo, ère, finxi, fictum.

inventor, invent-or, -oris: fem. form inventr-ix, -icis.

invite, I, invito, are. (331, 24, b.)

involved in, I am, versor, ari, in (abl.).

involves, it (implies), habet.

irruption, an, incursi-o, -onis, f.

island, insula, f.

issue, the, event-us, -ūs, m.; but see 174, d.

¹ *Auctoritas*, moral influence as distinct from authority in the sense of *power*; *potestas*, legal or legitimate authority or power; *imperium*, military authority or power; *potentia*, "power," "might," in a more general sense; *regnum*, kingly or despotic power; *gratia*, "interest" with the powerful; *favor*, "popularity" with the masses.

Isthmus, the, Isthm-us, -i, f.

Italy, Italia, f.

itself, ipse, a, um. (355.)

January, Januarius. (See Voc. I, note.)

javelin (Roman soldiers'), pilum, n.

jealous of you, I am, tibi in-video, ěre, -vidi.

jewel (metaph.), res sufficient. (222, Obs.)

join (you), I (intrans.), me (tibi, or ad te), adjun-go, ěre, -xi, -ctum; the ranks of, ad.

journey, a, it-er, -ineris, n.; I am on a journey, iter facio.

joy, laetitia, f.; shouts of joy, laetantium (laetor) clamor. (See 415, b, and the caution.)

joyful, laetus.

judge, I (think), reor, ratus sum. (See note under fancy.)

judgment (decision), judicium, n.

judgment (will), arbitrium, n.

judgment (good), consilium, n.

judgment is different, my, aliter judico. (54.)

June (month of), (mensis) Junius: first of, kalendae Juniae. (538.)

juniors, juniores; natu minores.

jury (judges), judices. (Voc. 7, note 2.)

just (adj.), justus.

just (late), nuperrime (nuper).

just (then), jam tum.

justification, causa, f.

justly, jure. (See note under rightly.)

keenness, aci-es, -ei, f. (lit. edge).

keep, I (promises), sto, stare, stēti (abl.).

keep (within), I, contin-eo, ěre, -ui (intra).

keep anxious about, I, sollicitum habeo de. (240.)

keep back from, I, prohibeo, ěre; arceo, ěre (abl.).

keep in the dark, or secret, I, celo. (230, 231.)

keep my word, I, fidem prae-sto, are, -stiti.

kill, I, inter-ficio, ¹ ěre, -feci, -fectum; occi-do, ěre, -di, -sum.

kind deed, a, beneficium, n.; officium, n.

kind of, every, omnis, e.

kind of man, the, use qualis. (174, c.)

kind, of this, hujusmodi; ² of the, of that kind; that kind of, ejusmodi. (See 87.)

kindly (adj.), benignus; humanus.

kindly disposed to, bene-volus, -volentior, in. (255, Obs.)

kindness, bonit-as, -atis, f.; (act of), beneficium, n.; I return (see gratitude).

king, rex, regis; king's, regius (adj., 58).

know, I, scio, ire (a fact); nōvi, nōsse, nōveram (nōram) (a person); notum habeo (188).

knowledge (learning), doctrina, f. knowledge, to, or within, my. (507.)

lack, I, mihi deest. (251.)

laden, onustus.

laggard, a, ignavus.

lamentations, I make, lamentor, ari.

land (opposed to sea), terra, f.

land, our (territory), agri nostri. (See country and 16, a.)

land on, I (trans.), ex-pono, ěre, -posui, -positum, in (abl.).

landing of, the, partic. of expono. (417, i.)

language (conversation), serm-o, onis, m.

language, I use this, haec loquor, i. (See 25 and 54.)

larger, maj-or, -us.

last (to), the, ultimus. (62.)

last (of past time), proximus; for, or within, the last (days, etc.) (325, Obs.)

last, at, tandem; demum.

last-ing, diuturnus.

late (recent), recen-s, -tis.

¹ *Interficere*, general word for to kill: *occidere*, to kill with a weapon, as in war: *nequare*, to put to death cruelly: *trucidare*, to murder inhumanly, to "butcher."

² *Hujusmodi*, *ejusmodi*, etc., are constantly used contemptuously; *talis* rarely so. (Ex. 33 B, n. 4.)

late in life, jam senex (63); pro-
vecta jam aetate (abl. abs.).
late, too (adv.), sero.
lately, nuper, superl., nuperrime;
but lately, paulo ante. (279,
caution.)
launch against, I, im-mitto, ere,
in (acc.).
law, a, lex, legis, f. (Ex. 9, n. 2.)
lawful, legitimus.
lay before, I, defero, ferre, ad.
lay down my arms, I (disband or
surrender), ab armis dis-cedo, ere,
-cessi.
lay violent hands on myself, I.
(253, ii.)
lay waste, I. (See waste.)
lazy, ignavus.
lead a life, I. (237.)
lead across, or through, I, trans-
duco, ere, -duxi. (229, Obs.)
lead out, I, educo, ere.
lead to, I, duco, ere, duxi, in (acc.).
leadership. (424.)
learn, I, disco, ere, didici.
learn fresh (additional), I, ad-disco,
ere, -didici.
learning, doctrina, f.; but I advance
in learning, doctior fio; and see
279 for superior in learning.
least, at, saltem; I at least, ego
certe.¹
leave, I, or leave behind, re-linquo,
ere, -liqui, -lictum (see note
under abandon); (a place), ex-
cedo, ere, abl. or ex; proficiscor,
i, -fectus (abl., see 314); leave my
country (264).
leave you (free) to, I. (197, Obs.
2.)
leave alone, I, missum, am, um,
facio. (240.)
leave nothing, I (298, b); leave no-
thing undone (137, i.).
leave, you have my. (331, 16, c.)
left (adj.), sinist-er, -ra, -rum.
legion, a, legi-o, -onis, f.
leisure, otium, n.; at leisure, otiosus
(adj.).

Lemnos, Lemn-os, gen. -i.
less (adv.) minus; less than (with
numerals). (318, Obs.)
let you, I, tibi tra-do, ere, -didi,
ditum with gerundive. (400.)
letter, a, litter-ae, -arum, f.; from,
a, ab.
levy (subst.), delect-us, -ūs, m.; I
hold a levy, delectum habeo.
levy contributions on you, I, pecunias
tibi impero, are.
liar, a, mend-ax, -acis (adj.).
liberties, libert-as, -atis, f. (sing.);
=exemptions, immunitat-es, -um,
f. pl.
life, vita, f.
lifetime, in his (61); in your father's,
=your father being alive (vivus),
abl. abs. (424).
like (adj.), similis. (254, 255.)
likely to, use partic. in -rus. (14,
c.)
line (of battle), aci-es, -ei, f. (see
note under field); line of march,
agm-en, -inis, n.; lines (fortified),
munimenta, n. pl.; line (metaph.
for "opinion"), judicium, n.
linger, I, cunctor, ari.
list of, I write a, per-scribo, ere
(trans.).
listen to, I, audio, ire. (23.)
listen to, I (comply with or obey),
obtempero, are. (See obey,
note.)
listen to prayer, to, exorari.
literature, litterae, f. pl.
little (see 53); little of, parum
(294).
live, I, vivo, ere, vixi, victum.
load, a, on-us, -eris, n.
locality, loc-i, -orum, m.
lofty, praealtus.
London, Londinum, n.
long (in distance), longus; in time,
diutinus,² diuturnus.
long (adv.), diu, or jam diu; long
ago, jam pridem; long continued,
diutinus; long tried, spectatus.
(57, a.)

¹ Certe, when it follows a word, means "at least," and is equivalent to *saltem*, more emphatic than *quidem*.

² *Diuturnus*, long, lasting, of long standing: *diutinus*, long continued, in a bad sense, "wearisome."

longer (adv.), *diutius*; *no longer*, or *any longer* (after a negative), *jam* or *diutius* (328, a); *how much longer?* *quousque*, or *quousque tandem* (157, Obs.)

look at, *I*, *specto*, *are* (see note under *see*); *intueor*, *eri* (perf. rare).

look down on, *I*, *de-spicio*, *ëre*, -*spexi*, -*spectum* (trans.).

look for, *I*, (wait for), *expecto*, *are*. (23.)

look for (in vain), *I*, *desidero*, *are*.

look forward to, *I*, *provideo*, *ëre* (acc.).

look round for, *I*, *circum-spicio*, *ëre*, -*spexi*. (22, 23.)

look up at, *I*, *suspicio*, *ëre*.

looked for, *than I had*, *spe*, or *expectatione*, *meâ*. (277.)

lose, *I*, *a-mitto*, *ëre*, -*misi*, -*missum*.

lose, *I* (opportunity), *de-sum*, *esse*. (251.)

lose heart, *I*, *animo deficio*, *ëre*; *of more than one person*, *animis*.

lose my labour *I* (= *I effect nothing*), *nihil ago*.

lose time, *I*, *tempus tero*, *ëre*, *trivi*, *tritum*.

lose the day, *I* (= *I am conquered*), *vincor*, *i*, *victus*.

loss, *damnum*, *n*.; *detrimentum*, *n*. *loss of*, *without the*, *use a-mitto*, *ëre*. (425.)

loss what to do, *I am at a*. (172.)

lost, *all is*, *de summa re actum est*.

lot (metaph.), *lot in life*, *fortuna*, *f*.

lot, it falls to (my), (mihi) *contingit*:¹ *it is men's lot to*, *hominibus . . .*

ut. (123.)

love, *I*, *di-ligo*, *ëre*, -*lexi*, -*lectum*; *amo*,² *are*.

lovely, *pulcherrimus*.

low, *abjectus*; *very low*, *infirmus*. (57, a.)

low, or *lowly*, *birth*, *ignobilitas*, -*atis*, *f*.

lowest part of, *Imus*. (60.)

loyal, *fidelis*.

loyalty, *fid-es*, -*ei*, *f*.

luxury, *luxuria*, *f*.

mad, *I am* (quite), *furo*, *ëre*. (See Voc. 6, n.)

made, *I am being*, *fio*, *fieri*, *factus*.

magnificent, *praeclarissimus*.

magnitude, *use quantus*. (174, a.)

mainly, *potissimum*.

maintain, *I*, *sustin-ëo*, *ëre*, -*ui*.

make, *I*, *facio*, *ëre*, *feci*, *factum*;

make war, *infero*, *ferre* (253, ii.);

make my way, *iter facio*.

make fast (bind), *I*, *constri-ngo*, *ëre*, -*nxi*, -*ctus*.

malice, *malitia*; ³ *malevolentia*.

Malta, *Melita*, *f*.

man, *vir*, *viri*; *hom-o*, -*inis* (for the difference see p. 153, note 3).

man, to a, *ad unum*. (331, i., f.).

management, *procuratio*, -*onis*, *f*.

manhood, *in quite early*, *admodum*

adolescens. (63, and p. 63, note 3.)

manifestly, = *obviously*. (64.)

mankind, *homines*; or *genus humanum*.

manliness, *with*, *viril-iter*, -*ius*.

manner, *in this*. (268 and Obs.)

manner of life. (174, c.)

manners, *mor-es*, -*um*, *m. pl*.

many, *mult-i*, -*ae*, -*a*.

marble (adj.), *marmoreus*.

march, *a*, *it-er*, -*ineris*, *n*.

march, *I*, *iter facio*.

Marseilles, *Massilia*, *f*.

marsh, *pal-us*, -*udis*, *f*.

mass (of the people), *vulg-us*, -*i*, *n*.;

for dat. *in vulgus*, 254, note.

massacre, *caed-es*, -*is*, *f*.; *I am pre-sent at the*, *use gerundive*. (417, ii.)

¹ *Contingit*, "happens" by a natural process; oftener, but not always, of what is desirable: *accidit*, "happens," "falls out," by chance, often, but not always, of what is undesirable: *usu venit*, "falls within my experience:" *evenit*, "happens," "turns out," as the result of previous circumstances.

² *Amare* expresses greater warmth of feeling than *diligere*: it is "to love passionately," "to be enamoured of."

³ *Malevolentia*, ill-will; *malitia*, the same feeling shown in underhand attacks or schemes; *malignitas*, ill-will shown in a desire to defraud, "niggardliness."

massacre, *I*, trucidō, are. (See *kill*.)
matter, *a*, res, rei, *f*.
matters little, *it*, parvi refert (310 at end); *it matters not*, nihil refert (*ibid.*).
mature life, in, jam adultus. (63.)
May (month of), (mensis) Maius. (538, *n*.)
may, *I*. (197 and *Obs.*)
mean (*adj.*), sordidus; abjectus.
mean, *what I, you, etc.*; or *what is the meaning* (174) of, quid mihi velim, tibi velis, etc. (163).
means, by no, nequaquam; haudquaquam; nullo modo; minime.
means, by this. (268.)
means, humble, tenuis fortuna.
meantime, interea.
meddle with, *I*, at-tingo, ēre, -tigi, -tactus.
Medes, the, Medi, -orum.
meditate on, *I*, cogito, are de (*abl.*).
meet, *I*, obviam fio (*dat.*); *I come, go, go down, to meet*, obviam venio, ire; eo, ire; descendo, ēre.
meet, I (*endure*), ex-perior, iri, -pertus.
meet (*doom*), *I*, ob-eo, ire, -ii (*acc.*).
meet (*together*) at, to, convēnire ad. (331, *i. c.*)
member of the nation, or state, civ-is, -is, *m*.
memory, memoria, *f*.
menace (*with*), *I*, denuntio, are (*acc. of thing, dat. of person*); for *menaces* use *gerund.* (99.)
mention, I, mentionem facio (*gen.*).
mention, not to, ne dicam. (100, *note.*)
merchant vessel, navis oneraria.
mercy, misericordia, *f*.
mercy, I place myself entirely at your, totum me tibi tradō ac permitto.
mere (*from the*), ipse (*use abl. of cause, or propter*: see also 355, *c*): *merely*, = *only*: "*mere*" and "*merely*" are often expressed by emphatic order simply.
message, *a*, nuntium, *n*.
messenger, nunti-us, -i, *m*.
method, rati-o, -onis, *f*.
mid-day, meridi-es, -ei, *m*.

middle of, midst of. (60.)
midst of, in the. (332, 5, *h*.)
mighty, superl. of magnus.
Milan, Mediolanum, *n*.
mile, a, mille, *pl.* millia, *sc.* passuum (1000 paces of 5 feet).
mind, animus, -i, m.; (= *intellect*), men-s, -tis, *f*.; *his whole mind*, = *all that he thinks* (*sentio, ire*).
mind (*verb imperat.*), fac, cura, ut. (141.)
mind, I am out of my, insan-io, ire, -ivi, -ii. (See 25.)
mind, I am of one (*with*), consentio, ire, -sensi (*cum*).
mingle with, I (*intrans.*), im-misceor, (20), ēri, -mixtus (*dat.*).
mingled . . . and, et . . . et.
miraculous interposition, by a. (64.)
mislead, I, de-cipio, ēre, -cepi, -ceptum.
missile, a, telum, *n*.
missing, I am, desideror, ari.
mistake, a, err-or, -oris, *m*.; in, *gen.* (300.)
mistake, I make a; am mistaken, erro, are.
Mithridates, Mithridat-es, -is.
mob, multitud-o, -inis, f.
mode, rati-o, -onis, f.
moderate (*not too great*), modicus;
mediocris ("middling").
moment when, at the. (433.)
money, pecunia, f.
monstrous (*wicked*), nefarius.
monument, monumentum, n.
moon, luna, f.
morals, mor-es, -um, m.
more (*adv.*), plus; magis: *as subst.* (294), plus, *n*. *pl.* (54) plura;
more than (= *rather than*), magis quam; *more than once*, see *once*.
more (*never*), posthac.
moreover, praeterea.
morning, in the, māne (*adv.*).
morrow, the (*still in future*), dies crastinus; *on the morrow* (*of a past date*), die postero.
mortal (*wound*), morti-fer, -fera, -ferum. (18, 19.)
most (*used loosely in comparing two only*), plus. (See *more*.)

most men, plerique.
 motive, from, or with, a, use ob (331, 14) and causa, f.; my only motive is (483, Obs.). (See also 107.)
 mount up, I, ascend-o, ěre, -i.
 mountain, mon-s, -tis, m.
 mournfully, moestus. (61.)
 mouth, in every one's. (257.)
 move, I (intrans.), moveor, ěri, motus. (20.)
 much, multus, a, um; as subst. (see 53); = much of (294); with comparat., multo (279).
 multitude, multitud-o, -inis, f.
 murder, a, caed-es, -is, f.
 murder, I, neco, are.
 murderer, = he who murders or murdered. (175.)
 must be, use part. in -dus. (198, iii.)
 my, meus. (See 11, c.)
 myself (emphatic), ipse (355, d); (reflexive), me, me ipsum (356, ii.); for myself, ego, or equidem (11, a, and 334, i.).
 name, a, nom-en, -inis, n.; in name (nominally). (274.)
 name, good, fama, f.
 Naples, Neapol-is, -is, loc. -i.
 Narbonne, Narbo, -onis, m.
 nation, popul-us, -i, m.; civit-as, -atis, f., or civ-es, -ium; republica. (See 19, and Voc. 2, n.)
 national, communis; or gen. of respublica. (58.)
 national cause, the, respublica; communis rei p. causa.
 natural powers, natura, f., and see note under character.
 naturally (by nature), naturā.
 nature, use qualis or quis. (174, b.)
 native land, or country (see 16, a); I leave my, patriā cedo (264).
 nearly, prope, paene. (See note under almost.)
 necessary, necessarius; is necessary. (See 286.)
 necessities (of life). (286.)
 necessity (= emergency), temp-us, -oris, n.
 need of; is needed, etc., opus. (286.)

needs must, necesse est. (201, and p. 144, note.)
 neglect, I, negle-go, ěre, -xi, -ctum.
 neighbour (actual), vicin-us, -i; in sense of "fellow man," or "men," alter; ceteri. (372.)
 neighbouring, finitimus.
 neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque.
 neither of the two. (340, ii.)
 never, nunquam; and never, nec unquam. (110.)
 new, novus.
 news of, the, use nuntio, are (417, i.); news has been brought (46, a).
 next, the, proximus; insequen-s, -tis; next (day), posterus; or (on the), postridie (adv.).
 next to (prep.). (331, 21, c.)
 night, nox, noctis, f.
 nineteen, undeviginti. (527.)
 ninety-second, nonagesimus alter. (531.)
 no (162); I say or answer "no," nego, are.
 no, none (adj.), nullus.
 no (not) more (adv.) than, nihilo magis quam.
 no one, none, nemo, gen. nullius (see 223, note); and no one, none, nec quisquam (110).
 no sooner . . . than, ubi primum; simul atque. (428.)
 noble (morally), praeclarus (p. 63, note 4); pulcherrimus (57, a); for usage with proper nouns and persons see 224.
 nobles. (51, a, and note.)
 noon, noon-day. (See mid-day.)
 nor, neque; in final clauses, neu.
 not yet, nondum.
 nothing, nihil.
 now, jam (= by this time, can be used of the past); nunc (at the present, at the moment of speaking); hodie (to-day).
 now . . . long, jamdiu; jampridem. (181.)
 now . . . now, modo . . . modo.
 number (proportion or part), par-s, -tis, f.
 number of, the (interrog.). (174, a.)
 numbers, great, multi; complures; superior, multitud-o, -inis, f.

numerous, more, plures; such numerous, tot.

oath, *jusjurandum*, *jurisjurandi*, *n.* obedient to, *I am*, = *obey*.

obey, *I*, *par-eo*,¹ *ère*, -*ui* (*dat.*, 5);

obtempero, *are* (*dat.*); the orders of, *dicto audiens sum* (*dat.*).

object, *I*, *recuso*, *are* (136, a); *I do not* (131).

object (*subst.*), *objects*, (see 54); *object of unpopularity with you*, *I am*, *invidiā flagro*, *are*, *apud vos*.

obligation, *I am under*, *gratiam debeo*. (98, b.)

obstacle, (*id*) *quod obstat*.

obstinate, *pertin-ax*, *comp.* -*acior*.

obtain, *I*, *adipiscor*,² *i*, *adeptus*; *con-sequor*, *i*, -*secutus* (18, 19);

a request, *impetro*, *are*.

obviously. (64.)

occasion, *on that*, *tum*. (*Intr.* 19.)

occupy, *I* (*hold*), *ten-eo*, *ère*, -*ui*.

off (*at a distance of*), *I am*, *absum*. (318.)

offence, *an*, *peccatum*, *n.* (408.)

offend, *I* (*annoy*), *offen-do*, *ère*, -*di*, -*sum*. (245.)

offer, *I*, *de-fero*, -*ferre*, -*tuli*, -*latum*; *offer* (*terms*), *fero*.

office, *magistrat-us*, -*ūs* (18, 19); *I am in*, *in magistratu sum*; *I hold*, *m. habeo*; *obtimeo*.

officers, *the* (*military*), *tribuni* (*militum*) *centurionesque*.

often, *saepe*; *so often*, *toties*.

old, *antiquus*; *vetus*. (See note under *ancient*.)

old age, *senect-us*, -*utis*, *f.*; *in my*. (63.)

old man, *sen-ex*, -*is*.

old-world, *old-fashioned*, *priscus*; *antiquus*. (See note under *ancient*.)

oldest, *natu maximus*.

once, *semel*; *often exp. by tense of verb* (471, note); *more than once*, *semel ac saepius*. (533, c.)

once (*formerly*), *quondam*; *olim*.³

once, *at* (*immediately*), *statim*.

once, *at* (*at the same time*), *use idem*. (366, i.)

one (*numeral*), *unus*; *of*, *ex* (529, e); *one of the best* (529, d); *one or two*; *one, two, several*. (529, g.)

one (*indefinite*), *one who* (see 72); *one so* (224, Obs. 2).

one, not, *nemo* (223, note), *ne unus quidem* (529, a).

one, . . . the other. (368.)

one and all, *cuncti* (see under *all*); *omnes* (*placed last*).

one by one, *singuli*. (380, b.)

one day (= *at some time or other*), *aliquando*. (See note under *once*.)

one thing . . . another, it is. (92.)

only, *solum*, *modo*, *tantum* (*placed after the word qualified*); *this and only this* (347, example); *not only*, *non solum*, *non modo*.

onset, *impet-us*, -*ūs*, *m*.

open, *I*; *throw open*; *open wide*; *cause to be opened*, *pate-facio*, *ère*, -*feci*, -*factum*.

open, to be, *patère* (*no fut. in -rus*. 193, iii.)

open to question, is, = *can be doubted*, *dubitari potest*.

opening, first possible. (377.)

openly, *palam*.

opinion, good, *existimati-o*, -*onis*, *f*.

opinion on, your, = *what you think of* (*censeo*, *ère*, *de*).

opponent, I am an. See *I oppose*.

opportunity, *occase-o*, -*onis*, *f*; *faculty-as*, -*atis*, *f*; *first possible*. (377.)

¹ *Pareo*, the general word for "I obey," applied often to habitual obedience of any kind: *obtempero*, I obey as from a sense of reason and right; *oboeo*, I obey a single command; *obsequor*, "I comply with," "I suit myself to;" *dicto audiens sum*, I render implicit obedience, as that of a soldier.

² *Nanciscor*, I obtain, often without effort, by circumstances or chance; *consequor*, I obtain a thing which I follow after as a good; *adipiscor*, I obtain after effort; *impetro*, by entreaty.

³ *Olim* (*ille, olle*), at a distant point, in the past or (sometimes) in the future; *quondam* (*quidam*), only of the past, and generally during some space of time in the past; *aliquando*, at some time or other, past, present or future, opposed to "never."

oppose, I, adversor, ari (dat., 244, b);
ob-sto, are, -stiti (253, i.).

opposite to. (331, 2.)

opposition, in spite of your, use
partic. of adversor, ari. (420, ii.)

oppress, I, vexo, are. (19.)

oppressive, iniquus.

or, aut, vel (see p. 14, note); in final
and consec. clauses, 103, 110;

interrog., 159, 160; 168, and Obs.

orator, orat-or, -oris.

order, I, jubeo, ēre, jussi, jussum.
(120, 128.)

orders, jussa, n. pl. (51, b.)

orders, I give, impero, are; edico,
ēre, etc. (127, b, and 128.)

origin (extraction), gen-us, -eris, n.;
of humble origin, humili loco
natus.

originally (sprung). (See sprung.)

orphan, orbus, a, um.

other, the (of two), ille (339, iv.);
alter (368); others, alii, or (= other
men, the rest) ceteri (372); it is
for, use gen. (291, Obs. 4).

other men's, or persons', alienus
(adj., 58).

ought, I. (198.)

our, nost-er, -ra, -rum.

our men, nostri. (50.)

out of, e, ex (332, 5), or de (abl.).

outcries, angry, maledicta, n. pl.
(408.)

outdo, I (far), (facile) vinco, -ēre,
supero, are.

outnumber, we, plures sumus quam.

outrage on, the, use gerundive or
partic. of violō. (417, ii. or i.)

outside (the city). (311, Obs.)

outstrip, I, = outdo.

over (more than), plus. (318, Obs.).

over with, all. (332, 3, d.)

over-reach, I, circum-venio, ire,
-vĕni. (229.)

overwhelm, I, obru-o, ēre, -i, -tum;
op-primo, ēre, -pressi, -pressum.

owe, I, debeo, ēre.

owing to, propter (acc., 331, 20, b).

own, his, suus (11, c); my own, meus.

pacify, I, placo, are.

pain, dol-or, -oris, m.

painful, is. (260, 3.)

palace, dom-us, -ūs, f.; the king's,
domus regia. (58.)

panic, pav-or, -oris, m.

pardon, I, ig-nosco, ēre, -novi,
-notum (dat., 5); pardon (you)
for (this); hoc tibi condono, are
(247); *I wish you pardoned; tibi*
ignotum volo (240, Obs. 1); by
pardoning, gerund of ignosco (99).

parent, paren-s, -tis.

park (pleasure grounds), horti, m.
pl.

Parliament = Senate.

part, for my, equidem. (See
also 334, i.)

part, it is our. (291, Obs. 2.)

part, the greater, plerique.

part from, I, discedo, ēre, ab.

part in, I take, me im-misceo, ēre,
-miscui, -mixtum (dat.); a battle,
intersum (dat.); politics, attingo.

part in, without, exper-s, -tis (gen.,
301, ii.).

partly, partim.

party, the (popular), pars, -tis, and
see popular and aristocratic.

party, one . . . the other. (340, iii.)

pass (a law), I, perfero, ferre.

pass (time), I, dēgo, ēre, dēgi; ago,
ēre.

pass, to (intrans., of intervals of
time), inter-cedēre, -cessit.

pass by, I, praeter-eo, ire, ii.

passion (anger), ira, f.

passionate, iracundus.

passionateness, iracundia, f.

past (adj.), praeteritus; the past,
praeterita (52); tempus prae-
teritum.

pathless, invius.

patience, with, aequo animo, or
patienter.

patriot, true patriot, bonus civis;
civis optimus; patriots, every
patriot, all true patriots; optimus
quisque (375, and note); best
patriot, optimus civis.

pay attention to, I, rationem habeo
(with gen.); pay (you) honour;
honorem (tibi) habeo; pay my
respects to, saluto, are (acc.);
pay the penalty (243, and see
penalty).

peace, pax, pacis, *f.*
peace (of mind), securit-as, -atis, *f.*
peculiarity, special, proprium, n. (255.)
penalty, poena, f.; supplicium, n.; *I pay the penalty of*, poenas do (*gen.*). (See note under *punishment.*)
people (=men), homines; *a people (=nation)*, populus, -i, *m.*
perceive, I, intel-lego, ēre, -lexi, -lectum. (19.)
perhaps, nescio an (see 169), or haud scio an (*the latter should always be used before an adj. when no verb is expressed*); fortasse; forsitan (170).
perilous, periculosus. (57, a.)
period, at that. (294, Obs.)
perish, I, pereō, ire.
permission, with your kind; without his. (269, Obs.)
permit, I, per me licet (331, 15, c); *I am permitted*, mihi licet (197).
perpetrate, I, com-, or ad-, mitto, ēre; facio, ēre.
perpetrator (of), = *he who perpetrated*. (175.)
persecute, I, insector, ari (*dep.*).
person, a, homo, -inis. (224, Obs. 2 and note, and Ex. 39, note.)
person, a single (after a negat.), quisquam. (358, i.)
person (your own), caput, n.
personal appearance, corporis (59) habit-us, -ūs.
persuade, I, persua-deo, ēre, -si, -sum (5); *I cannot be persuaded*, persuaderi mihi non potest. (219, see also 122, b.)
pestilence, pestilentia, f.
philosopher, philosoph-us, -i.
philosophy, philosophia, f.
pierce, I, con-fodio, ēre, -fōdi, -fossum.
Pisa, Pisa, f.
pitch of, to such a, eo (*gen.*, 294, Obs.).
pitey for, I feel, me miseret (*gen.*, 309).
place, loc-us, -i, m.; *in the place (where)*, ibi; *to the (. . . whence)*, eo. (89.)

place, I, pono, ēre.
plain, camp-us, -i, m.
plain (adj.), manifestus; *as plain as*, manifestior. (276.)
plead (as excuse), I, excuso, are; = *negotiate*, ago, ere; *my cause*, causam oro, are, dico, ēre.
pleasantly (I speak), jucunda, n. pl.
please, I (you), plac-eo, ēre, -ui, -itum (*dat.*, 5).
please, I (= it pleases me), mihi libet, libuit or libitum est (246); *if you please*, si libet.
pleasing to, gratus (*dat.*).
pleasure, volupt-as, -atis, f. (*often in pl., when used for pleasure in the abstract*).
pledge myself, I, spondeo, ēre, spondi.
plunder, praeda, f.
poet, poeta, m.
point (in every), res (*pl.*).
point of, in. (332, 1, e.)
point of, on the, use fut. in -rus (189, iii.); *when on the, partic. in -rus* (418, d).
point (whence), to the, eo. (89.)
point out, I, monstro, are; ostend-o, ēre, -i.
poison, venenum, n.
policy, consilia, n. pl.
political, gen. of res publica (see 59); *for political storms*, in republica.
political life, res publica; *I enter political life*; ad rem p. me conf-ero, ferre; or ac-cedo, ēre, -cessi.
politicians. (175.)
politics, respublica (*never pl.*).
Pompey, Pompei-us, -i.
poor, paup-er, -eris; *the poor, pauper-es, -um*. (51, a.)
popular (party), popularis; *or the popular party*, popular-es, -ium, *m. pl.* (p. 63, note 4).
popularity, fav-or, -oris, m. (See note under *influence.*)
populous, frequen-s, -tissimus.
position, loc-us, -i, m.
possible (with superlatives), vel.
possible, it is. (125, e.)
possibly, use potest fieri ut. (64 and 125, e.)

post up, I, figo, ĕre, fixi, fixum.
posterity. (See 51, a, and note.)
postpone, I, differo, ferre. (See note under *hang back*.)
poverty, paupert-as, -atis, f.
power, potentia, f.; potest-as, -atis, f. (See note under *influence*.)
power, under his own, gen. of ditio sua, arbitrium suum. (290, Obs.)
powerful, potens; the powerful, potentissimus quisque (sing., 375); I am most powerful, plurimum possum.
powerless, I am, nihil possum.
praise (subst.), lau-s, -dis, f.
praise, I, laudo, are.
praised, to be (adj.), laudandus.
praiseworthy, laudabilis.
pray for, I (I desire much), opto, are (acc.); I make one prayer, unum opto.
prayers, prec-es, -um, f.
preceding, proximus.
precious, pretiosus (superl., 57, a). predecessors. (175.)
prefer, I (modal verb), malo, malle, malui. (42, i. d, and ii.)
prefer (him to you), I, (eum tibi) prae-, or ante-pono, ĕre, -posui, -positum (253, ii.); or prae-fero, ferre, -tuli.
preparations, I make, paro, are. (54.)
prepare (trans.), I (for or against you), (tibi) in-tendo, ĕre, -tendi.
preparing to, use partic. in -rus. (14, c.)
presence, in his, my, etc., praesens. (61, or 420, ii.)
presence of, in the (prep.), in (273, Obs.); coram (abl. of persons).
present (adj.), hic (337); but your present, iste (338).
present, I am, ad-sum, -esse, -fui; present at, intersum. (251.)
present, at, or for the, in praesens. (331, 24, b.)
present, as a. (260, 3.)

present you with this, I, hoc (abl.) te (acc.) dono, are.
presently, mox; brevi.
preservation of, the, use conservo, are. (399, Obs. 2; 292, Obs.)
preserve, I, servo, are; conservo, are.
press on, I, insto, are; by pressing on, gerund. (99.)
pretend, I, simulo, are (39); dictito,¹ are (assert); fingo, ĕre, finxi, fictum.
pretty (adv.); pretty well, satis.
prevail by prayer, I, impetro, are, upon, ab. (127, c.)
prevent, I (from), ob-sto, -stare, -stiti (dat.), quominus. (137, ii.)
prevent, to (in order that . . . not), ne. (101, ii.)
priceless, pretiosissimus.
prince, rex, regis.
principle, want of, levit-as, -atis, f.
prison, vincula, n. pl.
prisoner, captiv-us, -i, m.; I am being taken, capior, i, captus.
private (person), privatus; private property, res familiaris.
privilege, a, jus, juris, n.
procrastinate, I, differo, ferre, distuli. (See note under *hang back*.)
procrastination, cunctati-o, -onis, f.; or use verb, cunctor. (98, a.)
profess, I, pro-fiteor, ĕri, -fessus.
progress in, I make (much, more), (multum, plus) proficio, ĕre, in (abl.).
project (subst.), consilium, n.
prolonged, diutinus.
promise, I, pollic-eor, ĕri, -itus; promitto, ĕre, -misi, -missum. (37.) (Voc. 6, n.)
promise, a, promissum, n. (51, b); *of good, or the highest* (303, Obs. 2); *I make promises, polliceor* (54.)
proof, indicium, n; is a proof. (260, 3.)
proof against, invictus ab, or adversus (acc.).

¹ For *simulo* see p. 55, note. When the pretence is applied to words rather than to conduct, *dictito* (a frequentative form of *dico*) is common in the sense of "I assert, allege." *Fingo*, and still more *mentior*, emphasises the falsehood of the allegation.

proper, suus, a, um.
property, bona, n. pl. (51, b);
fortuna, f. pl.; res, rei, f.
prophet, vat-es, -is, m.
prophetic, = of him foretelling the future.
proportion to, in (332, 7, h; 376);
exact proportion to (with verbs of valuing), tanti . . . quanti.
prosecuted for, I am, reus fio; accusor. (306.)
prospect, or *prospects*, spes, spei, f. (sing.) (See note under *hope*.)
prosperity, res prosperae, or secundae.
protect your interests, I, tibi (248) caveo, ěre, cavi, cautum, wish . . . protected (240, Obs. 1).
protest against, I. (136, a.)
protract, I (war), traho, ěre.
proud, superbus.
proud of, I am, glorior, ari. (281 and 282, Obs.)
prove, I (intrans.). (259, Obs.)
provide against, I, caveo, ěre, cavi, cautum, ne, or, with subst., acc.
provide for, I, pro-video, ěre, -vĭdi, -visum. (248.)
provided that, modo, modo ne. (468.)
provision, I make no, nihil provideo; for. (331, 24, b.)
provisions (for army), frumentum, n.; res frumentaria.
provocation, without, = no one provoking, abl. abs. (See 332, 8, and 425.)
provoke, I, laccess-o, ěre, -ivi, -itum; irrito, are.
prudence, prudentia, f.
prudence, want of, imprudentia, f.
public (services), = to the people;
public interest, respublica; public life, see political life.
punish, I, poenas sumo, ěre, de (332, 3, h); am punished for, poenas do, dāre, with gen. of the crime.
punishment, poena,¹ f.; supplicium, n. (heavy); to bring punishment, fraudi esse. (260, 3.)

purpose, a, propositum, n. (51, b); consilium, n.
purposely, consulto.
pursue, I, sequor, i, secutus.
pursuit, studium, n.
put off, I, differo, ferre, distuli.
put to death, I, caedo, ěre, cecidi, caesum. (See also under *kill*.)
put to the test, I, periclitor, ari (dep.).
put up with, I, tolero, are (acc.).
Pyrrhus, Pyrrh-us, -i.

quail before, I, pertim-esco, ěre, -ui (acc.).
qualities, good, virtut-es, -um, f. pl.
quantity, vis, acc. vim. (See also 174.)
quarter, I ask for, ut mihi parcatu precor, -ari; mortem or victoris iram deprecor; I obtain, ut mihi parcatu impetro, are; or mihi parcitur.
question, I (ask), interrogo, are (231, note); it is questioned (doubted), dubitatur; may be, dubitari potest.
question, my, his, the; to my, etc., pres. part. of interrogo (415, a, and 346); the real question (see real).
question, a (matter), res, rei, f.
quiet (subst.), tranquillit-as, atis, f. quietly, use adj. (61), securus.
quit, I, exce-do, ěre, -ssi, -ssum (with or without e, ex, 314).
quite, not, parum; viz.
quite up to, ad with ipse. (Cf. 355, a.)

race (nation), gen-s, -tis f.; the human race, hominum (59), or humanum, gen-us, -eris, n.
rage, ira, f.
raid upon, I make a, incursionem, facio in (acc.).
raise, I, tollo, ěre, sustuli, sublatum; an army, comparo, are; a cheer, (clamorem) tollo.
raise up, I, attollo, ěre, sustuli, sublatum.

¹ Poena, "requital;" supplicium is used mainly of the punishment.

rank (position), stat-us, -ūs, *m.*; (of army), ord-o, -inis, *m.*; *ranks* (metaph. of a party), part-es, -ium, *f. pl.*; *high rank*, dignitas, -atis, *f.*
rally, I (intrans.), me col-ligo, ēre, -lēgi; to rally (of a number), concurrere.
rare (remarkable), singularis.
rarely, raro, comp. rarius.
rash, temerarius.
rashness, temerit-as, -atis, *f.*
rather (adv.), potius.
rather, I had, or I would, malo, malle, malui.
ravage, I, populor, ari (*dep.*).
reach, I, pervenio ad (253, iv.); *reach such a pitch of, eo* (294, Obs.) procedo, ēre; to reach (of letters), perferri ad.
reach (of darts), the, jact-us, -ūs, *m.*
read through, or of, I, per-lego, ēre, -lēgi, -lectum.
ready to, I am, volo, velle, volui (*modal*); *or use fut. in -rus.* (14, c.)
real (question) is, the, illud (341) quaeritur (218).
realise, I (conceive), animo, or mente, concipio, ēre.
reality, in; really, re; re ipsā; re verā. (274.)
reap (gain), *I*, per-cipio, ēre; *the fruit of, fructum percipio* (*gen.*).
rear, tergum, n.; in the, a tergo (332, i, c), or aversus (See 61.)
reason, a, causa, f.; for (both) reasons (378, i.); *what reason?* (137, 1, l); *the reason* (of); *quas ob causas or cur* (174, a); *the reason* (of) . . . was (483, Obs.).
*rebel*¹ *a, qui contra regem arma sumpsit.* (175.)
rebel to (*I invite*), = to rebellion.
rebellion (renewal of war after submission), rebelli-o, -onis, *f.*; (revolt), defecti-o, -onis, *f.*
rebuke (subs.), use increpo, are. (415, b and c.)
recall (to), *I*, revoco, are (ad); to mind, in animum.

receive, I, ac-cipio, ēre, -cēpi, -ceptum (19); *without receiving* (425, 420, i.).
reckon up, I, enumero, are.
recognise, I, cognosco, ēre.
reconciled with you, I am, tecum in gratiam red-eo, ire, ii.
reconciliation (you delay your), = to be reconciled with.
recover, I (*trans.*), recupero, are; recipio, ēre; *recover myself, me recipio; recover* (*intrans.*) *from, emer-go, ēre, -si, -surus, e, ex.*
recruit, a, tir-o, -onis; army of recruits. (223.)
reflect on, I, recordor, ari.
refrain from, I. (137, i, f.)
refuge with, I take, con-fugio, ēre, -fūgi, ad.
refuse, I, nolo. (136, a.)
refute, I (an opponent), redarguo, ēre; *a charge, diluo, ēre; a me removeo, ēre.*
regard for or to, I have, rationem habeo (*gen.*).
regiment, use coh-or-s, -tis, f.
regret, I, me pud-et, ēre, -uit (*gen.*, 309).
regular engagement, a, justum praelium.
reign, I, regno, are.
reinforcements, subsidia, n. pl.
reject, I, repudio, are.
rejoice, I, gaudeo, ēre, gavisus. (*Intr.* 44.)
rejoicing (*subst.*), laetitia, *f.*
relation, a, propinqu-us, -i. m. (256.)
reliance on (you), *I place, fidem* (tibi) habeo.
relief, I bring you, tibi succurr-o, ēre, -i.
relieve, I, sublevo, are (*acc.*); *relieve of, levo, are* (*abl. of thing*).
relinquish, I, o-mitto, ere, -misi, -missum. (See note under *undone, I leave.*)
reluctant, I am, nolo, nolle.
reluctantly; with reluctance. (61.)
rely on, I, con-fido, ēre, -fissus (282, Obs., 244, c); *fidem habeo* (*dat.*).

¹ A "rebel" might also be "qui a fide descivit or defecit;" or rem publicam might be substituted for regem.

relying on (*adj.*), *fretus*. (285.)
 remain behind, *I*, *re-maneo*, *ēre*,
-mansi.
 remain firm, *I*, *permaneo*, *ēre*.
 remains, *it*, *restat ut*. (See 125, *g*.)
 remarkable, *singularis*.
 remember, *I*, *memin-i*, *-isse* (*imperative memento* ; *for pres. subj. meminierim*).
 Remi, *the*, *Rem-i*, *-orum*.
 remorse for, *I feel*, *me* (234) *poenit-et*, *ēre*, *-uit* (*gen.*, 309).
 remove (*my home*), *I*, *commigro*,
are (*intrans.*).
 removed from, *I am far*. (264.)
 renown, *gloria*, *f*.
 repeatedly, *saepe*; *saepissime* (57, *a*);
persaepe.
 repel, *I*, *propulso*, *are* ; *from*, *ab*.
 repent of, *I*, *me poenit-et*, *-ēre*,
-uit. (309.)
 reply, *I*, *respond-eo*, *ēre*, *-i*.
 repose, *otium*, *n*. ; *I enjoy*, *otiosus sum*.
 reproach, *it is a*. (260, 3.)
 reputation, *existimati-o*, *-onis*, *f*. ;
fama, *f*. ; *reputation for*, *lau-s*,
-dis, *f*. (*gen.*).
 request, *I make a*, *peto*, *ēre* (127, *c*),
posco, *ēre*, *poposci* (231.) (See
note under demand) ; *I make*
this, *hoc* (*acc.*) *peto* ; *my request*,
quae peto. (175.)
 require, *I*, *use opus*. (286.)
 resemble (*closely*), *I*, *similis* (*superl.*)
sum. (255.)
 resentment, *dol-or*, *-oris*, *m*.
 resident, *I am*, *domicilium habeo* ;
at. (312.)
 resignation, *with*, *aequo animo*.
 resist, *I*, *repugno*, *are*. (*dat.*)
 resistance, *use inf. pass. of resisto*,
ēre (219), *in spite of resistance*,
resisto or repugno (420, *ii*).
 resolution (*design*), *consilium*, *n*.
 resolution, *I pass a*, *decerno*, *ēre*.
 resolve, *I*, *statu-o*, *ēre*, *-i* ; *de-*
cerno, *ēre*, *-crevi*, *-cretum*. (45.)
 resources, *op-es*, *-um*, *f*.
 respect, *observantia*, *f*.
 respectable, *honestus*.

responsible (*for*), *I make you*, *ratio-*
nem a te reposco, *ēre* (*with gen.*)
rest, *qui-es*, *-ētis*, *f*.
rest (*of*), *the*, *ceteri* ; *or* (372) *reli-*
qu-us, *-i* (*in agreement*, 60, *or*
with gen.) ; *rest of the world*.
(See world.)
 rest on, *I*, *ni-tor*, *i*, *-sus* (*abl.*, 282,
Obs.).
 rest with, *to*, *penes* (331, 15) *esse*.
 restore, *I* (*strength, etc.*), *redintegro*,
are.
 restrained from, *to be*. (137, 1, *k*.)
 result, *res*, *rei*, *f*. ; (*of toil*), *fruct-us*,
-ūs, *m*. ; *the result is*, *was*, *etc.*,
evēnit, *evēnit*, *eventurum* ; *with-*
out result. (332, 8.)
 retain, *I*, *re-tineo*, *ēre*, *-tinui*.
 retake, *I*, *re-cipio*, *ēre*, *-cepi*, *-ceptum*.
 retire from, *I*, *abeo*, *ire*. (264.)
 retreat, *I*, *me recipio*, *ēre* ; *pedem*
refero, *ferre*.
 retrieve, *I*, *sano*, *are*.
 return (*subst.*), *redit-us*, *-ūs*, *m*.
 return, *I* (*intrans.*), *red-eo*, *ire*, *-ii*,
-iturus.
 return kindness, *I*, *gratiam refero*.
 (98, *b*.)
 revolt, *a*, *defecti-o*, *-onis*, *f*.
 reward, *praemium*, *n*. (*prize*) ;
merc-es, *-ēdis*, *f*. ; *fruct-us*, *-us*,
m. (*fruit*).
 reward, *I*, *praemiis afficio*.
 rich (*of persons*), *div-es*, *-itis*,
divit- (*dit-*) *ior*, *-issimus* ; *of cities*,
opulentus ; *the rich* (51, *a*).
 riches, *diviti-ae*, *-arum*.
 ride past, *I*, (*equo*) *praeter-vehor*, *i*,
-vectus (*trans.*, 24) ; *cf. coast along*.
 ridge, *jugum*, *n*.
 ridiculed, *I am*, *irrideor*, *ēri*. (253,
iii.)
 right (*subst.*), *jus*, *juris*, *n*. ; *I have*
a right, *debeo*, *ēre* ; *I am in the*
right, *vere*, *recte*, *sentio*, *ire*.
 right hand, *dextra*, *f*.
 rightly, *rightfully*, *jure*.¹ (268.)
 rigour, *severit-as*, *-atis*, *f*.
 ring with, *to* (*echo with*), *person-are*,
-ui (*abl.*).

¹ *Jure* is "rightly" in the sense of "rightfully," "deservedly ;" *recte*, "correctly," "accurately ;" *rite*, in accordance with religious usage or ceremonial.

rising, a, sediti-o, -onis, f.
rising ground, tumul-us, -i, m.
(use pl.).
rival, invid-us, -i, m.
river, flum-en, -inis, n.; fluvi-us, -i, m.
road, a, via, f.
roar out, I, vociferor, ari; magnā voce conclamo, are.
rock, saxum, n.
roll, I (intrans.), volvor, i, volutus. (21, a.)
Roman, Romanus.
Rome (the city), Roma, f.; (the nation) populus Romanus. (319.)
roof, under my. (331, 4, a.)
round (prep.), circa or circum (acc., 331, 5); round which (standard), quo (508).
rout, I, fundo, ěre, fudi, fustum.
royal, regius.
ruin, interit¹-us, -ūs, m.; exitium, n.; pernici-es, -ei, f.; clad-es, -is, f.; calamit-as, -atis, f.; without ruin to, use salvus (abl. abs., 424).
ruin, I, pessum do, dāre (Sallust); ruined, afflictus (affligo).
ruler of, I am, impero, are (dat.).
rumour, rum-or, -oris, m.
run forward, I, pro-curro, ěre, -curri.
run into, I, incurro, ěre (in, acc.).
rural, rusticus.
rustic (adj.), agrestis.
sack (a city) I, di-ripio, ěre, -ripui, -reptum.
sacrifice to (metaph.), I = I place behind, post-habeo. (253, ii.)
safe, tutus; incolumis (safe and sound); salvus (of things as well as persons). For adv. use tutus or incolumis. (61.)
safety, sal-us, -utis, f.; in safety, tuto (adv.); incolumis (adj., 61); I wish for your safety, te salvum volo. (240, Obs. 1.)
sail, I, navigo, are; sail round, circumnavigo, are (trans.).

sailor, naut-a, -ae, m.
sake of, for the, causā, or gratiā, with gen. or pronominal adj. (289); or with gerund (396); for its own sake, propter se (331, 20, b).
sally, a, erupti-o, -onis, f.; I make a, eruptionem facio, ěre.
sally out, I, e-rumpo, ěre, -rupi.
salute, I, saluto, are.
same as, the. (84, 365.)
satisfactory. (See Voc. 6.)
satisfied with, contentus (abl., 285).
save you, I, tibi salutem affero, ferre.
say, I, dico, ěre, dixi, dictum; said he (parenthetic) (40); it is said (44). (See also under speak.)
saying, a, dictum (see 51, b, 55); the saying, illud (341).
scale, I, conscen-do, ěre, -di.
scanty, exiguus.
scarcely, vix.
scatter, to, (intrans.), dissipari. (20, 21, a.)
scene, I come on the, intervenio, ire.
scenes (places), loc-i, -orum, m.
schemes, insidiae, f.; art-es, -ium, f.
science of war, res militaris.
scout, a, explorat-or, -oris.
sea and land, by, terra marique (note the order).
sea-sickness, nausea, f.
second, alter (531, a); (for) a second time, iterum (533, c); secondly, deinde (534, Obs.).
secret from, I keep, celo, are (230); I make a secret of, dissimulo, are (with constr. of simulo, 39).
secretly, secreto (adv.)
secure (safe), tutus. (19.)
secure, I (make secure), confirmo, are.
see, I, video,² ěre, vidi, visum; (as a spectator) specto, are; (in sense of perceive), intel-lego, ěre, -lexi, -lectum; I am seen, con-spicior, i, -spectus.

¹ Ruina is the fall (literal) of a building, etc., and is only occasionally used in a metaphorical sense. (See 17-19.)

² *Verdere*, the general word, to see; *spectare*, to look long at, to watch as a spectacle; *cernere*, to see clearly, to discern; *conspicere*, to get sight of; *aspicere*, to turn the eye towards; *intueri*, to gaze at earnestly or steadfastly.

seek for, *I*, pet-o, ěre, -ii, -ivi, -itum.
seem, *I*, videor, ěri, visus (43); *it seems as though* (149, ii.).
seize, *I*, comprehendo, ěre, -di, -sum; (*an opportunity*), utor, i, usus. (281).
self-confidence, sui fiducia, *f.* (300.)
self-control, modestia; (*animi*) moderatio, -onis, *f.*
self-control, want of, impotentia, *f.*; *adj.* impotens, *adv.* impotenter.
Senate, *the*, Senat-us, -ūs, *m.*
Senate House, *the*, Curia, *f.*
send, *I*, mitto, ěre, misi, missum; *to*, ad (6); *send back* (*to*), remitto, ěre (*ad*); *send for*, arcesso, ěre, -ivi, -itum (*acc.*).
sense, good, prudentia, *f.*
sensible, or of sense, pruden-s, -tior, -tissimus; *one so sensible as* (224, Obs. 2); *adv.*, prudenter.
sentenced to, *I am*, multor, ari. (307.)
sentiments, *I hold the same*, eadem (365) sentio (54).
separately, singuli. (380, b.)
serious, grav-is, -ior, -issimus.
serpent, serpen-s, -tis, *f.*
served, *the nation is*, respublica geritur, gesta est.
service, military, militia, *f.*
service to, *I do* (*good, the best, such good*), (bene, optime, tam bene) mereor, ěri, meritus, de (332, 3, g); *but services to*, merita (51, b) in (331, 24, d).
set (*spurs*), *I*, sub-do, ěre, -didi, -ditum (*dat.*).
set at liberty, *I*, libero, are.
set at naught, *I*, con-temno, ěre, -tempso, -temptum (see Voc. 10, n.); *parvi, minimi, nihili*, facio or habeo (305).
set before (*you*), *I*, (tibi) expo-no, ěre, -sui, -situm.
set fire to, *I*, incendo, ěre, -di, -sum (*acc.*).
set out, *I*, proficiscor, i, -fectus.
settle, *I*, constit-uo, ěre, -ui (*trans.*).
several (= *some*), aliquot (*indecl.*); (= *respective*, suus with quisque. (352, Obs.))
severe, gravis.

sex, sex-us, -ūs, *m.*
shake, *I* (*trans.*), labefacto, are.
shamelessness, impudentia, *f.*
share (*with*), *I*, communico, are (cum, 253, iv.).
shatter, *I*, quasso, are.
shelter, *I*, tego, ěre, texi, tectum.
shelter, perfugium, *n.*; *under shelter of*, tectus (*abl.*).
shew, *I*. (See show.)
shield, scutum, *n.*
ship of war, a, navis longa; *merchant ship*, navis oneraria.
short, in, denique.
short-lived (*panic*) = *of the shortest time*. (303, Obs. 1.)
shortly, brevi.
shout, a, clam-or, -oris, *m.*
show, *I* (*point out*), monstro, are; *I show* (*display*) clemency, etc., or, *I show myself* (*prove*) (see 241); *I show such cruelty to*, adeo saevio, ire, in (*abl.*); *show gratitude* (98, b).
shrewd, acutus (*superl.* 57, a.).
shrink from, *I*, detrecto, are (*acc.*).
sick, aeg-er, -ra, -rum; *I am sick*, aegroto, are; *his sick-bed*, = *him whilst sick and failing*.
side (*of a river*), ripa, *f.*
side, *I am by your*, tibi praesto (*adv.*) sum; *on your*, a te sto, are, stēti. (332, i., d.)
side, *on no*, nusquam; *nec usquam*; *on this side* (*of*), *prep.*, cis (331, 6); *on the other*, ultra (331, 23); *on all sides*, undique.
sigh for, *I* (*metaph.*), desidero, are (*trans.*, 22, 23).
signal, a, signum, *n.*
silence, in. (61.)
silent, *I am*, taceo, ěre.
sin, *I*, pecco, are.
since, (*adv.*), postea; *as prep.*, = *from*. (326.)
single combat, in, comminus.
single, a, unus; *not a single one*; ne unus quidem. (52)
sink, *I* (*trans.*), demergo, -sum; *intrins.* (*metaph.*) scendo, ěre, -i; *I am* (*fainting*) *under*, exanquiesco (*abl.*, 267).

sister, sor-or, -oris.
sit, I, sēdo, ēre, sēdi; *sit down*,
 con-sido, ēre, -sēdi.
situation, sit-us, -ūs, m.
six, sex.
sixth, sextus.
size, magnitud-o, -inis, f.; and see
 174.
slander, maledicta, n. pl. (51, b.)
slaughter, I, use occidione oc-cido,
 ēre, -cidi, -cisum.
slave, serv-us, -i, m.; *I am a slave*,
 serv-io, ire, -ii, -itum.
slavery, servit-us, -utis, f.
slay, I. (See kill.)
sleep, I, dorm-io, ire, -ivi, -ii, -itum;
in his sleep, use pres. partic.
sleep, want of, vigiliae, f. pl.
slingstone, a, glan-s, -dis, f.
so, ita: with verbs, adeo; *so little*,
 adeo non: with adjs. and advs.
 only, tam: so = accordingly,
 itaque: so great, so many (84):
 so small, tantulus: so far from,
 tantum abest ut (124): so, or as,
 long as, abl. abs. (420, ii.) (See
 also 224, Obs. 2.)
society, as a. (380, b.)
soften (metaph.), I, exoro, are.
solemnly appeal, I. (See appeal.)
soldier, mil-es, -itis.
solitude (of a place), infrequentia,
 f.
Solon, Sol-on, -onis.
some (some one), aliquis (360); nescio
 quis (362); some . . . others, alii
 . . . alii (369).
some (amount of), aliquantum (gen.,
 294); for some time, aliquantum
 temporis.
somehow. (363.)
something (opposed to nothing), ali-
 quid (360).
sometimes, nonnunquam;¹ inter-
 dum.
son, fili-us, -i.

soon, mox; brevi; jam (328, b);
sooner than he had hoped=quicker
 (celerius) than his own hope
 (277).
sore (of famine), gravis.
sorrows, incommoda, n. pl.; aerum-
 nae (stronger).
sorry, I should be, nolim. (231,
 example.)
soul, (not) a, quisquam (358, i.); in
Livy unus is sometimes added;
 ne unus quidem. (529, a.)
sound your praises, I, laudibus te
 fero, ferre.
sounds incredible, it, incredibile
 dictu est. (404.)
source of (metaph.), the, use unde
 (174, e); a source of (gain) (260, 3).
sovereign (king), rex.
sovereignty, principat-us, -ūs, m.
Spaniard, a, Hispan-us, -i; *Spain*
 (= the nation), Hispani. (319.)
spare, I, parco, ēre, peperi (dat.,
 5); for perf. pass. temperatum
 est (249).
speak, I, loquor², i, locutus; dico,
 ēre; *I speak out*, eloquor, i; in
speaking, abl. of gerund.
special peculiarity of. (See peculi-
 arity.)
speech, a, orati-o, -onis, f.; if to sol-
 diers or multitude, conti-o, -onis,
 f.; my speech is over; I have done
 my speech, dixi. (187.)
speed, celerit-as, -atis, f.
spirit, anim-us, -i, m.; of more
 than one person, animi; with
 spirit, ferociter. (See note under
 boldly.)
spite of, in, in (273, Obs.); of your
 resistance, etc.), abl. abs. (420, ii.);
 in spite of his innocence (224,
 Obs. 1).
spoil, praeda, f.
spotless, integer, integerrimus;
 innocen-s, -tior, -tissimus.

¹ Nonnunquam, "fairly often;" approaches saepius. Interdum, "now and then," more rarely than nonnunquam. Aliquando, "on certain occasions," opposed to "never," almost = raro.

² Dico, I "speak" or "say," i.e. I give expression to thoughts or views which I have formed: loquor, I "speak," use the organs of speech to utter articulate words. Hence dico = I make a formal speech; loquor = I utter informal or casual words.

spread beneath, *I* (trans.), sub-jicio, ěre, -jeci, -jectum; *intrans.*, sub-jicior, i. (20.)

spring, the, ver, vēris, n.

spring, I (am sprung), orior, Iri, ortus; *sprung from*, ortus (abl.); *originally sprung from*, oriundus ab.

spur, calc-ar, -aris, n.; *I put spurs to*, calcaria subdo, ěre (dat.).

spy, a, speculat-or, -oris, m.

staff (military), legati, m. pl.

stand, I, sto, stare, stēti; *stand by*, ad-sto, -stare, -stiti (dat.); *stand round*, circum-sto, are, -steti (acc.).

stand for, I (am a candidate for), peto, ěre (acc.).

stand in need of, I, indigeo, ěre. (284.)

stand in your way, I, tibi obsto, are. (253, i.)

standard, a, signum, n.; vexillum, n.

start (set out), *I*, pro-ficiscor, i, -fectus, -fecturus.

state (condition), stat-us, -ūs, m.

state (adj.), publicus.

statesman, a consummate, reipublicae gubernandae peritissimus. (301, ii.)

stay with, I (*I visit*), commoror, ari apud (331, 4, a); *deverto, ěre* (reflexive), apud; *I stay at home*, domi maneo, ěre.

steadily, turn by did not cease to (desisto, ěre, -stiti).

steadiness, want of, inconstantia, f.

steal away, I (intrans.), di-labor, i, lapsus.

stern, severus.

sternly, I act, saevio, ire. (25.)

still (adv.), adhuc; etiam nunc (of the present); etiam tum (past or fut.).

stony-hearted, ferreus.

storm, tempest-as, -atis, f.

storm, I (take by storm), expugno, are.

story, a, res, rei, f.; and see 54; *there is a story*, ferunt (44).

strangely, nescio quo pacto. (See 169.)

stream, riv-us, -i, m.; see river.

strength, vir-es, -ium, f. pl.; *strength of mind*, constantia, f.

stretch forth, I, por-rigo, ěre, -rexi, -rectum.

strike off, I, excu-tio, ěre, -ssi, -ssum.

strikingly, graviter.

strive, I (to), conor, ari (modal).

stronghold, arx, arcis, f.

struck (partic.), ictus (ico, ěre); *I am struck*, per-cutior, i, -cussus.

study, a, ar-s, -tis, f.; *study* (of), cogniti-o, -onis, f.

study, I, operam do (dat.); *study my own interest*, mihi (248) consulo, ěre.

subject, a, civ-is, -is, m.

submit to, I, per-fero, -ferre (acc.).

substantial, solidus, comp. magis solidus.

succeed in, I (a design, etc.), perficio, ěre (trans.); *efficio with ut*. (125, j.)

succeed to, I (the throne), (regnum) ex-cipio, ěre, -cēpi, -ceptum (17); *I succeed you*, tibi suc-cedo, ěre, -cessi, -cessum.

success (98, a); *without success, in-fecta re* (332, 8; 425).

successfully, prospere.

successive, continuus.

successors (his), = those who reigned after (him); or those who are to (fut. in -rus) succeed (him). (See 175, 342, n.)

succour, I, subvenio, ire (dat.).

such (= of such a kind), talis; (= so great), tantus; as, qualis or quantus (see 86): *such . . . as this*, hujusmodi (87), or hic talis, hic tantus (88, Obs.): *such as to, of such a kind that* (108): *such* (adv.), *such a* (with adj.), tam; talis (or tantus) tamque (88): *where English subst. is expressed by Latin verb, use adeo*; *I show such cruelty*, adeo saevio.

sudden, subitus; repentinus (unexpected).

suddenly, subito.

suddenness of, the, = how sudden it was. (174, e.)

suffer from, I, laboro, are (abl.).

suffering (adj.), *afflictus* (affligo).
sufficient, *justus*; *satis*, with *gen.*
suffices, *it*, *satis est*.
suggest, *I*, *auctor sum* (399, Obs. 2);
admoneo, *ēre* (127, a).
suggestion, at (*my*), (*me*) *auctore*
 (*abl. abs.*, 424).
suicide, *I commit*, *mortem mihi con-*
scisco, *ēre*, -*scivi*. (253, ii.)
summer, *aest-as*, -*atis*, *f.*
summit. (60.)
summon, *I*, *voco*, *are*; *to*, *ad*.
sun, *sol*, *solis*, *m.*
sunlight, *lux*, *lucis*, *f.* (*solis may be*
added).
superior to, *I am*, = *I surpass*; (*in*
courage, etc.), use *comparat. of*
adj. (278, 279); *superior numbers*
 (*see numbers*).
superstition, *superstiti-o*, -*onis*, *f.*
supper, *caena*, *f.*; *to*, *ad* (331, 24, b,
example).
supplies, *commeat-us*, -*ūs*, *m.* (*sing.*
and pl.)
supply with, *I*, *suppedito*, *are*. (247.)
support (*subst.*), *subsidium*, *n.*
support (*my*) *arms*, *I*, *arma fero*,
ferre.
suppose, *I*, *puto*, *are*. (*See note*
under fancy.)
supreme power, *imperium*, *n.*
sure, *I am* or *feel*, *certo scio*; *pro*
certo habeo; *I have made sure of*,
compertum habeo (188): *be sure*
to, *fac*, *cura* (*ut*). (*See* 141.)
surpass, *I*, *supero*, *are*.
surprise (*as a foe*), *I*, *opprimo*, *ēre*.
surrender, *I* (*trans.*), *de-do*, *ēre*,
 -*didi*, -*dītum*; (*intrans.*), *me dedo*
 (*see* 21, b); *I surrender my arms*,
arma trado, *ēre*.
surround, *to*, *circumvĕnire* (*trans.*);
surrounded, use *pres. partic. of*
circumsto, *are* (*abl. abs.*, 420, ii.);
surrounded (*by defences*), *cinctus*
 (*cingo*): *to be surrounded* (*as by*
water), *circum-fundi*, -*fusus*.
survive, *I*, *supersum*; *from*, *e*, *ex*:
so long as you survive, *te super-*
stite (*abl. abs.*, 424).

suspect, *I*, *suspicio*, *ari*; = *I think*,
puto, *are* (*see note under fancy*);
I am (*become*) *suspected of*, in *sus-*
picionem vĕnio, *ire* (*gen.*).
suspend, *I*, *inter-mitto*, *ēre*. (*See*
note under undone, *I leave*.)
suspicion, *suspici-o*, -*onis*, *f.*; *I have*
no, = *I suspect nothing*. (54.)
swallow, *a*, *hirund-o*, -*inis*, *f.*
swarm out of, *to*, *ef-fundi*, -*fusus*
 (*abl.*).
swear, *I*, *juro*, *are*.
sweep, *I* (*metaph.*), *volito*, *are*.
sword, *gladius*, -*i*, *m.*; in *meta-*
phorical sense, *arma*, *n. pl.*; *fer-*
rum, *n.*; *with fire and sword*, *ferro*
et igni; *by sword and violence*,
vi et armis: *note the order*.
Syracuse, *Syraousae*, *f.*
take, *I* (*a city*), *capio*, *ēre*; *by as-*
sault, *expugno*, *are*.
take advantage of, *I*, *utor*, *i*, *usus*.
 (281.)
take care that, *I*, *facio ut*. (118.)
take from you, *I*, *tibi ad-imo*, *ēre*,
 -*ēmi*, -*emptum*. (243.)
take part in, *I*. (*See part in.*)
take place, *to*, *fieri*.
take prisoner, *I*, *capio*, *ēre*.
take the same view, *I*. (*See view.*)
take up, *I* (*arms*), *sum-o*, *ēre*, -*psi*,
 -*ptum*, = *I spend*, *consumo*, *ēre*.
talk, *I*, *loquor*, *i*, *locutus*.
talkative, *loqu-ax*, -*acior*.
tall, *procĕrus*.
task, *op-us*, -*ēris*, *n.*
taste, *a*, *studium*, *n.*
taunt you with, *I*, *tibi ob-jicio*, *ēre*,
 -*jeci*. (247.)
tax with, *I*, *incuso*,¹ *are*; *insimulo*,
are (*acc. of person, gen. of thing*).
teacher, *magist-er*, -*ri*: *fem. form*,
magistra.
teaching, *the*, *praecepta*, *n. pl.*
tear, *a*, *lacrima*, *f.*
tedious, *longus*.
teeth of, *in the*, use *abl. abs.* (420,
 ii.)
tell, *I* (*bid*), *jubeo*, *ēre*. (120.)

¹ *Incuso*, "I tax with," "charge with," but informally, not as *accuso* with *gen.* "bring a charge in court." *Insimulo*, "I hint charges without proof." *Arguo*, "I try to prove guilty."

temper, anim-us, i, m.
 temperament, indol-es, -is, f. (See note under character.)
 temple, templum, n.
 ten, decem; (a-piece), deni. (532.)
 tenacious of, tenax. (301, i.)
 tends to, use gen. with est. (292, Obs.)
 tent, tabernaculum, n.
 terms, condition-es, -um, f. pl.
 terrible, so, tantus.
 territory, fin-es, -ium, m.
 terror, I am in such, adeo pertimesco, ēre, -ui.
 testify, I (show), declaro, are.
 than, quam; or abl. (275, 493.)
 thank you (for), I, gratias (tibi) ago, ob or pro.
 thanks, I return, gratias ago (98, b); "thanks to", propter (331, 20, b).
 that(demonstrative), ille, a, ud (339).
 that, after verbs of saying (see Oratio Obliqua): = in order that, (so) that (see Final, Consecutive, Clauses).
 themselves (reflexive), se (ipsos) (356, ii.); emphatic, ipsi (355).
 then, tum, tunc; then and there, illico. (See also therefore.)
 thence, inde.
 there, ibi; illic; after verb of motion, eo, illuc.
 therefore, igitur; in narrative, itaque.
 thereupon, tum.
 thick of, the, = the midst of. (60.)
 think, I (reflect), cogito, are.
 third, tertius (adj.).
 thirst, sit-is, -is, f., abl. siti.
 thirty, triginta (indecl.).
 this, hic, haec, hoc. (337.)
 thoroughly (with adj.), express by superl.
 though, use pres. part. (412, Obs.)
 thousand (subst.), mille, pl. millia; to die a thousand deaths, = a thousand times, millies (adv.).
 threaten, I, insto, are; of things, immineo, ēre; impend-eo, ēre, -i (253, i.); I threaten with, minor, ari, minitor, ari, denuntio, are (247); threaten, to, minor, ari. (See 37.)

threats, minae, f. pl.; I make threats, = I threaten (minor).
 three, tres, tria; three days (space of), triduum, n.; three years, triennium, n.
 thrice, ter.
 throne, regnum, n., or imperium, n.; I am on the throne, regno, are. (See 17.)
 throng, multitud-o, -inis, f.
 throughout, per (acc.); throughout (the city), = in the whole (abl.).
 throw, I, conjicio, ēre, -jeci, -jectum; into, in (acc.); myself (at the feet of), me projicio, ēre (257); throw across, trajicio, ēre; throw away, projicio, ēre; throw down (arms), abjicio, ēre.
 tie (subst.), necessitud-o, -inis, f.
 till, I, col-o, ēre, -ui, cultum.
 till (440, 441); not till (443, Obs.).
 time, temp-us, -oris, n.; at that time, tum; eā tempestate; tum temporis (294, Obs.); at his own time (349, Obs.); in good time, ad tempus (326).
 timid, timidus.
 to, ad (331, 1); in (331, 24). (See 6.)
 to-day, hodie.
 toil, lab-or, -oris, m.
 toilsome, = of such toil. (303, i.)
 tomb, sepulcrum, n.
 to-morrow, cras.
 tongue, lingua, f.
 too (also), quoque. (Intr. 98.)
 too, with adjectives. (See 57, b.)
 too little (of), parum. (294.)
 too much, 294; it costs, nimio (280, Obs.).
 torture, cruciat-us, -ūs, m.
 touch (his heart), I, (animum ejus) flecto, ēre; I am touched by, moveor, ēri (abl.).
 towards, ad (331, 1); with domum and towns, versus (331, 22).
 town, oppidum, n.
 townsman, oppidan-us, -i.
 traditions, I hand down, trado, ēre; there is a tradition. (44.)
 train, I, exerc-eo, ēre, -ui, -itum; exercito, are; trained in, exercitatus (abl.).
 training, disciplina, f.

traitors, cives impii.
transact, *I*, ago, ēre, ēgi, actum.
tranquillity, otium, *n*.
transported, *I am* (metaph.), exar-
 desco, ēre, -si (lit. *I become hot*).
travel, *I*, iter facio; = *go abroad*,
 peregrinor, ari; *travel over*, per-
 lustro, are (acc.).
treachery, perfidia, *f*.
treat as a source of gain, *I*. (260, 3.)
treat lightly, *I*, parvi facio. (305.)
treat with success (heal), *I*, medeor,
 ēri (dat.).
treaty, a, foed-us, -ēris, *n*.
tribe, a, nati-o, -onis, *f*; gen-s,
 -tis, *f*. (Voc. 2, note.)
trifling, (adj.), levissimus (57, a);
 inconstan-s, -tissimus. (See 224.)
triumph (success), victoria, *f*; (a
 Roman general's), triumph-us, -i
 (see note under *I triumph*); *in*
triumph, victor (63); *in the very*
hour of, in ipsā victoriā; *shouts*
of triumph, exultantium clamor
 (415, b).
triumph, *I* (metaph.), exulto,¹ are;
triumph over, supero, are (acc.).
troops, copiae, *f*.; milit-es, -um, *m*.
trouble, without, nullo negotio (269,
 Obs.).
troubles, molestiae, *f*. pl.
troublesome, molestus.
truce, a, indutiae, *f*. pl.
true, verus; *it is true*, use ille (334,
 iv.); *truest patriot* (see patriot).
trust (that), *I*, con-fido, ēre, -fusus;
trust your word, fidem tibi habeo.
truth, the, vera, *n*. pl. (53); *but in*
truth (opposed to a supposition),
 nunc vero.
try (to), *I*, conor, ari.
trying, (adj.), difficilis. (57, a.)
tumult, tumult-us, -ūs, *m*.
turn, *I* (trans.), vert-o, ēre, -i; *my*
back on you, tergum tibi verto.
turn, *I* (intrans.), vertor, i, versus;
 convertor, i (20); *to*, ad; *turn*
back, re-vertor, i.
turn, each in, pro se quisque. (352.)

turn out, *I* (prove), eva-do, ēre, -si
 (Intr. 50); *it turns out*, evēnit;
 usu vēnit (see note under lot);
turns out so, eo evadit.
twelve hundred, mille ducenti.
 (527, 528.)
twentieth, vicesimus.
twenty, viginti (indecl.).
twice over, semel atque iterum;
twice two, bis bina.
two, du-o, -ae, -o; *two a-piece*, bini
 (532, a); *two-thirds*, duae partes
 (535, c); *two years* (space of),
 biennium, *n*.
tyrant, tyrann-us, -i.
tyranny, dominati-o, onis, *f*.
unable to, *I am*, nequ-eo, -ivi, -ii;
 non possum.
unanimous; *unanimously*, use omnis.
 (59.)
unarmed, inermis.
unawares, imprudens (adj., 61).
uncertain, it is, incertum est. (166.)
uncle, avuncul-us, -i.
uncomplaining under, patiens (57,
 a), with gen. (302).
unconstitutional, *unconstitutionally*,
 contra rempublicam. (331, 7.)
uncultivated, rudis.
undaunted, intrepidus (for usage
 with proper nouns and persons,
 see 224.)
under (disgrace), cum. (269.)
understand, *I*, intel-lego, ēre, -lexi,
 -lectum.
undertake, *I*, sus-cipio, ēre, -cepi,
 -ceptum.
undertaking, an, inceptum, *n*.
 (51, b.)
undeserved, immeritus.
undiminished, = the same as before.
 (84.)
undone, *I leave*, o-mitto,² ēre, -misi,
 -missum.
undoubtedly, = indisputably. (64.)
unequalled, tantus . . . quantus
 (followed by nemo etc.). (See
 490, i.)

¹ *Triumpho* is rarely used metaphorically, or in any other sense than that of celebrating a triumphus, i. e. of a general entering the city in triumphal procession.

² *Omitto* is *I give up*, or *do not begin*, something, *designedly*; *intermitto*, *I leave alone for a time*; *praetermitto*, *I pass by*, omit, *undesignedly*.

unharméd, incolumis.
unhealthy, pestilentus.
unheard, indictā causā (abl. abs.).
union, in, conjuncti.
universal, use omnis. (59.)
unjust, iniquus.
unlucky, infel-ix, -icior.
unmoved, immotus.
unnatural, nefarius.
unpatriotic, the, mali, or improbi, cives. (50, note.)
unpopularity, invidia, f.; object of (see object).
unprincipled, nequ-am, -ior, -issimus (lit. worthless): see 224.
unquestionable, it is, = it cannot be doubted. (See 137.)
unrivalled. (358, ii., or 490, i.)
until. (See till.)
untimely, immaturus.
untouched, integ-er, -ra, -rum.
unusual, inusitatus.
unversed in, imperitus (gen., 301, ii.).
unwilling, I am, nolo, nolle, nolui.
unwillingly. (61.)
unwise, insipiens.
unwounded, integer.
up to, ad; *up to this day*, ad hunc us-que diem.
uphold, I, sus-tineo, ēre, -tinui.
uproar, tumult-us, -ūs, m.
urge, I (to do), sua-deo, ēre, -si; into, are (both with dat. and ut or ne): *urge to (crime)*, ad (scelus) impello, ēre, -puli: *urge this upon you*, hoc tibi suadeo; hujus rei auctor tibi ac suasor sum.
use of, I make, utor, i, usus. (282.)
use to, I am of, prosum. (251.)
usefulness, public, use verb (376, ii. iii.), reipublicae (plus, maxime) prosum.
useless, is, nihil prodest.
Utica, Utica, f.
utmost (to), I will do my, quantum in me est or erit (332, 5, g), with fut.
utmost value. (See value.)
vain, in, frustra,¹ nequidquam.

value (to), I am of (the utmost), (maxime) prosum. (251.)
value highly, more highly, I, magni, pluris, aestimo, are; facio, ēre: I am valued, fio, fieri; by, apud: I estimate you at your proper value, tanti te quanti debeo facio (see 305): I value above, = prefer to (253, i.).
vanquish, I, vinco, ēre, vici, victum.
variance with, to be at, pugnare cum (abl.).
various. (371.)
vast, maximus; ingen-s, -tis. (See Voc. 3, n.)
vehement, use adv. vehement-er, -issime.
Veii, Veii, m. pl.
venture, I, audeo, ēre, ausus; by venturing on something, audendo aliquid. (99, 360, i.)
verdict, sententia, f. (use pl.: see Voc. 7, n. 2); I give my, dico, ēre.
versed in, peritus (gen., 301, ii.).
very, this, hic ipse (see 355, b): for very, with adjs. see 57, a.
veteran (adj.), veteranus.
victorious, when he was, victor (subst., 63).
victory, victoria, f.; vincere. (98, a.)
view (opinion), sententia, f.
view, I take the same, Idem, eadem, sentio, quod, quae, or ac (365); a different, aliter sentio ac (367.)
vigour (spirit), ferocia, f.; (force), vis, acc. vim, f.
vile, turpis, e. (19.)
vileness, turpitud-o, -inis, f.
violating, without, use salvus, abl. abs. (424.)
violation of, partic. of violo, are (417, i.); in violation of, contra quam (491, b).
violence, vis, abl. vi, f.
virtue, virt-us, -utis, f.; in virtue of, pro (332, 7, g.)
virtuously, honeste.
visible, I am, appareo, ēre,

¹ *Frustra*, "in vain," of the person who fails in his object; *nequidquam*, "in vain," of the attempt which has produced no result.

visit, *I*, vis-o, ěre, -i.

Vistula, the, Vistula, *f*.

voluntarily, ultro.¹

vote (of elector), suffragium, *n.*; (of judge or senator), sententia, *f*.

voyage, navigati-o, -onis, *f.*; *I have*, or *make*, a, navigo, are.

wage, *I*, gero, ěre, gessi, gestum; *with*, cum or contra.

wait (for), *I*, expecto, are (acc., 22); *wait to see* (174, d; 474 b.)

walk (take a walk) in, *I*, inambulo, are (abl.).

wall (general term), mur-us, -i, *m.*; *walls* (of city or fortress), moenia, *n. pl.*, 3rd decl.

want (of), there has been the greatest, maxime laboratum est (ab, 332, i, e): *want of caution*, etc., see *caution*, etc.

want (to), *I*, volo, velle, volui.

wanting to, *I am* (*I fail*), de-sum, esse, -fui (251): *wanting in* (nothing), nihil mihi deest.

war, bellum, *n.*; *I make war against*, bellum, or arma, infero, ferre (253, ii.); *I declare*, indico, ěre (ibid.): *ship of war* (see *ship*).

warfare, militia, *f*.

warmth, with, vehementer.

warn, *I*, mon-eo, ěre, -ui, -itum; *admon-eo*, ěre (127, a): *warnings*, (415, a).

waste, *I lay*, populo, ari; vasto, are.

way, via, *f*.

weak (morally), levis; *weak characters* (375).

weakness, infirmit-as, -atis, *f.*; *in his weakness*, imbecillus (adj., 61).

wealth, divitiæ, *f. pl.*

wealthy (of cities), opulentus.

weariness, lassitud-o, -inis, *f.*; *I feel weariness of*, = *am weary of*.

weary, *I* (trans.), fatigo, are: *I am wearied with*, langu-eo, ěre de (332, 3, e), or e, ex.

weary of, *I am*, me taedet, ěre, pertaesum est. (309.)

weather, the, tempest-as, -atis, *f*.
week, substitute approximate number of days; *at the end of a*, within a, = *after*, before, the seventh day.

weep over, *I*, illacrimo, are (dat.).
weight, *I have great*, no, multum, nihil, valeo (apud.) (331, 4, d.)

welfare, sal-us, -utis, *f*.

well (adv.), bene; *well enough*, satis: *I know well*, certo scio; *well known*, satis notus.

well-disposed to, bene-volus, -volentior in or erga. (255, Obs.)

well-earned, meritus.

well-trained, exercitatus.

well-wishers. (175.)

what. (157; and see *who*.)

when (interrogat.), quando (157, ii.): conj., cum (quum). (See Temporal Clauses, I.)

whence, unde; *interrogat.* (157, ii.); *correlat.* (89).

whenever. (434, and Obs.)

where, ubi; *where . . . from* (= *whence*), unde; = *whither*, quo; *where in the world?* ubi gentium. (294, Obs.)

whether . . . or. (168; see also 171, c, d, and 467.)

which (see *who*): *which of two*, uter (157, i.).

while (conj.), dum. (180.) See also Temporal Clauses, II.

while, for a, paulisper.

whither, quo. (157, ii.)

who, *which* (that), *what* (relat.), qui, quae, quod. (See Relative.)

who, *which*, *what* (interrogat.), quis, quae, quid (subst.); qui, quae, quod (adj.). (See 157, i.)

whoever, quicunque: often exp. by tense of verb. (434, Obs.)

whole, totus, a, um; *whole of*. (60.) *wholly* (61): (to despair), de summa re, i.e. of our most important interests.

why, cur, quamobrem (157, ii.). (See also 174, a, and note.)

wicked, the, improbi. (50, and note.)

¹ *Ultr-o*, before receiving, without waiting for, provocation, solicitation, etc.: *sua*, *mea*, etc., *sponte*, of one's own impulse, without external pressure or advice.

wickedness, nequitia, *f.* (See note under *crime*.)

widow, vidua.

will, against *my*, me invito, *abl. abs.* (420, ii.)

willing, I am, volo, velle, volui.

win, I (obtain), consequor, i; *win the day*, I, vinco, *ère.* (Intr. 40.)

wind, vent-us, -i, *m.*

wing (of army), cornu, *n.*; *on the*, 332, i, c.)

winter (*adj.*), hibernus.

winter, I (pass the winter), hiemo, *are.*

wisdom, sapientia, *f.*

wise, sapien-s, -tior, -tissimus; *all the wisest men.* (375.)

wish, I, volo, velle, volui: *could have wished* (149, i.): *I do not wish*, nolo, nolle nolui.

wish for this, I, hoc opto, *are*, volo, velle.

wishes (against your), = will. (424.)

with, (See 8, and 332, 2;) *weight with* (see *weight*).

withdraw-from, I, me recipio, *ère*, e, ex.

within, intra (331, 12); *of time*, 325;

within memory, post (331, 17, b): *I am within a little of* (137, i, h).

without (*prep.*), sine; *more often exp. by abl. abs.* (332, 8, and 425); *ita ut* (111); *quin* (132, b); *without any* (360, note).

withstand, I, ob-sto, *äre*, -stiti (*dat.*, 244, b).

woman, a, muli-er, -eris.

wonder, I, miror, *ari.*

wonderful, mirificus.

word (of honour), fid-es, ei, *f.*

work upon (your feelings), I, flecto, *ère*, flexi, flexum.

world (see 16, b); *all the world*, nemo est quin (80); *in the, in the whole, world*, usquam: *the rest of the, ceteri homines*; *ceterae gentes*.

worse, pej-or, -us; *deteri-or*, -us; *for the*, in.

worst foe, enemy, superl. of inimi-cus. (256.)

worth seeking, *gerundive of appeto, ère.* (393.)

worthless, nequ-am, -ior, -issimus; *see* 224.

worthy of, dignus. (285.)

would that. (152.)

wound, vuln-us, -eris, *n.*; *national*, reipublicae. (58.)

wound, I, vulnero, *are*; *wounded*, saucius (*adj.*); *I am wounded*, vulneror, *ari*; *saucior*, *ari* (*severely*).

wrench from (you), I, (tibi) extorqueo, *ère*, -torsi, -tortum. (257.)

write, I, scri-bo, *ère*, -psi, -ptum; *write you word*, ad te scribo.

wrong, a, injuria,¹ *f.*; *I do wrong*, pecco, *are*; *wrong-doing*, peccare (98, a).

year, ann-us, -i, *m.*; (*space of*) *two, three, years.* (See *two, three*.)

yes (see 162); *I say yes*, aio, *pres. part.*, aien-s, -tis.

yesterday, heri; *of yesterday*, hesternus (*adj.*).

yet (nevertheless), tamen; *vero* (*emphatic*).

yet, not, nondum.

yield (to), I, cedo, *ère*, cessi (*dat.*).

you, tu, *pl. vos.* (See 11, a, b; 334, i.-iii.)

young, juvenis, junior. (51, a, note.)

your, your own (*sing.*), tuus: (*pl.*), vester (see 11, c); *that of yours*, iste (338).

yourself (*emphatic*), ipse (355); (*reflexive*), te, vos (356, ii.).

youth (*time of*), adolescentia, *f.*; *in my* (63.) (See also 51 a, note.)

zeal, studium, *n.*

¹ *Injuria* is never used for "injury" in the sense of mere harm or damage: this must be expressed by *damnum*.

INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

ABLATIVE, why so called, main use of, 211 : syntax of, xxxiii.-xxxv. : Absolute, liii. : of *agent*, Intr. 41 ; 8, a ; 267 : of *instrument*, 8 ; 267 : of *motion from*, 9, b ; 263 ; 314 : local, 272 ; of *place at which*, 311 *seqq.* ; of *time at which*, 9, a ; 320 : of *time within which*, 325 : of *accompaniment*, 269 : of *quality*, 271 : of *comparison*, 275 ; of *measure in comparison*, 279 : of *price*, 280 : after certain adjectives, 265, 285 : after certain Verbs, 281-284.

Abstract, *see* Noun.

ACCUSATIVE, why so called ; main use of, 209 : syntax of, xxvii. and xxviii. : is the only case of the direct object, 228 : of *time during, or for, which*, 9, a ; 321 : of *motion to*, 9, b ; 235 ; 313 : double, 229, *Obs.* ; 230 : of neuter pronouns, 231 ; 237 : of *part affected*, 233 : cognate, 236-238 : predicative, 239 : exclamatory, 239, *note* : of *space covered, distance, dimension*, 318 : with infinitive after verbs of *saying*, *see* *Oratio Obliqua*.

Active, *see* Verbs.

ADJECTIVAL clause, in analysis, Intr. 81 : substituted for substantive, 76 ; 175 : place of, in Latin Sentence, *see* Order ; participial for, 406 ; constr. of, *see* Relative Clauses : phrase, meaning of, Intr. 68, n.

ADJECTIVE, Intr. 7-9 : agreement of, *see* Agreement : kinds of, Intr. 30 : place of, in Latin Sentence, *see* Order : used as substantive, Intr. 32 ; 50-55 : its uses as predicate, and as attribute distinguished, Intr.

72 : superlative and comparative of, often merely intensive, 57 : representing English "of," 58 : for partitive substantive, 60 : adverbial use of, 61-62 : often placed *within* relative clause, 69 : how combined with proper names, 224 ; with names of towns, etc., 317 : in abl. abs., 424 : with cognate acc., 237 : with dat. of *result*, 260, 3, and *Obs.* ; with abl. of *accompaniment*, 269 ; and of *quality*, 271, *Obs.* : with *gen.* of *quality*, 303, ii. ; and *see* under these cases : verbal, *see* Gerundive : numeral, lxvi.

ADVERB, Intr. 16-19 ; in analysis, Intr. 70 : place of, in Latin Sentence, *see* Order : adjective for, 60 : turned by adverbial phrase, Intr. 19, 64 : correlative, 89 : interrogative, 157, *note* : for English adjective, 282 : in *or. obl.*, 518 ; numeral, 533-4 : notes on adverbs of Time, 328.

Adverbial clauses, classes of, Intr. 82-85 : place of, in Latin Sentence, *see* Order : participial for, 406, i.

Adversative clauses, *see* Adverbial clauses, classes of : conjunctions, Intr. 56, c.

Affirmative answer, 162.

Age, how expressed, 327.

Agent, case of the, *see* Abl. and Dat. : secondary, 267, *Obs.* : for words denoting agents, *see* Noun.

Agreement, general rules of, 1-3 : of Relative, 12 ; 65-66 : of Subject and Verb, iv. : of adjectives, 47-49 : of substantives in apposition, 221 : of predicate after apposition, 226.

Alternative, *see* Disjunctive.

- Ambiguity, rare in Latin, 52 : avoided by change of voice, 216, *Obs.* : in use of Gerund and Gerundive, 387 ; 399.
- Antithesis, *see* Contrast.
- Answers to questions, 162.
- Aorist, 177, *b* ; and *see* Tense.
- APPOSITION, xxvi. ; Intr. 68 and 95 ; 3 ; 317.
- Article, English, sometimes represented by *is, ille*, 348.
- Attraction, of relative, 83 : of demonstrative, 83, *Obs.* ; 347.
- Attribute, meaning of the term, Intr. 8 ; and *see* Adjective.
- Auxiliary verbs, *see* Verbs.
- Calendar, the Roman, lxvii.
- Cases, remarks on, xxv.-215 ; and *see* Nominative, etc.
- CAUSAL clauses, Intr. 83, 4 ; lxi. : with *quum*, 430 : with *qui*, 509 ; 512.
- Clause, meaning of the term, Intr. 73, *n.* : kinds of, Intr. 78-85.
- Collective, *see* Noun.
- Commands, how expressed, xviii. : in *or. obl.*, 522.
- Commanding, verbs of, *see* Verbs.
- COMPARATIVE clauses, Intr. 83, 7 : syntax of, lxii. ; two classes of, 489 ; (I.) with indicative, 490-4, and (II.) with subjunctive, 495 ; expressing *proportion*, 497.
- Comparative degree, 57, *b* ; 275-9 : in final clause, 102 : with *quisque*, 376, iii. : double, 493, *Obs.* 2.
- Compound verbs, *see* Verb.
- CONCESSIVE clauses, Intr. 83, 6 : syntax of, lx. : with *quum*, 431 ; with *qui*, 509 *seqq.*
- Concords, *see* Agreement.
- CONDITIONAL, clauses, Intr. 83, 5 : syntax of, lvii.-ix. : moods in, 451 *seqq.* : tenses in, 454 *seqq.* ; exceptional const., 460-3, 475 ; *nisi*, etc., 464-6 ; *sive, seu*, 467 ; *dum, modo*, 468 ; in *or. obl.*, 469 *seqq.* ; after *ut* consecutive or a dependent interrogative, 475 suppressed, 149.
- CONJUNCTIONS, Intr. 25-27 : divided into (1) Co-ordinating and (2) Subordinating, Intr. 53-55 : Co-ordinating, classes and list of, Intr. 56 ; greater variety of, in Latin, Intr. 57 : Subordinating, classes and list of, Intr. 59 : double meaning of "if," "whether," "or," 171 : infinitive in place of, 31, *note* ; *qui*, 78, 79.
- CONSECUTIVE, clauses, Intr. 83, 2 : const. of, with *ut, ut non*, xv. ; with *qui*, 503 : distinguished from *final* and *comparative*, 106-108 : negatives in, 109 : tense of subj. in, 112-116.
- Conjunctive, *see* Subjunctive.
- Contrast, place in sentence of words in, Intr. 107 : marked by place of relative clause, 75 : expressed by use of personal pronouns, 349, iv. ; by *idem*, 366, ii. ; by repeated *alius*, 370.
- Co-ordination of Sentences, Intr. 74-77 : *see also* 406, ii.
- Copulative verbs, *see* Verbs.
- CORRELATIVES, Ex. xii.
- Correlative pronouns, *see* Pronouns, kinds of.
- DATIVE, why so called, main use of, 210 : syntax of, xxix.-xxxii. : the case of *the person interested*, after certain classes of verbs, 242 *seqq.* : completing sense of intrans. verbs, Intr. 36 ; 5 : with compound verbs, 251-3 : with adj. and adv., 254-6 : for possessive pron. or gen., 257 : of the *agent*, 258 : of *result* or *aim*, 259-60.
- Demonstrative, *see* Pronouns.
- Deponent, *see* Verbs.
- Difference, how expressed, 91-92 : by *alius*, 367 ; 370-1 ; and *see* Comparative Clauses.
- Disjunctive, conjunctions, *see* Con-

- junctions : questions, *see* Questions.
- Duty, how expressed, 198.
- Ellipsis, of *ut*, 126 : of a condition, 149 : of a question, 161.
- Emphasis, expressed by use of pronouns, 11 : in questions, 156 ; *and see* Order.
- Enclitic, meaning of term, Intr. 98, *n*.
- Factitive, *see* Verbs.
- FINAL clauses, Intr. 83, 1 : const. of, with *ut* and *ne*, xiv. ; with *qui*, 502 : sequence of tenses in, 104.
- FRACTIONS. 535.
- Frequentative clauses, 434 and *Obs.* ; 192 ; 513.
- FUTURE, tense, 177, *a*, and *Obs.* : uses of three tenses, 189-191 : subjunctive, in consecutive clauses, 114 ; when used after verbs of *fearing*, 139 ; in dependent questions, 173, iii. : infinitive, 193, iii.-v. ; 37-8 : participle, 418 : fut. perf. for imperat., 146.
- GENITIVE, why so called, main use of, 214 : syntax of, xxxvi.-xl. : possessive, and adjectival, 287 *seqq.* : used to express "property," "duty," "mark," 291 : partitive, 293-298 : Subjective and Objective, 299-302 : of *Quality*, and *Definition*, 303, 304 ; *see also* 58, 59 ; 87 : of *price*, 305 : of the *punishment*, 307 : with impersonal verbs, 309, 310 : with certain classes of verbs, xl. : of *place at which* (so called), 311 *seqq.*
- Geographical expressions, Latin usage in, 222 ; 304, i. and ii. : *and see* Place.
- GERUND and GERUNDIVE, in nominative, xlix. ; in oblique cases, l. : supply cases to substantival infinitive, 99 : express Duty and Necessity, 198, iii. ; 199 : gerundive as a pres. partic. passive, 417 ; in dependent questions, 172, *note*.
- Historic, tenses, *see* Tenses : present, 179 : infinitive, 186.
- IMPERATIVE mood, 147, ii., *and note* ; in commands and prohibitions, xvii.
- IMPERFECT tense, 177, *b* ; uses of, 183-186 : subj., 185 : in consecutive clauses, 113 : in dependent questions, 173, ii. : *see also* *Oratio Obliqua*.
- Impersonal, passive, of intransitive verbs, Intr. 42 ; 5 ; 217 and *Obs.* ; of some modal verbs, 219 : impers. verbs, Intr. 46 : with acc. and inf., 46 : with *ut*-clause, 123-125 : with inf. or *ut*, 202 : cases with, 234 ; 309-10 : the impers. const., "it seems," not used in Latin, 43, 46, *b*.
- INDICATIVE, mood, 147, i., *and note* : for English subjunctive, 153 : inserted in *oratio obliqua*, 449 ; 523 : *and see under the various kinds of clauses*.
- INFINITIVE, mood, 147, iii. : why so called, 94, *n*. 1 : as substantive, xiii. : never *final*, 100, 101, *n*. : English, turned by substantival clause, 117 *seqq.* : after some verbs of *commanding*, 120 : English, after interrogative, exp. by subj., 172 : historic, 186 : tenses of, 193 : fut. 37, 38 : compared with Gerund, 384, 385 : *and see* *Oratio Obliqua* and Modal Verbs.
- Inflexion, Intr. 14, 15 : of adj., Intr. 9 : its influence on order of words, Intr. 86-7.
- Interjections, Intr. 28.
- Interrogative, particles and pronouns, list of, 157 ; *and see* Pronouns : clauses, distinguished from adjectival, 176 : for English nouns, 174 : const. of, *see* Questions.

- LOCATIVE case, 212 ; xli. : *and see* 272, *Obs.* ; 305, *note*.
- Metaphorical expressions, not to be literally translated, 17 : qualified by *quidam*, 361, *Obs.* 1 and 2 ; by *velut*, etc., 496.
- Modal, *see* Verbs.
- Moods, remarks on, 147, *and note* : *and see* Indicative, etc.
- Motion, *to, from*, etc., *see* Accusative and Ablative.
- Necessity, how expressed, 199, *and note* ; by gerund or gerundive, 385-8 ; 390-3.
- Negative, after "*say*," expressed by *nego*, 33 : in final clauses, 103 ; in consecutive, 109 : second, in indicative clauses, 110 ; in prohibitions, 145 : virtual, 130 : negat. answer, 162.
- Neuter, adjectives, for abstract nouns, 51, *c.* : pronouns, *see* Pronouns.
- NOMINATIVE, why so called, 208 : syntax of, 216-220 : with inf., *see* Modal Verbs.
- NOUN, substantive and adjective, Intr. 5-9 : substantive, divided into Proper and Common, Collective, Abstract, Intr. 29 : adjectives used for, Intr. 31 ; 50-5 ; 256 : abstract nouns, few in Latin, 417, *Obs.* ; expressed by neuter adj., 51, *c.* ; by inf., 98, *a* ; by interrog. clause, 174 ; by impers. const., 218 ; by partic. or gerundive, 415, 417 : English verbal, 94, *n.* 2 ; expressed by *quominus*, 131 ; by impers. const., 218. Nouns denoting *agents*, and *classes* of persons, translated by adjectival clause, 76 ; 175 : Latin nouns in *-tor*, *-sor*, compared with English in *-er*, 342, *note*.
- Numerals, lxvi. ; cardinal, 527-9 ; ordinal, 530-1 ; distributive, 532 : follow *plus*, etc., with *out quam*, 318, *Obs.* : ordinal, with *quisque*, 377.
- Object, direct, Intr. 38 ; 4 ; 228 ; *and see* Accusative : indirect, *see* Dative.
- ORATIO OBLIQUA, acc. and inf., v.vi. : subordinate clauses in, lvi. : conditional clauses in, lix. : reported speeches, lxx. : relative in, 77, 78, *end*.
- Order of words in Latin Sentence, Intr. 86-99 : 106-107 : of clauses, Intr. 100-105 : of correlative clauses, 85 : of dependent interrogative clause, 176, *end* : of words in apposition, 224, *Obs.* 1, *n.* : emphatic, instead of relative clause, 82 ; cf. 156.
- PARTICIPLES, 14 ; lii. ; for subordinate clauses, 15 ; 406 : for adjs., 407 : for substs., 51 ; 408 : syntax of present participle, 410-15 ; of past participle, 416-17 ; of fut. partic., 14, *c.* ; 418 : "those who" expressed by partic., 73, 74 : substitute for partic. of *sum*, 224, *Obs.* 1 : pass. partic. after *opus est*, 286 : partic. in *-dus*, *see* Gerundive.
- Particles, why so called, Intr. 15.
- Partitive, substantive, adjective for, 60 : gen., *see* Genitive.
- Parts of Speech, Intr. 1-4.
- Passive, *see* Verbs.
- PERFECT, tense, 105 ; 177 *and Obs.* : uses of, 187 : compound formed with *habeo*, 188 : perf. subjunctive in consecutive clauses, 113 ; in prohibitions, 142 ; in dependent question, 173, i. : perf. inf., 193, ii. ; after *possum*, 196, *Obs.* : *see also* *Oratio Obl.*
- Permission, how expressed, 197.
- Personification of a country, to denote its inhabitants, rare, 319.
- Phrases, adverbial, expressed by single Latin adverb, Intr. 19

- and 52; 64: verbal, by single verb, 25.
- Place, how expressed, xli.: *see also* Abl. and Acc.
- PLUPERFECT, tense, 177, *b.*; used to express *frequency*, 192; 434: of subjunctive, how represented in consecutive clauses, 115; its use in *or. obl.*, 471-3.
- Possessive, *see* Genitive or Pronouns.
- Possibility, how expressed, 196; 200; not by gerund or gerundive except occasionally with negatives, 394: *see also* Modal Verbs.
- Potential, mood, *see* Subjunctive used independently: fut. inf., 193, *v.*
- Predicate, in analysis, *see* Sentence: adj. as, Intr. 8; its relation to subject, Intr. 11: enlargement of, Intr. 69-70.
- PREPOSITIONS, Intr. 20-24: assist case-system, 205: when necessary with abl., 264; 270; 273, *Obs.*; 314; with acc., 313: general remarks on, 329: with acc., 330-1: with abl., 330; 332-3.
- PRESENT, tense, 177, *a.*; uses of, 175-182: English, future for, 190: of subj., in prohibitions, 142; jussive, 144: of infinitive, represents pres. and imperfect indicative, 35, *n.*; 193, *i.*; for English incorrect perfect, 153, *Obs.*; cf. 196, *Obs.*; and *see Or. Obl.*: pres. partic., *see* Participles.
- Price, *see* Ablative and Genitive.
- Primary, *see* Tenses.
- Prohibitions, how expressed, xviii.; in *or. obl.*, 522.
- PRONOUN, Intr. 10 and 32-34: Personal and Demonstrative, 11; xlv.: Reflexive and Emphatic, xlv.; Indefinite, xlvii.: *Pronominalia*, xlviii. A and B: Relative, *see* Relative: indefinite (Greek *τις*), want of in Latin, 351: neuter, 231; 237; 294: reciprocal, often supplied by *inter se*, 354; by repeated *alius*, 371, *iv.*: pronouns followed by *quisque*, 373, 374: pronouns in *or. obl.*, 34; 517.
- Proportion, three ways of expressing, 376.
- QUESTIONS, Direct, xx.; (1) single, 155-157; (2) disjunctive, 158-161: Dependent or Indirect, xxi., xxii.; dependent disjunctive, 168 *seq.*: subj. in (rhetorical) questions, 150; 172: answers to questions, 162: dependent questions for English nouns, 174: distinguished from relative clauses, 176: questions in *or. obl.*, 520-1.
- Quotation, introduced by *illud*, 341.
- RELATIVE, clause, placed first in contrasts, 75: turned by Latin order, 82: adj. for, 62; 81: adjectival, x.: subjunctive in, lxiii.: causal and concessive, lxiv.: in *or. obl.*, *see Oratio Obl.*: Relative Pronoun, coordinating, Intr. 58; 76; 13, 78, *i.*: subordinating, Intr. 60; 79: with Demonstrative, 70-72; 75; and *see* Correlatives: referring to a *statement*, 67; *qui non*, *quin*, 80: indefinite, 364: followed by *quisque*, 373: *see also* Agreement and Attraction.
- Sentence, Analysis of, Intr. 61-72; the compound, Intr. 73-85.
- Space, how expressed, 318.
- Subject, in analysis, *see* Sentence: its relation to Predicate, Intr. 11: enlargement of, Intr. 68: place of, in sentence, Intr. 88: composite, 26-9.
- Subordination of sentences, Intr. 78-85.
- SUBJUNCTIVE, mood, 147, *iv.*, and *note*: used independently, 148-152: for imperative, *see* Commands and Prohibitions: with

- qui* or relational adverb, lxiii.; fut. subj., 189, *Obs.* See Questions, *Oratio obliqua*, and the various kinds of clauses (Intr. 80-85).
- SUBSTANTIVAL**, clause, Intr. 80 : place of, *see* Order : introduced by *ut*, *ne*, xvi.; by interrogatives, 174; by relative, 175; 76. Substantival infinitive, xiii.; and *see* Infinitive.
- Substantive**, verb, Intr. 49, *Obs.* : noun substantive, *see* Noun.
- Superlative degree**, 57, *a*; 69; 375-6; and *see* Adjective.
- SUPINES**, li. : sup. in *-um* after verbs of motion, 235; in fut. inf. pass., 193, iv.; sup. in *-u* an ablative, 274, *Obs.*
- TEMPORAL** clauses, Intr. 83, 3, and 85 : syntax of, liv., lv.
- Tense**, remarks on, primary, secondary (historic), etc., xxiii. : and *see* Present, etc. : sequence of, *see* Final Clauses, etc. : in *or. obl.*, 524-5.
- Time**, expressions of, xlii. : *see also* Ablative and Accusative : notes on adverbs of time, 328 : the Roman calendar, lxvii.
- Towns**, islands, etc., *see* Geographical expressions and Place.
- Transitive**, *see* Verbs.
- VERBS**, Intr. 11-13 : Intransitive and Transitive, Intr. 35-38; cf. iii. : Active, Passive, and Deponent, Intr. 39-45 : impersonal, Intr. 46; and *see* Impersonal : Auxiliary, Intr. 47; 49, *Obs.*; 188; 195 : Modal, Intr. 48; vii.; 219 : Copulative or Link, Intr. 49-50, and 71; 7 : Finite and Infinitive, Intr. 51; cf. xiii. : factitive, 239 : some in English used both transitively and intransitively, 20-21 : some trans. by addition of a preposition, 22-3 : some in Latin transitive by composition, 24; 229 : transitive, used intransitively, 232 : verbs of double const., 122 : *sum*, Intr. 49, *Obs.*; its compounds, 251 : verbs governing dat., abl., or gen., *see those cases* : verbs of commanding or effecting (*imperandi vel efficiendi*), 118; 127; of thinking or saying (*sentendi vel declarandi*), *see Or. Obl.*; of hindrance, with *quin*, *quominus*, 129-137; of doubting, 133; of hoping, 37; of fearing, 138, and note; of teaching, concealing, etc., 230-1.
- VOCATIVE**, why so called, use of, 215.
- Voice**, changed to prevent ambiguity, 216, *Obs.*; and *see* Verbs.
- Wish**, expressed by subjunctive, 151-152; in *or. obl.*, 522.

- malevolentia, malignitas, malitia, p. 376, n.
 malo, 42, i. d.
 mando, 127, b; 128; 247.
 me Dīus fīdīus, Intr. 28.
 medius, 60.
 meminī, 228, Obs.; 808.
 memoriae proditum est, 46, a.
 mentior, p. 382, n.
 merita, 408.
 metuo, 138-9; 248; p. 367, n.
 meus, 11, c.
 militiae, 312.
 mille, 528.
 minime, 162.
 minor, 87; 247.
 minor (adj.), 327: minores, 51, a, note: minus, 318, Obs.
 misereor, 308.
 miseret, 234; 309.
 miseror, 308, c.
 moderor, 249.
 modo, 468: modo ne, 489, note.
 moneo, 118; 122, a; 127, a.
 monstro, 241.
 mortalis, 19.
 mortuus, 61: mortuus est, Voc. 7, n.
 moveo, 21, a.
 multa (n. pl.), 53, 54; 237.
 multo (abl.), 279.
 mundus, 16, b.
 muto, 21, a; 280.
 nanciscor, p. 379, n.
 natio, 19; Voc. 2, n.
 natus, 266; 327.
 navis longa, 66.
 ne, xiv.; xvi.; 109; 138, 139; 142, 146.
 ne dicam, longus sim, 100, n.
 ne . . . quidem, Intr. 99.
 -ne (encl.), Intr. 93, and note; 155-6; 159-60; 167-168.
 necesse est, 126; 199, and note; 201.
 necne, 168, Obs.
 neco, p. 374, n.
 neglego, Voc. 10, n.
 nego, 83; 136, a; 162.
 nemo, Voc. 8, n.; 223, and note; 296.
 nepotes, 61, a, note.
 nequaquam, 162.
 neque, Intr. 99; 29; 110; 145.
 nequidquam, p. 393, n.
 nequitia, p. 361, n.
 nescio, 506, n.; p. 372, n.
 nescio quis, quo pacto, quo modo, 169; 362-3.
 neve, neu, 108; 145.
 nihil, 231; 237; 294: nihil reliqui, etc., 298, b.
 nisi, 464, 466.
 nitor, 282, Obs.
 nobiles, 51, a, and note.
 noceo, 244, b.
 nolo, 42, i. d.; 186, a: noli, 143; nolim, 126; 149, i.
 non, Intr. 99; 162.
 non diutius, non jam, 328, a.
 non modo . . . sed, 124.
 non quin, non quo, 485.
 Nonae, lxvii.
 nondum, 328, d.
 nonne, 155, c; 167.
 nonnulli, 360, iv.
 nonnunquam, p. 388, n.
 nos, 334; 517.
 nostri, 60.
 notum habeo, 188.
 novissimus, 60.
 nullus, Voc. 8, n.
 num, 155, and note; 167; 171: numquis, 157, i.
 nunc, 328, b; 518.
 nuntiatum est, 46, a.
 ob, 252; 267, Obs.; 330, 331, 14; 396.
 obedio, 244, a; p. 379, n.
 obliviscor, 308.
 obsecro, 127, a.
 obsequor, p. 379, n.
 obsideo, Voc. 3, n.; 24; 229.
 obsto, obsisto, 137, ii.; 244, b.
 obtempero, p. 379, n.
 occido, p. 374, n.
 odio sum, 260, Obs. 2.
 offendo, 245.
 officere, 137, ii.
 officium, 18, 19.
 olim, p. 379, n.
 omitto, p. 392, n.
 omnis, 297; p. 364, n.
 opera (abl.), 267, Obs.: 289: operam do, 118; 397.
 opinio, 277; 300.
 opinor, p. 367, n.
 oportet, 126; 198, ii., and note.
 oppidum, 226; 316, ii.
 oppugno, Voc. 3, n.; 229.
 optimates, 51, a, and note.
 opto, 23; 118.
 opus, 286, and Obs.
 orbis terrarum, 16, b.
 oro, 118; 127, a: oro et obsecro, 141.
 ortus, oriundus, 266, and Obs.
 ostendo, 241.
 paene, p. 355, n.
 pareo, 228, Obs.; p. 379, n.
 pariter, 488.
 pars, 535.
 parum, 294.
 patiens, 302.
 patior, 120.
 patres, Voc. 2, n.; 51, a, note.
 patria, 16, a: patria cedo, 264.
 paulo, 279.
 peccatum, p. 361, n.; 408.
 pendere animi, 312, Obs.
 penes, 330, 331, 15.
 per, 267, Obs.; 330, 331, 16; 197, Obs. 2.
 perhorresco, 232.
 periculum est, 138, 139.
 perinde ac, lxii.
 peritus, 301, ii.
 permitto, 118; 127, b; 128; 247.
 peto, 23; 118; 127, c.
 pie, 64.
 piget, 202; 234; 309.
 placet, 202; 246.
 plenus, 301, Obs.
 plus, 294; 318, Obs.
 poena, p. 383, n.
 poenitet, 202; 234; 309.
 polliceor, Voc. 6, n.; 37.
 posco, 127, d; 230, 231; p. 363, n.
 posse, 37, end: possum, 42, i, a; 158; 196; 200; 219.
 post, 252; 322; 330, 331, 17.
 posterī, 51, a, and note.
 postquam, 428; 446.
 postulo, 127, c; p. 363, n.
 potentia, potestas, p. 373, n.
 potior, 281.
 potius, 488.
 prae, 252; 330; 332, 6.
 praebeo, 241.
 praeceptum, 408, Obs.
 praecipio, 127, b; 128.
 praeditus, 286.
 praefectus, 408.
 praeficio, 253, ii.; 397.
 praesum, 251; 397.
 praesto, 229, n.; 239; 278.
 praeter, 330, 331, 18.
 praeternitto, p. 392, n.
 praeterehor, 24.
 precor, 118; 127, d; 231.
 pridie, 540.
 primus, 62; 377.
 priscus, pristinus, p. 355, n.
 priusquam, 442-3.
 privo, 284.
 pro, 6; 330; 332, 7.
 probro, 247.
 prohibeo, 41, a; 120; 127, a; 137, ii.; 245.
 proinde, lxii.
 promitto, Voc. 6, n.; 37.
 prope, 256; 330, 331, 19; p. 355, n.
 proprium, 255.
 propter, 267, Obs.; 330, 331 20.
 prosequor, 283.
 prospicio, 243.
 provideo, 243.
 proximus, 256.
 prudens, 301, Obs.

- doceo, 230-1.
 domi, 312; 316, iii.; domo,
 9, b; domum, 9, b; 235;
 313, *Obs.*
 donec, 436-41.
 dono, 250.
 dubito, 136, b.
 duco, 259.
 dum, 180; 436-41; 468.

 equeus, 157, i.
 edico, 118; 127, b.; 128.
 efficio, 118; 125, j, k.
 egeo, 284.
 ego, 11, a, b; 26, *note*; 334;
 517.
 ejusmodi, 87; p. 374, n.
 eligo, 259.
 emo, 305.
 enim, *Intr.* 98.
 eo (ire), 403, *and Obs.*
 erga, 330; 331, 8.
 errare, error, p. 366, n.
 esurio, 42, n.
 et, *Intr.* 57, *note*.
 etiam, 162.
 etiamsi, etsi, lx.
 evenit, p. 376, n.
 ex, 263-4; 296; 314; 326;
 330; 332, 4.
 expectatio, 277.
 expedit, 246.
 expers, 301, ii.
 exsto, 241.
 extorqueo, 257.
 extra, 330; 331, 9.

 facinus, p. 361, n.
 facio, 118; 240; 290, *Obs.*;
 305: fac, 122, d; 141.
 factum, 51, b; 55; 408.
 fama, 277.
 famosus, *Voc.* 2, n.; 19.
 fatalis, *Voc.* 8, n.
 faveo, 5; 244, a.
 favor, p. 373, n.
 felicitas, 347.
 fere, p. 355, n.
 ferox, p. 357, n.
 ferrum, *Voc.* 1, n.
 ferunt, 44.
 fido, 244, c; fidens, 407, ii.
 fieri potest, 125, e, f; 132, d.
 fines, 16, a.
 fingo, p. 382, n.
 flagitium, p. 361, n.
 flagito, 127, d; 230-1.
 foras, 235.
 fore ut, 88; 193, iii.
 forsitan, fortasse, forte, 169,
 170.
 fraudi, 260, 3.
 fretus, 285.
 fruo, 281.
 frustra, p. 393, n.
 fungor, 281.
 furo, furor, *Voc.* 6, n.
 futurum, 52; 408.

 gaudeo, 41, b; 487, *Obs.*
 gero, 240, *Obs.*; 241.
 glorior, 281, 282, *Obs.*
 gratia, p. 373, n.: gratiam
 habeo, etc.; gratias ago,
 98, b: gratia (*abl.*), 290,
 Obs.; 329, *Obs.*
 gratus, p. 362, n.
 gubernio, 245.

 habeo, 188; 240; 305.
 hac, 89.
 haud, *Intr.* 99; 169, n.;
 haud scio an, 169, 170.
 hic, 88, *Obs.*; 337; 340.
 hic (*adv.*), hinc, 89.
 hoc (*neut.*), 231; 237.
 hodie, 518.
 homo, 224, *and note*; *Ex.*
 39, n. 6: homines, 16, b.
 honestas, honestum, 51, c;
 p. 371, n.
 horreo, 232.
 hortor, 118; 127, a; 245.
 hostis, *Ex.* 1, n.: *Voc.* 8, n.
 huc, 89.
 hujusmodi, 87; p. 374, n.
 humi, 312.

 ibi, 89.
 id aetatis, temporis, etc.,
 294, *Obs.*; 238, iii.
 id ago, 118.
 idcirco, 107; 483, *Obs.*
 idem, xii.; 365-6: *neut.*,
 237.
 idoneus, 255, *Obs.*
 Idus, lxvii.
 ignarus, 301.
 ignoro, p. 372, n.
 ignosco, 5; 244, c.
 ille, 11, d; 84; 88, *Obs.*;
 101, i, n.; 334, iii., *and*
 iv.; 339-40; 346-8; 481,
 a; 517: *neut.*, 231; 237;
 341; 486, *and Obs.*
 illic, illuc, 89.
 immemor, 301, ii.
 impar, 397.
 impedire, 137, ii.
 imperium, p. 373, n.
 impero, 118; 127, b; 128;
 244, c; 247.
 impetro, 118; 127, c; p.
 379, n.
 impotens, 407, iii.
 improbi, 50, n.
 imus, 60.
 in, 252; 268, *Obs.*; 273,
 Obs.; 313; 320, *and Obs.*;
 326; 330, 331, 24; 332, 5;
 398, *Obs.*
 in- (*privat.*), 407, iii.
 incipio, 42, i, b.
 incuso, 306; p. 390, n.
 inde, 89.
 indico, 253, ii.
 indigeo, 284.

 indignus, 285.
 indoles, p. 359, n.
 induo, 250.
 infilias eo, 235.
 infra, 330, 331, ii.
 ingenium, p. 359, n.
 inimicus, *Voc.* 8, n.; 51, a;
 55; 256.
 injuria, p. 395, n.
 injuasu, 269, *Obs.*
 inquam, 40.
 insanio, *Voc.* 6, n.
 insimulo, p. 390, n.
 institutum, 51, b; 408.
 insuetus, 255, *Obs.*; 301, ii.
 insum, 251, *Obs.*
 inter, 252; 296; 330, 331,
 10; 354; 396.
 interdum, p. 388, n.
 interest, 202; 310.
 interficio, p. 374, n.
 intermitto, p. 392, n.
 interrogo, 230; 231, *and*
 note.
 intra, 325; 330, 331, 12.
 intueor, p. 386, n.
 invideo, 244, c.
 invitus, 61.
 ipse, 355-6.
 irascor, 244, c.
 irrideo, 253, iii.
 is, 11, d; 34; 70-76; 83,
 Obs.; 336; 342-8; 506;
 517: *neut.*, 238, iii.; 294,
 Obs.
 iste, 11, d; 338; 517.
 ita, 107; 488: ita . . . ut,
 111; 468: ita vero, 162.
 iterum, 328, f; 533, c; 534.

 jam, 328: jam diu, pridem,
 dudum, 181; 328, e.
 jubeo, 41, a; 120; 127, a;
 128; 245.
 jucundus, p. 362, n.
 jure, p. 385, n.
 juris consultus, 302.
 juro, 37.
 justo, aequo, 277.
 juvenis, 51, a, *and note*.
 juvo, 245.
 juxta, 330, 331, 13.
 juxta ac, 491.

 Kalendae, lxvii.

 laedo, 245.
 lex, *Ex.* 9, n.
 libet, 202; 246.
 licet, 126; 197; 201; 246
 480, ii.
 longum est, 153.
 loquor, p. 388, n.

 majores, 51, a, *and note*.
 majus exclamat, 238, ii.
 male, 252.
 maledico, 253, i.

velim, 126; 141.	vescor, 281.	vilis, 19.
velut, lxii.	vesperi, 312.	vir, 224 <i>and note</i> ; Ex. 39,
vereor, 138, 139; p. 367, n.	veto, 120; 245; 127, a; 137,	n. 6.
vero, <i>Intr.</i> 98.	ii.	vitium, p. 361, n. : vitio
versus, p. 216, n. ; 330, 331,	vetus, vetustus, p. 355, n.	verto, 260, a.
22.	vicem, 238, iii.	vix, 130.
verto, 259.	vicinus, 256.	vixi, 187.
vendo, 280; 305.	video, 118; 410, <i>Obs.</i> ; p.	volo, 41, a; 42, i. d; 46, d;
vēnīre, 280, <i>Obs.</i>	386, n. : videor, 43: videtur,	120; 240.
venum dare, 235.	46, b; 202: videro, 146.	vulgus, 254, <i>and note</i> .

Edinburgh University Press :

THOMAS AND ARCHIBALD CONSTABLE, PRINTERS TO HER MAJESTY.

ARNOLD'S HENRY'S FIRST LATIN BOOK.

A New and Revised Edition. 12mo. 3s.

By C. G. GEPP, M.A.

LATE HEAD MASTER OF KING EDWARD VI. SCHOOL, STRATFORD-UPON-AVON;
AUTHOR OF 'PROGRESSIVE EXERCISES IN LATIN ELEGIAC VERSE.'

'Whatever may be thought of this work as compared with previous editions, the editor ventures to claim for it the merit of greater simplicity of arrangement. The footnotes, which have been reserved mainly for explanations of technical words, are fewer, and less crowded with matter; the familiar finger-posts exist no longer; the subtle distinction between numerals above the line with a curve and those without a curve has been abandoned; while a glance at the Table of Contents will show that a definite plan has been followed in the order of the Exercises, the object being to keep in view the stem-formation of words.

'The principal novelties in the present edition are the following:—References have been made throughout to the "Public School Latin Primer," the phraseology of which is generally adopted; the formation of words from the Stem is taught from the first; the constructions of the Cases and of the Verb-Noun are fully treated; the Exercises have been almost entirely re-written, and are longer; anecdotes, fables, etc., have been inserted into the passages for translation into English; some fifty test Exercises have been added; and lastly, a General Index has been carefully compiled, by which the search for particular rules or constructions will be greatly facilitated.'—*Extract from the Preface.*

CONTENTS.

Cases in Latin and English—On forming the Accusative Case—On the Gender of Substantives—The Genitive and Dative Singular—The Ablative Singular—The Plural Number—On forming Three Tenses in First Conjugation—Accusative with Transitive Verb—On forming Three Tenses in Second Conjugation—On forming Three Tenses in Third Conjugation—On forming Three Tenses in Fourth Conjugation—Supplementary to the foregoing Exercises—The Passive Voice (A-verbs and E-verbs)—The Passive Voice continued (Consonant and U-verbs, I-verbs)—On forming the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active. (Adjectives in *-x, -us, -rs*)—The Comparative and Superlative of Adjectives. (*Acer, Unus*)—The Infinitive—The Infinitive continued. *Sum, Possum, Volo*. (The Proclative Infinitive)—The Infinitive continued. Gerunds. (*Personal and Demonstrative Pronouns*)—The Gerundive. Gerundive Attraction. (*Dative of the Agent*)—The Supines. *Eo. (Nē—quidem)*—The Participles. Periphrastic Conjugation—The Perfect and Pluperfect Passive. Deponents—The Accusative and Infinitive—The Relative Pronoun. Copulative Verbs—The Reflexive Pronouns. *Ipse. Idem*—The Subjunctive. *Ut* and *Nē* expressing Purpose (*Consecution of Tenses*)—The Subjunctive continued. *Ut* expressing a Consequence. (*Quis, quæ, quid*)—The Imperative. *Ne* in Prohibitions—The Indefinite Pronoun *Quis—Cum (Quum)*. (*Interrogative Sentences*)—Impersonal Verbs—Apposition. *Summus, Intus*, etc. (Conditional Sentences)—The Accusative. Place. Space. Time. Double Accusative. Prepositions—The Genitive (*Subjective Genitive*)—The Genitive continued (*Objective Genitive*). *Miseret, pænitet*, etc.—The Dative—The Dative continued. Impersonal Construction—The Ablative. Quasi-Passive Verbs—The Ablative continued—*Time, Price*—The Ablative continued. *Place*. (The Locative)—The Ablative Absolute—Ablative of the thing compared. *Quam* in Comparison—Ablative denoting Amount of Difference. (*Tanto—quanto*; *eo—quo*)—Translation of '*May*,' '*Might*,' '*Ought*'—*Ut, Nē*, with Verbs of Fearing—*Quin*. *Quominus*—Interrogatives. Direct Questions—Indirect Questions. Double Questions—Some Conjunctions always found with the Subjunctive—*Qui* with the Subjunctive—Transitive and Intransitive Verbs—Various uses of *Qui—Either—or. Whether—or*—Participial Constructions—Conjunctions.

Memorabilia—Supplementary Exercises (65-112)—Differences of Idiom—Table of Synonymes—Questions on Syntax—Appendix—Vocabulary I., English-Latin—Vocabulary II., Latin-English—General Index.

RIVINGTONS

WATERLOO PLACE, LONDON.

New Educational Works.

A New and Revised Edition. Crown 8vo.

ARNOLD'S FIRST GREEK BOOK. *By FRANCIS DAVID MORICE, M.A., Assistant Master at Rugby School, and Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford.*

A New and Revised Edition. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

ARNOLD'S PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION. *By EVELYN ABBOTT, M.A., LL.D., Fellow and Tutor of Balliol College, Oxford.*

New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

FIRST LATIN WRITER. *Comprising Accidence, the Easier Rules of Syntax illustrated by copious Examples, and progressive Exercises in Elementary Latin Prose, with Vocabularies. By G. L. BENNETT, M.A., Head Master of the High School, Plymouth.*

New Edition. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

SECOND LATIN WRITER. *By G. L. BENNETT, M.A., Head Master of the High School, Plymouth.*

This work, in continuation of the First Latin Writer, gives hints on writing Latin Prose for Boys about to commence the rendering of continuous passages from English Authors into Latin. There is a large Collection of Exercises, graduated according to their difficulty, with Notes.

New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

EASY LATIN STORIES FOR BEGINNERS. *By G. L. BENNETT, M.A., Head Master of the High School, Plymouth. With Notes and Vocabularies. Forming a First Latin Reading Book for Junior Forms in Schools.*

RIVINGTONS: WATERLOO PLACE, LONDON.

RIVINGTONS' EDUCATIONAL LIST

Arnold's Latin Prose Composition. By G. G. BRADLEY. 5s.

[The original Edition is still on sale.]

Arnold's Henry's First Latin Book. By C. G. GEPP. 3s.

[The original Edition is still on sale.]

First Latin Writer. By G. L. BENNETT. 3s. 6d.

Or separately—

First Latin Exercises. 2s. 6d.

Latin Accidence. 1s. 6d.

Second Latin Writer. By G. L. BENNETT. 3s. 6d.

Easy Latin Stories for Beginners. By G. L. BENNETT. 2s. 6d.

Selections from Cæsar. By G. L. BENNETT. 2s.

Selections from Vergil. By G. L. BENNETT. 2s.

Virgil Georgics. Book IV. By C. G. GEPP. 1s. 6d.

Cæsar de Bello Gallico. Books I—III. By J. MERRYWEATHER and C. TANCOCK. 3s. 6d.
Book I, separately, 2s.

The Beginner's Latin Exercise Book. By C. J. S. DAWE. 1s. 6d.

First Steps in Latin. By F. RITCHIE. 1s. 6d.

Gradatim. An Easy Latin Translation Book. By H. HEATLEY and H. KINGDON. 1s. 6d.

Arnold's Greek Prose Composition. By E. ABBOTT. 3s. 6d.
[The original Edition is still on sale.]

A Primer of Greek Grammar. By E. ABBOTT and E. D. MANSFIELD. 3s. 6d.

Or separately—

Syntax. 1s. 6d.

Accidence. 2s. 6d.

A Practical Greek Method for Beginners. THE SIMPLE SENTENCE. By F. RITCHIE and E. H. MOORE. 3s. 6d.

Stories in Attic Greek. By F. D. MORICE. 3s. 6d.

A First Greek Writer. By A. SIDGWICK. 3s. 6d.

An Introduction to Greek Prose Composition. By A. SIDGWICK. 5s.

Homer's Iliad. By A. SIDGWICK.
Books I. and II. 2s. 6d.
Book XXI. 1s. 6d.
Book XXII. 1s. 6d.

The Anabasis of Xenophon. By R. W. TAYLOR.
Books I. and II. 3s. 6d.
Or separately, Book I., 2s. 6d.;
Book II., 2s.
Books III. and IV. 3s. 6d.

Xenophon's Agesilaus. By R. W. TAYLOR. 2s. 6d.

Stories from Ovid in Elegiac Verse. By R. W. TAYLOR. 3s. 6d.

Stories from Ovid in Hexameter Verse. By R. W. TAYLOR. 2s. 6d.

Waterloo Place, Pall Mall, London.

RIVINGTONS' EDUCATIONAL LIST

Select Plays of Shakspeare.

RUGBY EDITION.
By the Rev. C. E. MOBERLY.
AS YOU LIKE IT. 2s.
MACBETH. 2s.
HAMLET. 2s. 6d.
KING LEAR. 2s. 6d.
ROMEO AND JULIET. 2s.
KING HENRY THE FIFTH. 2s.
MIDSUMMER NIGHT'S
DREAM. 2s.
By R. WHITELAW.
CORIOLANUS. 2s. 6d.
By J. S. PHILLPOTTS.
THE TEMPEST. 2s.

A History of England.

By the Rev. J. F. BRIGHT.
Period I.—MEDÆVAL MONARCHY:
A.D. 449—1485. 4s. 6d.
Period II.—PERSONAL MONARCHY:
A.D. 1485—1688. 5s.
Period III.—CONSTITUTIONAL MON-
ARCHY: A.D. 1689—1837. 7s. 6d.

Historical Biographies.

By the Rev. M. CREIGHTON.
SIMON DE MONTFORT. 2s. 6d.
THE BLACK PRINCE. 2s. 6d.
SIR WALTER RALEGH. 3s.
DUKE OF WELLINGTON. 3s. 6d.
DUKE OF MARLBOROUGH.
3s. 6d.
OLIVER CROMWELL. 3s. 6d.

A Handbook in Outline

of English History to 1881. By
ARTHUR H. D. ACLAND and CYRIL
RANSOME.

A First History of Eng- land.

By LOUISE CREIGHTON. With
Illustrations. 2s. 6d.

Army and Civil Service

Examination Papers in Arithmetic.
By A. DAWSON CLARKE. 3s. 6d.

Short Readings in Eng- lish Poetry.

By H. A. HERTZ.
2s. 6d.

Modern Geography, for the Use of Schools.

By the Rev. C.
E. MOBERLY.
Part I.—NORTHERN EUROPE. 2s. 6d.
Part II.—SOUTHERN EUROPE. 2s. 6d.

A Geography for Begin- ners.

By L. B. LANG.
THE BRITISH EMPIRE. 2s. 6d.
Part I.—THE BRITISH ISLES. 1s. 6d.
Part II.—THE BRITISH POSSES-
SIONS. 1s. 6d.

A Practical English

Grammar. By W. TIDMARSH.

A Graduated French

Reader. By PAUL BARBIER. 2s.

La Fontaine's Fables.

Books I. and II. By the Rev. P.
BOWDEN-SMITH. 2s.

Goethe's Faust.

By E. J.
TURNER, and E. D. A. MORSHEAD.

Lessing's Fables.

By F.
STORR. 2s. 6d.

Selections from Hauff's

Stories. By W. E. MULLINS and F.
STORR. 4s. 6d.

Also separately—

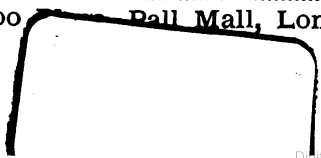
KALIF STORK AND THE
PHANTOM CREW. 2s.

A German Accidence.

By J. W. J. VECQUERAY. 3s. 6d.

German Exercises.

Adapted
to the above. By E. F. GREN-
FELL. Part I. 2s. Part II. 2s. 6d.

Waterloo  Pall Mall, London.

